



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

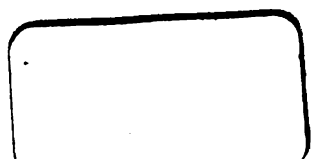
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

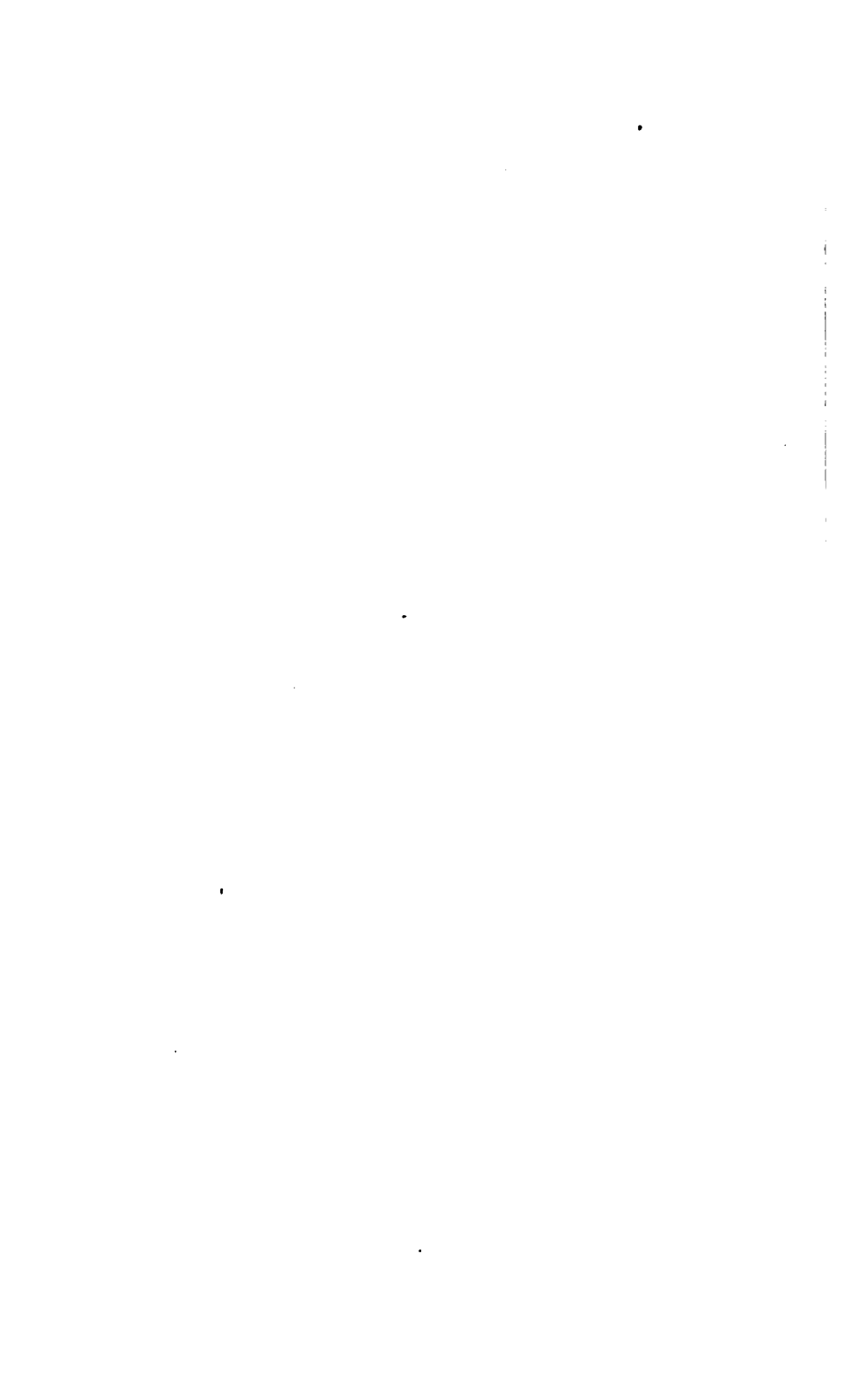
We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

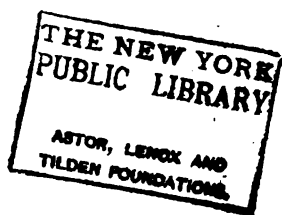
About Google Book Search

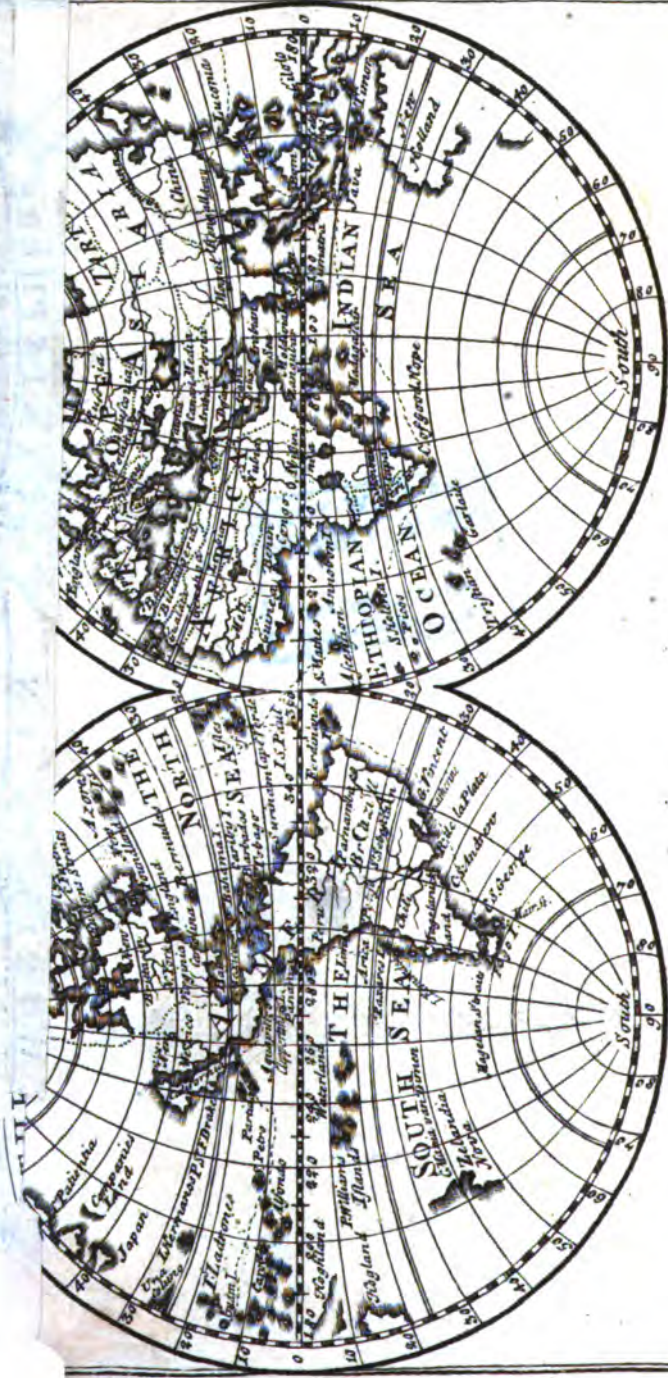
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>











4024
9.8.
2368
A
GENERAL HISTORY
OF THE
SEVERAL NATIONS
OF THE
WORLD,

FROM THE
FLOOD, to the PRESENT TIMES.

WITH THE
G E N E A L O G I E S
OF ALL THE
Respective SOVEREIGNS that have Reigned.

IN A
CHRONOLOGICAL SERIES:

From whence it will appear,

What PRINCES have been COTEMPORARIES in every AGE.



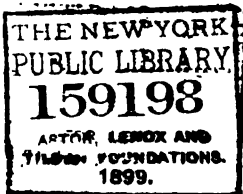
L O N D O N :

Printed for D. BROWNE, at the *Black-Swan*, without *Temple-Bar*;
J. SHUCKBURGH, at the *Sun*, between the two *Temple-Gates*,
Fleet-street; and W. JOHNSTON, at the *Golden-Ball*, in *St. Paul's*
Church-yard. M DCC LI.

BAE.

24

En



Repair No. 372/02

P R E F A C E.

THE greatest Discouragement to the Reading of History proceeds from its being too voluminous, or too much contracted by Abridgments. Gentlemen dread the Fatigue of perusing numberless Volumes before they can acquire a tolerable Knowledge of the State of the World; and, if they trust to Abridgments, so many material Occurrences are frequently omitted, that they receive but very imperfect Ideas of the State of the Countries treated of. It is designed, therefore, in this Work, to observe a just Medium between the two Extremes, so as neither to take up the Reader's Time, or burthen his Memory with fabulous Relations and trivial Occurrences on the one hand, or render the Work imperfect, by omitting such material and important Facts are as necessary to the understanding the true State of the respective Countries described on the other: And such an Attempt, it is presumed, will not fail of the good Wishes of all Mankind that it may succeed. For as there is not any Part of the World but we have some Concern or Commerce with, and without the Knowledge of which, we cannot well form a true Judgment of the Interest of our own Country, it cannot be supposed that any Gentleman would willingly remain uninformed of what so much concerns him to know, in order to render him a useful Member of the Commonwealth, if it might be attained by a moderate Application to the Study of History. Nor is such a Work as is proposed so difficult as is usually apprehended at first; for if we throw out what is fabulous, and the idle Comments and Surmises with which most Histories abound, and serve only to weary and perplex the Reader, the remaining important Occurrences will lie in a little room. We rarely meet with Books of any kind which do not contain abundance of Tautology

logy and superfluous Matter. Many Histories might be reduced from Folio's to Octavo's, and yet very little lost. But, notwithstanding it is proposed to cut off some superfluous Matter, there will be found very material Additions and Improvements in this Undertaking, especially in Chronology and Geography; for at the End of the History of each Country will be added Tables of the respective Reigns; from whence it will appear what Princes have been Contemporaries in every Age; and the true Situation of Places also will be ascertained. Gentlemen indeed are usually advised to apply themselves to Geography and Chronology before they enter upon History, which proving a dry Entertainment, they soon grow weary, and are apt to despair before they have made any considerable Progress in their Inquiries; from whence it seems absolutely necessary to intermix the General History of the respective Countries with the Geographical and Chronological; whereby it is presumed the Reader will be agreeably entertained, as well as instructed, and enabled to form an Idea of the State of all the respective Nations.

The Work will be comprized in Four Volumes.

This First Volume contains the History of all the Kingdoms of *Asia*, Ancient and Modern, *viz.*

- I. The *Affyrian* Monarchy, being the most Ancient.
- II. The *Persian* Empire.
- III. The *Grecian* Empire.
- IV. The History of those Countries possessed by *Alexander* and his Successors, which comprehended all that Part of the World which lies between the *Egean* Sea and the River *Indus*.
- V. The *Saracen* Empire.
- VI. The *Turkish*, *Indian*, and *Chinese* Empires.
- VII. The History of *Scythia* and *Tartary*.
- VIII. The Oriental Islands, particularly *Japan*, the *Philippines*, the Spice Islands, *Borneo*, *Sumatra*, *Java*, and the rest of the Islands in the *Indian* Ocean.
- IX. The History of *Judea*, and the rest of *Palestine*, which concludes *Asia*. To which the History of *Egypt* is added.



A

GENERAL HISTORY OF THE SEVERAL NATIONS OF THE W O R L D.

A S S Y R I A N E M P I R E.



It is generally admitted, that the first *Original* Governments were patriarchal: That the *Governments.* Fathers of Families had the Dominion of their Children and of their Posterity, while they lived together, and, after the Decease of the Father, he was succeeded by the Senior of the Tribe or Family in his Authority. It is very reasonable also to suppose, that several Families might unite and make choice of a Leader for their common Defence; and to judge and determine Differences arising among them: And as Ambition, or the Lust of Power, is the predominant Passion in most Men, we have all the Reason in the World to believe, if History was silent on this Head, that some great Families did, in the early Ages, invade and prey upon their weaker Neighbours, and reduce them to a State of Dependance; and some popular Man among such Invaders and Usurpers, rendered famous by his Courage or Conduct, might, by

B

Star-

Stratagem or Force; obtain the Dominion of the People that chose him their Leader, as well as of those he conquered; assume sovereign Power, and convey it down to his Posterity.

*The first
Monarch
Nimrod,
or Belus.*

The first Instance History gives us of this Kind, was that of *Nimrod*, supposed to be the *Belus*, or *Baal*, of the Ancients, by some; while others make *Bel*, or *Baal*, the Son of *Nimrod*; but however that be, it is generally agreed that *Babylon* was the first Kingdom that was erected after the Flood; and this City the first that was built; being situate in the Plain of *Shinar*, or *Mesopotamia*, on the Banks of the River *Euphrates*, about forty Miles South-west of the present City of *Bagdat*, or *New Babylon*.

A. M.
1798.

It is computed that this Usurpation of *Nimrod*, or *Belus*, happened 352 Years after the Flood, and 1996 Years before the Birth of Christ; (2232 before Christ, according to some.)

*Nineveh
built.*

Nimrod advancing afterwards into *Affyria*, which lies North of *Babylonia*, built a City upon the River *Tigris*, which he called *Nineveh*, after his Son *Ninus*.

The Country of *Affyria* is supposed to be so named from *Affur*, the Grandson of *Noah*, who settled hereafter the Flood; and it is conjectured he was dispossessed of it by *Nimrod*.

*Ninus's
Reign.*

Ninus is by most of the profane Authors made the Founder of the *Affyrian* Empire, and the great Actions of *Nimrod* frequently applied to him; and *Ninus* himself had such a Veneration for his Father, that he required his Subjects to worship him after his Death as a God.

Ninus, however, is said by many to be the Founder of *Nineveh* himself; while others suppose he only enlarged and beautified this City: Certain it is, few Cities exceeded it in Dimensions, if they have in Beauty; for it was 18 Miles three Quarters in Length, and 11 Miles and a Quarter broad, forming an oblong Square 60 Miles in Circumference. The Walls were 100 Feet high, and broad enough for three Chariots to drive a-breast on them; strengthened with 1500 Towers, of the Height of 200 Feet each.

The Numbers in the Army of *Ninus* given us by profane Authors exceed all Belief; considering the World was then in its Infancy. *Ctesias* says, his Army consisted of 1,700,000 Foot, 2,000,000 Horse, and 16,000 armed Chariots: That he conquered *Bactria*; and advanced to the Frontiers of *India* Eastward: In which Expedition he had met with a Repulse, it is said, if the celebrated

ASSYRIAN EMPIRE.

3

celebrated *Semiramis* had not assisted him with her Councils in the Invasion of *Bactria*. She was the Wife of one of the Officers in his Army; who, finding the King entertained a Passion for *Semiramis*, and was determined to take her to his Bed, killed himself, rather than see her in the Arms of another. After which *Ninus* married her, and had a Son by her, named *Ninyas*; but the King dying soon after, left *Semiramis* sole Sovereign of his Dominions.

A. M.

1959.

Semiramis's
Reign.

It is related, indeed, of this Princess, that she importuned her Husband *Ninus* to indulge her in the Command of the Empire only five Days; and, upon his granting it, she took an Opportunity of imprisoning him, or putting him to Death, and usurped his Throne. But this is very little credited. However that be, soon after her Accession to the Throne, in order to immortalize her Name, she laid the Foundation of the magnificent City of *Babylon*; or, rather, rebuilt and enlarged the former City; in which, it is said, she employed 2,000,000 of People, summoned from the Provinces of her extensive Dominions, to erect this Town, where she afterwards resided, and made it the Capital of her Empire.

Babylon was situated in a spacious Plain: The Walls 350 Feet high, and 87 Feet thick, built in the Form of a Square, each Side 15 Miles: The Whole, 60 Miles in Circumference; built with large Bricks, cemented together with Bitumen, a glutinous Slime arising out of the Earth in that Country, which binds in building much stronger and firmer than Lime, and soon grows much harder than the Bricks or Stones themselves which it cements together. These Walls were surrounded on the Outside with a vast Ditch, full of Water, and lined with Bricks on both Sides. The Earth that was dug out of it made the Bricks wherewith the Walls were built: And therefore, from the vast Height and Breadth of the Walls, may be inferred the Greatness of the Ditch.

In every Side of this great Square were 25 Gates; that is, 100 in all, which were all made of solid Bricks. From the 25 Gates in each Side went 25 Streets, in straight Lines, 150 Feet broad. By the Streets crossing each other, the whole City was cut out into 676 Squares; in which were Fields and Gardens that might produce Provision enough to subsist the Inhabitants in a Siege. The River *Euphrates* run through the City from North

A. M. 1959. to South ; and on each Side of the River was a Quay, and a high Wall of the same Thickness as the Wall about the City : And against every Street that led to the River, were brazen Gates, open in the Day-time, but shut up every Night.

Babel
Tower.

Within the Walls of the City stood the Tower of *Babel*, built before the Confusion of Languages, and the Dispersion of the People. It was a square Fabric, half a Mile in Circumference, and as much in Height, built in the Form of a Pyramid, consisting of eight Stories ; the Ascent being by Stairs on the Outside, which turned, in a Kind of spiral Line, eight Times round the Tower, from the Bottom to the Top, and made it look like eight Towers, placed one upon another, decreasing in Breadth as they encreased in Height : And over the Whole was an Observatory for the *Babylonian* Astronomers, who exceeded all Nations in that Science anciently. But the principal Use made of this Tower was, the Worship of their Gods, particularly the Image of *Belus*, or *Baal*, the Founder of the Monarchy.

After *Semiramis* had built *Babylon*, she made a Tour through her Dominions, building and improving many Cities ; causing Aqueducts to be made, to supply them with Water ; made Roads and Highways through her Dominions, levelling Hills, and filling up Valleys, to render the Communication easy from one Province to another.

She vastly enlarged her Empire towards the East, and no less on the South-west, making a Conquest of *Ethiopia*, and other Territories in *Africa* : But, in one of her Expeditions against *India*, she was repulsed, and lost great Part of her Army ; in which Engagement she was wounded, and only saved by the Swiftnefs of her Horse.

Semiramis returning to *Babylon*, discovered a Conspiracy, formed against her by her Son, and one of the great Officers of State ; which she was so far from resenting, that she voluntarily abdicated the Throne in Favour of her Son *Ninyas*, who succeeded her ; and, retiring from the Capital City to some obscure Place, ended her Life there. She was afterwards worshipped by the *Assyrians* as a Goddess, in the Form of a Dove, having lived 62 Years, and reigned 42.

It is related by *Justin*, that her Son being a Minor, and not well qualified for a Governor, she assumed his Habit and reigned in his Name, and that falling in Love with

with her Son afterwards, she invited him to her Bed, but was killed by him; and notwithstanding these Particulars are not much credited, Historians generally agree, that she was not eminent for her Chastity.

A. M.

1959.

Ninyas, her Successor, being a Prince devoted to his Pleasures, shut himself up in his Palace among the Women, and seldom appeared to his People. For his Security, he assembled a numerous Army from the distant Provinces, and quartered them about the capital City, and to prevent Conspiracies, changed the Garrison and Officers every Year; his Successors for thirty Generations following his Example, and even exceeded him in Luxury and Indolence, of thirty eight Sovereigns of this Race, there scarce remains any thing worth relating; unless of the three first, and *Belus* the Second, who recovered *Phenicia* and *Palestine*, which had revolted in the Reign of his Predecessor.

Accession.

A. M.

2001.

Sardanapalus, the last Prince of this Race, is said to have exceeded all his Predecessors in Luxury and Effeminacy; that he never went out of his Palace, but spent his whole Time among the Women, and in their Amusements and Habit, placing great Part of his Happiness and Security in those immense Treasures, that had been heaping up for a long Course of Years by his Predecessors; not forgetful, however, that he was to die like other Men, he ordered an Inscription to be engraved on his Tomb, of the following Tenor, *That he looked upon nothing as his own, or to be of any Value, but the Pleasures he had enjoyed; the rest he left behind him.*

the last King of the Assyrian Race.

A. M.

3126.

This Prince it seems resided at *Nineveh*; when *Arbaces* Governor of *Media*, and *Belesis* Governor of *Babylonia*, and other great Officers, finding him perfectly negligent in the Affairs of Government, entered into a Conspiracy to dethrone their Emperor, and divide his Dominions among them. Having assembled a great Army therefore, they marched towards *Nineveh*: of which *Sardanapalus* receiving Advice, bravely marched out against the Rebels and gave them Battle; in which he was defeated, but made good his Retreat to *Nineveh*: He defended that City bravely for a considerable Time; but there happening a violent Inundation of the *Tigris*, which threw down great Part of the City Walls, he gave all for lost; and ordering a Funeral Pile to be erected in his Palace, he threw all his vast Treasure into it, with himself, his Women, Eunuchs, and whole Court; and setting Fire to the Pile, was burnt and consumed.

A. M. 3126. fumed with them. It is computed, that the Princes of this Race reigned 1450 Years; but this must be understood of Part of the Empire, for during that Period, there were certainly several independent Kingdoms and States within the Limits of that Country, denominated the Assyrian Empire.

Arbaces After the Death of Sardanapalus, Arbaces assumed the Government of Media and Persia.

Ninus and Belochus Ninus the younger possessed Nineveh, and the adjacent Provinces. Belochus, or Phul, reigned in Babylonia and Chaldea, and other great Officers and Governors rendered themselves independent Sovereigns in other Parts of this shattered Empire.

Phul Assur succeeded his Father Belochus in Babylon,

A. M. 3140. and is called in sacred History, Tiglath Pileser, who subdued the Kingdom of Damascus: Salmanassar his Successor took the City of Samaria, subdued the Kingdom of Israel, and carried the ten Tribes into perpetual Captivity.

3227. Senacherib, his Successor, besieged Hezekiah in Jerusalem, but his Army being destroyed by an Angel, he returned to Babylon, where he was murdered by his Sons.

3233. Asberrhaddon, a younger Son, revenged his Father's Death, and succeeded him, but was deposed by the Governor of Chaldea, one of his Subjects who usurped his Throne.

3304. Nabopolassar, King of Babylon, entered into an Alliance with Cyaxares King of Media, and with their united Forces they took and destroyed the City of Nineveh.

3339. Nabuchodonosor, the Son of Nabopolassar, in the Lifetime of his Father defeated Pharaoh Necho King of Egypt, recovered the Provinces of Syria and Palestine, which Necho had made himself Master of, subdued Egypt, took the City of Tyre, and afterwards Jerusalem; and carrying great Numbers of the Jews Captive to Babylon, with Part of the sacred Vessels of the Temple, from this Epoch, being the 4th Year of King Jechoniah, is dated the Captivity of the Jews at Babylon.

Egypt
subdued.

The Captivity
of the
Jews.

Nabopolassar dying while Nabuchodonosor was engaged in the Siege of Jerusalem, that Prince returned to Babylon, and took Possession of his Father's Throne; and having distributed the Captive Jews and Syrians, in and about the City of Babylon, he adorned the Temple with the Spoils he had taken, repaired and enlarged the old City, adding another to it, and encompassed

ASSYRIAN EMPIRE.

7

compassed the whole with three Walls; but the most surprising Additions to *Babylon*, were his Hanging Gardens, consisting of sixteen Acres of Ground, supported by Stone Pillars, on which not only Fruit-Trees, but Forest-Trees of a great Bulk were planted. A. M. 3339.

In the mean time, *Zedekiah* King of *Judea* rebelling against him, he took him Prisoner and put out his Eyes, and carried him to *Babylon*, and with him all the Remainder of the *Jews*, burning and destroying both the Temple and City of *Jerusalem*; and returning in Triumph, erected that Image mentioned in Scripture, which he commanded all his Subjects to worship, and being opposed in it by three *Jews* of Figure, *Shadrech, &c.* commanded them to be burnt, after whose miraculous Escape, he became a Worshiper of the true God. Still he appeared so excessively proud, that it turned his Brain, and he became incapable of Government for seven Years. The Princes his Relations, however, administered the Government during his Incapacity; and after seven Years, being restored to his Senses, he reigned in Peace, and with general Applause till he died, and was succeeded by *Evi-merodach*, his Son.

There is little more remarkable in the History of *Babylon*, till *Belshazar*, the last Sovereign of the *Babylonian* Empire, was defeated and killed by *Cyrus* the *Persian*; and the City of *Babylon* taken by that Prince, the Founder of the *Persian* Monarchy. 3409.

The Assyrian Monarchs.

- | | A. M. |
|--|-------|
| 1. NIMROD , called by some, <i>Saturnus Babylonius</i> . | 1798. |
| 2. <i>Belus</i> , or <i>Jupiter Babylonius</i> , the Son of <i>Nimrod</i> , whose Image was worshiped by the old Idolaters under the Name of <i>Bel</i> and <i>Baal</i> . | 1845. |
| 3. <i>Ninus</i> , the Son of <i>Belus</i> , conquered <i>Armenia</i> , <i>Syria</i> , <i>Media</i> , <i>Bactria</i> , and the <i>Persian</i> Provinces; and removed the Imperial Seat to <i>Nineveh</i> , by him much beautified and enlarged. | 1907. |
| 4. <i>Semiramis</i> , the Wife of <i>Ninus</i> , subdued the <i>Arabians</i> . | 1959. |

The Kings of Note after Semiramis, were,

- | | |
|---|-------|
| 1. <i>Ninyas</i> , or <i>Zameis</i> , her Son, who by his Deputies and Lieutenants subdued the <i>Arians</i> , <i>Bactrians</i> , and <i>Caspians</i> . | 2001: |
|---|-------|

- | | |
|---|-------|
| 2. <i>Belus</i> the Second, who recovered that Country, | 2109. |
|---|-------|

which afterwards was called *Judea*, to the *Assyrian* Empire, from which it had revolted in the Time of his Predecessor.

A. M.

2177.

3. *Belochus Priscus*, the tenth King, who by some Writers is said to be the Autho of Divination by the flying of Birds, called *Auspicium*.

2296.

4. *Manitus*, the thirteenth King, who revived again the ancient Discipline, corrupted by the Slothfulness and Effeminacy of his Predecessors, and by the Terror of his Name awed the *Egyptians*.

2446.

5. *Ascades*, the eighteenth King, more absolute in *Syria* and the Western Parts, than any of the Kings before him.

3126.

6. *Sardanapalus*, the last King of this Race, who being wondrous effeminate, and utterly unable to govern so great an Empire, gave Opportunity to *Arbaces*, his Lieutenant in *Media*, to conspire against him, by whom, associated with *Belochus* Governor of *Babylon*, he was besieged in the City of *Nineveh*, and there reduced unto such Extremities, that gathering his Treasures all together, he burnt himself and them in one Funeral Pile.

There are reckoned 38 of these *Assyrian* Monarchs, but there remains little or nothing of their Actions on Record, or the Times when they reigned.

Kings of Assyria and Chaldea of the second Race.

3146.

1. **P***HUL Belochus*, the Founder of this new Monarchy, or Race of Monarchs.

3194.

2. *Pbul Assur*, destroyed *Gallilee*, and subdued the Kingdom of *Damascus*; the same who is called *Tiglath-Pileser* in the Holy Scriptures.

3217.

3. *Salmanassur*, who destroyed *Samaria*, and ruined the Kingdom of *Israel*, and carried the ten Tribes into perpetual Captivity. This is the *Nabonassar* of the *Chronologers*.

3227.

4. *Senacherib*, whose Army was destroyed by Angels at the Siege of *Jerusalem*; and he himself murdered by his two Sons, *Adramelech* and *Sharezer*.

3233.

5. *Asarbaddon*, who revenging his Father's Death on his Brothers, was deposed by his Deputy of *Chaldea*, and the Seat-Royal transferred from *Nineveh* to *Babylon*.

3243.

6. *Merodach Baladan*, Governor of *Babylon*, succeeded his Master in the Throne; conceived by some to be the *Mardocempades* of *Ptolomy*, by others, to be also the

PERSIAN EMPIRE.

9

the same King, who by his Captain *Holofernes* oppressed *Judea*.

A. M.

7. *Ben Merodach*, the Son of *Merodach Baladan*.

3283.

8. *Nabapalassar*, who vanquished *Pharoah Necho* King of *Egypt*.

3304.

9. *Nebuchodonosar* the Great, or *Nebuchadnezzar*, by some called the *Hercules* of the East, who conquered *Egypt* in the Life of his Father; with whom he reigned for a time, and mightily enlarged the City of *Babylon*. He joined also with *Astyages* King of the *Medes*, in subverting the City of *Nineveh*; and in the eighteenth Year of his Reign destroyed *Jerusalem*, and carried the People Captive unto *Babylon*, but in the last seven Years of his Reign he was so distracted, that he lived not much unlike the Beasts of the Field; during which Time, his Son *Evilmerodach*, his Daughter *Niccoris*, with *Nigliffather* Husband, and *Laborasradach* their Son, governed his Empire as Protectors, and therefore are by some reckoned as Kings. Finally, *Nebuchadnezzar* having recovered his Senses, was again restored unto the Throne, and died when he had reigned in all forty four Years.

3339.

10. *Evilmerodach*, the Son of *Nebuchadnezzar*, slain by *Astyages* King of the *Medes*.

3383.

11. *Balthasar*, Son of *Evilmerodach*, the *Nabonidus* of *Berosus*, a Prince of a dissolute and cruel Nature, was in the latter End of his Reign attacked by *Cyaxares* the Son of *Astyages* (whom the Scriptures call *Darius Medus*) and by *Cyrus the Persian*; by whom he was slain in the seventeenth Year of his Reign, and the Empire of the *Babylonians* was transferred to the *Medes* and *Persians*.

3409.

PERSIAN EMPIRE.

CYRUS was the Son of *Cambyfes* King of *Persia*, Persian and of *Mandana* Daughter of *Astyages*, King of *Monarchy Media*. *Cyaxares* who succeeded his Father *Astyages*, erected by being threatened with an Invasion by *Neriglissor* King of *Cyrus*. *Babylon*, entered into an Alliance with *Cambyfes* King of *Persia*, and several other Powers contiguous to the *Babylonian* Empire, for their mutual Defence. *Cambyfes* thereupon sent thirty thousand Foot under the Command of his Son *Cyrus* to join the *Medes*. These were all

A. M.

3426.

A. M. all chosen Men, bred up to Arms, and devoted to their
 3426. Prince, under whom they had served a considerable
 Time, and received many Marks of his Bounty.

After three Years spent in forming Alliances, and raising Forces in *Media*, *Cyrus* advised the marching into the Enemies Country, and not to wait till they were attacked, but make *Babylonia* the Seat of War, whereby they should save their own Country from being ravaged and plundered, and distress the Enemy. This *Cyaxurus* consented to, and the rather, as it would inspire the Troops with Courage, when they observed their Leaders were so far from distrusting their Strength, as to engage in an offensive War. The Event answered their Expectations; *Cyrus* was victorious in the first Engagement with the *Babylonians*, and their King fell in the Battle; whereupon he marched up to the Walls of *Babylon*, raising Contributions in the adjacent Country, but did not think himself in a Condition to lay Siege to a City of so vast an Extent, defended by such Walls and extraordinary Works, and a Garrison of an hundred thousand Men and upwards. Both *Cyaxares* and *Cyrus*, therefore, agreed to retire into *Media* to augment their Forces and encrease their Allies, every Nation almost being ready to join them with their Troops after this unexpected Success. In the mean time *Cyaxares*, sensible of the Merit of *Cyrus*, offered him his Daughter in Marriage, promising to make him the Heir of his *Median* Dominions, which was accepted by *Cyrus*. After the Solemnity of the Marriage, and every thing prepared for the Invasion of *Babylonia*, *Cyrus* took the Field again, leaving his Father-in-Law *Cyaxares* in *Media*.

Cyrus receiving Advice, that the *Babylonians* had appointed a general Rendezvous of their Army near *Thymbra*, a City of *Lydia* in the *Lesser Asia*, determined to surprise them before they were all joined, or had made Provision for their Subsistence. He advanced therefore, with the utmost Expedition, towards the Enemy, and giving them Battle, was a second Time victorious. The next Day he besieged and took *Sardis*, took *Cræsus*, King of *Lydia*, Prisoner with all his Treasure, making himself Master of the Wealth of that opulent City; after which he gave *Cræsus* his Liberty, and restored him to his Throne, preserving the Citizens from the Plunder of his Soldiers; and upon all Occasions acted with that Humanity and Tenderness towards the Nations

Battle of
Sardis.

PERSIAN EMPIRE.

11

tions he conquered, that of Enemies they became his Friends and faithful Allies.

A. M.
3426.

It is related on the taking of *Sardis*, that *Cresus* having a Son that was born dumb, who saw a Soldier about to kill his Father, made such an Effort to speak, in order to preserve him, that his Tongue was loosed, and he cried out, SOLDIER, SPARE THE LIFE OF CRÆSUS.

Cyrus having subdued the *Lesser Asia*, *Syria*, and Part *Babylon* of *Arabia*, advanced a second Time to the Walls of *taken by Babylon*. This great Conqueror, it is observed, was mentioned in the Scriptures by his Name two hundred Years before he was born. God was pleased to declare, that he would be his Guide, would lead him by the Hand, and subdue all Nations before him.

Cyrus, however, seems to have doubted of the Success of the Enterprize, when he was fully apprized of the Height and Thickness of the Walls, and other Works that defended the Place; but at length he had recourse to a Stratagem, which opened a Way into the City, without so much as making a Breach in the Walls; and that was by cutting a great many Canals, into which he might turn the Waters of the River before they entered the City: And receiving Intelligence, that the *Babylonians* on a certain Day, were to solemnize a grand Festival, in which they usually drank very hard, he caused the Banks of the River to be cut in the Evening of that Day, and the Water of the River sunk so very low, that he marched great Detachments of his Army through the Arches on both Sides the City, about Midnight; and moving along the Bed of the River, entered the Brazen-Gates upon the Quays, which had been left open by the drunken *Babylonians*. The King *Balthazar* was surprized with his whole Court, and put to the Sword; many of the numerous Inhabitants were slaughtered. The Cruelty and Barbarity that Nation had exercised upon other People, were returned upon them in full Measure, as the Prophets had foretold.

Thus ended the second Race of the *Assyrian* or *Babylonian* Emperors, after they had reigned two hundred and ten Years, from the Beginning of the Reign of *Nebuchadonoser* the Founder of it, being fifty Years after *Jerusalem* had been destroyed by the *Babylonians*. As *Babylon* was conquered by the joint Forces of the *Medes* and *Persians*, *Cyaxares* King of *Media*, and *Cyrus* reigned jointly over that Empire for the Space of two Years. This *Cyaxares* is supposed to be the same Prince,

A. M. 3426. *Darius the Mede.* Prince, which the Scripture files *Darius the Mede* who resided at *Babylon*, and took the Administration of the Government upon him, while *Cyrus* marched at the Head of his Army into *Syria* and *Egypt*, subduing, or recovering all those Countries in *Africa*, as well as the *Lesser Asia*, which had constituted Part of the *Assyrian* Empire under its former Princes. *Cyrus* returning to *Babylon* soon after, became sole Monarch of the Empire; his Uncle *Cyaxares*, and his Father *Cambyfes*, King of *Persia* dying about two Years after the taking of *Babylon*. This is therefore by some reckoned the first Year of the Reign of *Cyrus*, tho' others call it the 27th, computing from the Time that *Cyrus* marched from *Persia* to the Relief of his Uncle *Cyaxares*. In the first Year of *Cyrus*, according to the former Calculation, expired the seventeenth Year of the *Jews* Captivity in *Babylon*, when that Prince (at the Instance of *Daniel*, then his Prime Minister, as is conjectured) published that memorable Edict, for rebuilding the City and Temple of *Jerusalem*, and re-peopling that City with the *Jews* its ancient Inhabitants; and at the same Time, restored all the Vessels of the Temple, which *Nebuchadonofor* had brought from *Jerusalem*, and placed in the Temple of *Baal* at *Babylon*; whereupon the *Jews* returned to their own Country, under the Conduct of *Zorobabel*.

The Empire of *Cyrus*, usually styled THE PERSIAN EMPIRE, was bounded by the *Euxine* and *Caspian* Seas on the North, by the River *Indus*, which separated it from *India*, on the East, by the *Arabian* and *Persian* Seas, and *Ethiopia*, on the South, and by the Desarts of *Lybia*, the *Mediterranean* and *Egean* Seas, on the West.

The principal Residence of *Cyrus* was at *Babylon*, where he usually remained seven Months every Year; three Months he resided at *Susa*, or *Shushan*, and two Months in the Heat of Summer in *Ecbatana*, whereby he had an Opportunity of enquiring into the Conduct of the respective Viceroys and Governors of those Provinces, and annually relieving such of his Subjects, as were oppressed by any of them.

Camby-
fes, his Ac-
cession,
3434- *Cyrus* having reigned seven Years sole Monarch of the *Persian* Empire, died in Peace at *Babylon*, leaving behind him two Sons, viz. *Cambyfes*, who succeeded him in the Empire, and *Tanaxares*, to whom he assigned several considerable Governments.

Cambyfes

Cambyfes about four Years after his Acceſſion invaded A. M. *Egypt*, *Amafis*, the tributary King, endeavouring to 3434- render himſelf independent of the *Persian* Crown. The firſt Place *Cambyfes* attacked, was the ſtrong Fortreſs of *Peluſium* (now *Damiata*) ſituate at the Mouth of the *Egypt*. Eaſtern Branch of the *Nile*, and as he advanced to the Affault, he drove great Numbers of Cats, Dogs, Oxen, and other *Egyptian* Deities before him; which the Superſtition of that People prohibiting them to deſtroy, the *Persians* mounted the Walls with very little Oppoſition, and ſoon became Maſters of the Place. *Amafis* was now dead, and ſucceeded by his Son *Pſamenitus*, who collecting his whole Force, gave Battle to the *Persians*; but was defeated by them, and fled to *Memphis* his Capital, where he was taken with that City, and at firſt uſed with great Humanity; but endeavouring to raiſe an Inſurrection againſt the *Persians*, afterwards was compelled, 'tis ſaid, to drink a Bowl of Bull's Blood, and died immediately. Whereupon, not only the People of *Egypt* made their Submiſſion to *Cambyfes*, but *Lybia*, *Cyrene*, and other diſtant Countries deſired his Protection. The *Ethiopia* *Ethiopians*, and that Part of *Africa* where the Temple of *Jupiter Ammon* ſtood, however, reſuſing to ſubmit to him, he invaded both at the ſame Inſtant; but the Army he ſent againſt the *Ammonians* was deſtroyed by a Tempeſt, or Whirlwind, which raiſed the Sands to that Degree, that they covered and ſuffocated all the Troops ſent on that Expedition. In the Invaſion of *Ethiopia*, *Cambyfes* ſucceeded very little better, for marching thro' a deſart Country, moſt of his Army was deſtroyed by *Thebes* *Famine*, and reduced to the hard Lot of eating one another, as 'tis ſaid: But however that be, he returned with the Remains of his Army to *Thebes* in Upper *Egypt*, where the Hiſtorian obſerves, he made War upon the Gods; for he plundered all the Temples of that grand City, and the richeſt and moſt magnificent on the Face of the Earth; nor was he content with robbing the Temples, but burnt and demolifhed thoſe beautiful Structures. Among the Spoils he carried off, was that celebrated Circle of Gold. which ſurrounded the Tomb of King *Ozymandras*, being 355 Cubits in Circumference, in which were repreſented the ſeveral Conſtellations in the Heavens.

Cambyfes returning afterwards to the capital City of *Memphis*, and finding the Citizens were making public Rejoicings, imagined it was for the ill Succeſs he had met

A. M. met with against the *Ethiopians*; whereupon he caused the Magistrates to be put to Death, though it seems, the Rejoicing was occasioned by their having found their God *Apis*, a young Bull, distinguished by some particular Marks; and when he observed the *Egyptians* still adoring the Calf, he wounded the Beast in the Thigh with his Sword, reproaching the Priests for worshipping a Calf, and ordered them to be whipped for abusing the People. The *Egyptians* relate, that *Cambyfes* run mad soon after this Insult on their God *Apis*; but Historians observe that he was mad long before, or he had never attempted the Conquest of *Ethiopia*, without making the necessary Preparations for it. His Brother *Tanaoxares*, or *Smerdis*, who had accompanied him in this War, he became so jealous of, on a foolish Dream he had, that sending him back into *Persia*, he caused him to be murdered there. He afterwards murdered his Sister *Meroe*, whom he had married, on her making some Reflections on his Cruelty, in taking away the Life of their Brother. The Emperor's Fury encreasing, he caused several of his great Officers to be buried alive, and demanding of *Prexaspes*, one of his first Ministers, what the *Persians* said of him, that Minister answered, "That they admired a great many good Qualities in him, but wished he did not love Wine so well," "That is, says *Cambyfes*, they imagine that Wine deprives me of my Senses, you shall be judge of that immediately," says the King; and having drank more than usual, he ordered the Son of *Prexaspes*, who was his Cup-bearer, to stand at the farther End of the Room, and taking up a Bow and Arrow, declared that he aimed at his Heart; and having shot him, ordered the young Lord to be opened and the Heart brought to him; which the Arrow having pierced, he shewed it to his Father, asking if he had not a steady Hand: To which the unhappy Father replied, *Apollo* himself could not have shot better.

When *Cræsus*, who was of his Council, as he had been of his Father's, represented the ill Consequences such Actions might produce, he ordered him to be put to Death; and the Persons who were commanded to see the Sentence executed, delaying it for some Time, knowing the King would repent of it the next Day (for it was in his Cups that he usually gave these barbarous Orders) he commanded them all to be executed, though he rejoiced extravagantly to find that *Cræsus* was still alive.

Cambyfes

Cambyfes in the eighth Year of his Reign, returning thro' *Syria* in his Way to *Babylon*, there received Advice that his Brother *Smerdis* had usurped his Throne. This *Smerdis* it seems was an Impostor, for the true *Smerdis*, Brother of *Cambyfes*, was dead; but resembling him in his Age and Person, his Father, one of the Magi, and Governor of *Babylon*, found no great Difficulty in imposing his Son upon the People, who were very ready to admit of any colourable Pretence, to depose the cruel *Cambyfes*. The King, however, determined to march against the *Camby-* Usurper; but as he was mounting his Horse, his Sword was accidentally drawn out of his Scabbard, and wounded him in the Thigh, of which Wound he died. The

A. M.
3434.

Egyptians observing that he received his mortal Wound in the same Place he had wounded their God *Apis*, looked upon it as a Judgment from Heaven for his Sacrilege. This *Cambyfes*, it is conjectured, was the *Abasuerus* mentioned in Scripture.

Smerdis the Usurper usually stiled the *Magian* (the *Ar-Smerdis* *taxerxes* of the Scripture) after the Death of *Cambyfes*, the Usurper quietly possessed the *Persian* Throne; the Impostor not being easily discovered, as he shut himself up from the Eyes of the People in the Royal Palace, after the *Persian* Manner. He took all proper Methods, also, to gain the Affections of the People, by lessening their Taxes, and exempting them from military Service for three Years; but his endeavouring to conceal himself in his Palace, proved the Occasion of his Ruin; for it increased the Suspicion of some great Men, that he was not the real *Smerdis*, among whom was *Ottanes* a noble *Persian*, whose Daughter *Phedyma* he had taken to his Bed. *Ottanes* directed his Daughter to see if *Smerdis* had any Ears; for *Cyrus*, the late King, had caused the Ears of the *Magian* to be cut off for some Offence he had been guilty of: *Phedyma* thereupon taking an Opportunity of examining the *Magian's* Head, when he was asleep, sent her Father Word, that he had no Ears. This Discovery *Ottanes* communicated to several other *Persian* Noblemen, who immediately entered into a Conspiracy to depose the *Magian*; and as they were some of the principal Officers of State, gained an easy Admittance into the Palace, where they fell upon the Usurper, and *Darius* one of the Conspirators killed him with his own Hand; after which he cut off the Heads of the Usurper and his Brother, and exposed them to the People; who were so enraged at the Impostor, that they fell upon the

assassinat.
ed.

A. M. the whole Order of the Magians, and massacred great
 3434. Numbers of them; and an annual Festival was ever afterwards observed, in Memory of their Deliverance from the Usurpations of the Magi.

The Nobility proceeded soon after the Death of the Usurper, to the Choice of an Emperor, and *Darius* the Son of *Hystaspes* seems to have been unanimously elected. It is said indeed to have been agreed by the Candidates, to meet on Horseback at Sun-rise in the Plains of *Baby*, and that the Person whose Horse first neighed after their Meeting should be Emperor; which was the Horse of *Darius*, his Groom having brought a Mare to the Place where the Assembly was to meet, and shewed her to the Horse the Night before; but it is more probable, that the great Share *Darius* had in dethroning the Usurper, was the true Reason of advancing him to the Throne.

Darius
Hystas-
pes.

3443.

Darius to render himself popular, married two of the Daughters of *Cyrus* the Great, viz. *Atossa* who had been the Wife, as well as Sister of *Cambyses*, and had been married also to *Smerdis* the Usurper; and *Aristona* the other Daughter of *Cyrus*, who was a Virgin when he married her. He had several other Wives by whom he left a numerous Issue.

Darius, 'tis said, first laid Taxes on his Subjects, and kept up a standing Army in Time of Peace. Before this, the State was supported by voluntary Supplies from the respective Provinces, and defended by the Militia of the Country, who were assembled whenever the Prince required them to take the Field.

He divided the Empire into twenty Provinces, comprehending all that Part of *Asia*, now denominated *Persia* and *Turky*, *Egypt*, and Part of *Nubia* in *Africa*, and Part of *Thrace*, and *Macedonia* in *Europe*. In the third Year of the Reign of *Darius*, he commanded the Buildings of the Temple of *Jerusalem* to be carried on at the Expence of the State, requiring their Priests to pray for him, and to denounce Curses against all those who should hinder the finishing of the Work. He also published that Edict against *Haman* in Favour of the *Jews*, at the Request of Queen *Esther*, for *Atossa* and *Vashti* were the same, as some conjecture, and the *Ahasuerus* of the Scriptures, the same as *Darius Hystaspes*.

Temple of
 Jerusalem
 rebuilt.

Babylon, from whence the *Persian* Court had removed to the City of *Susa*, revolted in the fifth Year of this Reign, and was besieged by *Darius* eighteen Months, with

very little Hopes of Success, when *Zopyrus*, one of *Babylon* his greatest Generals, cut off his own Ears and Nose, *besieged by* and then fled to the City, pretending that *Darius* had *Darius*. commanded him to be thus mangled; without giving him any just Offence, and offered his Service to the *Babylonians*, who readily entrusted him with the Command of their Troops in several Sallies they made; in which he acquitted himself so well, that they confided entirely in him; and he found no great Difficulty in betraying the City into the Hands of *Darius*; who was no sooner Master of the Place, than he caused the Walls to be demolished, and impaled 3000 of the Citizens, that had been most active in the Revolt. However, he was so far from desiring to depopulate the City, or extirpate the Inhabitants, that he caused 50000 Women to be brought into *Babylon* from other Provinces, to supply the Place of those Women that had been murdered by the Citizens themselves, at the Beginning of the Siege; for the Citizens had put to Death all the useless People, especially their Women and Children, that they might not contribute to eat up the Provisions they had laid up in Expectation of a long Siege.

The next Enterprize *Darius* engaged in, was the In-Scythia vasion of *Scythia*. These People having attacked the *invaded*. Frontiers of his Empire, and plundered his Subjects, some Time before, he assembled an Army of 600000 Men, it is said, with which he marched from *Susa*, through the *Lesser Asia*, and arrived at the *Bosphorus*, where he had appointed his Fleet. consisting of 600 Vessels, to meet him; and, having passed the *Bosphorus* with his Army, his Fleet entered the *Euxine Sea*, in order to attend his Motions. From the *Thracian Bosphorus* he continued his March to the *Danube*, which he passed on a Bridge of Boats, and entered the *Scythian Territories*: But that People, having sent away their Wives and Children, with their Cattle and Baggage, to the Northwards, retired before the *Persians*, till they had drawn their Enemies into a Country covered with Snow; where there being no Provisions to be met with, *Darius* lost great Part of his Army in those Desarts without fighting, and with great Difficulty returned back again to *Sardis*.

In the mean Time, *Megabyzus*, the *Persian* Governor in *Thrace*, obliged the *Macedonians* to acknowledge themselves dependent on the *Persian* Empire; but, at an Entertainment made by *Amintas*, King of *Macedon*,

Perfians
maſſacred.

for the *Persian* Lords, the *Persians* taking great Freedoms with the *Grecian* Ladies, they retired from the Aſſembly, promiſing, however, to return again in a little Time: But, inſtead of the Ladies, ſoon after entered a great Number of young Fellows in the Habit of Women, every one having a Dagger under his Cloaths; and, when the *Persians* began to repeat the Rudeneſs they had exerciſed on the real Ladies, the *Grecians* drew their Daggers, and killed every one his Man, with thoſe that attended them. The *Scythians* ſoon after returned the Viſit *Darius* had made them; and invading *Thrace*, plundered the Country as far as the *Helleſpont*.

Darius in-
vades
India.

Darius afterwards invaded *India*: But, before he entered on this Expedition, it is ſaid he built a Fleet of Ships on the River *Indus*, in order to diſcover the Country, and commanded his Admiral to fail to the Weſtward, along the Coaſt of *Persia* and *Arabia*; and that the Fleet arrived in the *Red Sea* after a Voyage of three Years: Which ſeems to be a very odd Way of diſcovering *India*, thoſe Countries lying in the oppoſite Direction.

Some eminent Hiſtorians relate, that *Darius* made an entire Conqueſt of *India*, but give no Account of one Battle, or any other Circumſtance relating to ſuch Conqueſt; which renders the general Account they give us of this Expedition very dubious.

Ionians
rebel.

Darius was ſoon after engaged in ſuppreſſing a Rebellion of the *Ionians*, who were about to ſhake off the *Persian* Yoke; and had drawn the *Athenians*, and ſeveral other *Grecian* States into the Plot; but being afterwards deſerted by the *Athenians*, and the reſt of their Allies, they were entirely ſubdued by the *Persians*; and *Hystæus* and *Ariſtagoras*, the Authors of the Revolt, put to Death: In this War the *Ionians* had beſieged *Sardis*, the Capital of the *Persian* Dominions in the *Leſſer Asia*, and burnt it down to the Ground, though they could not take the Citadel, in which *Artaphernes* the Viceroy, and Brother of *Darius*, had ſhut himſelf up.

Greece
invaded.

Darius reſenting the Injury the *Athenians* had done him in joining his Enemies the *Ionians*, and burning the capital City of *Sardis*, determined to invade *Greece* by Sea and Land, giving the Command of his Army to *Mardonius*, a young Lord who had married his Daughter, but of very little Experience. *Mardonius* having paſſed the *Helleſpont* with his Army, advanced through *Thrace* and *Macedon*, the Country making their Submiſſion, without offering to oppoſe him: But his Fleet meeting

meeting with a Storm in the *Egean Sea*, he lost 300 of his Ships, and 20000 Men. The Army also was surprised by the *Tbracians*, and so distressed, that it was with Difficulty *Mardonius* made his Retreat over the *Hellepont* into *Asia*. The King thereupon recalled *Mardonius*, and constituted *Datis* the *Mede*, and *Artaphernes*, the Son of his Brother *Artaphernes*, Noblemen of more Experience, Generals in the *Grecian War*, which he was determined to carry on with all his Forces by Sea and Land. However, before his Army took the Field, he sent his Heralds to the several Cities and Republics of *Greece*, to demand Earth and Water, as a Mark of their Submission to his Government; with which some of the *Grecians* complied: But the two principal Cities, *Athens* and *Lacedemon*, threw the Heralds into miry Ditches, and suffocated them, telling them, If they wanted Earth and Water, they should have enough of them. The *Persian* Army thereupon invaded *Greece*, and utterly destroyed the City of *Eretria* in *Eubœa*; burning all the Houses and Temples in the Place, after they had plundered it, and sent their Prisoners into *Persia*. The *Persians* also made themselves Masters of all the Islands of the *Archipelago*, or *Egean Sea*; but still the Cities of *Athens* and *Sparta* despised their Power, and prepared for a vigorous Defence: And the *Persians* bending their March towards *Athens*, they sent to the *Lacedemonians* to join them; and, in the mean Time, the *Athenians*, whose Forces did not amount to 10000 Men, made choice of a Camp near *Marathon*, lying between their City and the Enemy's Army, where they could not easily be forced. Great Encomiums are made upon *Miltiades*, the General who directed the Army to this advantageous Situation, having his Flanks and Rear so covered, that the Enemy could not surround him, or make a more extensive Front than the *Grecian* Army did. Thus prepared, *Miltiades* waited for the Enemy, who advanced so fast, that the *Lacedemonians* had not Time to join the *Athenian* Army.

The *Persian* Generals were sensible of the Strength *Victory* of the *Grecian* Camp, but, relying on the Superiority *Martians* were upon the March to join the *Athenians*, they thought fit to give them battle; in which they were not only repulsed, but entirely defeated; insomuch, that they fled towards their Fleet. Many Thousands of them fell by the Sword, and more perished in the Sea, endeavouring to get on board their Ships. The Day after the

the Battle the *Lacedemonians* arrived, and congratulated the *Athenians* on the Victory; but the *Persians* being fled to *Asia*, they returned to *Sparta*.

A Monument was erected on the Field of Battle, in Honour of *Miltiades*. But the *Athenians* soon forgot the eminent Services he had done the Public: For *Miltiades* being sent to reduce the Islands in the *Egean Sea*, which had submitted to *Darius*, and meeting with a Repulse at the Island of *Paros*, they condemned him to die; and, though they changed the Sentence to a Fine, he died in Prison of the Wounds he had received at *Paros*, not being able to pay the Fine. Nor would they suffer his Body to be buried till his Son had raised Money among his Friends to satisfy the Penalty in which his Father was condemned.

Darius made great Preparations for invading *Greece* in Person, and reducing *Egypt*, which revolted about the same Time, in which he spent near three Years, but died before his Armies took the Field, having reigned 36 Years. He left several Sons, of whom *Artabazanes* was the Eldest, by his first Wife, the Daughter of *Gobryas*, born before he came to the Crown, and *Xerxes*, the Eldest by *Attoffa*, the Daughter of *Cyrus*, born after his Accession. *Xerxes* succeeded him by the Appointment of their Father, as some relate: Whereas others affirm, that the two Brothers referred the Case to an Umpire after his Death, who gave it in Favour of *Xerxes*, and that *Artabazanes* acquiesced in the Decision, served in the Wars under his Brother afterwards, and lost his Life in the Battle of *Salamis*.

Xerxes's
Accession.
A. M.
3479.

Xerxes was no sooner settled in his Throne, than he marched into *Egypt*, at the Head of a powerful Army, and compelled that People to submit to his Dominion again; and having constituted his Brother *Artemenes* his Viceroy, returned to *Susa*. He confirmed all the Grants made to the *Jews* by *Darius* his Father, and particularly the Tribute of *Samaria*, which was given them to provide Sacrifices for the Temple.

Three Years were taken up in making Preparations for the Invasion of *Greece*, and forming Alliances. Among others, a Treaty was concluded with the *Cartaginians*, who agreed to attack the *Grecian Colonies* in *Sicily* and *Italy*: And to that End, *Anilcar* their General assembled an Army of 300000 Men in *Africa* and *Spain*; while *Xerxes* marched to *Sardis*, the general Rendezvous of his Army; which amounted, according to

to the lowest Computation, to three Millions of Men ; for in these Times entire Nations, at least all that were able to bear Arms, took the Field with their Prince.

The *Persian* Army having quartered in and about *Sardis* during the Winter, began their March next Spring towards the *Hellepont* ; over which *Xerxes* having thrown a Bridge of Boats, a Storm arose, which immediately demolished it, at which, 'tis said, the Emperor was so enraged, that he ordered Chains and Fetters to be thrown into that Sea, commanding his Soldiers to lash the *Hellepont* into better Manners. These, and a Multitude of other extravagant Orders, as his threatening to punish Mount *Athos* and the like, can scarce be credited of a Prince, who upon other Occasions acted with great Prudence and Conduct ; but, however that be, he ordered another Bridge to be laid over much stronger than the former, over which he passed his numerous *He passes* Forces into Europe ; which when he viewed, it is said, *the Helle-* he wept, to think, that in a few Years so many Men *spont.* must of Necessity be in their Graves ; but did not reflect, it is observed, that it was he himself was leading them to Destruction, to satisfy his Vanity and Ambition, and that many of them might have lived much longer, if he could have been content to have enjoyed the extensive Dominions he already possessed in Peace ; and, however angry this Prince is said to have been with the *Hellepont*, he poured into it several Libations with the golden Cups he used at this Ceremony ; and turning his Face towards the Sun, the great Object of the *Persians* Adoration, he implored the Protection and Assistance of that God, until he should have made a Conquest of all *Europe*.

The *Athenians* and *Lacedemonians* being well apprised of the intended Invasion, sent Ambassadors to all their Allies, for a Reinforcement of Troops ; but such was the Terror, that vast Army of their Enemies had occasioned, that very few *Grecian* Cities durst declare against them. The *Athenians* and *Lacedemonians* determined, however, to make the best Defence they could. The *Thessalians*, who lay most exposed to the Enemy, proposed, that the *Grecian* Army should encamp on their Frontiers, intimating, if this was not complied with, they should be obliged to submit to the *Persians*. Whereupon, it was resolved, that ten thousand Men should guard the Passes, which separated *Macedonia* from *Thessaly*, between the Mountains *Olympus* and *Ossa* ; but

the *Macedonians* observing, that if they waited for the *Persians* in that Place, they should certainly be overpowered by Numbers; it was agreed to retire to *Thermopoli*, whereupon the *Thessalians* finding themselves abandoned, submitted to *Xerxes*.

*Battle of
Thermo-
poly.*

The Strait of *Thermopoli*, which lyes between *Thes-saly* and *Phocis*, is not more than twenty five Foot broad; and this was esteemed the only Way the *Persians* could enter *Achaia* by Land; here therefore the *Lacedemonians*, commanded by *Leonidas*, one of the two Kings of *Sparta*, chose to wait the Motions of the Enemy with only four thousand Men; hither the *Persians* advanced, and before *Xerxes* thought fit to attack them, he offered *Leonidas* to make him Sovereign of all *Greece*, if he would submit; which the *Spartan* bravely rejected: Whereupon the *Persians* attacked them with all the Fury imaginable, repeating their Assaults several Times; in which they lost twenty thousand Men, and *Xerxes* was upon the Point of despairing to force his Way, when a Native of the Country came to him, and discovered a secret Passage up the Mountain, which commanded the Strait; whereupon a Detachment was immediately sent thither, which marching all Night, possessed themselves of the Mountain. The *Spartans* seeing the *Persians* above them, found it would be impossible to defend their Post much longer; *Leonidas* therefore commanding the rest of the Troops to retire, remained in the Pass with only three hundred of his Men, determined to die in the Place, but to sell their Lives as dear as possible: *Leonidas*, it is said, invited his Men to dine before they were attacked, but told them at the same time, they must expect to sup with *Pluto*; at which they set up a general Shout of Joy, that made the Mountains ring; soon after the Attack began *Leonidas* was killed, and, after a most obstinate Defence, all his Men, one only escaping to *Sparta*, who was condemned for Cowardice.

*Victory at
Sea by
Themisto-
cles.*

The same Day the Battle was fought at *Thermopoli*, the *Grecians* obtained a Victory over the *Persians* at Sea, though the Fleet of *Xerxes* amounted to a thousand Sail and upwards, and that of the *Grecians* not to four hundred; for which Success, the *Grecians* were indebted to the stormy Weather, as well as to their own superiour Courage and Conduct; for between two and three hundred of the *Persian* Fleet were cast away, and the *Grecians* falling upon them before they were joined again, obtained an easy Victory near *Artemisa*.

This

This Defeat, however, did not hinder *Xerxes* from advancing towards *Athens*, whereupon the *Peloponnesians* cast up Trenches, and fortified the *Isthmus* of *Corinth*, believing that there they should be able to make a Stand and defend that Peninsula against the whole Power of *Persia*. But the *Athenians*, who lay without the Peninsula, despairing to defend their City, abandoned it, and went on board their Fleet, sending their Wives and Children into the *Peloponnesus*, where they were received and provided for by their Allies, while the *Athenian* Fleet, under the Command of *Themistocles*, sailed to *Salamis*.

Xerxes in the mean time dividing his Army, commanded one Part of it to march towards *Delphos*, where they plundered the Temple of an immense Treasure; *Delphos*, with the other Part of his Army he marched to *Athens*, and burns *Athens*, which he found abandoned by the Inhabitants, and having plundered the Town of the fine Paintings and Statues he found there, he sent them to *Persia*, and set fire to the City.

Soon after the *Persian* Fleet sailed to *Salamis* in search of the *Grecians*, whom they found ready to receive them; and *Xerxes* himself caused his Throne to be placed on an Eminence by the Sea-side, in order to see the Battle. He did not think fit to venture himself on board his Fleet, though he suffered his Queen *Artimisa* to command a Squadron of his Ships; and she behaved with abundance of Gallantry. The *Persian* Fleet, however, was totally defeated, and the Queen with Difficulty made her Escape: In this Sea Fight the *Athenian* Fleet was commanded by *Themistocles*, and that of the *Lacedemonians* by *Eurybiades*.

Xerxes was so dispirited at the Loss of this Battle, that he determined immediately to return into *Asia*; which he did with great Precipitation, on receiving Advice, that the *Grecians* intended to break down the Bridge he had laid over the *Hellepont*: He hastened his March therefore, and finding the Bridge broken by a Storm, embarked in a small Boat, and returned to *Sardis*.

The *Grecians*, it seems, had only given out, that they would break down the Bridge, in order to hasten his Retreat; they would rather have made him a new Bridge, than have endeavoured to prevent his returning into *Asia*; nor did *Xerxes* yet think his Affairs so desperate, as entirely to abandon his Design of subduing *Greece*. He left *Mardonius* therefore with three hun-

Battle of dred thousand Men in *Europe*, to continue the War,
Plataea, who came to an Engagement with the *Grecians* the fol-
Aristides, lowing Year, near *Plataea*, where the *Persians* were en-
and Pau- tirely defeated; in which Engagement *Aristides* was Ge-
sanias neral of the *Athenians*, and *Pausanias* of the *Lacedemo-*
Generals. *nians*. *Mardonius*, the *Persian* General was killed in the
 Field of Battle.

The same Day the *Greeks* obtained another Victory over the *Persian* Fleet near the Coast of *Asia*. These two Defeats so alarmed *Xerxes*, who was still at *Sardis*, that he retired as precipitately from thence, 'as he had done from *Europe*; first commanding that all the Temples belonging to the *Grecian* Cities in *Asia* should be burnt and demolished; not one of which was spared, unless the Temple of *Diana* at *Ephesus*.

While *Xerxes* resided at *Sardis*, he entertained a Passion for the Wife of his Brother *Masistus*, and the resisting his Sollicitations, he made his Addresses to her Daughter *Artainta*, who made no Scruple to admit his Embraces; in the mean time, *Amestris* the Wife of *Xerxes* had presented him with a Robe made with her own Hands, which *Xerxes* putting on at one of his Visits he made to *Artainta*, she begged it of him; and putting on the Robe, wore it publicly; at which *Amestris* was so enraged, that she vowed to be revenged on the Mother, whom she imagined to be the Occasion of this Insult; and waited for the Solemnization of a certain public Festival, when the King, according to Custom, grants whatever his Queen demands. She desired, that the Wife of *Masistus* might be delivered into her Hands; to which the King consented with great Reluctance: Whereupon *Amestris* caused the Breasts, Tongue, Nose, Lips, and Ears of the unfortunate Lady to be cut off, and thrown to the Dogs before her Face, and then sent her home to her Husband's House in this mangled Condition; which so enraged *Masistus*, that he immediately took Horse for the Province of *Bactria*, of which he was Governor, vowing to make an Insurrection, and revenge the barbarous Outrage on his Brother; but *Xerxes* sent a Party of Horse after him, which overtook *Masistus* on the Road, and cut him to pieces.

Xerxes
assassinat-
ed.

Xerxes having met with such repeated Defeats in the *Grecian* War, determined to concern himself no more in foreign Wars, or even in any Affairs of State, but abandoned himself entirely to his Pleasures; which *Artabanus* the Captain of his Guards observing, resolved to make

make an Attempt upon his Throne; and engaging *Mithridates*, one of the Eunuchs, in the Conspiracy, they murdered him in his Bed when he was asleep; after which they went to *Artaxerxes* the third Son of *Xerxes*, and acquainted him, that *Darius* his eldest Brother had murdered their Father, and designed to assassinate him; and that there was no way to prevent his own Ruin, but by being beforehand with *Darius*, and taking him off immediately; which the young Prince consenting to, they went immediately with a Guard to the Apartment of *Darius*, and murdered him; and then *Artabanus* proceeded to proclaim *Artaxerxes* King; *Hystaspes* his elder Brother being absent at his Government of *Bactria*: But *Artaxerxes* being informed, that it was *Artabanus* that had murdered his Father, and that he was engaged in a Conspiracy to usurp the Throne himself, caused him to be put to Death before he could effect his traiterous Design.

This *Artaxerxes* is called by the Grecian Historians, *Artaxer-Longimanus*. It was some time before he could establish himself in his Throne; for the seven Sons of *Artabanus*, who possessed the principal Posts in the Government, had recourse to Arms immediately, to revenge their Father's Death; and were with Difficulty defeated. His elder Brother *Hystaspes*, also disputed the Empire with him, and gained a Victory over the Forces sent against him; but in a second Battle between the two Brothers, *Artaxerxes* was victorious, and triumphed over his Competitor. A. M. 3500.

It was either in this, or the former Reign, that *Themistocles* the Athenian fled to the Court of *Persia*; where he was exceedingly caressed, being esteemed one of the greatest Men that *Greece* had bred. *Cimon*, the Son of *Cimon's Miltiades*, succeeded *Themistocles* in his Post of General of the Athenians; who assembling a Fleet, took the City of *Ejon*, on the Banks of the River *Strymon*, the City *Amphipolis*, *Byzantium*, and several more in *Thrace*, from the *Persians*. *Cimon* then invaded the *Lesser Asia*, recovered most of the Grecian Cities there, and restored them to their Liberties; He afterwards obtained a signal Victory over the *Persian* Fleet, and defeated an Army of three hundred thousand *Persians* at Land the same Day; the Enemy being vastly superiour to him, at least twenty to one. The Plunder of the *Persian* Army furnished the *Grecians* with a prodigious Treasure, with which *Cimon* returned in Triumph to *Athens*, laying out what

what fell to his Share, either in public Works, or in Acts of Charity and Beneficence; which encreased his Reputation, as much as the Victories he had gained.

Artaxerxes finding the *Grecians* gain Ground continually in *Asia*, determined to make *Themistocles* General of his Armies on that Side, as the only Person capable of making head against *Cimon*; but tis said, *Themistocles* chose to dispatch himself by a Dose of Poison, rather than engage in a War against his Country, tho' he had been banished from it.

Artaxerxes recovers *Egypt*;

In the mean Time the *Egyptians* revolted, and chose *Inarus* the Prince of *Lybia* their King; with whom the *Athenians* entered into an Alliance against the *Persians*, and sent a Fleet of two hundred Sail to their Assistance, which united with the *Egyptian* Navy, almost ruined that of the *Persians*; and at Land they met with equal Success, defeating an Army of three hundred thousand *Persians*, commanded by *Achæmenes* the King's Brother: The *Persians*, however, still remained in Possession of the capital City of *Memphis*; and *Artaxerxes* sending another Army into *Egypt* the next Year, relieved that City, gained a decisive Victory over the *Egyptians* and their Confederates, and reduced the whole Kingdom of *Egypt* under his Power again, making *Inarus* the Usurper a Prisoner. This War lasted six Years, and was the Occasion of another in *Syria*; for *Artaxerxes* having put *Inarus* to Death, contrary to the Articles of Capitulation he had made with *Megabysus* the *Persian* General, *Megabysus* became a Malcontent, retired to his Government of *Syria*, and raised a Rebellion there, defeating the Forces sent against him; so that *Artaxerxes* found it necessary to come to an Agreement with him, and restore him to all his Posts in the Government.

builds the Walls of Jerusalem.

It was this *Artaxerxes*, that gave the *Jews* Liberty to rebuild the Walls of *Jerusalem*, and assisted in the erecting them; and from the Date of the Decree for this end, in the twentieth Year of his Reign, the Seventy Weeks mentioned by the Prophet *Daniel* are said to begin; after which the *Messiah* was to appear upon Earth, and be put to Death.

Cimon banished and recalled, gains several Victories.

Cimon the *Athenian* General had been banished his Country, on a Suspicion of his being corrupted by the *Persian* Court; but being afterwards recalled, he soon shewed that he was far from having any Favour for the *Persians*, for he attacked and defeated the *Persian* Fleet, and afterwards obtained another signal Victory over

over the *Persians* in *Asia*, compelling them to accept of Peace on the following Terms, viz. That all the *Grecian* Cities in *Asia* should have their Liberties, and be governed by their own Laws; and that the *Persian* Ships should not enter the *Grecian* Seas. This Treaty put an end to a War between the *Persians* and *Grecians*, which had continued with some short Intervals for fifty Years.

Artaxerxes died in the forty ninth Year of his Reign, *Artaxer-* and was succeeded by *Xerxes* II. his only Son by his xes's Wife, but he had several other Sons by his Concubines, *Death.* particularly *Sogdianus*, *Ochus*, and *Arsites*.

Sogdianus entering into a Conspiracy with *Pharmacias*, *Xerxes's* one of the chief Eunuchs, surprized *Xerxes* II. in his II. *short* Chamber, where he was fallen asleep after hard drinking, *Reign.* and murdered him, forty five Days after his Accession; and *Sogdianus* immediately after usurped the Throne. *Sogdia-* His Brother *Ochus* thereupon raised an Army in the nus. Province of *Hyrkania*, of which he was Governor; declaring, that he would revenge his Brother's Death; which brought over great Numbers of the Nobility to his Party, who agreed to put the *Tiara* on the Head of *Ochus*, and proclaim him King; and *Sogdianus* being thereupon abandoned, meanly surrendered himself to his Brother, who put him to a cruel Death, after he had enjoyed the Name of King little more than six Months.

Ochus being now upon the Throne, changed his *Darius.* Name to *Darius*, to which Historians frequently add the A. M. Term, *Bastard.*

3544-

Arsites, another of his Brothers, disputed the Title to the Crown with him some Time, and obtained two Victories; but the *Greeks* in his Pay being corrupted by large Presents, he was at length forced to submit; and surrendering himself to his Brother, he put him to Death. This War was no sooner ended, but *Pisuthnes*, Governor of *Lydia*, endeavoured to make himself King of that Province, and to that End entertained a great Number of *Grecian* Forces in his Service; but *Tisaphernes*, who was constituted General of the *Persians*, sent to suppress this Insurrection, by large Bribes and Presents, prevailed on the *Grecian* Officers to desert *Pisuthnes*; who thereupon surrendered himself, and was put to Death as a Traytor, as his Son also was, who continued the War some Time longer.

Darius, like other Eastern Princes, resigning the Administration to some of his Eunuchs. *Artaxares*, the most ambitious of them, had the Assurance to conspire the de-throning

throning his Master, and usurping the Crown : But the Plot being discovered, he received the Reward of his Treason, being put to a most cruel Death.

Egypt re- The Revolt of the *Egyptians* happened about the
volts ; same Time. They advanced *Amyrtæus* to the Throne
but is re- of that Kingdom, which he possessed for six Years ; but
covered. *Darius* at length reduced *Egypt*, as well as *Media*,
which endeavoured also to render itself independent of
Perſia. *Darius* died, after a troublesome Reign of 19
Darius Years, having left the Crown to *Arſaces*, his eldest
dies. Son by Queen *Paryſatis* : To *Cyrus*, his younger Son,
he gave only the *Leſſer Aſia*, of which he was Viceroy
before.

When *Arſaces* had aſcended the Throne, he took the
Arta- Name of *Artaxerxes* ; and was called by the *Greeks*
xerxes *Mnemon* ; *MNEMON*, from the Strength of his Memory. His
Mnemon younger Brother *Cyrus*, who was made to expect the
Acceſſion. Crown by his Mother *Paryſatis*, becauſe he was born
A. M. after his Father aſcended the Throne, was ſo enraged
3563. at his Brother's Advancement, that he endeavoured to
aſſaſſinate him in the Temple, at the Time of his Coro-
nation ; for which he had infallibly been put to Death,
had not their Mother *Paryſatis* interpoſed and ſaved
him ; and he afterwards retired to his Province of *Leſſer*
Aſia, where he ſtill plotted to dethrone his Brother,
taking a Body of *Greeks* into his Service for that End,
commanded by *Clearchus* the *Lacedæmonian*.

Here Hiſtorians give a terrible Relation of the Effects
of Female Vengeance in the Royal Family. *Arta-*
xerxes, then called *Arſaces*, had, in the Life-time of his
Father *Darius*, married the beautiful *Statira*, Daughter
of *Hydarnes*, a *Perſian* Lord ; *Teretuchmes*, *Statira*'s
Brother, married *Hameſtris*, the Siſter of *Arſaces*, about
the ſame Time ; and entertaining a criminal Paſſion for
Roxana, one of his own Siſters, he conſpired the Death
of *Hameſtris* his Wife, that he might be at Liberty to
enjoy his Siſter ; which *Darius* being acquainted with,
employed *Udiaſtes*, a Friend of *Teretuchmes*, to aſſaſſi-
nate him privately ; which *Udiaſtes* executed, and was
rewarded for it by the King. *Paryſatis*, the Wife of
Darius, being exaſperated at the Injury done, or in-
tended to be done, againſt her Daughter *Hameſtris*,
was reſolved to be revenged on the whole Family of
Hydarnes ; and getting the beautiful *Roxana* into her
Power, cauſed her to be ſawn aſunder, and all the reſt
of

of her Relations to be put to Death, except *Statira*, the Wife of her Son *Arfaces* (afterwards *Artaxerxes*.)

Statira no sooner saw her Husband upon the Throne, but she prevailed with him to deliver *Udiastes* into her Hands, who had murdered her Brother *Teretuchmes* by the Order of the late King *Darius*: She caused this unhappy Man to be tortured in the most exquisite Manner till he died: And *Parysatis*, on the other Hand, caused the Son of *Teretuchmes* to be poisoned, for the Offence his Father had committed, or intended to commit, against her Daughter.

Cyrus, who was now 23 Years of Age, having at *Cyrus's* assembled an Army of 13,000 *Greeks*, and 100,000 *Asiaticks*, began his March towards the East, pretending he had no other View than to suppress some Insurrections ^{towards} *Babylon*, in the distant Provinces; apprehending, that his *Grecian* Forces would have deserted him if he had declared immediately against his Brother, King *Artaxerxes*, and for that Reason had communicated his Design only to *Clearchus* their Commander. The *Lacedemonian* Fleet, also, which he had taken into his Service, were kept ignorant of his grand Design. However, the Matter at length took Air, and the *Grecian* Troops refused to continue their March, until *Cyrus* promised to advance their Pay. *Xenophon* relates, that before the Army left *Sardis*, his Friend *Proxenes* presented him to *Cyrus*, who received him graciously, and preferred him to a considerable Post in the *Grecian* Corps. *Artaxerxes* receiving Expresses every Day of the Motions of the Army under *Cyrus*, assembled his Forces from all Parts of his Dominions, amounting to near 1,000,000 of Men; and, meeting the Enemy at *Cunaxa*, about 70 Miles from *Babylon*, a Battle ensued; wherein the *Greeks*, on their Part, were victorious; but *Cyrus* being killed, the *Asiatics* thought fit to retire to the Camp they possessed the Day before: And the King, thereupon looking upon himself to be victorious, sent Heralds to the *Grecian* Part of the Army, who remained upon the Field of Battle, to surrender their Arms; which they were so far from listening to, that they sent to *Ariæus*, who commanded the *Asiatics* in the Service of *Cyrus*, to let him know that they would advance him to the Throne of *Persia*; which *Ariæus* apprehending to be impracticable, let the *Greeks* know that he intended to return to *Ionia*, and should begin his March the next Day, desiring they would join him that Night, which they did; and

and *Ariæus* agreed to conduct them back to their own Country. The united Armies thereupon began their March, but were overtaken in a few Days by some Forces *Artaxerxes* had sent after them, commanded by *Tissaphernes*; who pretended he was come in a friendly Manner to conduct them to some Villages, where they would meet with Plenty of Provisions; and attended them thither accordingly. Here they remained three Days; and an Agreement was made, and sworn to, both by the *Persian* and *Grecian* Generals, importing, that the *Grecians* should be conducted to their Country, and be supplied with Provisions by the Way; and that the *Greeks* should not commit any Disorders or Outrages in their March. After this Agreement, *Tissaphernes* returned to *Artaxerxes* his Master, promising to be with them again in a little Time; but it was twenty Days before *Tissaphernes* came back, and then brought a powerful Army with him: The *Greeks* observed also, that great Application had been made to *Ariæus* to desert them, and that he seemed very cool at the Conferences they had with him; however, they all continued their March; and *Tissaphernes* expressing a great Esteem and Friendship for the *Grecian* Generals, invited them to an Entertainment in his Pavilion; to which *Clearchus*, *Menon*, *Proxenes*, *Agias*, *Socrates*, and twenty Captains went, where they were all seized, and put to the Sword: Which their Army understanding, stood upon their Defence, and proceeded to the Choice of other Generals; viz. *Timasion*, *Xanthicles*, *Cleanor*, *Philestias*, and *Xenophon*, and began their March towards *Greece* the same Night. The *Persian* Army attended their Motions, and harrassed them perpetually; and, having taken the usual Passes, they were obliged to climb several Mountains in their Way, which made the March exceeding difficult: However, the *Persians* were never able to break them; but they recovered their own Country with less Loss than could have been expected. The Conduct and Bravery of *Xenophon*, and the rest of the *Grecian* Generals who commanded this Corps in their Retreat, has been universally applauded, and shall be further enlarged upon in the History of *Greece*. The Substance of the Relation *Xenophon* has left us of this famous Retreat, is generally allowed to be true; but the Character he gives us of *Cyrus*, seems to be a Description of what a great Prince ought to be, rather than what *Cyrus* really was.

and Xenophon's
Retreat.

To

To return to the Court of *Persia*. *Artaxerxes*, who claimed the Honour of killing *Cyrus* with his own Hand, would suffer none to share it with him: And when two of his Soldiers were so weak as to boast they had contributed to the Death of that Prince, he delivered them up to his Mother *Parysatis*, who determining to be revenged on all that had, or pretended to have had, a Hand in the Death of her beloved Son *Cyrus*, caused them to be put to the Torture till they expired. Her next Interest was upon Queen *Statira*, who had a greater Interest in her Son, she found, than herself: Pretending, therefore, to be perfectly reconciled to that Princess, they frequently eat together; but were still so cautious on both Sides, that they always eat of the same Dishes; notwithstanding which, *Parysatis* found Means to poison *Statira* at an Entertainment, by dividing a Bird in two Parts by a Knife that was poisoned on one Side, as it is said; giving one Half to *Statira*, while she eat the other herself. Queen *Statira* was seized with Convulsions at Dinner, and died in extreme Torment; and *Parysatis* being discovered to be the Author of this Tragedy, the King confined her in the City of *Babylon*, declaring he would never see her more; but was, however, afterwards reconciled. In the mean Time, the *Wars between the Ionians*, apprehending the Resentment of the Court of *Persia* for having assisted *Cyrus* in his Attempts upon *Persians* that Crown, applied themselves to the *Lacedemonians*, and *Greeks*, then the greatest Power in *Greece*, for their Protection; who sent over *Dercyllidas*, with some Forces, to their Assistance; and these joining with the *Greeks* who returned with *Xenophon*, defended the *Ionians* against the Attacks of the *Persian* Viceroy, *Tissaphernes* and *Pharnabazus*, who commanded distinct Provinces in the *Lesser Asia*.

Agefilas, one of the Kings of *Sparta*, succeeded *Agefilas* in the Command of the *Grecian* Forces in *Asia*; and having defeated *Tissaphernes* in several Engagements, and plundered the Provinces under his Command, the *Persian* Court was so enraged at his ill Conduct, or rather his Want of Success, that the King ordered him to be assassinated, and his Head sent to him.

Agefilas was no less successful against *Pharnabazus* in *Grecian Phrygia*. He afterwards invaded the more distant Provinces, and was preparing to march to the Capital of the *Persian* Empire; when *Artaxerxes*, observing that his Forces were not able alone to defend his Territories

territories

ritories against the *Lacedemonians*, sent large Sums over to *Thebes*, and other *Grecian* Cities, to make a Diversion in his Favour; which they did, by attacking *Sparta*: Whereupon *Agessilaus* was recalled from *Asia* to defend his own Country; which Orders he obeyed; but declared, upon receiving them, that he was driven out of *Asia* by 30,000 Archers; meaning a *Persian* Coin, which had the Figure of an Archer stamped on one Side of it.

Antalcides succeeded *Agessilaus* in *Asia*, where he made an ignominious Peace with *Tiribazus*, the *Persian* Viceroy, yielding up all the *Grecian* Cities on that Side to *Artaxerxes*; stipulating, however, that they should be governed by their own Laws.

Cyprus

invaded by
the Per-
sians.

The *Greeks* in *Asia* being in a Manner subdued, *Artaxerxes* proceeded to invade the Island of *Cyprus*, of which *Evagoras* was King. This Prince defended himself with great Bravery; but the *Persians* were so much superior to him by Sea and Land, that they reduced the whole Island, except his capital City of *Salamis*; which was upon the Point of being taken, when a Misunderstanding happening between *Orontes*, who commanded the Land Forces, and *Tiribazus*, Admiral of the *Persian* Fleet, *Orontes* entered into a Treaty with *Evagoras*; wherein he consented that *Evagoras* should remain King of *Salamis*, and the Territory about it, and that the rest of the Island should be yielded to the *Persian* Monarch.

Artaxerxes was not so successful in an Expedition against the *Cadusians*, who possessed that Country which lies North of *Media*, between the *Euxine* and *Caspian* Seas, now the Seat of the *Dagestan Tartars*. In these barren, inaccessible Mountains, he lost great Part of his Army without fighting, and was obliged to retire with Disgrace.

Egypt re-
volts
again.

Egypt revolting about the same Time, and advancing *Achoris* to the Throne, *Pharnabazus* was sent with an Army of 200,000 Men to reduce that Province, being joined by 20,000 *Greeks*, whom the *Persians* had taken into their Pay: But a Misunderstanding happening between the *Persian* and *Grecian* Generals, the Enterprize miscarried, and the *Egyptians* maintained their Independency. And now *Artaxerxes* being grown old, and incapable of Business, his Satraps, or Viceroys, of the distant Provinces, so oppressed the People, that they broke out into Rebellions, which were with Difficulty suppressed.

**THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY**

**ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.**



pressed. The Ambition of *Artaxerxes's* Sons, of whom he had three by Queen *Atossa*, and 150 by his concubines, gave him great Uneasiness also. His legitimate Sons were *Darius*, *Ariaspes*, and *Ochus*; and the King having declared *Darius* his eldest Son his Successor, that Prince had not the Patience to wait for his Father's Death, but entered into a Conspiracy to dethrone him, having engaged fifty of the King's Sons, and many more of the Nobility, in the Plot; but the Conspiracy being discovered, they received the Reward of their Treason, being most of them executed. After the Death of *Darius*, three more of his Sons became Competitors for the Crown, viz. *Ochus*, *Ariaspes*, and *Arsames*. *Ochus* found Means to dispatch his two Rivals; and at length succeeded his Father, who sunk under the Weight of his misfortunes, being worn out with the Distractions of his Family, and the frequent Revolts of his Subjects in the latter Part of his Reign.

Ochus concealed his Father's Death, and administered the Government in his Name for some Months; during which Time he made a Decree, in the Name of his Father, for declaring himself King. When he found he was sufficiently established, he took upon him the Government in his own Name; and, to secure himself against Pretenders to the Throne, he put to Death all the Princes and Princesses of the Royal Family; caused his Sister *Ocha*, whose Daughter he had married, to be buried alive; shut up his Uncle, with 100 of his Sons and Grandsons, in a Court of the Palace, and ordered them all to be shot to Death with Arrows. He exercised no less Cruelty on the Nobility from whom he apprehended any Danger; which occasioned Insurrections in several Provinces. He had the good Fortune, however, to suppress them. He assembled an Army of 300,000 Men, and upwards, and took several thousand *Grecians* into his Pay, and marched in Person into *Phenicia*, which had revolted; and invaded the Island of *Cyprus* soon after. *Sidon*, the capital City, was betrayed to him by *Tennes* their King, whom he had corrupted; whereupon the People, *Ochus*, to the Number of 40,000, besides Women and Children, set fire to the Town, and were consumed in the Flames, with all their Wealth: And so just was *Ochus*; notwithstanding the Service that King *Tennes* had done him, as to put him to Death; enraged, perhaps, that he had missed of the Plunder of so rich a City; for it is said

the Fire having melted down a vast Quantity of Gold and Silver, he sold the Ashes for a great Sum.

Judæa re- The rest of the Cities of *Phœnicia* submitted to *Ochus*, without waiting to be attacked, and had good Terms allowed them by *Ochus*, who was in Haste to advance towards *Egypt*: And being opposed in his March by the *Jews*, he took the City of *Jericho*, and carried with him into *Egypt* several of the principal Inhabitants of *Judæa* as Hostages, that they might give him no further Disturbance while he was engaged in reducing that Kingdom.

Egypt re- *Ochus* first besieged *Pelusium*, at the Entrance of the most covered by Eastern Branch of the *Nile*, which was defended by 5000 the Per- *Greeks*, who surrendered to him, after a short Defence. sians a- Advancing further, he was met by *Neeltanebis* their King, gain. at the Head of 100,000 Men, whom he defeated: Whereupon, *Neeltanebis* fled into *Ethiopia*, abandoning his Country to the Conqueror. He is said to be the last King of the *Egyptian* Race; *Egypt* having been ever since subject to some foreign Power.

Egypt being thus entirely subdued, *Ochus* demolished the Fortifications of their Cities, plundered their Palaces and Temples, and returned in Triumph to *Babylon*, with a prodigious Treasure of Gold and Silver. After this, it is said he abandoned himself to his Pleasures, leaving the Administration of the Government to *Bagoas*, the Chief Eunuch, a Native of *Egypt*, and to *Mentor* the *Rhodian*, who had been most instrumental in reducing that Kingdom. But no Favours he had bestowed on *Bagoas* could deface the Memory of that Destruction *Ochus* had brought upon *Egypt*: For he had not only plundered the Country, and taken away their Records, but scoffed at, and derided their Religion; causing the God *Apis*, the sacred Bull, to be sacrificed to an Ass, and afterwards eaten; an Affront to their Religion which *Bagoas* could never forget, but took the first Opportunity, after his Return, of poisoning *Ochus*, after he had reigned twenty-three Years: And *Bagoas*, after *Ochus* was dead, carried his Revenge so far, that having buried another Body in his stead, he caused the King's Carcass to be cut in Pieces, and devoured by Cats.

Death of
Ochus.

Such was the Power of the Eunuch *Bagoas*, that, after his Master's Death, he placed his youngest Son *Arses* upon the Throne; and, when that Prince was about to call him to an Account, he caused him to be assassinated, with all his Royal Relations, and advanced *Darius*, sur-named *Cædomannus*, to the Imperial Dignity.

Whether

Whether this *Darius* was of the Royal Family of *Persia*, or not, is uncertain: As he had served in the Capacity of a Messenger in the late Reign, it is highly probable he was not. The first Notice taken of him was in the Expedition of *Ochus* against the *Cadusians*; when a Champion of that Nation challenged any Man in the *Persian* Army to fight him. *Codomannus* declared himself ready to engage the *Cadusian*; and being a Person of a good Stature, and great personal Courage, killed his Adversary: Whereupon, *Ochus* constituted him Governor of *Armenia*, possibly at the Instance of *Bagoas*, who looking upon that Hero as devoted to his Interest, placed him upon the Throne of *Persia*, expecting to have had the sole Administration of the Government in his Reign, as he had in the Reigns of several of his Predecessors: But this Prince, not contented with the Name of King, and being about to take the Reins of the Government into his Hands, *Bagoas* prepared a Dose of Poison for him; which *Darius* being acquainted with, compelled the Eunuch to drink it himself.

Darius III. is generally allowed to have been a most accomplished Prince. To his good Sense was added a great many Royal Virtues, as well as a beautiful Person; which made him the Delight of his Subjects; and he had the Prospect of a very happy Reign, when the *Grecians*, being all united under *Philip* of *Macedon*, determined to be revenged of the *Persians*, for all the Ravages and Depredations they had suffered from that People, and chose the King of *Macedon* their Generalissimo in the intended War: For which he made great Preparations, but was murdered before all Things were ready for that bold Enterprize, and was succeeded by his Son *Alexander*, then twenty Years of Age, in the Office of Generalissimo against the *Persians*.

Alexander having settled his Affairs in *Greece*, which had been in a great Measure subdued by his Father *Philip*, assembled an Army of 30,000 Foot, and 5000 Horse, with which he passed the *Hellepont* into *Asia*; and arriving at *Illium*, paid great Honours to the Tomb of *Achilles*, as it is said. From thence he marched to the Banks of the River *Granicus*, defended by 100,000 *Persians*, and a Body of 10,000 auxiliary *Grecians*, commanded by *Memnon*. Such Confidence had *Alexander* in the Goodness of his Troops, that he passed the River in Sight of the Enemy; and having gained the opposite Shore, charged them with such Success, that he gained

Darius III's
Accession.
A. M.
3629.

Philip,
General-
issimo a-
gainst the
Persians,
assassin-
ated,
Alexander
succeeds
him.

Granicus
Battle.

Sardis,
 &c. sur-
 renders to
 Alex-
 ander.

a complete Victory; killing upwards of 22,000 *Persians*, with the Loss of about 150 of his own People.

Immediately after this Victory, the capital City of *Sardis*, and *Ephesus*, and many more, opened their Gates to the Conqueror: But *Miletus* endured a Siege, and surrendered at length upon honourable Terms. *Mithridates*, King of *Pontus*, and several other *Asian* Princes, also submitted to *Alexander*, and joined him with their Forces; so that his Army daily encreased as he advanced: It was not with 30,000 *Grecians* alone that he conquered the *Persian* Empire.

After these Successes, *Alexander* provided Winter Quarters for his Men, in the most fruitful Part of *Asia*; and such of his Soldiers as had been lately married, he suffered to return home to their Wives, upon promising to return to their Colours the next Campaign. In the mean time, *Alexander* visited the Town of *Gordion*, the ancient Residence of King *Midas*, where stood the Chariot to which the *Gordion* Knot was tied; of which there was a Tradition, that the Man who could untie it, should be Emperor of *Asia*. *Alexander*, after a great many fruitless Trials, being unable to untie it, cut the Knot in two with his Sword, saying, *It was no Matter which Way, so it was undone*; taking it for granted that he was the Prince who was to make a Conquest of *Asia*.

The next Campaign *Alexander* marched and possessed himself of a Pass in *Cilicia*, called *Cyrus's Camp*, where a small Force might have prevented his advancing further; but the Officer who commanded the *Persians* there, had abandoned it on *Alexander's* Approach. Having secured this Pass, *Alexander* cantoned his Army in and about *Tarsus*. While he remained here, he bathed in the River *Cydnus*, the Waters whereof are so excessive cold, that he was very near losing his Life. A Plot was discovered about the same Time to assassinate him; *Darius* having offered a very great Reward, as it is said, to one of his Officers to dispatch him; which being discovered, the Officer was put to Death.

Whether *Darius*, who is allowed to be a brave Prince, was guilty of such mean Attempts to destroy his Enemy, is much questioned. But, however that be, we find him raising a numerous Army (half a Million of Men, according to some) and putting himself at the Head of it, and marching to meet the *Macedonians* as far as *Cilicia*; in the Passes whereof *Alexander* had wisely posted his Army, that he might not be surrounded by the numerous

Per-

Persian Troops; and in this advantageous Situation, near *Iffus* (now *Ajazzo*, between the Mountains and the Sea) *Darius* thought fit to attack him, and here the *Persian Battle of Iffus*. Horse being of little Use, *Darius* was defeated, though he had not less than 20,000 *Grecian* Forces in his Army, equal to any of the *Macedonians*; but they wanted an Officer of *Alexander's* military Skill to command them: However, a great Body of them made their Retreat to the Sea after the Defeat, and embarked for their own Country. In the meantime, an incredible Slaughter was made among the *Persians*; their Camp taken, and among the rest of the Prisoners, the Mother, the Wife, and some of the Children of *Darius*; who expected nothing less than to be sacrificed to the Fury of the Soldiers: But they were treated with all imaginable Humanity and Tenderness by *Alexander*, who would not trust himself to gaze on that celebrated Beauty, the Wife of *Darius*, lest he should be captivated with her Charms. The Spoils of the *Persian* Camp were very great, but not so considerable as was expected; *Darius* having sent away the heavy Baggage, and great Part of his Treasure, to *Damascus* before the Battle, where the Conquerors met with it soon after; and there also were found 329 of *Darius's* Concubines, whose Business it was chiefly to sing and play before that Monarch, according to the Custom of the Eastern Courts at this Day.

Darius who was seated in a kind of triumphal Chariot at the Beginning of the Battle, found himself obliged to descend from that magnificent Machine, and make his Escape on Horseback, travelling Night and Day, until he had passed the *Euphrates*. *Alexander* in the mean time advanced into *Phenicia*, where *Sidon* and many other Cities submitted to him. Here he received a haughty Letter from *Darius*, in which he stiled himself King, but gave the Conqueror no Title. The Purport of this Letter, was to demand what Ransom *Alexander* would take for his Family, and to reproach him for invading his Dominions. To which *Alexander* answered, That many of *Darius's* Ancestors had invaded *Greece*, burnt and plundered their Cities; and that he himself had set a Reward upon his Head, and employed Assassins to murder his Father *Philip*, which had been effected: That others had been employed to assassinate him, That he only defended himself; the *Persians* were the Aggressors: However, if he would supplicate him for the Liberty of his Wife and Family, he would restore them without any Ransom, and

give him leave to depart with them : That he knew how to conquer, and oblige the Conquered, but bid him remember, when he wrote to him next, that he wrote to a King, and to his King.

Tyre besieged by Alexander.

Tyre taken.

Alexander advancing farther into *Phenicia*, the City of *Tyre* sent him considerable Presents, and seemed to court his Friendship; but when he desired to enter their City, that he might sacrifice to *Hercules* their tutelar God, they refused to admit him; which he was pleased to resent to that Degree, as to threaten the Ruin of their City: However, it is highly probable, he had before determined not to leave so strong a Fortress behind him. He prepared therefore for the Siege of that Place deemed inaccessible, being situate on an Island in the Sea, half a Mile from the Shore; but notwithstanding the Difficulty of the Attempt, and the Bravery of the Inhabitants, who more than once destroyed his Works, he run out a Bank or Mole into the Sea, which extended from the Continent to the Island; and having got together a superior Fleet of Ships, he closely besieged them by Sea, and at length took the City by Storm, putting to the Sword most of the People that were found in Arms; and he reserved 2000 to be crucified, fixing the Crosses all along the Sea-shore, that other Cities might be terrified by these Executions, and not dare to resist his Arms: And accordingly it appears, that *Jerusalem*, which during the Siege had refused to furnish him with Provisions, upon the taking of *Tyre* opened her Gates to receive the Conqueror; the High-Priest, and all the Ecclesiastics in the Place going out in a solemn Procession to meet him; which when the King saw, it is said, he bowed, and in a manner adored the High-Priest; and when *Parmenio* asked the King, how he that was adored by every body, could worship the High-Priest of the *Jews*, *Alexander* answered, That he did not adore the High-Priest but God, whose Minister he was, for while he was contemplating the great Enterprise he was about to engage in, while he remained in *Macedonia*, he saw in a Dream this very Priest, in the same Robes he now wore, encouraging him to cross the *Hellespont*; and assuring him, that God would prosper his Arms, and make him victorious in the *Persian War*: And the High-Priest, it is said, shewed him those Passages in the Prophecy of *Daniel*, which related to this Conquest.

While *Alexander* was engaged in this Siege of *Tyre*, it is said, he received another Letter from *Darius*, concerning the

the Ransom of his Family, and a Partition of his Dominions with him; but this Letter is evidently not genuine, whatever the former was, there being such gross Mistakes in the Situation of some of the Rivers mentioned in it.

The City of Gaza lying in *Alexander's Way to Egypt*, which he was about to invade; he summoned *Betis* the Governor to surrender, but the Town being strongly fortified, and having a numerous Garrison, *Betis* who was one of *Darius's* Eunuchs, defended the Place with great Bravery, enduring a Siege of two Months. The City being at length taken by Storm, *Alexander* was so incensed at their obstinate Defence, that he caused 10,000 of the Inhabitants to be cut in Pieces, and the Governor he ordered to be tied to a Chariot by his Heels, and dragged round the City till he died, in imitation of *Achilles* (from whom *Alexander* boasted to be descended) who had dragged the Body of *Heſtor* about the Walls of *Troy*.

From *Gaza* *Alexander* marched with his Army to *Pelusium*, the Frontier Town of *Egypt*, which opened her ^{submits to} Gates to him, and the rest of that Kingdom received him ^{Alexander.} as their Deliverer from the *Persian* Yoke. He advanced from *Pelusium* to the capital City of *Memphis*, where he met with a prodigious Treasure; and here he formed the Design of visiting the Temple of *Jupiter Ammon*, declaring that God to be his Father. He took great Part of his Army with him, and sailed down the River till he came to the *Mediterranean Sea*; then he steered Westward, and about 40 Miles West of the most Westerly Branch of the *Nile*, he observed a Place opposite to the Island *Pharos*, extremely well situated for building a City; and thereupon gave his Orders for erecting a Town there, and it afterwards became the greatest Town of Trade in that Part of the World; for hither all the Spices and rich Merchandize of *Asia* were brought by the Red Sea and the River *Nile*, and from hence dispersed through the several Kingdoms of *Europe* and *Africa*.

The Army landing near this Place, marched over a sandy Desert upwards of 200 Miles, where meeting with no Water, they were in great Danger of perishing, not only with Thirst, but from the hot Winds and Clouds of Dust and Sand, that were perpetually whirled about; for whole Armies had been suffocated by such Sands, particularly when *Cambyses* invaded this Country. However, *He visits* *Alexander* had the good Fortune to escape, and arrived at ^{the Temple} length at the desired Temple of *Jupiter Ammon*, where he ^{of Jupiter} found the Priests ready to acknowledge him the Son of *Ammon*.

Jupiter; whereupon he ever after stiled himself *Alexander the King, Son of Jupiter Ammon*.

Alexan-
dria built.

On his return, he found his new City pretty far advanced, and peopled it with *Grecians* and *Jews*, allowing them large Privileges. He spent the following Winter at *Memphis*, where he regulated the Affairs of *Egypt*, dividing it into several Provinces, and appointing a Governor over each, who were to receive Orders only from himself; investing *Doloaspes* an *Egyptian*, with the supreme Civil Power, and suffering them to be governed by their ancient Laws and Customs,

Arbela
Battle.

From *Egypt* *Alexander* marched towards *Darius*, and passing through *Palestine*, punished the *Samaritans* for an Insurrection they had made during his Absence, banished many of them from their Country, supplying their Places with Colonies of *Macedonians* and *Jews*. *Darius* hearing of his Approach, offered to yield up all that Part of his Dominions, which lay to the Westward of the *Euphrates*, which being rejected, he prepared to meet the Enemy, assembling an Army of 600,000 Men. *Alexander* having passed the *Euphrates* and *Tygris*, arrived in the Plains of *Arbela*, where he found the *Persian* Army drawn up to receive him. Historians entertain us with long Accounts of a doubtful Battle, but relate at the same Time, that the *Macedonians* did not lose more than 1200 Men, and that 300,000 of the *Persians* were killed; which must incline us to think, that *Alexander* obtained an easy Victory, and that the *Persians* were not able to make Head against the well disciplined Forces of the *Greeks*, to whom *Alexander* thought himself so much indebted for the Conquests he had made; that he restored all the *Grecian* Cities to their ancient Rights and Privileges, which he and his Father *Philip* had subdued.

Babylon,
&c. sur-
render to
Alexan-
der.

Darius after he had lost the Battle, fled over the *Armenian* Mountains into *Media*, whither the Conqueror did not think fit to pursue him, but advanced to *Babylon*, *Susa*, and *Persepolis* three Royal Cities, in which he found Prodigious Treasures, amounting to upwards of 30,000000 *l*. Sterling, if we may credit some Historians; and all these Cities surrendered to him without fighting. *Babylon* and *Susa* were protected from the Plunder of the Soldiers, but *Persepolis*, in which was the Palace of *Xerxes*, who had plundered and burnt the Cities of *Greece*, met with a severer Fate, by way of Retaliation for what *Greece* had suffered. Before *Alexander* arrived at this Capital, it is said, he met with 4000 *Grecian* Prisoners, whom the *Persian* Tyrants

THE N
PUBLIC

ASTOR,
TILDEN F

he died peaceably when worn out with Age, reasoning with his Friends about the Immortality of the Soul.

2. *Cambyfes*, the Son of *Cyrus*, subdued *Psamenitus* King of *Egypt*, which Country he united to his Empire.

3439.

3. *Darius*

3443. 3. *Darius Hyftaspes*, one of the seven *Persian* Princes, descended from *Cyrus* the fourth King of the *Persians*, being elected King, took *Babylon* (which had revolted) by the ingenious Stratagem of *Zophyrus*, and over-run all *Asia*, and some Part of *Greece*, where he was overthrown at the Battle of *Marathon*.
3479. 4. *Xerxes*, to revenge the Overthrow of *Marathon*, attempted to subdue the *Greeks*, by whom he was overthrown in the Naval Battle of *Salamis*; and at that famous and honourable Exploit of the *Grecians* at *Thermopoli*. 21.
3500. 5. *Artaxerxes Longimanus* was he who sent *Esdra*s to rebuild the Temple of *Jerusalem*, and received *Themistocles*, being banished from *Athens*. This also was he, as some would have it, whom the Scripture calls *Ahasuerus*, the Husband of *Eſther*, though others chuse rather to place that Story in the Time of *Xerxes*. 44.
3544. *Darius II.* surnamed *Nothus*, in whose Time the *Egyptians* revolted, and chose a King of their own. 19.
3563. 7. *Artaxerxes II.* from the Greatness of his Memory, surnamed *Mnemon*; under whom happened that famous Retreat of *Xenophon*, with an Handful of his *Grecians*, through most of the Provinces of this Empire; by which they shewed the Way to the *Macedonians*, how easy a Conquest they might make of that mighty Empire. 36.
3599. 8. *Ochus* a great Tyrant, but a valiant Prince, recovered *Egypt*, subdued *Syria*, *Cyprus*, and some Part of *India*, and was at last slain by *Bagoas*, one of the Eunuchs of his Chamber. 26.
3625. 9. *Arſes*, the Son of *Ochus*, most villanously murdered by the same Eunuch, for fear he should revenge the Death of his Father, 4.
3629. 10. *Darius III.* Governor of *Armenia*, Cousin-german of *Ochus*, before his coming to the Crown named *Codomannus*, by the Means of the said *Bagoas*, made sole Monarch of *Persia*; but being vanquished by *Alexander* the Great, in the three Battles of *Granicus*, *Iſſus*, and *Arbela*, the Empire of the *Persians* was transferred to the *Grecians*, A. M. 3635. 6.

Macedonian Monarchs.

3641. **A**LEXANDER the Great, 8.
 3649. Philip Son of *Arideus*, 7.
 3661. Alexander II. 12.

GRECIAN EMPIRE.

WHILE *Alexander* was at this Distance from *Greece*, the *Lacedemonians* and most of the Cities in the *Peloponessus* revolted, and assembled a very formidable Army, with which they gave Battle to *Antipater*, *Alexander's* Lieutenant in *Greece*, but were entirely defeated and subdued: In the mean time, *Alexander* pursued *Bessus* into *Bactria*, and as that Nobleman had conspired to deliver up *Darius* his Sovereign to *Alexander*, he was in like Manner made Prisoner himself, and delivered into the Hands of *Alexander* by *Naborzanes*, one of the most intimate Friends *Bessus* had. The King having caused his Nose and Ears to be cut off, sent him to *Ecbatana* to be put to Death, as the Mother of *Darius* should direct. *Syfigambis* thereupon ordered his Hands and Legs to be tied to the Branches of four Trees, which were bent down to the Ground, and then suffered to return to their natural Position, with such Force, that his four Limbs were thereby torn from his Body in an Instant. It is the Custom in *Persia* to this Day, to deliver a Murderer to the Relations of the Deceased, to execute as they see fit.

During *Alexander's* March towards *Bactria*, it is said, *Thalestris*, Queen of the *Amazons*, came to pay that Conqueror a Visit, and did not scruple to tell him the principal Design of her Visit was, to have a Daughter by him that might equal her Father in Valour, and other military Virtues; which induced the Hero to remain in his Quarters some time with this *Ideal Queen*, for the whole Story was evidently a Fiction; never were any such People known. The Situation of their Country was never ascertained.

The Historians who give us these Relations, proceed to censure *Alexander* for imitating the Fashions and Manners of the *Persians*; for which, however, many good Reasons might be assigned: But the Censures they pass upon him for his Drunkenness, and other Debaucheries, may be just enough; nor can his Cruelties, exercised on several of the conquered Nations, be sufficiently condemned; his destroying *Parmenio* also, one of his best Friends and the greatest Generals in his Army, upon a bare Suspicion that he was in a Plot against him, can never be excused, especially
his

his manner of doing it by Assassination, without allowing him an Opportunity to defend himself.

Bactria,
Etc. sub-
dued.

Alexander was afterwards employed in subduing *Bactria*, *Sogdiana*, and Part of *Scythia*, which lay North-east of the River *Oxus*. Several Towns in those Countries made a very good Defence, and the Hero had Reason to believe he was still mortal, receiving some dangerous Wounds in the Prosecution of this War. He built several Forts and Towns in *Bactria* and *Sogdiana*, to overawe the Natives, who more than once took up Arms against him, after they had made their Submission; and to one, if not more of those Cities, he gave the Name of *Alexanaria*.

Clitus kil-
led.

Having settled the Government of these Frontier Provinces, and constituted *Clitus* (one of the bravest, and most faithful of the *Macedonian* Generals) the Governor of them, he prepared to advance further Eastward, being joined by 16,000 *Grecians* and other Forces, levied in the conquered Provinces; but before he began his March, he entertained all his Officers at a splendid Feast. Here it seems, the King, as well as his Guests drank very hard; the Monarch grew so vain in his Cups, as to despise the Heroes that had gone before him, and amongst the rest his Father *Philip*, being guilty of very indecent Language; which *Clitus* had the Hardiness to reprove him for, and being equally elevated with Wine, repeated his Reproaches so often, that *Alexander* killed him with his own Hand; which he had no sooner done, but he repented it, and was under so deep a Concern, that it was with Difficulty his Officers persuaded him not to starve himself to Death.

Roxana
married to
Alexan-
der.
Alexan-
der adored
as a God.

Being recovered in some Measure from his Melancholly, he marched into the Country of the *Sacæ*; which he entirely subdued; and being invited to an Entertainment by King *Oxartes*, he there fell in love with his beautiful Daughter *Roxana*, and made her his Wife. He prepared soon after for the Invasion of *India*; but before he entered on this Expedition, he was determined, that all his Subjects should adore him, and acknowledge him to be in reality a God: And a Festival being appointed accordingly, where he was to receive Divine Honours, *Cleon*, a *Grecian*, opened the Matter to the Assembly, on the King's retiring into another Room, where he could hear all that was said. *Calisthenes* the Philosopher, who had been recommended by *Aristotle* to attend the King in this Expedition, took the Liberty to declare against giving him divine Honours; which so influenced the *Greeks*, that

none

none of them, except *Cleon*, would worship his Majesty when he returned to the Assembly; but the *Persians* who had been used to pay Divine Honours to their Princes, fell down and adored him.

Alexander imputing the Backwardness of the *Greeks* to *Calisthenes* give him Divine Honours, to the Speeches of *Calisthenes*, resolved to take him off; and to that End, caused him to be accused of a Conspiracy against his Person, and put to Death.

The *Macedonians* appeared exceedingly exasperated at this Conduct of their Prince; which might have proved fatal to him, if he had not diverted the Ill-humour, by leading them to the Frontiers of *India*: Where most of the petty Kings came in, and submitted to *Alexander* without fighting; but as some of the distant People made Preparations for their Defence, and there were several large Rivers to pass, he ordered a Number of Boats to be built, sufficient to transport his Army over them; and these were made to be taken to pieces and carried in Waggon, from one River to another. The first Town which opposed him, he ordered to be burnt, and all the People to be put to the Sword, in order to strike a Terror in the rest of the *Indian* Nations. *Alexander* seems now to have advanced to the Mountains on the North of *India*, and probably in the Winter Season; Historians relating, that the Cold was so rigorous as to endanger the Loss of his Army. We are next entertained with their besieging a Fortrefs, seated on a perpendicular inaccessible Rock, so steep that many of the Soldiers broke their Necks, endeavouring to climb it; that the Garrison however fled, and left him in Possession of it; from hence, after sixteen Day's March, he arrived at the River *Indus*; where several other *Indian* Princes submitted to him, and furnished him with a Body of War Elephants: But *Porus*, the greatest Prince in this Part of the World, assembled a numerous Army, and defended the Banks of the *Indus*, which *Alexander* however found Means to pass, by a Stratagem; defeated *Porus* and made him Prisoner, tho' he had great Numbers of Elephants of a prodigious Size in his Army. These the *Macedonians* engaged, and wounded with their Spears it is said; whereupon the monstrous Beasts grew mad, and trampled down their own People.

Historians represent this Engagement as a very obstinate and bloody Battle; though we are told at the same Time, that *Alexander* did not lose more than three or 400 Men,

India invaded.

Victory over Porus.

Men, and the *Indians* lost upwards of 20,000. The Boldness of this Invasion of *India*, is wonderfully admired by the Writers of those Times, though there is very little to be admired in it, more than the length of the March; for *Alexander's* Army seldom consisted of less than 50,000 veteran Troops, recruited from time to time with *European* Troops, as well as *Asiatics*; and such a Body of Men, I am very well assured, might march through *China* as well as *India*, without Opposition, at this Day. The *Indians* durst not look them in the Face how numerous soever. The many great and desperate Actions related of *Alexander* in his *Indian* Expedition, therefore, I look upon only as the Product of the Writer's Brain, and fit to amuse School-boys or Schoolmen, equally weak and credulous.

Alexander's Soldiers refuse to march further.

After *Alexander's* Victory over *Porus*, he subdued several other *Indian* Nations, and was preparing to march to the *Ganges*, which he was told, was not more than eleven Days march farther Eastward. In the mean time happened the annual periodical Rains, attended with Thunder and Lightning for two Months, and all the flat Country being overflowed, rendered the intended March impracticable: His Soldiers thereupon began to mutiny, and refused to march any further Eastward; he was obliged therefore, to remain in his Camp till the fair Season returned, and then embarked upon a River, which falls into the *Indus*, in order to discover the *Indian* Ocean, having laid aside his Design of advancing further East: But before he began his Voyage, he ordered a vast extensive Camp to be marked out, and surrounded with Fosses 50 Foot deep; he ordered also large Tents to be set up with Beds in them seven Feet in length, Mangers for the Horses of unusual Demensions, Arms and Utensils of a monstrous Proportion, that Posterity might imagine, the Army he commanded, was in all Things superior to other Troops.

As he sailed down the River *Indus*, he was attacked by the *Oxydrace*; whom he defeated and pursued to their capital City, and having commanded scaling Ladders to be brought to the Walls, mounted one of them himself, and leaped into the Town from the Walls, before any of his People could follow him. Here he was dangerously wounded, and upon the Point of being killed, when his Forces made their Way into the Place, and saved his Life; and the Town being taken by Storm, all the Inhabitants were put to the Sword, without regard to Age or Sex.

Alexan-

GRECIAN EMPIRE.

47

Alexander continuing his Voyage down the River, built a City on the Banks of it, to which he gave the Name of *Alexandria*, as he had to several others he erected in *Persia* and *India*. The Army being arrived in the Province of *Patala* (now *Patna*) where the River divides into several Branches, which fall into the *Indian* Ocean, the Hero rejoiced, that he was now arrived at the utmost Bounds of the Earth, not knowing that the Continent extended many thousand Miles further to the East. The *Macedonians* were surprized, when they observed to what a Height the Tides rose in the Mouth of *Indus* (being scarce perceptible in the *Mediterranean*) and at the ebbing of the Tide, to find most of their Vessels upon dry Ground.

His Voyage down the River Indus.

Alexander was infinitely pleased with viewing the Ocean, and offered rich Sacrifices to *Neptune*; particularly a great Number of golden Cups and slaughtered Bulls, of which he made the Sea a Present.

Alexander being about to return by Land into *Persia*, *Alexander* commanded *Nearchus*, who had the Command of his Fleet, to sail along the Sea Coast, till he should arrive at the *Persian* Gulph: After which, *Alexander*, with the Land Army, begun his March towards *Babylon* through a desert Country, where he lost half of his Army, by the excessive Heats, by Famine or the Plague. However, when he arrived at the Province of *Kerman*, where he found Plenty of all Things, he marched in a kind of *Bacchanalian* Procession, passing the Days and Nights in drinking and feasting, abandoning himself and his People to all manner of Excess, in imitation of the Triumphs of *Bacchus*.

Alexander's Fleet.

However, finding at his Return, that the Governors of the respective Provinces had been guilty of very great Oppressions in his Absence, never expecting to see him again, he punished them severely, and put some of them to Death. In the mean time, *Nearchus* having performed the Voyage he was commanded to undertake, sailed up the *Tigris*, and came to the King, who received him with Abundance of Joy; this being looked upon as a very hazardous Voyage in those Days.

Alexander arriving afterwards at *Susa*, where he had left the Family of *Darius*, married *Statira*, the eldest Daughter of that Prince, and gave the youngest to his Favourite *Hephestion*. He directed his Officers also, to take *Persian* Wives of the noblest Families, that his *European* and *Asiatic* Subjects might be united by the strongest Ties.

Hemarries

**Harpalus
bribes De-
mosthe-
nes.**

Ties. At the same Time he distributed large Sums amongst the married People, and paid all the Debts his Soldiers had contracted, dismissing those who were hurt or superannuated in the Service, or desired to be discharged, with large Presents, giving them leave to return to *Greece*; but *Harpalus*, whom *Alexander* had left Governor of *Babylon*, having been guilty of notorious Extortions, had thought fit to quit his Government, and return to *Athens*, before the King came back from his *Indian Expedition*; and to gain the Favour of his Citizens, distributed a great Share of the Treasure he had amassed amongst them; and though *Demosthenes* had inveighed bitterly against *Harpalus*, and voted for his Banishment, he sent him such a swinging Bribe, as perfectly silenced him.

**Hephesti-
on killed
by hard
drinking.**

Alexander and his Officers still continuing their Excesses, in one of these drunken Frolics, *Alexander* lost his Friend *Hephestion*, who died of a Fever he had contracted by hard drinking. *Alexander* was inconsolable on the Occasion; and to shew his Regard for this General, ordered a most magnificent Funeral for him at *Babylon*. To divert his Grief, however, he invaded and subdued the *Cossæi*, who inhabited the Mountains, North of *Media*, now called the *Dagistan* Mountains, which had never been conquered by any of the *Persian* Monarchs.

**Adored as
a God.**

Alexander returning towards *Babylon* from this Expedition, was told by the Magi, that he would be in Danger of his Life, if he entered that City; and he seems to have had a great Regard to their Predictions, deferring his Entrance for a considerable Time, till the *Grecian* Philosophers that attended him, laughed him out of this Piece of Superstition. His first Business after his Arrival at *Babylon*, was to solemnize the Funeral of his Favourite *Hephestion*, after the most expensive and extravagant Manner imaginable; nor was he content with giving him these Honours, but commanded him to be worshiped as a God, and that Altars and Temples should be erected to this new Deity, in several Cities of his Empire. The King remained at *Babylon* almost a whole Year, during which Time, he formed a Multitude of extravagant Projects; such as the invading the Dominions of *Carthage*, the Conquest of all *Europe*, the surrounding *Africa* by Sea, the adorning and beautifying of *Babylon*, rebuilding the Temple of *Belus*, destroyed by *Xerxes*, and the reducing the *Euphrates* to its ancient Channel, which had overflowed great

great Part of the Country ever since *Cyrus* had diverted the Current another Way.

But notwithstanding *Alexander* meditated such vast Enterprizes, he still continued to divert himself with Shews and Entertainments, grand Festivals and Revels; seems to have valued himself as much on drinking down all his Friends, as upon any Victory he obtained in the Field. *Alexander dies with hard drinking.*

As *Bacchus* and *Hercules* were celebrated for their Conquests in such Encounters, he was fond of equalling them, and concluded his Life and Reign with emptying *Hercules's* Cup, which held six Bottles, after he had drank enough before to have dispatched an ordinary Man: He fell down dead to Appearance, immediately after drinking it, and though he revived a little, died of a high Fever soon after, without nominating his Successor; for being asked, to whom he left the Empire, he answered only, *To the most worthy.*

Some Debates arising among the Generals, after the Death of *Alexander*, about the Succession, it was at length agreed, that *Prideus*, a Natural Son of *Philip*, and Brother to the deceased Prince, should have the Name of King; and in case *Roxana*, who was with Child, should have a Son, he should share the Empire with *Arideus*, and that *Perdiccas* should administer the Government in their Names; *Prideus* being a weak Prince, that wanted a Guardian no less than an Infant King.

The Cities of *Greece* receiving Advice of the Death of *Alexander*, immediately entered into a Conspiracy to throw off the *Macedonian* Yoke, recalled *Demosthenes* revolt, and the rest of the Exiles, who had opposed the Usurpation of *Philip* and *Alexander*, and declared themselves a free People: Whereupon *Antipater*, whom *Alexander* had constituted Governor of *Macedon* and *Greece*, assembled an Army in order to reduce them; and though his Forces were defeated in the first Engagement, yet receiving Reinforcements afterwards from *Asia*, he gained a decisive Victory over the Allies, and placed strong Garrisons in most of the *Grecian* Cities, insomuch that *Athens*, and the rest of *Greece*, were now entirely subject to the Court of *Macedon*; and *Demosthenes*, that celebrated Orator, who had been one of the principal Authors of this Revolt, was forced to fly his Country again, and take Sanctuary in a Temple; whither being pursued by some of *Antipater's* Troops, he drank a Dose of Poison he had prepared, and died before the Altar. *The Cities of Greece are subdued.*

The Gre-
cian Em-
pire divid-
ed.

Alexander's Generals, after his Death, distributed the Provinces of his Empire among themselves. *Macedonia* and *Greece* were left to *Antipater*; *Thrace*, with the neighbouring Countries, were assigned to *Lyfimachus*; *Egypt*, with *Cyrene*, *Africa*, and *Arabia*, to *Ptolemy*, the Son of *Lagus*; *Syria* and *Phenicia* were assigned to *Laomedon*; *Armenia* to *Neoptolemus*; and *Mesopotamia* to *Arcefilaus*. In *Asia the Less*, *Cappadocia* and *Paphlagonia*, with the Countries thereto adjoining, which *Alexander* had passed by in his Conquests, were assigned to *Eumenes*; *Pamphilia*, *Lycia*, *Lycaonia*, and the *Greater Phrygia*, to *Antigonus*; the *Lesser Phrygia*, as far as the *Hellefpont*, to *Leonatus*; *Cilicia* to *Philotas*, together with *Ifauria*; and *Caria* to *Cassander*; *Menander* was confirmed in the Government of *Lydia*, given him by *Alexander*; the Isle of *Cyprus* remained in the Power of certain Governors, to which he had granted it; and all that Part of his Empire Eastward of the River *Tygris* continued in the State wherein he left it.

Ptolemy took Possession of *Egypt* without any Trouble, and settled himself there; but hearing that *Perdiccas* had an Intention to deprive him of his Government, he entered into an Alliance with *Antipater*, to secure the respective Governments allotted them.

In the mean time, *Alexander's* Funeral was solemnized with the utmost Magnificence; his Corpse being drawn in a triumphal Chariot from *Babylon* to *Egypt*, and interred at *Alexandria*, though it was designed to have buried him in the Temple of *Jupiter Ammon*, if *Ptolemy* had not prevented it.

Perdiccas having his Eye upon the Empire, divorced *Nicea* the Daughter of *Antipater*, and married *Cleopatra* the Sister of *Alexander*. *Antigonus*, who penetrated into his Views, engaged *Antipater* and *Craterus*, as well as *Ptolemy*, to defeat his ambitious Projects, which evidently tended to the Ruin of them all.

Perdiccas at the Head of a numerous Army, invaded *Greece*, while *Eumenes* and his Allies engaged *Craterus*. *Perdiccas* afterwards invaded *Egypt*, which had been allotted to *Ptolemy*, but he lost great Part of his Army in passing the *Nile*; which so incensed the *Macedonians* in his Army, that they mutinied and murdered him in his Tent. After the Death of *Perdiccas*, the Regency was conferred on *Antipater*, who made a new Partition of the Provinces of the Empire, in which he excluded all those who had taken the Part of *Perdiccas* and *Eumenes*; and in this Division,
the

the Government of *Babylon* was conferred on *Seleucus*, who became the most powerful of all the Successors of *Alexander*. *Seleucus* was the Son of *Antiochus*, one of *Alexander's* Captains. After the Death of *Alexander*, *Perdiccas*, who was appointed Regent of the Empire, gave him the Command of the Cavalry of the Army; and *Antipater*, who succeeded *Perdiccas* in the Regency, constituted *Seleucus* Governor of *Babylonia*.

Antipater, after these Regulations, deputed *Antigonus* to attack *Eumenes*, who defeated him entirely, having bribed one of his Officers, who deserted over to *Antigonus* with 8000 Men in the Heat of the Engagement.

Eumenes, after this, was obliged to fly from Place to Place, and with great Difficulty escaped the Pursuit of his Enemies.

Ptolemy in the mean time invaded and subdued *Syria*, *Phenicia*, and *Palestine*, and added them to his Government of *Egypt*; and the *Jews* having made the greatest Opposition to this Enterprize, he carried 100,000 of them Captives into *Egypt*, after he had taken *Jerusalem*. *Ptolemy conquers Syria and Phenicia*

Antipater falling sick, and apprehending himself near his End, appointed *Polysperchon* and his Son *Cassander* joint Regents, during the Minority of the young King, and joint Governors of *Macedon*; which *Cassander* resented to a very great Degree, expecting to have been constituted sole Regent. He meditated therefore how to deprive *Polysperchon* of his Share in the Government; and in order to effect it, entered into an Alliance with *Ptolemy* and *Antigonus*, whose Interest it was to destroy the new Regent, and even the Regency itself; which as long as it continued, must keep them in a State of Dependence. They apprehended the young Princes might deprive them of their Government one Time or other, if the Regent did not.

On the other Side, *Polysperchon* to strengthen his Interest, invited *Olympias* the Mother of *Alexander* to share his Authority with him, and entered into an Alliance with *Eumenes*, assisting him with Forces and Treasure, to make head against *Antigonus*.

Olympias in the mean time, was guilty of great Barbarities in *Macedon*; she caused *Arideus* the Brother of *Alexander*, and one of the Kings, to be put to Death, after he had enjoyed the Name of King about six Years, and murdered *Eurydice* his Queen; she put to Death also *Nicanor* the Brother of *Cassander*, and 100 more of his Relations and Friends; after which, she retired to *Pydna*

with *Alexander* the infant King, his Mother *Roxana*, and *Theſſalonica*, the Siſter of *Alexander* the Great. Here *Caffander* beſieged her, and made her his Priſoner; *Polyſperchon*, who was marching to the Relief of the Place being defeated, *Alexander* the infant King, *Roxana* his Mother, and *Theſſalonica* the Siſter of *Alexander*, being made Priſoners at the ſame time, it was not long before *Caffander* cauſed *Olympias* to be put to Death.

Eumenes and *Antigonus* were now contending for the Sovereignty of *Aſia*. Their Forces were pretty near equal, but *Eumenes* being betrayed by his Soldiers, was made Priſoner by them, and delivered up to *Antigonus*; who, notwithstanding they had been moſt intimate Friends for many Years, while they ſerved under *Alexander*, was ſo cruel, as to order him to be put to Death, and afterwards hypocritically celebrated his Funeral Obſequies with great Magnificence.

Antigo-
nus very
powerful.

Antigonus after this Deſeat of *Eumenes*, ſeems to have been Maſter of moſt of the Provinces of *Aſia*, even thoſe of *Babylon*, and *Media*; for *Seleucus* fled from *Babylon* to *Ptolemy* in *Egypt* for Protection: *Antigonus* afterwards advanced with his Army into *Syria*, reduced *Tyre* and all the Cities of *Phenicia* and *Paleſtine*, which *Ptolemy* poſſeſſed. While he was engaged in this Expedition, *Caffander*, *Ptolemy's* Confederate, invaded the *Leſſer Aſia*, which obliged *Antigonus* to divide his Forces; and having left part of his Army in *Syria*, under the Command of his Son *Demetrius*, he marched with the reſt to make head againſt *Caffander*, whom he obliged to retreat; but while *Antigonus* was oppoſing *Caffander*, *Ptolemy* taking Advantage of his Abſence, made himſelf Maſter of the greateſt Part of *Cyprus*. After which he made a Deſcent in *Syria*, defeated *Demetrius*, and recovered the greateſt Part of *Phenicia*, even the ſtrong City of *Tyre* ſurrendered to him; after which, he returned to *Egypt*, and ſent his Lieutenant with a numerous Army into *Phenicia*, in order to complete the Conqueſt of that Province; but *Demetrius* was ſo well prepared to receive him, that he gained a ſignal Victory over the *Egyptians*, and made a great many thouſand Priſoners.

In the mean time, *Seleucus* having obtained a ſmall Body of Troops of *Ptolemy*, returned to *Babylon*, from whence *Antigonus* having withdrawn moſt of his Forces, that City readily opened her Gates to him, having had Experience of the Mildneſs of his Government, while he remained Maſter of that Province.

Nicanor

Nicanor, Governor of *Media* for *Antigonus*, hereupon assembled an Army, in order to dispossess *Seleucus* of *Babylon*; of which *Seleucus* receiving Advice, advanced towards him, gave him Battle, and defeated him; after which *Seleucus* subdued *Media*, *Susiana*, and the rest of the Eastern Provinces.

Antigonus receiving Advice of the Victory his Son *Demetrius* had obtained in *Phenicia*, marched thither; whereupon *Ptolemy* withdrew all his Forces out of *Syria* and *Palestine*; plundered the Country and retired into *Egypt*, carrying with him great Numbers of *Jews* and others, whom he placed in *Alexandria*, granting them very great Privileges; which induced many more of their Countrymen to follow them to *Alexandria*, and settle there voluntarily.

Antigonus having repossessed himself of *Syria* and *Palestine*, and reduced *Arabia Petrea* under his Obedience, detached his Son *Demetrius* with part of his Army to oppose *Seleucus*, and marched in Person with the rest against *Cassander* and his Allies in the *Lesser Asia*.

Seleucus being in *Media*, when *Demetrius* came before *Babylon*, *Patroclus* the Governor quitted that City; which *Demetrius* immediatly entered, and plundered the Inhabitants; but the two Castles still remained in Possession of the Forces of *Seleucus*; one of which *Demetrius* besieged and took; but while he was besieging the other, he received Orders from his Father *Antigonus* to join him; which he obeyed, and leaving but a small Garrison in the Place, *Seleucus* on his Return to *Babylon*, found the Citizens ready to join him, having been so lately plundered by *Demetrius*.

The *Macedonians* in the mean time, being impatient Alexander to see the young King *Alexander* crowned, who was now fourteen Years of Age, *Cassander* caused both him and his Mother *Roxana* to be put Death; and when *Polyperchon* the Governor of *Greece* was about to proclaim *Hercules*, another Son of *Alexander the Great*, King, *Cassander* represented to him, that this did not consist with his Interest, or that of any of the Governors of the Provinces, who would be in Danger of being called to an Account, and perhaps dispossessed of their Governments, if any of the Sons of *Alexander the Great* should succeed to the Empire. *Polyperchon* thereupon agreed to murder *Hercules*, the last Prince of that Race; whereby the several Governors imagined they had effectually secured their Title to the respective Countries they possessed.

Antigonus now appearing the most powerful of all *Alexander's* Successors, *Seleucus*, *Ptolemy*, *Cassander*, and *Polyperchon* entered into a Confederacy against him: Hereupon *Antigonus* assembled a Fleet and Army, and gave the Command of them to his Son *Demetrius*, in order to invade *Greece*. This Prince arriving at *Athens*, found Means to acquaint the *Athenians*, that he was come to restore them their Liberties, and ancient Form of Government (Democracy); which the *Athenians* being infinitely fond of, made no Scruple of opening their Gates to him. He afterwards made himself Master of *Megara*, and several other *Grecian* Cities, who looked upon him as their Deliverer. The *Greeks* proceeded to give him the Title of King, as well as to his Father *Antigonus*, erected Altars to *Demetrius*, and placed him among the Number of their Gods. *Demetrius* having left Garrisons in the Cities of *Greece*, was ordered by *Antigonus*, to invade *Cyprus*; which he accordingly did; and having defeated the Forces of *Ptolemy* in that Island, made an entire Conquest of it; And now the rest of *Alexander's* Captains assumed the Title of Kings in their respective Governments, as *Antigonus* and *Demetrius* had done: *Seleucus* styled himself King of *Babylon*, *Lyfimachus* of *Thrace*, *Ptolemy* of *Egypt*; only *Cassander* neglected to use that Title in his Acts of State, tho' every body that addressed him, complimented him with the Title of King of *Macedon*.

Athenians, &c. submit to Demetrius, and give him and the rest the Title of King.

Seleucus in the mean Time, vastly encreased his Dominions; he reduced *Bactria*, *Persia*, and *Hyrkania*, and all the Provinces to the Eastward, as far as the River *Indus*, which he added to *Assyria*, *Babylon*, and *Media*, possessed by him before.

Antigonus and *Demetrius* on the other Hand, invaded *Egypt* by Sea and Land, but were defeated by *Ptolemy*, and forced to retreat to *Syria* with Disgrace: And *Demetrius* met with no better Success on his Invasion of the Island of *Rhodes*,

While *Demetrius* was engaged in the Siege of *Rhodes*, *Cassander* recovered great Part of *Greece*, and laid Siege to *Athens*; but *Demetrius* coming to their Relief, raised the Siege, and pursued *Cassander* into *Macedon*: He also recovered the Cities in *Peloponesus*, which *Ptolemy* had possessed himself of. Upon these Successes, the rest of *Alexander's* Captains thought fit to renew their Confederacy against *Antigonus* and *Demetrius*, and advanced against them on every side. *Lyfimachus* leaving *Cassander* to defend their Territories in *Europe*, passed the *Hellepont* with a fine Army,

Army; and reduced *Phrygia*, *Lycaonia*, and most of the *Asian* Territories North of the *Meander*. *Seleucus*, invaded *Capadocia*, and *Ptolemy* recovered most part of *Phenicia*, *Palestine*, and *Celofyria*.

Seleucus and *Lyfimachus* being joined about the same time, gave Battle to *Antigonus* and *Demetrius*, near *Ipfus* in *Phrygia*, whom they entirely defeated: *Antigonus* was killed in the Field, and *Demetrius* retired with about 10,000 Men to *Ephesus*, and afterwards to *Greece*.

Antigonus having lost his Life in the late Battle, his *Antigonus* Enemies divided his Dominions among them; *Arabia*, killed, his *Celofyria*, and *Palestine*, fell to the Share of *Ptolemy*: To *Dominions* *Lyfimachus* King of *Thrace*, was added *Bythinia*, and *divided*. some adjacent Provinces in the *Lesser Asia*: To *Seleucus* was allotted all the rest of *Asia*, frequently called the Kingdom of *Syria*, because *Seleucus*, who founded *Antioch* in that Province afterwards, resided there, making it the Capital of his Dominions; which comprehended *Assyria*, and all the Territories which were subject to the late *Persian* or *Grecian* Monarchs, as far as the River *Indus*: To *Cassander* was assigned *Macedonia* and *Greece* in *Europe*, great Part of which, however, *Demetrius* remained possessed of.

Antioch was built, as has been said, by *Seleucus*, on the *Antioch*, River *Orontes*; and was so named either in regard to the *Sc. built* Father or Son of *Seleucus*, both of them having born that by *Seleucus* Name: He built *Seleucia* on the same River, and *Apamia*, so named in Honour of his Wife, the Daughter of *Artabazus* the *Persian*. He built another City a little South of those, called *Laodicea*, being the Name of his Mother: Into these Cities he introduced great Numbers of *Jews*, granting them the same Privileges he did the *Macedonians*. He built also *Seleucia*, on the West Side of the *Tygris*, about 40 Miles East of *Babylon*, and near the Place where *Bagdat* now stands. The Country about *Babylon* being great Part of it under Water, by the breaking down of the Banks of the *Euphrates*, most of the Inhabitants deserted that City, and settled at *Seleucia*, which *Seleucus* made the Capital of his Dominions on that Side.

Demetrius having assembled the Fleet he left in *Greece*, invaded the Territories of *Lyfimachus* on the Coast of *Thrace*, and plundering the Country, amassed a considerable Treasure; whereupon *Lyfimachus* entered into an Alliance with *Ptolemy*, married his Daughter *Arsinoe*, and soon after his Son *Agathocles* married another of *Ptolemy's*

Daughters. This Alliance between *Lyfimachus* and *Ptolemy* alarmed *Seleucus*, and induced him to enter into a Treaty with *Demetrius*; to strengthen which, he married *Stratonice*, the Daughter of *Demetrius*. Soon after *Demetrius* invaded *Cilicia* (which had been allotted to *Pliftarchus* by the Four Kings) and entirely subdued that Province, making himself Master of a considerable Treasure he found there. He then reconciled himself to *Ptolemy*, and married his Daughter *Ptolomeida*, and had the Island of *Cyprus* and the two important Port Towns of *Tyre* and *Sidon* confirmed to him.

Cassander dying about this Time, left three Sons, which he had by *Thessalonica*, one of the Sisters of *Alexander the Great*: *Philip*, his eldest Son, who succeeded him, dying soon after, his two Brothers, *Alexander* and *Antipater*, contended for that Crown. In the mean Time, *Demetrius* sailed with his Fleet to *Greece*, reduced *Athens*, *Sparta*, and many other Cities that had revolted from him; but received Intelligence while he remained there, that *Lyfimachus* had seized all his Territories in *Asia*; and that *Ptolemy* had taken *Cyprus*, with the two Cities of *Tyre* and *Sidon*. To make him some amends, however, for these Losses, *Alexander* and *Antipater*, the two Sons of *Cassander*, contending for the Crown of *Macedon*, one of them called in *Demetrius* to his Assistance; and the *Macedonians* soon after made choice of *Demetrius* for their King; which Crown he enjoyed seven Years; *Alexander*, *Cassander's* eldest Son, having lost his Life in these Contentions, and *Antipater* the other Son, flying into *Thrace*, where he died.

Demetrius
elected
King of
Macedon.

Demetrius was not content with the Sovereignty of *Macedon* and *Greece*, but formed a Design of recovering the Dominions of his Father *Antigonus*, in *Asia*; and for that End assembled an Army of 100,000 Men, and a Fleet of 500 Sail of Ships; which so alarmed *Ptolemy*, *Seleucus*, and *Lyfimachus*, that they renewed their former Alliance, and engaged *Pyrrhus*, King of *Epirus*, in a Confederacy against *Demetrius*; and while *Lyfimachus* invaded *Macedon* on one side, *Pyrrhus* entered that Kingdom on the other. The Forces of *Demetrius* deserting over to *Pyrrhus*, the *Macedonians* proclaimed him their King; and *Demetrius* was obliged to fly into *Greece*. But *Pyrrhus* did not long enjoy *Macedon* in Peace, for *Lyfimachus* insisted, that as he had his Share in expelling their common Enemy, he ought to share that Kingdom with *Pyrrhus*; and *Macedon* was thereupon divided between

tween them; but so inconstant were that People, they soon after expelled *Pyrrhus*, and proclaimed *Lyfimachus* sole King of *Macedon*: *Demetrius* on the other side, having assembled an Army of 11000 Men in *Greece*, left his Son *Antigonus* his Lieutenant on that Side, and sailed into *Asia*, where he invaded the Territories of *Lyfimachus*, and took *Sardis*; but was obliged to abandon this and all his Acquisitions soon after, upon the Approach of *Agathocles* the Son of *Lyfimachus* with a superior Force. *De-* *Demetrius* *metrius* then marched Eastward, designing to surprise *Ar-* *taken Pri-* *menia* and *Media*; but being disappointed in all his At- *soner, dies-* *tempts*, he was at length made Prisoner by *Seleucus*, and died in his Confinement. *Ptolemy Soter*, the Son of *Lagus*, *Ptolemy* after a Reign of twenty Years in *Egypt*, with the Stile of *dies-* *King*, and of near thirty nine from the Death of *Alexander*, was desirous of transmitting the Throne to *Ptolemy Philadelphus*, one of his Sons by *Berenice*, though he had several Children by his other Wives; and among the rest *Ptolemy*, surnamed *Ceraunus*, or the *Thunderer*; who being the Son of *Eurydice*, the Daughter of *Antipater*, and the eldest of the Male Issue, considered the Crown as his Right, after the Death of his Father. But *Berenice*, who came into *Egypt* with *Eurydice* at the Time of her Espousals with *Ptolemy*, so exceedingly charmed that Prince with her Beauty, that he married her; and so great was her ascendant over him, that she caused him to prefer her Son to all his Issue by the other Queens.

Ptolemy, in order therefore to prevent all Disputes and Wars that might ensue after his Death, which he was sensible could not be very remote, as he was then eighty Years of Age, resolved to have him crowned in his own Life-time, and to resign all his Dominions to him.

Ptolemy Ceraunus thereupon quitted the Court, and retired to *Lyfimachus*, whose Son *Agathocles* had espoused *Lyfandra*, the Sister of *Ceraunus* both by Father and Mother; and after the Death of *Agathocles* he removed to the Court of *Seleucus*.

Ptolemy Philadelphus, after the Death of his Father, *Ptolemy* became sole Master of all his Dominions, which were *Philadel-* *composed* of *Egypt*, and many Provinces dependant on *phus's Ac-* *it*; that is to say, *Phenicia*, *Celosyria*, *Arabia-Petrea*, *cession.* *Lybia*, *Ethiopia*, the Island of *Cyprus*, *Pamphylia*, *Cilicia*, *Lycia*, *Caria*, and the Isles called the *Cyclades*.

Seleucus and *Lyfimachus* only now survived of all *Alex-* *ander's* *Generals*: They had hitherto lived in perfect *Friend-*

Seleucus
resigns his
Queen to
his Son
Antio-
chus.

Friendship; but each of them aspiring to the sole Monarchy of the Dominions that *Alexander* had conquered, and some Family Quarrels happening at the same Time among the Women (for they were nearly related by Inter-marriages) both Sides prepared for War; but before the Commencement of it, it is said, *Seleucus* being informed that his Son *Antiochus* entertained a Passion for *Stratonice* his Mother-in-law, and that he was dying for her, the kind Father apprehending that nothing else would save his Son's Life, agreed to part with his Queen, and resign her to *Antiochus*, who thereupon married her: The only Instance of the Kind perhaps that is to be found in History.

Lyfima-
chus kill-
ed.

Seleucus
assassinat-
ed.

Soon after the Solemnization of this Marriage, both Armies took the Field, and a Battle was fought in *Phrygia*, in which *Lyfimachus* was killed, and *Seleucus* obtained a compleat Victory, which made him Master of all the Dominions of his Rival. *Seleucus* going over into *Europe* to possess himself of *Macedonia*, the same Year the Battle was fought, was assassinated by *Ptolemy Ceraunus*, a Prince whom he had infinitely obliged, and whose Restoration to the Throne of *Egypt* he was meditating at that time. *Seleucus* had reigned as King twenty Years, if we compute from the Battle of *Ipsus*, and thirty one, if we compute from the Time these Governors assumed the Name of Kings, from which Time the *Æra* of the *Seleucidæ* commences.

Ptolemy
Ceraun-
us King of
Macedon.

The Friends of *Lyfimachus* in *Macedonia*, upon the Death of *Seleucus*, immediately advanced *Ceraunus* to the Throne; which makes it probable, that it was a View to this Advancement, that induced *Ceraunus* to commit the Murder, and that the Matter had been concerted some time between him and the *Macedonians*.

And as *Ceraunus* could not expect to enjoy the Crown in Peace, so long as the Sons of *Lyfimachus* were living, in order to get them into his Power, he courted *Arfinoe* their Mother, offering to make her his Queen, though she was his Sister; to which the Lady consenting, he caused her two Sons to be murdered, and banished her the Country.

He is kill-
ed.
Irruption
of the
Gauls.

Ptolemy Ceraunus did not long enjoy the Kingdom he had obtained by so many Murders; for the *Gauls* making an Irruption into *Macedonia*, defeated his Army and killed him. The *Gauls* afterwards passed the *Hellsfont* into *Asia*, and possessed that Country, called from them *Gallæcia*, and afterwards *Galatia*: *Meleager*, the Brother of *Ptolemy Ceraunus*, succeeded him, and reigned two Months, when

when the *Macedonians* deposed him, and set *Antipater* the Brother of *Cassander* on the Throne; who reigned but forty five Days, and was succeeded by *Softhenes* in the Power, though not in the Title, of King; who dying after a Reign of two Years, *Antigonus Gonatus* and *Antiochus* King of *Syria*, contended for the Crown of *Macedon*; but upon a Treaty between those two Princes, *Antiochus* King of *Syria* afterwards yielded *Macedonia* to *Antigonus Gonatus*, who was the Son of the celebrated *Demetrius Poliorcetes* late King of *Macedon*. The Posterity of *Antigonus Donatus* enjoyed the Throne of *Macedon* for several Generations; *Perseus* was the last Prince of this Race, who was subdued by the *Romans*, commanded by *Paulus Emilius*; and that Kingdom not long after was converted into a *Roman Province*.

Antiochus the Son of *Seleucus* succeeding his Father in the Kingdom of *Syria*, as has been observed already; and having made Peace with *Antigonus Donatus*, marched against the *Gauls*, who were committing great Devastations in *Asia*; he defeated them, and delivered the Country from their Incurfions; whereupon he obtained the Name of *Soter*, or the *Saviour*. He afterwards invaded the Territories of *Eumenes* Prince of *Pergamus*, whose Uncle and Predecessor *Phileterus*, had usurped the Dominion of that Province; but he was defeated by *Eumenes*, who thereupon made further Acquisitions, and enlarged his Dominions.

Antiochus retiring to his capital City of *Antioch*, after his Defeat, put to Death one of his Sons, who was charged with entering into a Conspiracy against him during his Absence; his other Son named *Antiochus*, he caused to be proclaimed King of *Syria*: This Son he had by *Stratonice* the Daughter of *Demetrius*, who was first Mother-in-law, and then Wife to this Prince, as has been related already.

Antiochus Soter dying, was succeeded by his Son *Antiochus*, surnamed *Theos*, or *The God*, with which Title the *Milesians* first flattered him, upon his delivering them from the Tyranny of *Timarchus*, who had usurped the Government of *Garia*, and made the City of *Miletus* his Capital. A War breaking out afterwards between *Antiochus Theos* and *Ptolemy*, the Eastern Provinces finding *Antiochus* engaged on the Side of *Egypt*, revolted. *Arfaces* drove out the *Macedonians*, and laid the Foundation of the *Parthian Empire*; *Theodotus* also assumed an Independency, and became King of *Bactria*, a Country, which it is said, con-

contained 1000 Cities (Historians it is presumed giving that Name to every Village.)

Antiochus apprehending the Revolt of the rest of the Eastern Provinces, found it necessary to put an End to the War with *Egypt*; a Treaty was therefore set on Foot, in which *Ptolemy* obliged him to submit to the following Terms, viz. That *Antiochus* should divorce his Wife *Laodice* (who was his Sister) and marry *Berenice*, *Ptolemy's* Daughter, and settle the Crown upon her Issue: And *Antiochus* thereupon parted with *Laodice*, though she had two Sons by him. *Ptolemy Philadelphus* dying two Years after, *Antiochus* dismissed *Berenice*, and recalled *Laodice* and her Children, *Seleucus Callimachus*, and *Antiochus Hierax*; but *Laodice* suspecting *Antiochus* might alter his Mind, gave him a Dose of Poison, concealing his Death however, till she had fixed her Son *Seleucus* upon the Throne; and to prevent any Attempts against him by *Berenice* and her Son, she caused them both to be murdered; which so exasperated the *Asiatics*, as well as the *Egyptians*, that they joined *Ptolemy Evergetes*, who made a Conquest of *Syria* and *Cilicia*, and subdued most of the *Asian* Dominions, as far as the River *Tigris*, and had made a Conquest of the whole Country, if an Insurrection in *Africa* had not obliged him to return; however he had Time to plunder the Country, and carried immense Sums back to *Egypt*. In the mean time, the Cities of *Smyrna* and *Magnesia* entered into a Confederacy in Favour of *Seleucus*, which Treaty was engraved on a Column of Marble, now at *Oxford*, having been brought thither by *Thomas Earl of Arundel*, in the Reign of King *Charles I.*

Ptolemy
Evergetes
subdues
Syria.

Seleucus
taken Pri-
soner by
Arfaces,
dies in Con-
finement.
Antiochus
her Son re-
covers the
revolted
Provinces.

Seleucus afterwards attempting to reduce *Parthia*, was taken Prisoner by *Arfaces*, and after some Years Confinement died in *Parthia*; leaving behind him two Sons, Minors, viz. *Seleucus* and *Antiochus*. *Seleucus* died after a short inactive Reign, and was succeeded by his Brother *Antiochus*. *Acheus* being constituted his General in the Lesser *Asia*, recovered all those Countries *Attalus* had possessed himself of, and confined him within the Limits of *Pergamus*; but *Nolo* who had been appointed Governor of *Media*, and *Alexander*, who was sent to command in *Persia*, revolted, and assumed an Independency in their respective Governments, and twice defeated the King's Troops that were sent against them; but the King marching against these Rebels in Person, afterwards reduced the Eastern Provinces to his Obedience. He also attacked *Artabazanes*, who had usurped the Dominion of Part of *Media*, and obliged

obliged him to submit to such Terms as the King was pleased to impose upon him; he obtained still a greater Victory over his Prime Minister *Hermias*, who had betrayed him in many Instances, and been the Death of several brave Men devoted to his Majesty's Service by false Accusations; particularly of *Epigenes*, one of the greatest Generals in his Army. *Hermias* was also engaged in a Conspiracy to destroy the King himself; which being timely discovered, he met with the Reward of his Treachery, being surprised by some of the King's Guards, and cut off without a formal Trial.

Acheus in the mean time had usurped the Dominion of *Ursurpation*
great Part of *Asia Minor*, of which he had been constituted Governor by *Antiochus*, as a Reward for his eminent Services, in advancing the King to the Crown, at a Time when he was offered the Throne himself. *Acheus* remained faithful to this Prince, until the Prime Minister envying his Success, had procured Letters to be forged to prove him guilty of a Conspiracy, and then *Acheus* finding his Life struck at, stood upon his Defence, and assumed an Independence, in the Province of which he had been made Governor. The King would have marched with his Army thither immediately, in order to suppress him, but was engaged at the same Time in a War for the Recovery of *Phenicia* and *Palestine*, which *Ptolemy* King of *Egypt* still possessed: *Antiochus* was at first very successful in this War, recovering *Seleucia*, which is situate at the Mouth of the River *Orontes*, and most of the Towns in *Phenicia*; but was afterwards defeated by *Ptolomy*, and by a Treaty concluded with that Prince, obliged to surrender all the Towns he had taken. His principal Inducement to the making this Treaty, was the great Progress *Acheus* made in *Asia*, which seemed to endanger the Loss of all *Syria*. The *Egyptian* War therefore was no sooner ended, but *Antiochus* entered into an Alliance with *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, and attacking *Acheus* with their united Forces, obliged him to shut himself up in the Castle of *Sardis*, from whence endeavouring to make his Escape, after he had defended it bravely a whole Year, he was treacherously delivered up to *Antiochus* by two pretended Friends. *Antiochus* remembering that it was *Acheus* who set the Crown upon his Head, seemed to have some Compassion for this General, and even wept, if we may credit History; but considering how popular a Man he was, and how much it would lye in the Power of *Acheus* to distress

distress his Affairs, if he was suffered to live, ordered his Head to be struck off the next Morning.

Parthian
Kingdom.

Antiochus having put an End to this domestic War, assembled an Army the next Year, and marched Eastward, in order to recover the Provinces which had revolted on that Side: He reduced *Media*, which *Arfaces* had possessed himself of, and afterwards *Parthia*; but *Arfaces* retiring over the Mountains into *Hyrcania* protracted the War so long, that *Antiochus* thought fit to enter into a Treaty with him, wherein *Parthia* and *Hyrcania* were confirmed to *Arfaces*, on Condition that he should join his Forces with *Antiochus*, and assist him in reducing the rest of the revolted Provinces. This *Arfaces* was the Son of him who founded the *Parthian* Empire.

The next Campaign, *Antiochus* invaded *Bactria*, which *Eutbydemus* the King so well defended, that he obtained the following Terms of *Antiochus*, viz. That the Son of *Eutbydemus* should marry one of the Daughters of *Antiochus*, and that *Eutbydemus* should surrender his Elephants to *Antiochus*. This War being concluded, *Antiochus* marched to the Frontiers of *India*, where he renewed his Alliances with the *Indian* Princes; and then returned to *Antioch*, having been seven Years engaged in these Eastern Expeditions.

Ptolemy
Epipha-
nes.

Ptolemy Philopater King of *Egypt* dying about this Time, was succeeded by his Son *Ptolemy Epiphanes*, an Infant of five Years of Age. *Antiochus* looking upon this as a proper time to endeavour the Recovery of *Phenicia* and *Palestine*, and reduce *Egypt* itself under his Obedience, he entered into an Alliance with *Philip* King of *Macedon*, with whom he agreed to divide the *Egyptian* Territories, when they should be conquered.

The Ro-
mans pro-
tect Egypt,
and the
Grecian
Cities of
Asia, a-
gainst An-
tiochus.

Antiochus therefore assembled his Army, and invaded *Phenicia* and *Palestine*, which he made himself Master of in one Campaign. *Ptolemy's* Guardians apprehending the Loss of the whole Kingdom, applied to the *Romans* for their Protection, offering the Guardianship of the young King, and the Regency of the Kingdom to them, which the *Romans* accepted, and prevented *Antiochus* advancing further on that Side. Whereupon *Antiochus* marched into *Asia Minor*, in order to recover such Territories and Cities as had been dismembred from the *Syrian* Empire, and having made himself Master of *Ephesus* and several Cities more, the rest of the *Grecian* Cities in *Asia* sent to the *Romans* for their Protection, who very readily promised them their Assistance.

In

In the mean time *Antiochus* with Part of his Army passed the *Hellepont*, and invaded *Thrace*, which was formerly possessed by his Ancestors; whereupon the *Romans* sent Ambassadors to *Antiochus*, requiring him to withdraw his Forces out of *Europe*, and restore the *Grecian* Cities in *Asia* to their Liberties. Both which Demands the King refused to comply with; and the celebrated *Hannibal* residing in his Court at the same Time, on whose military Skill he much depended, he determined to commence a War with the *Romans*, and *Hannibal* made some Attempts to engage the *Carthaginians* to take a Part in the War, but without Effect; nor would *Prusias* King of *Bithynia* join him. *Antiochus* endeavoured to strengthen himself by other Alliances; particularly with that of *Egypt*, having made Peace with that Country, and married his Daughter *Cleopatra* to their young Monarch, yielding to him the Country of *Phenicia* and *Palestine*, as Part of her Dowry. He married *Antiochis* his second Daughter, to *Ariarthes* King of *Cappadocia*, with whom he made an Alliance; and offered his third Daughter to *Eumenes*, King of *Pergamus*, an Ally of *Rome*; but *Eumenes* refused to treat with him, preferring the Friendship of *Rome* to that of *Antiochus*; who nevertheless invaded *Pisidia*, and declared War against the *Romans*; and assembled a numerous Fleet to prevent the *Romans* transporting their Forces into *Asia*; but his Fleet being destroyed by the Enemy, or by Storms, he withdrew his Forces out of *Thrace*, and the *Romans* passed the *Hellepont* without Opposition. The two Armies soon after engaged in a general Battle, wherein the *Romans* were victorious, and *Antiochus* obliged to beg a Peace. The Terms wherof were, That he should renounce all claim to any Territories in *Europe*, and to all Dominions in *Asia* beyond Mount *Taurus*, and pay 15,000 Talents toward the Charges of the War; that he should deliver up *Hannibal* and several other Generals named by the *Romans*, and give besides twenty noble Hostages, whereof *Antiochus* the King's younger Son should be one; that he should deliver up all his Elephants; and lastly, that he should suffer his whole Navy to be burnt, which was accordingly executed: And to raise the Money required, *Antiochus* plundered the Temple of *Belus* of a prodigious Treasure; at which the People were so exasperated, that they assassinated him.

His Son *Seleucus Philopater* succeeded him, and finding it difficult to raise the Tribute the *Romans* required, plundered the Temple of *Jerusalem* of its Treasure: And now

Antiochus

Antiochus
invades
Thrace,
and is op-
posed by
the Ro-
mans.

The Ro-
mans in-
vade *Asia*,
and defeat
Antiochus.
Antiochus
yields up
Thrace,
and Part
of *Asia*,
and agrees
to deliver
up *Hanni-*
bal.
He is assas-
sinated.

Seleucus,
his Acces-
sion.

He is poi-
soned.
Antiochus
succeeds
him ;

invades
Egypt.

The Ro-
mans ob-
lige An-
tiochus to
abandon
Egypt.

Antiochus the younger Son of the late King, having remained thirteen Years a Hostage at *Rome*, his Brother *Seleucus* offered to send his own Son *Demetrius* to *Rome* in his stead, if that Republic would send back his Brother *Antiochus*; which the Senate agreed to. In the mean time *Heliodorus*, Prime Minister in the Syrian Court, poisoned *Seleucus*, and usurped his Throne; but *Antiochus* being assisted by *Eumenes* King of *Pergamus*, deposed the Usurper, and was acknowledged King of *Syria*.

Ptolemy King of *Egypt* being at this time a Minor, the Regents of that Kingdom required *Antiochus* to restore *Phenicia* and *Palestine*, which they said had been unjustly taken from the *Egyptians* by the *Syrians*. Whereupon *Antiochus* visited his Frontiers towards *Egypt*, and put them in a Posture of Defence, and chusing to make the Enemies Country the Seat of War, the next Year invaded *Egypt*, and giving Battle to the *Egyptian* Army, obtained a compleat Victory, took *Pelusium*, and marched into the Heart of the Kingdom. *Memphis* and most of the other Towns surrendered and made their Submission; only *Alexandria* of any Consequence held out, and the young King *Ptolemy Philometer* was made Prisoner. The *Alexandrians* thereupon proclaimed *Evergetes* his younger Brother their King, who was afterward called *Physcon*, or *The Great Belly*. *Antiochus* thereupon laid Siege to *Alexandria*, and the *Egyptians* finding their Affairs in a desperate Situation, applied to the *Romans* again for their Protection, who immediately sent Embassadors to *Antiochus*, requiring him to suspend all Hostilities against the *Egyptians*; which *Antiochus* did not think fit to do, marched to *Memphis*, and there proclaimed *Ptolemy Philometer* his Prisoner, King, in Opposition to *Physcon*: But the two Brothers apprehending that *Antiochus* designed to set them at Variance, in order to sieze the Kingdom himself, came to a Treaty, and agreed to reign jointly; whereupon *Antiochus* having reinforced his Army, marched into *Egypt* again, declaring War against the Brothers, requiring that the Island of *Cyprus* and the City of *Pelusium*, as well as *Phenicia* and *Palestine*, should be confirmed to him. He was advanced to the City of *Memphis*, when the *Romans* interposed, and commanded him to retire from *Egypt*; with which he thought fit immediately to comply, and withdrew his Troops from *Cyprus*; but in his Return to *Syria*, he burnt and plundered *Judæa* in a very terrible Manner, till the *Maccabees* stood upon their Defence, and bravely defeated

defeated several Armies, that were successively sent against them.

The *Armenians* and *Persians* revolted about the same Time; but *Antiochus* marching against *Artaxias* King of *Armenia*, defeated him and took him Prisoner: He was not so successful in *Persia*, for advancing to *Elymais*, with an Intention to plunder the City and Temple, which were immensely rich, the whole Country rose upon him, and obliged him to retire to *Ecbatana* in *Media*; where receiving Advice, that all his Generals had been defeated in *Judaea* by the *Maccabees*, he was returning thither with the utmost Expedition, to take his full Revenge upon the *Jews*, but died upon the Road, having reigned eleven Years. *Philip* his first Minister was appointed Regent till *Eupator* his Infant Son should be of Age; but *Philip*, upon his Arrival at *Antioch*, finding that *Lysias* the General had usurped the Regency, retired into *Egypt*.

Demetrius, the Son of *Seleucus Philopater*, elder Brother *Demetrius* of the late King, still remaining a Hostage at *Rome*, re- us King of presented to the Senate, that he had an undoubted Right *Syria*. to the Throne of *Syria*, as he was descended from the eldest Brother, and desired he might return to *Syria*, to make good his Claim; and being denied, retired privately from *Rome*, and arrived at *Antioch*, where he found the People unanimous for his being advanced to the Throne, and thereupon proclaimed him King of *Syria*; and *Lysias* with *Eupator*, the Infant King lost their Lives in the Tumult, which brought about this Revolution.

Demetrius in the Beginning of his Reign, understanding that *Timarchus*, Governor of *Babylon*, had been guilty of great Oppressions, caused him to be put to Death; whereupon that People gave *Demetrius* the Name of *Soter*, or *Deliverer*. His next Enterprize was against *Judaea*, in which War the celebrated *Judas Maccabeus* lost his Life, after he had obtained several Victories over his Enemies.

In the mean time a Conspiracy was formed against *Demetrius*, by *Holiphernes* (a Nobleman whom he had highly obliged) supported by *Ariarathes* King of *Cappadocia*, *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, and *Philometer* King of *Egypt*; which was timely discovered: But *Demetrius* apprehending he was still in great Danger, from the Confederacy of these Powers, considered how he might make the *Romans* his Friends, and prevent the Ruin of his Family. He sent his Son therefore to *Rome* to be educated there, imagining that this Instance of his Confidence in that Republic would infallibly secure their Friendship to his Family:

F

But

*Balas an
Impostor set
up against
Demetri-
us, by the
Name of
Alexander.*

*Demetri-
us defeat-
ed and kill-
ed.*

*Alexan-
der recog-
nized
King.*

But in this he was mistaken; they still resented the Father's leaving them, and ascending the Throne of *Syria* without their Leave, and treated his Son as a Prisoner, rather than the Son of a King, who was their Ally: Whereupon the Prince's Governors thought fit to retire with him to *Syria* again, without taking Leave of the Senate: Whereupon *Balas*, an Impostor, being set up against *Demetrius*, as a Son of *Antiochus Epiphanes*, and Heir to the Crown of *Syria*, by the three Kings abovementioned, the *Romans* countenanced the Plot, though every Man at *Rome* was convinced of the Cheat; and *Balas* having taken the Name of *Alexander*, they recommended him to the *Syrians* as their rightful Sovereign: Upon his Arrival at *Ptolemais*, therefore, he found the People very ready to acknowledge him their King, and assist him in his Views upon the Throne; at the same Time, the three Kings, *Ariarethes*, *Ptolemy*, and *Attalus*, supported him with large Detachments of their Forces. *Demetrius* on the other Hand assembled his Army, and applied himself to *Jonathan*, the Son of *Judas Maccabeus*, a Commander of great Fame, to join him with a Body of *Jewish* Forces, promising that Nation very great Privileges: But the *Jews* having been very great Sufferers by this Family, refused to join him, and took Part with his Enemies. The two Kings at length came to a Battle, in which *Demetrius* was victorious; but such Reinforcements arrived daily from the three Kings, and from the *Jews*, that *Demetrius* was in a second Battle entirely defeated, and killed upon the Spot; but before the Engagement, being apprehensive of what might happen, he had sent away his two Sons, *Demetrius* and *Antiochus*, to *Cnidus*, a City of *Caria*, with great Part of his Treasure, there to wait a favourable Turn of Fortune.

Alexander having obtained the Victory, and now universally acknowledged King of *Syria*, demanded *Cleopatra*, the Daughter of *Ptolemy* King of *Egypt*, for his Wife; which that Prince agreed to, and the Nuptials were solemnized with great Magnificence.

The Usurper no sooner found himself established on the Throne, but he abandoned himself to all manner of Excesses, shut himself up with his Women, and left his Subjects to be oppressed, by one of the haughtiest and cruel Ministers that ever Prince entertained; who murdered all the Royal Family he could meet with, and the Nobility he suspected to be in their Interest; and *Alexander* behaved himself so very ill towards his Father-in-Law, *Ptolemy*, that he made him his Enemy: Whereupon young *Demetrius*,

metrius, who resided at *Cnidus*, ventured to assert his Right, and no sooner appeared among the *Syrians*, but they acknowledged him their King. *Alexander* was defeated, both himself and his Prime Minister killed, and *Cleopatra* was married to *Demetrius*, with the Consent of her Father *Ptolemy*: Some relate she was married to *Demetrius*, before *Alexander* her former Husband was dead.

Demetrius was no sooner settled in the Throne, but he left the Care of the Government entirely to his Ministers; who oppressed the People to a very great Degree, and put to Death those who had opposed his Accession; *Tryphon* and by these Cruelties, having alienated the whole Kingdom from him, *Diodotus* a popular Nobleman, *usurps the Throne.* named *Tryphon*, entered into a Conspiracy to depose him, and usurp the Throne; and sending for *Antiochus* the Son of *Balas*, proclaimed him King, pretending to administer the Government in his Name at first. The People readily acknowledging *Antiochus* their King, *Tryphon* assembled an Army, and giving Battle to *Demetrius*, defeated him; *Demetrius* however being assisted by the *Jews*, had restored his Affairs again in some Measure, when he was called into the East, to defend his Subjects on that Side, against the Incurfions of the *Parthians*; and on his Arrival there, being joined by the *Elymeans*, *Persians* and *Bactrians*, obtained several Victories over the *Parthians*; but was at length made Prisoner by *Mithridates* King of *Parthia*, who sent him into *Hycania*, where he remained in Confinement several Years, and at length married *Rhodagune*, the Daughter of *Mithridates*; and though he was still a Captive, had all the Liberty he could expect, while he was in that Country. *Demetrius taken Prisoner in Parthia.*

Cleopatra the former Wife of *Demetrius*, thereupon, took upon her the Administration, and *Tryphon* having been guilty of great Cruelty and Oppression, many of his Troops deserted over to her; and to strengthen her Party, she invited *Antiochus Sidetes*, her Husband's younger Brother to join her, promising to marry him, and set the Crown upon his Head; which she thought herself at Liberty to do, since *Demetrius* had married the Daughter of the *Parthian* King. *Antiochus* accepted the Offer, married *Cleopatra*, and caused himself to be proclaimed King of *Syria*, being usually stiled, *Antiochus Sidetes.* *Antiochus his younger Brother proclaimed King.*

He soon after assembling an Army, marched against *Tryphon*; who was generally abandoned by the *Syrians*, and at length murdered by the exasperated People, on whom he had exercised the most barbarous Cruelties. *Antiochus Sidetes* now enjoying the Throne without a Rival, raised a numerous Army, with which he advanced to-

Antiochus
and his
Syrians
massacred
by the Par-
thians.

wards the East, and attacked the *Parthians*, obtaining several Victories over them; but the following Winter his Army being divided, and several Corps quartered at too great a Distance to be joined suddenly, the Inhabitants of those Countries being daily plundered and abused by the Soldiers of *Antiochus*, joined with the *Parthians*, and massacred the whole Syrian Army in one Day, *Antiochus* himself not escaping their Fury.

Demetrius
set at Li-
berty by the
Parthians
reascends
the Syrian
Throne;

The *Parthian* King had a little before set his Brother *Demetrius* at Liberty, and sent him into *Syria*, that he might make a Diversion on that Side, and oblige *Antiochus* to withdraw his Forces from the East. *Demetrius* arriving in *Syria*, reascended the Throne of *Syria*, and finding the *Egyptians* engaged in a Civil War, invaded that Country; whereupon *Physcon* King of *Egypt*, set up a Pretender to his Throne, called *Alexander Zebina*, who was joined by the disaffected *Syrians*, and coming to a Battle with *Demetrius*, defeated and afterwards murdered him. *Seleucus*, his Son by *Cleopatra*, then mounted the Throne, but was soon after murdered by his Mother *Cleopatra*, who looked upon him as her Rival in Power. She then declared her younger Son *Antiochus* King, to strengthen her Interest, but still kept the Administration of the Government in her own Hands. The young Prince obtained the Name of *Grypus*: He suffered his Mother for some Time to reign without interposing in Affairs of State; and *Ptolemy Physcon* King of *Egypt*, joining his Forces with those of *Cleopatra* and *Grypus*, defeated *Zebina* the Usurper, and he was afterwards put to Death by *Grypus*, who now began to take upon him the Power as well as the Name of King, not suffering *Cleopatra* to have the Direction of Affairs as she had hitherto; at which she was so incensed, that she prepared a Dose of Poison, and brought him with her own Hands, when he came in hot and weary from his Exercises; but he having some Intimation of her Design, compelled her to drink it herself, which soon put an End to her Life.

is mur-
dered:
His Son
Seleucus
murdered
by his Mo-
ther Cleo-
patra.
Grypus II
Son of De-
metrius,
King.

Cleopatra
compelled
by Deme-
trius her
Son to
drink the
Poison she
had pre-
pared for
him.

Grypus reigned in Peace eight Years afterwards; when his Half-Brother *Antiochus Cyrenicus*, aspired to the Throne, and several Battles were fought between them: At length, they agreed to divide the Kingdom: *Antiochus* reigned at *Damascus* over *Cælosyria* and *Phœnicia*; and *Grypus* possessed the Capital City of *Antioch*, and the other Provinces: Neither of them being satisfied with his Share, the War soon broke out again, and during these Contentions, several Places rendered themselves independent
of

of either; particularly *Tyre, Sidon, Ptolemais, and Gaza*, Grypus with the Territories about them. Grypus, having reigned twenty nine Years, was assassinated by one of his Subjects; whereupon *Seleucus*, his eldest Son, succeeded him; and having defeated *Cyzicenus*, reigned sole Sovereign of Syria a little while; but he was afterwards defeated by *Antiochus Eusebes*, the Son of *Cyzicenus*, and killed. Still the Seleucus Civil Wars continued in Syria; the Sons of Grypus and of *Cyzicenus* contending for the Throne. and possessing it alternately, till the People wearied out with the Murders and Ravages committed by their Troops, offered the Crown to *Tigranes*, King of Armenia, who reigned King of Syria fourteen Years, till the Romans under *Pompey*, conquered *Tigranes*; after which Syria became a Roman Province. It is computed that the Crown of Syria continued in the Family of *Seleucus* about 250 Years; and from *Alexander's* Conquest of this Country to the Roman Conquest, was about 270 Years. *The Romans conquer Syria.*

But notwithstanding the *Seleucidæ* were Sovereigns of great Part of the *Macedonian* or *Grecian* Empire, there were several other Kingdoms and States erected within these Limits, which assumed an Independency at the same Time the *Seleucidæ* reigned in Syria; among which *Parthia* made as great a Figure as any of them, and will therefore be next described.

The KINGDOM of PARTHIA.

PARTHIA, the Modern *Eyrac Agem*, was bounded by *Hyrcania* on the North, by *Bactria* on the East, by *Persia* on the South, and by *Media* and *Assyria* on the West: It is situate almost in the Middle of the *Modern Persia*, the chief Town at present *Ispahan*, formerly *Hecatompylos*, situate in 50 Degrees of Eastern Longitude, and in 32 Degrees 30 Minutes North Latitude. *Parthia* was a Province of the *Assyrian* and *Persian* Empires, and afterwards of the *Grecian* Monarchy: It was also subject to *Seleucus*, one of the Successors of *Alexander*, being comprehended in the Kingdom of Syria, and remained Part of the Dominions of the *Seleucidæ*, until *Arfaces*, a *Parthian* Nobleman, revolted in the Reign of *Antiochus Theos* King of Syria, whom he defeated and made Prisoner; and from that Time *Arfaces* stiled himself King of *Parthia*; and his Successors of this Race were from him called *Arfaces*, or the *Arfacides*. *Arfaces* the First

Situation.

Arfaces, the first King.

A. M. 3718.

made a Conquest of *Hyrkania*, (the South Coast of the *Caspian Sea*) but was killed in a Battle he fought with *Ariarethes* King of *Cappadocia*.

Arfaces II. *Arfaces* II. his Son, conquered *Media*; but *Antiochus* the Great, King of *Syria*, recovered it again; and at a Treaty of Peace concluded between those two Princes, it was agreed that *Arfaces* should relinquish *Media*, and only retain *Parthia* and *Hyrkania*, and that he should join *Antiochus* with a Body of his Forces, and assist him in reducing some other Provinces that had revolted from him in the East.

Priapatus. *Priapatus* succeeded his Father *Arfaces* II. and seems to have reigned in Peace 15 Years: He left three Sons, (*viz.*) *Phraates*, *Mithridates*, and *Artabanus*, and was succeeded by *Phraates* the eldest, who had a numerous Issue, but left the Crown to his Brother *Mithridates*, who made a Conquest of *Media*, *Elymais*, *Persia*, *Bactria*, and *India*, as far as the *Ganges*. He also reduced *Babylonia* and *Mesopotamia*: And when *Demetrius Nicator*, King of *Syria*, attempted to recover the Eastern Provinces from him, he defeated his Army, and made *Demetrius* Prisoner; whom he used with the greatest Humanity, and married his Daughter *Rhodagune* to him, but still detained him a Prisoner at large in the Province of *Hyrkania*; where he remained at the Death of *Mithridates*, but was released by his Son *Phraates*, as related in the History of *Syria*.

Phraates II. In the Reign of *Phraates* II. *Antiochus Sidetes*, King of *Syria*, attempted the Recovery of *Assyria*, and the adjacent Provinces, and defeated the Forces of *Phraates* in three general Battles; but in a fourth, *Phraates* obtained a signal Victory; in which Battle *Antiochus* was killed. *Phraates* had hired a Body of *Scythians* to reinforce his Troops in this War; but they not arriving until *Antiochus* was defeated, the *Parthians* refused to pay them; whereupon the *Scythians* plundered the Country, and a War commenced between the two Nations: *Phraates* thereupon took the *Grecian* Troops into his Service, whom he had made Prisoners in the Wars with *Antiochus*. These, however, having been hardly used during their Captivity, deserted over to the *Scythians*. *Phraates* was defeated and killed in a general Battle, as was *Artabanus* his Successor, in another Battle with the *Scythians*.

Artabanus 3857. *Pacorus*, the Son of *Artabanus*, succeeded him; and in order to strengthen himself, probably against the Invasion of the *Scythians*, sent Embassadors to *Sylla*, who commanded

manded the *Romans* against *Tygranes* King of *Armenia*, *Romans*.
proposing an Alliance with them; which *Sylla* accepted,
and signed a Treaty with the *Parthians*.

Phraates III. succeeded his Father *Pacorus*, and re- *Phraates*
newed the Alliance with the *Romans*, then commanded III.
by *Pompey*; but was soon after assassinated by his two
Sons, *Orodes* and *Mithridates*; who not agreeing about *Orodes*
the Division of his Territories, *Parthia* was engaged in A. M.
a long Civil War, wherein the Brothers possessed the 3903.
Throne alternately, until *Orodes* having made *Mithridates*
Prisoner, put him to Death, and became sole Sovereign
of the *Parthian* Dominions. It was in this Reign that *Crassus in-*
Crassus, one of the *Roman* Triumvirs, having obtained the vades *Par-*
Province of *Syria*, embarked with a powerful Army, *this*.
to take Possession of his Government, and arriving at
Jerusalem, plundered that Temple of all its Wealth:
He afterwards crossed the *Euphrates*, and invaded *Par-*
thia; whereupon the *Parthians* represented that they had
entered into an Alliance with the *Romans*, which had
been renewed both with *Lucullus* and *Pompey*, and the
Conditions had been religiously observed on their Side,
and therefore this Invasion of the *Romans* was very un-
just. However *Crassus* still advanced, and reduced Part
of *Mesopotamia*, the *Parthians* having made no Provision
for their Defence, not expecting an Enemy on that Side:
But some Cities of *Mesopotamia*, and particularly that of
Seleucia on the *Tigris*, making a brave Defence, the *Par-*
thians had Time to assemble their Forces, which *Orodes*
dividing into two Bodies, marched in Person at the Head
of one of them into *Armenia*: That King having come
up to the *Romans* with his Army, the Command of the
other Body of *Parthians* was given to *Surenus*, a cele-
brated General, who soon recovered most of the Cities
of *Mesopotamia*, and at the same time employed *Ab-*
garus King of *Edessa*, who had formerly served under
Pompey, to go to the *Roman* Camp, and pretending a
Friendship for that General, advise him to take such
Measures in his Wars with the *Parthians*, as were most
likely to destroy his Army: When *Abgarus* arrived *Crassus*
therefore in the *Roman* Camp, and understood that *Craf-* *betrayed*.
sus had determined to march along the Banks of the *Eu-*
phrates to *Seleucia*, whereby he would have prevented his
being surrounded by the *Parthians*, and have been sup-
plied by Boats with the necessary Provisions for the Ar-
my, *Abgarus* prevailed with him to alter his Scheme,
telling the General, he would lead him a much shorter

*Craſſus
deſeated.*

Way to the Enemy; and as *Abgarus* was well acquainted with the Country, and entirely confided in by *Craſſus*, the Army followed him as their Guide, till he brought them over Rocks and Mountains that were ſcarce paſſable, and afterwards into an extenſive ſandy Deſart, where they could meet with neither Water nor Proviſions; whereupon the Officers ſuſpected that he was ſent to betray them into theſe Difficulties: However *Craſſus* the General ſtill perſiſted in following his Advice, till the *Parthian* Army appeared not far from them; not ſo numerous however as was expected, for *Surenus* had concealed Part of his Army, which was ordered not to engage till a Signal was given them. But the *Romans* no ſooner charged the Body they ſaw, than they found themſelves ſurrounded on every Side by the other Detachments, who poured in their Arrows upon them, but would not come to a cloſe Fight with the *Romans*, who were not able to overtake them when they retreated, and loſt as many Men when the Enemy retreated as when they ſtood their Ground. Young *Craſſus*, who commanded the Horſe, purſuing them too far, was cut off from the reſt of the Army by the *Parthians*, and finding his Caſe deſperate, either fell upon his own Sword, or was killed by one that attended him, at his Requeſt, when he found himſelf mortally wounded by the Enemies Darts.

The *Parthians* having ſtruck off the Head of young *Craſſus*, fixed it on the Head of a Spear, and advanced to charge *Craſſus* the Father; who defended himſelf till the Night came on, and then retired with his ſhattered Troops to the City of *Carrhæ*, the *Parthians* ſeldom engaging in the Night; but the next Morning *Surenus* inveſted the Place; not ſo cloſely, however, but *Craſſus* retired with his Army from thence the Night following; and truſting to another treacherous Guide, was led into a Country full of Bogs and Morafſes, where he found it impoſſible to diſengage himſelf, *Craſſus* finding they had been betrayed by their Guide, reſuſed to follow him any further, and with 500 Horſe returned to *Carrhæ*, and afterwards found Means to retire into *Syria*. This was that *Craſſus* who afterwards, with his Colleague *Brutus*, oppoſed *Anthony* and *Augustus Cæſar*, *Craſſus* the next Morning was ſurrounded by the Enemy, and *Surenus*, the *Parthian* General, treacherouſly invited him to a Conference, pretending the *Parthians* would gladly have the *Romans* for their Allies; but *Craſſus* doubting his

Sin.

Sincerity, refused to go, till his Soldiers observing there was no other Way possible to escape, forced their General, in a manner, to meet *Surenus*; who thereupon made *Craffus* his Prisoner; which the few Officers that attended him opposing, there followed a Skirmish, wherein *Craffus* and his Friends were killed, and his whole Army afterwards destroyed, 20,000 being killed, and 10,000 made Prisoners, their Baggage and all their Standards and Colours taken; which the *Parthians* kept many Years after as Trophies of their Victories over the *Romans*. This important Service done by *Surenus* to the *Parthian* Nation, soon after proved his Ruin; for whether he assumed too great a Share of the Honour to himself, or was thought to have a View upon the Crown, *Orodes* caused him to be put to Death soon after.

After this Success the *Parthians* invaded *Syria*, advancing as far as the City of *Antioch*; which they besieged, but were obliged by *Cicero* and *Cassius* to return home with the Loss of great part of their Army.

The *Syrians* being afterwards oppressed by Taxes, imposed on them by *Marc Anthony*, to whom that Province was allotted, determined to revolt, and called in the *Parthians* to their Assistance; *Pacorus* the Son of *Orodes*, commanded the *Parthian* Army, and subdued all the *Lesser Asia*, *Syria*, and *Phenicia*, except the City of *Tyre*: He invaded *Judea* also, plundered *Jerusalem*, deposed *Hyrcanus* their Sovereign, and advanced *Antigonus* to that Throne: But *Ventidius*, *Anthony's* Lieutenant, defeated the *Parthians* in several Engagements, most of the Countries the *Parthians* had possessed themselves of, *Pacorus* himself being killed in the last Battle: Whereupon *Anthony* marched in Person at the Head of the *Roman* Army to the Frontiers of *Parthia*, that he might have the Glory of making an End of that War; and at the same time sent *Ventidius* to *Rome*, where he obtained a Triumph for the Services he had done: But instead of finishing the Conquest, *Anthony* was repulsed, and received several Defeats from the *Parthians*, being obliged to retire into *Syria* with Disgrace: He made great Preparations, however, for another Invasion of *Parthia*; but just as he was about to begin his March, receiving a Message from his Mistress *Cleopatra*, importing that she could not live without him, he dropped the Enterprize, and attended her in *Egypt*.

In the mean time *Phraates*, King of *Parthia*, defeated the King of *Media*, and made him Prisoner, reducing both

menia and both *Media* and *Armenia* under his Dominion. *Phraates* *Media*; afterwards oppressing his Subjects, was deposed, and *Tiridates*, a *Parthian* Nobleman, advanced to the Throne. *Phraates* was afterwards restored; but the Country became distracted by Civil Wars, the Throne being possessed sometimes by one, and sometimes by the other, till

established on the Throne by Augustus. *Augustus*, the *Roman* Emperor, established *Phraates* on the Throne, on Condition of his restoring the Colours and Prisoners that had been taken in the Battle where *Crassus* lost his Life. *Phraates* was afterwards poisoned by *Thermusa* his Concubine; whereupon the Civil Wars commenced again, and the *Parthians*, weary of these

Artabanus bloody Contentions, chose *Artabanus*, King of *Media*, their Sovereign, who was of the Family of *Arfaces*. The *Romans* set up the Sons of *Phraates* against him, and created this Prince great Disturbances; but at length he defeated all his Rivals, and died in Peace after a Reign of thirty Years, and was succeeded by his Son *Bardanes*, who made considerable Additions to his Kingdom. These Successes rendering him haughty and imperious, he was murdered by his Subjects. The Civil Wars commenced again on the Death of *Bardanes*, which the *Romans* encouraged, to keep them employed at home; for no Nation was more dreaded by them than the *Parthians*, who frequently made Incursions into *Syria*, and the other *Asiatic* Provinces.

Artabanus.

The *Parthians* massacred by *Caracalla*.

Artabanus IV. King of *Parthia*, possessing that Throne, and being at Peace with *Rome*, *Caracalla* the Emperor sent Ambassadors to him to desire his Daughter in Marriage; which being consented to, both Princes met to solemnize the Wedding, as the *Parthians* apprehended, and therefore came to the Place appointed without Arms; but to their great Surprise *Caracalla* commanded his Troops to fall upon them; who killed some of them, and made Prisoners of the rest. *Artabanus* himself making his Escape, was so incensed at this Treachery, that he raised an Army immediately and invaded *Syria*; but *Caracalla* dying in the mean time, *Macrinus*, who succeeded him, engaged the *Parthian* Army, and it proved a drawn Battle: Whereupon *Macrinus* letting *Artabanus* know, that *Caracalla* his principal Enemy was dead, they struck up a Peace, upon the *Romans* returning the Prisoners *Caracalla* had taken at the treacherous Interview above-mentioned, and paying a Sum of Money towards the Expences of the War. But the *Parthians* having lost most of their bravest Men in these Wars with the

the *Romans*, the *Persians* revolted from them, raised a powerful Army, engaged *Artabanus*, defeated him, and made him Prisoner; and soon after put him to Death, advancing their General *Artaxares* to the Throne of *Persia*, to which Kingdom *Parthia* now became subject; the *Parthians* having had the Dominion of *Persia* four hundred and seventy Years and upwards.

PERSIAN KINGDOM RESTORED.

ARTAXARES, or *Artaxerxes*, the first King of Artax-
this Race, ascended the Throne of *Persia*, A.D. 230. ares,
He was born of mean Parents, and generally held to be A. D.
a Bastard; he was bred a Soldier, and famous for his Military 230.
Skill; and observing the *Parthians* were much divided
by Faction, and weakened by intestine Divisions and
foreign Wars, looked upon this, as a happy Opportunity
to endeavour the freeing his Country from the *Parthian*
Yoke; in which Opinion the Nobility concurring, he as-
sembled their Forces, and defeated the *Parthian* Army, as
related already: He proposed also to recover all those
Countries that had been subject to the ancient *Persian*
Monarchy; commanding the *Roman* Governors to with-
draw their Forces from *Asia*; and on their Refusal, im-
mediately attacked the Towns and Fortresses the *Romans*
possessed on the River *Euphrates*.

Alexander Severus who was Emperor of the *Romans* at Wars be-
this Time, thereupon ordered the Troops in *Asia* to be tween the
assembled, and march into *Mesopotamia*; where *Artaxares* Romans
gave them Battle, but was defeated: However, he made and Per-
good his Retreat, and applied himself with all imaginable sians.
Diligence to recruit his Troops; and *Severus* having di-
vided his Forces into three Bodies, *Artaxares* fell upon
them separately, and routed them. The Emperor retiring
into *Europe*, the *Persians* recovered all they had lost, tho'
the Emperor, it seems, claimed the Honour of a Triumph,
and the Name of *Persicus* on his Success in this Expedi-
tion. *Artaxares* dying after a Reign of fifteen Years, was
succeeded by his Son *Sapor*, or *Sapores*, who carried
on the War against the *Romans*; in which he was assisted
by *Cyriades*, an Officer who had deserted the *Romans*;
They reduced most of the Provinces as far as the *Mediterranean*
Sea, and took the capital City of *Antioch*, and both
Sapor

Sapor and *Cyriades* took upon them the Title of Emperors, having agreed, as it is presumed, to divide the Provinces recovered from *Rome* between them.

Valerian
the Empe-
ror taken
Prisoner by
Sapor,
and fled
alive.

The Emperor *Gordian* being now upon the Throne, assembled a numerous Army, and compelled the *Persians* to retire beyond the *Euphrates*; but the Emperor being assassinated by *Philip*, an Officer of his Army, who succeeded in the Command, *Philip* made Peace with *Sapor*, yielding to him the Provinces of *Mesopotamia* and *Armenia*, which he soon after reduced again, notwithstanding the Treaty: Whereupon *Sapor* and *Cyriades* renewed the War, and recovered what they had lost. *Valerian*, the Emperor then upon the Throne, marched in Person to oppose them, and a Battle being fought, *Valerian* was defeated, and made Prisoner by *Sapor* (*Cyriades* having been killed in a Tumult by his own Soldiers a little before). The Emperor was treated with great Insolence by *Sapor*; he carried him about with him when he marched, and used to make a Foot-stool of his Body to mount his Horse; and after he had treated him with the utmost Indignity for several Years, caused him to be fled alive.

A. D.
Hormis-
das,
274.
Varanes,
275.

The Emperor *Galienus* in some measure revenged his Death, defeating *Sapor*, and taking a Multitude of Prisoners; whom he carried to *Rome*, leading them in Triumph through the City. *Sapor* however recovered Part of the Country he had lost in his Absence, and dying after he had reigned thirty Years, was succeeded by his Son *Hormisdas*, who reigned in Peace, as did the succeeding Kings, *Varanes* the First and Second, till the latter End of the Reign of *Varanes* II. when the Emperor *Carus* recovered *Mesopotamia* from him, advancing beyond *Ctesiphon*, and threatening an entire Conquest of *Persia*; but *Carus* dying in the Midst of these Successes, the *Persians* had Time to recover their Losses. In the Reign of *Dioclesian*, *Narses* who was then upon the *Persian* Throne, was entirely defeated, his Wife and Family made Prisoners, and all his Baggage and Treasure taken by the Roman General, *Galerius*; nor would the *Romans* grant him a Peace, till he had consented to yield up five of his Provinces to them. They restored him his Queen, but his Sisters, Concubines, and the *Persian* Nobility that were Prisoners, were carried to *Rome*, and led in Triumph by *Dioclesian*.

Misdates succeeded *Narses* upon the Throne of *Persia*; who dying after a short Reign, left his Queen with Child; and the Magi being consulted, declared the Child she was pregnant with would be a Son; whereupon the
Persian

Persian Nobility swore Allegiance to the Infant before he was born, and it afterwards happening to be a Boy, after the Prediction of the Magi, he was called *Sapor*, the Second, and enjoyed a long and prosperous Reign. A. D. 310.

Sapor was engaged in a perpetual War with the *Romans*, during the Reign of *Constantians*, and afterwards with the Emperor *Julian*, who lost his Life in the *Persian War*; after which *Sapor* made a very advantageous Peace with the *Romans*; the five Provinces in Dispute between the two Empires being yielded to him. He was afterwards engaged in a new War with the *Romans*, but with what Success does not appear. *Sapor* II. died A. D. 380, in the Reign of the Emperor *Gratian*, in the Seventy-second Year of his Age and Reign; his Life and Reign being of the same Duration. the Persian War.

There is little or nothing recorded of the three succeeding Reigns; but the following Reign of *Isdergetes* is much applauded. He possessed the Throne of *Persia* in the Reign of the Emperor *Arcadius*, who had such an Esteem for this Prince, that he constituted him Regent of the Empire, and Guardian to his Son *Theodosius* when he died. The Christian Religion, it is observed, made a considerable Progress in *Persia* in this Reign, which lasted twenty-one Years. 406.

Varanes his Son and Successor, was not so indulgent to the Christians, who had given him the highest Provocation, by burning down a Temple, dedicated to the Sun, which was yet the Idol of the *Persians*; *Varanes* thereupon caused all the Christian Churches in *Persia* to be demolished; put to Death Bishop *Abdas*, who promoted the firing of the Pagan Temple, and persecuted the Christians, as Enemies to his Government; which produced a War between the *Persians* and the Emperor *Theodosius*. Accession. 427.

The *Persians* called in the *Saracens* to their Assistance, and several Battles were fought with various Success; till the *Persians* consenting to a Toleration of the Christian Religion, a Peace was concluded between these Powers; which was well observed during the succeeding Reign of *Varanes* VI. In the Reign of *Proses*, who succeeded *Varanes* his Father, the *Huns* invaded *Persia*, as well as the *Constantinopolitan* Empire, with whom *Proses* fought several Battles; and being killed in the last, was succeeded by his Brother *Obalas*, or *Valens*, who was obliged to become tributary to the *Huns*, to save his Country, which was almost destroyed by them. He reigned but four Years, and was succeeded by his Nephew, *Cavades*, the Son of *Valens*; The Persians call in the Saracens. 438.

Zamades
elected
King.

A. D.
499.
Cavadés
restored.

Valens; who proving a martial Prince, subdued the *Huns*, and obliged them to become tributary to *Persia*; but he afterwards became a most intolerable Oppressor of his own Subjects, depriving them of their most valuable Rights and Privileges; and among other Laws, decreed, that all the Women in his Empire should be in common: Which incensed the *Persian* Nobility to that Degree, that they unanimously took up Arms against him, and made him Prisoner; and after a Reign of eleven Years, elected *Zamades* King in his Stead; who reigned near four Years, when *Cavadés* changing Clothes with his Queen, who was permitted to see him, made his Escape into the Territories of the *Huns*; who furnishing him with a Body of Forces, he returned into *Persia* at the head of them; and re-ascending the Throne, with as much Ease as he had been deposed, caused his Rivals Eyes to be put out; after which, entering into an Alliance with the *Huns*, they attacked the *Grecian* Emperor with their united Forces, and met with great Success; but being afterwards repulsed, a Truce was agreed on for seven Years. The War however was renewed again, several Battles fought, and Towns alternately taken and re-taken, which produced another Truce; and *Cavadés* dying after a Reign of thirty Years, his eldest Son assumed the Title of King; but *Chosroes* his youngest Son being appointed his Successor, by his Father's Will, was generally recognised Sovereign of *Persia*.

Chosroes's
Accession,
533.

Chosroes was engaged great part of his Reign in a War with the Eastern Emperors; recovered part of *Syria* from them, took the City of *Antioch*, and burnt it down to the Ground; but *Justinian's* General recovered most of the Places the *Persians* had taken, and a Peace was afterwards concluded between these two Powers. The War however revived again, about their Right to the Territories of *Cholchis*, on the Eastern Shore of the *Euxine* Sea; which ended at length in a Treaty, whereby it was agreed, each Party should keep what they respectively possessed in that Country: Another was commenced between them, about *Armenia*, the Inhabitants whereof being Christians, chose to renounce their Allegiance to *Persia*, and put themselves under the Protection of the Emperor *Justinian*: During these Wars, *Chosroes* died, having reigned forty eight Years.

Hormisdas's
Accession,
581.

Hormisdas succeeded his Father *Chosroes*, and continued the War against the Christians; but proving a Tyrant, and a great Oppressor of his own People, the Nobility in general

general revolted, and deposed him: They afterwards caused his Eyes to be put out, and murdered his younger Son, with his Mother; but advanced *Cbofroes*, the eldest Son of *Hormisdas* to the *Persian* Throne; who, it is said, was not content with burning out his Father's Eyes, but caused him to be put to Death.

Cbofroes II. does not appear more beloved by his Subjects than his Father. They entered into a Conspiracy against him; and being generally deserted, he fled to *Mauritius* the *Grecian* Emperor for Protection; who assembled his Army, and marching into *Persia*, restored *Cbofroes* to his Throne; who was so ungrateful as to invade the Territories of his Benefactor, a very little time afterwards. *Cbofroes* was so successful in this War, as to subdue most Part of the *Lesser Asia*, *Phenicia*, *Palestine*, and even *Egypt*; and when the Ambassadors of *Heraclius*, the *Grecian* Emperor, proposed the entering into a Treaty of Peace; he answered, *Let your Master know, that I will hearken to no Terms, until he and all his Subjects renounce their crucified God, and adore the Sun, the great God of the Persians.*

Heraclius, finding *Cbofroes* not to be moved, entered into Alliances with the neighbouring Powers; and assembling a numerous Army, gained several Victories over the Forces of *Cbofroes*; recovering out of his Hands most of the Territories he had over-run: And now the *Persian* Prince declining in his Health, was taking Measures for advancing his younger Son *Mardasus* to the Throne after his Death; which *Siroes* his eldest Son being informed of, caused both his Father and his Brother to be murdered, and procured himself to be recognized King of *Persia*; and to establish himself, concluded a Peace with the Emperor *Heraclius*, set all the Christian Captives at Liberty, and sent back the Cross, on which it was said, *Christ* was crucified, which *Cbofroes* had carried away when he plundered *Jerusalem*: But *Siroes* did not reign full a Year, being murdered by an Officer of his Army.

Ardeser his Son succeeded him, but was murdered also before he had reigned seven Months, by *Sarbas* the General of his Army, who usurped the Throne, but was murdered soon after; and *Hormisdas*, or *Isdigertes*, a Nephew of *Siroes*, was acknowledged King of *Persia*; in whose Reign the *Saracens*, commanded by *Omar*, the Successor of *Mahomet*, invaded and conquered *Persia*; *Hormisdas* II. being the last Prince of the Line of *Artaxares* that sat upon the *Persian* Throne.

Cbofroes II. his Accession. A. D. 589.

Siroes's Accession. 628.

Ardeser, 629. *Sarbas*. *Hormisdas's* Accession, 630. *Saracens* conquer *Persia*.

The

The Emperors of *Constantinople* had several Times entertained the *Saracens* in their Service, in their Wars with the *Persians*; but the *Saracens* did not attempt to fix themselves in *Persia*, until the Usurpation of *Mahomet*.

The Religion of the Ancient Persians.

THERE are still some of the Posterity of the ancient *Persians* remaining in this Kingdom, who believe as their Ancestors did, That there is one Almighty Being, the Creator of Heaven and Earth, and the first Cause of all Things; but this is not very consistent with another Tenet: Namely, that there are two Beings; one the Author of all Good, and the other, the Author of all Evil. They hold also, that the Heavenly Bodies are animated by certain Intelligences, who concern themselves in the Conduct of human Affairs. The Sun, according to them, is the grand Intelligence, and the Father of all sensible Productions: The Moon is the second Intelligence, and the other Planets they rank in the same Order we do. They look upon the Moon to be in great Distress from other Intelligences during an Eclipse, and reckon up abundance of inferior and subaltern Deities. As for their two Gods, or Principles of Good and Evil above-mentioned, they stile the one Light, or Fire, and the other Darknes; but whether they worship the Fire as God, or as a Representation of God, is not easy to determine. The Fire, some of them say, is Light, and Light is God, and then break out in Raptures, on the Purity and Activity of the Fire, the Light and God, in such a confused Manner, that no one can tell, whether they make them one, or three several Dieties; or whether Light and Fire are esteemed only Resemblances of God: However, all of them maintain, that the sacred Fire has been kept alive in *Persia*, ever since the Time of King *Keyemersa*, who has been dead 3600 Years, according to the *Persian* Chronology. As to the ordinary Fire which they worship, they take Care that it be not fed, or kept up, with any thing which may cause a Smoak, or an offensive Smell; and always perform their Devotions with their Faces towards the Fire or the Sun. Their principal Temple is on a Mountain near the City of *Yezd*; and there the High-Priest of the Religion resides, with great Numbers of his Clergy, who live in a kind of Convent, or Seminary. The Priests are employed there, in much the

the same Service the Vestal Virgins were at *Rome*; namely, in keeping in the Sacred Fire.

Persian Kings of the Parthian Race.

- | | A. M. |
|--|-------|
| 1. A RSACES, the Founder of the <i>Parthian</i> Family. | 3718 |
| 2. <i>Mithridates</i> , or <i>Artaces</i> the Second. | 3741 |
| 3. <i>Priapatus</i> . | 3773 |
| 4. <i>Pbraates</i> , the Son of <i>Priapatus</i> . | 3671 |
| 5. <i>Mithridates</i> II. Brother of <i>Pbraates</i> , subdued the <i>Medes</i> , and extended his Empire to <i>Euphrates</i> . | 3783 |
| 6. <i>Pbraates</i> II. slain in a War against the <i>Scythians</i> . | |
| 7. <i>Artabanus</i> , Uncle to <i>Pbraates</i> the Second. | 3857 |
| 8. <i>Pacorus</i> , the Son of <i>Artabanus</i> . | |
| 9. <i>Mithridates</i> III. Brother to <i>Pacorus</i> . | |
| 10. <i>Horodes</i> , Brother of <i>Mithridates</i> , whom he overcame, and caused to be slain in his own Sight: He also vanquished <i>M. Crassus</i> , and slew 20,000 <i>Romans</i> . | 3903 |
| 11. <i>Pbraates</i> III. a valiant Prince, but wicked and cruel, as appears by the Murder of his Father, and many of his Brethren. This King submitted himself and Kingdom unto <i>Augustus</i> , restoring the <i>Roman</i> Ensigns, and freeing the Captives taken at the Defeat of <i>Crassus</i> . The only Mark of the <i>Parthians</i> Subjection, was their receiving Kings at the Appointment of the Senate and Emperors of <i>Rome</i> , which was also of no long Continuance. | |
| 12. <i>Pbraates</i> IV. Son of <i>Pbraates</i> the Third, whom he slew, and succeeded. | |
| 13. <i>Horodes</i> II. Son of <i>Pbraates</i> the Fourth, assassinated. | |
| 14. <i>Vonon</i> , substituted in the Place of <i>Horodes</i> , but expelled by <i>Tiridates</i> , who was also dispossessed and killed by <i>Artabanus</i> . | |

Persian Kings of the Second Parthian Race.

- | | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. <i>Artabanus</i> , | 5. <i>Vologeses</i> , | 9. <i>Parthaspates</i> , |
| 2. <i>Bardanes</i> , | 6. <i>Artabanus</i> II. | 10. <i>Vologeses</i> II. |
| 3. <i>Goteres</i> , | 7. <i>Pacorus</i> , | 11. <i>Vologeses</i> III. |
| 4. <i>Vonones</i> , | 8. <i>Chosroes</i> , | 12. <i>Artabanus</i> III. |

The last King of this new Race of the *Parthians*, whose Overthrow by the Valour of *Artaxares*, the first *Persian* King of the third Dynasty, occasioned the Translation of the Diadem to the natural *Persians*, after it had con-

tinued in two *Parthian* Families for the Space of 470 Years.

Persian Kings of the third Race or Dynasty.

A.D.		A.D.	
228	1 <i>Artaxares</i> 15.	447	15 <i>Vararanes VI.</i> 17.
243	2 <i>Sapores</i> 31.	464	16 <i>Perozes</i> 20.
274	3 <i>Ormisdates</i> 1.	484	17 <i>Valens</i> 4.
275	4 <i>Vararanes</i> 3.	488	18 <i>Cabades</i> .
278	5 <i>Vararanes II.</i> 16.	499	19 <i>Lambases</i> 4.
294	6 <i>Vararanes III.</i>	503	20 <i>Cabades restored</i> .
294	7 <i>Narfes</i> 7.	533	21 <i>Cosroes Magnus</i> 48.
302	8 <i>Misdates</i> 7.	581	22 <i>Hormisdas</i> 8.
310	9 <i>Sapores II.</i> 70.	589	23 <i>Cosroes II.</i> 39.
380	10 <i>Artaxares II.</i> 11.	628	24 <i>Siroes</i> 1.
391	11 <i>Sapores III.</i> 5.	629	25 <i>Adhesir</i> .
396	12 <i>Vararanes IV.</i> 10.		26 <i>Sarbatus</i> .
406	13 <i>Isdigertes</i> 21.		27 <i>Barnarius</i> .
427	14 <i>Vararanes V.</i> 20.	630	28 <i>Hormisdas II.</i>

Persian Kings of the Turkish Race.

- 1030 1. **T**ANGROLIPIX, who conquered *Persia*.
 2. *Azan*, the Son of *Tangrolipix*, by whom *Cutlu Moses*, his near Kinsman, was sent with great Forces against the *Christians*; whom he dispossessed of a great Part of *Asia Minor*.
 3. *Balak*, Sultan of *Persia*, in the Beginning of the Wars in the *Holy Land*, undertaken by the Western *Christians*.
 1198 4. *Cassanes*, the last King or Sultan of the *Turks*, vanquished in the Year 1202 by the Cham of *Tartary*.

Persian Kings of the Tartarian Race.

- 1260 1. **H**AALON or Ulah-Kukhan, by *Occata* the great Cham, made King of *Persia*; exterminated the whole Race of the Caliph of *Bagdat*.
 1266 2. *Hakkakaibon* the Son of *Haalon*.
 1282 3. *Nicador Oglan*, by *Haiton*, called *Tangador*, who turned *Mahometan*, and was named *Hamed*.
 1284 4. *Argon-Khan*, the eldest Son of *Hamed*.
 1292 5. *Geniotukhon*, Brother of *Argon-Khan*.
 1295 6. *Badukhon*, the Uncle of the last.
 1296 7. *Gazun*, the Son of *Argon-Khan*, who made *Casbin* his Imperial Seat.
 8. *Aly-*

PERSIAN EMPIRE.

83

8. *Alyaptu*, who transferred the Court to *Tauris*, and 1305
is said to have been the Founder of *Sultania*, a chief City
of *Media*, the Brother of *Ganun*.

9. *Abusaid*, Son of *Alyaptu*, the last of the Race of 1317
Haalon that reigned in *Persia*; after whose Death, Anno
1337, (being the 736th of the *Mahometan* Hegira) the
more potent Princes of the *Tartars* seized on the several
Parts and Provinces of it, every one calling himself King
of that Part or Province which he was possessed of.

Persian Kings of the Armenian Race.

1. *USSAN-Cassanes*, by some called *Assembeyus*, was 1472
the Son of *Tracheton*, one of those poor *Armenian*
or *Turcoman* Princes, dispossessed by *Bajazet* the
First, and restored by *Tamerlane*. Encroaching on his
Neighbours, he was warned to desist by *Zeuzes*, the last
Persian King; with whom encountering in a pitched Field,
he overcame him, and got that Kingdom by the Victory.

2. *Jacub*, the second Son of *Ussan-Cassanes*, having 1478
put by his elder Brother, attained the Throne, and ex-
pelled the *Mamelucks* out of *Mesopotamia* and *Affyria*,
which they had invaded: He was afterwards poisoned by
his Wife.

3. *Julavar*, a Kinsman of *Jacub's*, succeeded him in 1490
his Dominions, which he held only three Years, and then
left it to

4. *Baisinger*, a Prince of the same Blood, who living 1493
in Adultery with the Wife of *Jacub*, had conspired his
Death.

5. *Rustan*, assaulted by *Aider* or *Secaider* of the *Sophian* 1495
Faction, who then began to be powerful.

6. *Alamat*, or *Hagaret*, the last King of this *Turcoman* 1498
or *Armenian* Race.

Persian Kings of the Sophian Race.

1. *HYSMÆL Sophi*, the Founder of this Family, 1505
overthrown by *Sekimus* the First, in the *Calderan*
Fields, 20. The Father of this Prince was one *Aidar*,
a Cheik or Lawyer; and this *Ismael-Sophi* was the third
Son of *Aidar*, and became King of *Persia* by the Con-
quest of *Aximont* his Master, near *Tauris*.

2. *Tamas*, the Son of *Hysmael*, vanquished by *Solyman* 1525
the *Magnificent*, who took from him the Countries of

Chaldaea, Affyria, and Mesopotamia, with some part of Media, 53.

1578 3. *Aider*, the second Son of *Tamas*, obtained the Kingdom, imprisoning his elder Brother; but his Cruelty being much feared, he was made away by the Practice of *Periancona*, his own Sister, having only reigned fifteen Days.

1578 4. *Hyfamael II.* eldest Son of *Tamas*, restored unto his Father's Throne, but murdered with the Privy of his Sister also, who found him of too rough a Nature for her to govern, having reigned near two Years.

1579 5. *Mahomet Codabanda*, advanced to the Throne by his Sister's Faction, (as being of a milder and more tractable Nature) at his first Entrance, caused her to be beheaded for the former Murders during his Time, not fully settled in the State, *Amurath III.* by his Lieutenant, won from him almost all *Armenia, Media*, and great part of *Georgia*. 7.

1585 6. *Abas* the Second, Son of *Mahomet*, having treacherously practised the Death of *Mirza*, his elder Brother, succeeded his Father; recovered almost all which the *Turks* had gained, and added the Kingdoms of *Ormus, Herat, Candahor*, and *Hircania*, to the Crown of *Persia*. This Prince, by the Help of the *English*, won the strong City of *Ormus* from the *Portuguese* in the Year 1622: After which he opened a Trade to all Nations by Sea and Land into his Kingdom.

1628 7. *Sopbi*, the Nephew of *Abas*, by his Son *Mirza*, (whose Eyes he caused to be put out on a false Suspicion) at the Age of fifteen Years succeeded. In the Year 1638 the *Turks* won the City of *Bagdat*.

1642 8. *Sba Abas II.*

1666 9. *Sba Sopbi* or *Sopbi II.*

1694 *Sba Sultan Hossain*, whom his Father expressly prohibited to put in Practice, that cruel Custom of putting out the Eyes of his Brothers.

He was deposed and murdered by the Usurper *Mahomed*,

Tamas, the only surviving Son of *Sultan Hossain*, was advanced to the Throne by *Kouli Kan*, but afterwards deposed and murdered by him.

Kouli Kan having murdered his Sovereign, *Sba Tamas* usurped his Throne, but was murdered by his own Relations, several of whom became Competitors for the Crown; and that Nation is still engaged in a Civil War.

ARABIAN or SARACEN
EMPIRE.

THIS Name is derived according to some from *Name of Arabus*, supposed to be the Son of *Apollo* and *Ba-Arabia*. *Babylonia*; others suppose it to be derived from the *Hebrew* Word, *Harabi*, or *Arabi*, a Thief or Robber; and others are of Opinion, it takes its Name from the Word *Arab*, which in the *Hebrew* signifies Black, this Country, being anciently called, *Ethiopia*, as well as *Abyssinia*; which lies on the opposite Shore of the *Red Sea* in *Africa*; and it seems probable, that it was originally inhabited by *Ethiopians* or Blacks, as will appear more evident, on examining its ancient History, either sacred or prophane.

The Modern *Arabia* is situate between 35 and 60 Degrees of eastern Longitude, and between 11 and 30 Degrees of North Latitude; and if we include the South Part of *Iracæ Arabicæ* (the ancient *Chaldea*, or *Babylonia*) we may extend it 2 Degrees further North, as the Ancients sometimes did: And then the Boundaries will be *Palestine*, *Syria*, and the North Division of *Iracæ Arabicæ* on the North; the Gulphs of *Perfæ* and *Ormus* on the East; the *Indian Ocean* on the South; and the *Red Sea*, and the Kingdom of *Egypt* on the West; being upwards of 1200 Miles over, either from East to West, or from North to South; and if measured in an oblique Direction, its Length will be fourteen hundred geographical Miles at least. As this Country comprehended Part of *Chaldea*, or *Babylonia*, or was at least contiguous to it, there is no doubt but it was peopled very early, *Babylonia* being the first Country that was planted after the Flood; but whether the first Inhabitants were Black, or they became Black afterwards; or whether they ever were Black, remains to be discussed: That it is not the Heat of the Climate alone, that gives the Natives a black Complexion is undeniable, because many Nations that lie under the same Parallel the Negroes do, and those Countries equally hot, are not Black; all that live between the Tropics, indeed are Tawny, or of a deep Copper Colour. I know of no Countries in the World, where the People are Black, but those of *Africa*, South of *Egypt* and *Lybia*, the Natives of the *Hither Peninsula* of *India*, and the Natives of some of the *Philippine Islands*: As to the Inhabitants of the *Further Peninsula* of *India*, and those of the *Great Indian Islands* (*Borneo*, *Sumatra*, &c.) which lie under the Equinoctial, these are none of them Black, any

Situation.

Extent.

Complexion

more than the People of *America*, which lie between the Tropics; there being no Blacks on that large Continent, but what have been transported thither from *Africa*.

If the *Arabs* received their Name from the Darkness of their Complexions, this seems to infer, that they were once Black; and as there is only the narrow Strait of *Babelmandel*, which separates *Arabia* from *Abyssinia*, or the *Upper Ethiopia* in *Africa*, it is highly probable, that *Abyssinia* was peopled with Blacks from *Arabia*, which was certainly inhabited before *Africa* was, as it lay nearer *Babylonia*, and in the Way from thence to *Abyssinia*: And not only *Abyssinia* in *Africa*, but the *Hither Peninsula* of *India*, was probably planted by the *Arabians*; for all the Middle of that *Peninsula* is still inhabited by Blacks, whose Features and long Hair resemble those of *Abyssinia*, or the *Upper Ethiopia*.

If it be demanded, Why the present Inhabitants of *Arabia* are not Black, as well as the former Inhabitants? I answer, It seems probable, that the former Inhabitants being oppressed, and driven out of their Country by their Northern Neighbours, the *Assyrian* Tyrants, some of them crossed the Strait of *Babelmandel*, and planted *Abyssinia*, while others transported themselves to the *Hither Peninsula* of *India*, from which it is not distant two hundred Leagues; or the former Inhabitants finding *Arabia* to be generally a desert Country, might voluntarily leave it for those fruitful Countries of *Abyssinia* and *India*.

As to the Facts I build upon, it is now universally acknowledged, that *Arabia* was anciently called *Ethiopia*, or the Country of the Blacks: That the Natives of the inland Country of the *Hither Peninsula* of *India*, are as Black as the *Abyssinians*, or Natives of the *Upper Ethiopia*, and like them have long black Hair and good Features, not resembling the *Guinea* Negroes, either in their curled Hair, or (to us) shocking Features.

Still I am aware, it will be objected, if it is not the Heat of the Climate that makes the Natives black, to what are we to impute it; The Learned I think tell us, it is not the outward, but the second Skin that gives them the black Hue: It may be so, but why that Skin should differ from the Skin of the rest of Mankind, is not yet solved.

If I should conjecture, that some of the *Antediluvians*, and particularly some of *Noah's* Family, were Black; it might be difficult to confute such an Opinion: Certain it is, that there were Blacks very early; so early, that I believe no one will pretend to tell, when they first appeared.

If there was no material Alteration made in our System by the Flood, there is as much Reason to presume, there were Blacks before the Flood, as since. The same Causes must produce the same Effects.

But whoever were the first Inhabitants, the Posterity of *Abraham*, the *Ismaelites*, or *Nabatheans* and *Sabeans*, afterwards possessed great Part of this Country, particularly near the Frontiers of *Chaldea*, where *Abraham* himself was born. The *Edomites*, or Posterity of *Esau*, inhabited the Western Coast of the Red Sea, and the *Madianites*, *Amalekites*, and *Ammonites* possessed other Parts of this Country.

The *Arabians*, or *Saracens*, their Posterity, are not at this Day, nor ever were, subject to one Sovereign, unless *Mahomet* and his Successors, the *Caliphs* of *Babylon*, may have been esteemed Sovereigns of this extensive Country. As to the Chiefs of the numerous Tribes of *Arabs*, that possessed the Middle of *Arabia*, and had no settled Habitations, but lived in Tents, and wandered from Place to Place as they could find Water or Pasture for their Cattle, the Names of those Chiefs, or Emirs, are no where recorded, any more than the Sovereigns of their Cities, sometimes stiled Kings, that inhabited the Coasts of *Arabia Felix*. I proceed, therefore, to give an Abstract of the History of the *Caliphs*, or Emperors of the *Arabians*, denominated also *Saracens*, from their inhabiting this desert Country; the Word *Sara* signifying a Desert in their Language.

MAHOMET, the Founder of the *Mahometan* Religion, and of the Empire of the *Saracens*, was born at *Mecca*, anno 571, in the Reign of *Justinian II.* Emperor of *Constantinople*. He was descended of the eldest Branch of the honourable Tribe of *Korash*, but his Family very much reduced at this Time; whereupon his Uncle *Abutaleb*, a Merchant, took him into his Service, and sent him with his Camels to *Syria*, *Palestine*, and *Egypt*, as his Agent or Factor; and here he became intimate with some *Jews* and *Christians*, by whose Assistance he composed his *Alcoran*: He was afterwards invited into the Service of a rich Widow, named *Kadiga*, for whom he carried on a Trade to *Damascus*, and other Places. This Widow being about Forty, thought fit to make him her Husband, in the twenty-eighth Year of his Age; by which Match, he became one of the richest Men in *Mecca*.

Mahomet taking notice of the numerous Sects and Divisions among *Christians* in his Journeys to *Palestine*, &c. thought it would not be difficult to introduce a new Religion,

ligion, and make himself the High Priest and Sovereign of the People; which he proposed to do by pretending to revive the primitive Way of Worship and Purity, practised by the ancient Patriarchs.

His first Step was to gain the Admiration of the People by his Devotion and abstemious Life: He retired therefore every Morning to the Cave of *Hira*, near *Mecca*, where he spent his Time in praying, fasting, and other Acts of Mortification; and when he returned home at Night, used to entertain his Wife and Family with the Visions he had seen, and the strange Voices he had heard in his Retirement. Having continued this Practice two Years, and acquired a great Reputation for his Sanctity, he ventured to declare himself a Prophet in the 40th Year of his Age; and that he was sent from God to reform his heathenish Countrymen, and reclaim them from their Idolatry. The first Doctrine he taught therefore was, That there is but one God; and that all Idols and Representations of him ought to be destroyed; and those who taught that God had Sons and Daughters, or Companions associated with him, ought to be abhorred. He did not deny the Mission of *Jesus Christ*, or *Moses*, or the divine Authority of the Scriptures; but charged both Jews and Christians with corrupting the sacred Scriptures; and declared, he was sent to purge them from their Errors, and restore the Law of God to its primitive Purity: After which he proceeded to publish his Alchoran, which he pretended the Angel *Gabriel* brought him Chapter by Chapter. This was first written on the Plate Bones of Camels, being dictated by him to his *Emanuelis*; for *Mahomet* could neither write nor read. He is allowed to have been a Man of great Wit and insinuating Address. He could bear Affronts without any seeming Resentment; flattered the Rich, and relieved the Poor; and managed with that Cunning and Dexterity, that he soon gained great Numbers of Proselytes; at which the wisest of his Citizens began to be alarmed, plainly discerning that he had a Design against the Government. They had determined therefore to surprise him and cut him off; but he receiving timely Notice of it, fled to *Yathrib*, which was afterwards called *Medina Talmabi*, or the City of the Prophet: His Flight to this City being in the Year 622, from thence the *Mahometans* compute their Time,

The Alchoran published.

Mahometan Era commences
A. D.
622.

Ma-

Mahomet was received at *Medina* with great Joy by the Citizens, who readily submitted to him as their Prince; and being joined by great Numbers of other *Arabians*, his first Enterprizes were the intercepting the Caravans which traded between *Mecca* and *Syria*, by which he greatly enriched his Disciples. *Mahomet* afterwards made War on several of the *Arab Tribes*, compelling them to embrace his Religion, or become Tributaries to him; declaring his Cause to be the Cause of God, and whoever died in Defence of it, went immediately to Paradise: That the Term of every Man's Life was fixed by God, and that none could preserve it beyond the appointed Time, or shorten it by any Hazards he might seem to be exposed to in Battle or otherwise.

Obtaining a Victory over a Tribe of *Jewish Arabs* that opposed him, he put them all to the Sword; but his Men being heated with Wine, and engaged deep in Play, were in very great Danger of being surprised; whereupon he prohibited Wine and Gaming. In the Year 627 *Mahomet* he caused himself to be proclaimed King at *Medina*, *proclaimed* having before assumed only the Office of High-Priest of King; his Religion. And now finding himself sufficiently re-627-
inforced, he laid Siege to his native City of *Mecca*, and *demolishes* took it; and having cut off all that opposed him, he *Images* broke down all the Images he found in the *Kaaba*, among which were those of *Abraham* and *Ismael*, and many more which the *Arabians* worshipped as Mediators for them to the supreme God. This was in the 8th Year of the *Hegira*, *A. D.* 629; which provoking the rest of the *Arab Tribes*, they assembled their Forces and gave him Battle, but were defeated: Whereupon he reduced great part of *Arabia* under his Power, and some Towns of *Syria* then subject to the *Grecian* Emperor; and dying *his Death*, in the Year 631, in the 63d Year of his Age, his Dis-631-
ciples made themselves Masters of great Part of *Asia* and *Africa* within the Space of a hundred Years, and reduced most of *Spain*, *France*, *Italy*, and the Islands in the *Mediterranean*, under the Name of *SARACENS*, and sometimes *MOORS*, invading *Europe* from the Coast of *Mauritania* or the Country of the *Moors*. They were called *Saracens*, as being originally Inhabitants of the Desarts of *Arabia*, *Saara* signifying a Desert in their Language.

Articles of the Mahometan Religion.

Mahometan Creed.

1. That there is but one God.
2. That *Mahomet* was sent by God.
3. They observe their Purifications or Washings every Day.
4. They pray five Times a Day.
5. They give Alms.
6. They fast in the Month *Ramezan*.
7. They should go once in Pilgrimage to *Mecca*.
8. They are prohibited strong Liquor and Gaming.
9. They are allowed four Wives of any Religion, besides Concubines.

10. Every Male Slave has his Freedom who professes *Mahometanism*; but as to the other Sex, it is not material what Religion they are of, as they have no Souls.

Description of the Country of Arabia.

THERE are very few Springs, and not one navigable River in this large Country, except the *Euphrates*, which is the Northern Boundary of it: By the Way of the *Red Sea*, which washes the West Side of *Arabia*, were brought the Spices and rich Merchandizes of the *East* to *Egypt*, (and from thence conveyed to *Europe*, till the Passage round the *Cape of Good Hope* was discovered by the *Portuguese*, about two hundred and fifty Years ago.) This was the Sea so famous for the Children of *Israel's* passing through it, from the *Egyptian* to the *Arabian* Shores; the very Place, according to Tradition, lying in the Midway between *Sues* and *Tor*, where the Sea is fifteen Miles over, and thirty-five Fathoms deep in the Middle of the Channel at present. The principal Port in this Sea is *Mocha*, much resorted to by the *European* as well as *Indian* Shipping, and lies on the right Hand just as we enter this Sea from the Ocean by the Straits of *Babelmandel*. The Air of *Arabia* is excessive hot; and the Sands are sometimes raised to that Degree by Hurricanes, that thousands have been buried alive in them. Nor are they less troubled with hot Winds than in the neighbouring Country of *Persia*. The City of *Mecca*, in *Arabia Felix*, was the Place of *Mahomet's* Birth, and here is the *Kaaba* or Holy Chapel, to which he commanded all his Disciples to go on Pilgrimage. It was a Temple, according to Tradition, built by *Abraham*, whither the *Arab* Tribes used to go in Pilgrimage before *Mahomet*. Two hundred Miles to the Northward of *Mecca* stands the City of *Medina*, whither

ther the Impostor fled when he was driven from *Mecca*; and here is his Tomb; but no Pilgrimages were ordered to be made thither, as is commonly said; nor do the *Persians* often visit this Place, though the *Turks* sometimes take it in their Way, in their Journey to or from *Mecca*. *Muscatt* seems now to be the most considerable Kingdom in *Arabia*: They have a formidable Fleet of Ships, and are in a manner Masters of the Seas between *Arabia* and *India*. Some other petty Kingdoms there are upon or near the Coasts, but the Heart of the Country is divided among a Multitude of petty Sovereigns, who ramble with their People from Place to Place, as they can find Water and Pasture for their Cattle; and those near the Borders of *Turky* and *Persia*, subsist chiefly by Rapine, making Excursions far into the neighbouring Countries. Nor is the *Arabian* Shipping less dreaded at Sea, than their Troops on Shore; for they make Prize of almost every thing that comes in their way; and if they do not attack the Ships of *Europe*, it is because they apprehend them to be of a superior Force. They seem to be the true Descendants of *Ismael*: Their Hand is against every Man, and every Man's Hand is against them.

The *Arabians* are but low of Stature, slender, and of swarthy Complexions; their Voices not big but shrill: They have been esteemed a brave People, and expert at the Bow and Lance: Their Generals who succeeded *Mahomet*, made the swiftest and the largest Conquests that we read of in History, extending their Arms in a very short Time, to the Western Shores of *Afric* and *Spain*: Great part of the Christian World fell before them, making scarce any Resistance; and where-ever they carried their Arms, they established their Religion; even the Islands and Coasts of *India*, Eastward, soon swarmed with the Disciples of that Impostor; and most of the *Indian* Sovereigns became *Mahometans*. Except *China* and *Siam*, every Country in *Asia* and *Afric* almost is under the Dominion of the *Mahometans*; and the Grand Signior, we know, hath the Seat of his Empire in *Europe*: But we have Reason to hope the *Mahometan* Powers now begin to decline; and as that Doctrine was first propagated by the Sword, so when they want that Support, Christianity may revive and flourish in the same Countries it did a thousand Years ago, and spread itself even round the Globe. The Christians are at this Day equal in Number to the *Turks* in several *Mahometan* Countries; and in some they are three to one: But there

there is no Instance of the *Mahometans* living under any Christian Power; their brutish Pride cannot submit to a Sovereign of another Persuasion; Insolence and Ignorance seem to be the Badges and Characteristics of that Religion; and whenever they shall be forced to submit to the Christian Powers, *Mahometanism*, probably, may disappear as suddenly as it first prevailed, having no Foundation in Reason to support the Institution.

Product of Arabia. Some Parts of *Arabia the Happy*, as hath been observed, are tolerably fruitful, but what this Country is most taken Notice of for, is their Dates and Coffee; the last of which I do not find any other Country produces, except *Batavia*, where the *Dutch* have some Plantations of it; but it degenerates much upon transplanting, and is not near so good as the Coffee of *Arabia*: *Mirr*, *Manna*, *Cassia*, *Frankincense* and other *Aromatic* Drugs are also the Product of this Soil. As to their Cattle, they are thought to have the finest Breed of Horses in the World, at least they are so esteemed in *Persia* and *Turky*; and there are no where larger Herds of Camels and Dromedaries, with which they transport the Merchandize of one Country to another in Caravans. Their Dromedaries are so swift, it is said, that they easily travel two hundred Miles a Day with very little Meat; both the Camel and Dromedary also go for several Days together without Water, which is very fortunate in those Deserts, where they cannot meet with it sometimes in a Week's travelling. In *Arabia Petraea* are the Places where the Children of *Israel* encamped in their Passage from *Egypt* to *Palestine*, particularly *Mount Sinai*, which was antiently covered with Cells and Hermitages of the Christians of the first Ages; and there are still some Monasteries upon or near it, inhabited chiefly by *Greek* Monks.

MAHOMET had appointed *Hali*, the Husband of his eldest Daughter, *Fatima*, to be his Successor; but *Abubeker*, his Father-in-Law, and one of his most celebrated Generals, assumed the Title of Caliph, or Sovereign of the *Saracens*, both in Spirituals and Temporals: He did not enjoy this Honour more than two Years, when he died, and was succeeded by *Omar*, then General of the *Saracen* Army, who made the swiftest Conquest of any Prince we read of; for he added *Persia*, *Syria*, *Palestine*, *Mesopotamia*, and *Egypt* to his Dominions. To him succeeded *Osman*, another of *Mahomet's* Generals, who had married *Zeineb*, his second Daughter, who added

**THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY**

**ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS**



added all the North of *Africa*, as far as the Pillars of *Hercules*, to the *Saracen Empire*. But the Faction of *Hali*. *Hali* prevailing against him, he became his own Executioner, threw himself upon his Sword, and died in the 87th Year of his Age, and the Tenth of his Reign; and his Successor *Hali*, was assassinated before he had reigned three Years, by *Mabruvas*.

Mabruvas, not only murdered *Hali*, but eleven of his Sons. *Hossen* the XIIth, however, escaped, whose Posterity afterwards succeeded to the Throne of *Persia*.

The Caliphs removed the Seat of their Empire from *Mosca* to *Bagdat*, about the Year 736, where they reigned sole Sovereigns of the *Saracens* until the Year 863; when the Sultans of *Egypt* and *Persia*, &c. who were before Viceroys of the Caliphs of *Babylon*, assumed an Independence, and withdrew their Allegiance from the *Babylonian* Caliph. *Bagdat* made the Capital, 736. The *Saracen Empire* divided, 863.

The *Saracen* Sultans were perpetually engaged in Wars with one another, or with the *Grecian* Emperors, until they were subdued by the *Turks*. As to their Invasion of *Spain*, *France*, *Italy*, *Sicily*, and other *European* Nations, these Expeditions will be treated of in the Histories of the respective Countries. After having given a List of the *Saracen* Caliphs, I shall proceed to the History of the *Turks*, and other Nations which succeeded them.

SARACEN CALIPHS or EMPERORS.

1. **M**AHOMET the Impostor, whose History will be found in *Arabia*. A.D. A.H. 622. 5.
2. *Abubeker*, *Mahomet's* Father-in-Law, and one of his great Captains, supplanted *Hali*, to whom the Empire was designed by the Will of *Mahomet*; and took upon himself the Name of *Caliph* II. 632 15
3. *Haumar*, or *Omar*, the second of *Mahomet's* great Captains, having the Command of the Army under *Abubeker*, succeeded him in his Dominions, and added to them *Persia*, *Egypt*, and *Palestine*, with great Part of *Syria* and *Me-sopotamia*, 12. 634 17
4. *Osman*, the third of *Mahomet's* great Captains, (47 30 Husband of *Zeineb*, his second Daughter, succeeded under that Pretence, and added all *Barbary* to his Empire; distressed by the Faction of *Hali*, and besieged in his own House, he slew himself in the eighty seventh Year of his Age, and tenth of his Reign.

5. *Hali*,

A.D. A.H.

657 40

5. *Hali*, the Kinsman, and next Heir of *Mahomet*, and the Husband of *Fatima*, his eldest Daughter, succeeded on the Death of *Osman*; murdered by the Procurement of *Mahuvias*, near *Cusa* in *Arabia Felix*.

660 43

6. *Mahuvias*, having murdered *Hali*, his Son *Hafem*, or *Hoffan*, and eleven of the Sons of that *Hafem*, the Twelfth only escaping with Life, (from whom descended the Family of the *Alavaci* and the *Persian* Sophies) assumed the Government as rightful Successor to *Osman*, whose Widow, the Daughter of *Mahomet*, he had took to Wife. He conquered *Rhodes*, *Cyprus*, and a great Part of *Asia Minor*, and was the Founder of the Family of *Aben Humeya*.

681 64

7. *Gizid*, the Son of *Mahuvias*, more skilled in Poetry than in Arms.

8. *Habdalla*, and *Marvan*, Competitors for the supreme Dignity; but carried at last by *Marvan*.

685 68

9. *Abimelech*, the Son of *Marvan*, completed the Conquests of *Armenia* and *Mesopotamia*, 22.

707 90

10. *Ulidoz Ulit*, under whom the *Saracens* or *Moors* first conquered *Spain*, 9.

716 99

11. *Zulimin*, Brother to *Ulit*, whose Captain *Mulfamus*, besieged *Constantinople*, till his Ships were burnt, and his Men consumed with the Plague, 3.

719 102

12. *Homar*, or *Haumar* II. Son of *Ulidoz Ulit*, 2.

721 104

13. *Izid*, or *Gizid* II. the Brother of *Haumar*, with whom during his Life he was joint Caliph, and after his Decease enjoyed it wholly to himself.

725 107

14. *Evelid*, by some called *Ischam*; in whose Time *Charles Martel* made such Havock of the *Moors* in *France*, anno 734, their General then named *Abderamen*, 18.

743 125

15. *Gizid* III. the Son of *Gizid* II.

744 126

16. *Hyces*, by some called *Ibrahim*, the Brother of *Gizid* III. slain by *Marvan*.

745 127

17. *Marvan* II. the last of the House of *Benhumeya*, slain by *Abdalla*, of the House of *Fatima* and *Hali*.

752 134

18. *Abdalla*, of the House of *Alavaci* or *Alabeci*, descended from *Hali* and *Fatima*, the eldest Daughter of *Mahomet*; called also the Family of *Abas*, because of their Descent from *Abas* the Uncle of *Mahomet*, and perhaps Father unto *Hali*.

756 138

19. *Abdallah*, II.

20. *Mahomet* II. surnamed *Bugiafer*, or *Atugefer*, who built the City of *Bagdat*, made from that Time the constant Seat of his Successors till their fatal Period.

		A.D.	A.H.
21.	<i>Mahadi</i> , 9.	777	156
22.	<i>Musa</i> or <i>Moyfes</i> , 1.	786	168
23.	<i>Aaron</i> , or <i>Arachid</i> , who compelled <i>Irene</i> , Empress of <i>Constantinople</i> , to pay him Tribute, 23.	787	169
24.	<i>Mahamad</i> , or <i>Mahomet</i> III.	810	193
25.	<i>Abdallah</i> III. who took and spoiled <i>Crete</i> , and overthrew the <i>Greeks</i> ; he also spoiled <i>Sicilia</i> , <i>Sardinia</i> , and <i>Corfica</i> , 17.	825	198
26.	<i>Mahomet</i> IV. wasted <i>Italy</i> , burnt the Suburbs of <i>Rome</i> , and harassed the forenamed Islands, 40.	832	215

The BABYLONIAN Caliphs after the Division.

A.C. A.H.		A.C. A.H.	
870 251 1	<i>Mutemah</i> 21.	1035 417 12	<i>Mucladi</i> 60.
891 273 2	<i>Mutezad</i> 8.	1095 477 13	<i>Mustetaber</i> 22
897 281 3	<i>Muchtapi</i> 8.	1117 499 14	<i>Musterafchad</i>
907 389 4	<i>Mutchtedar</i> 24.		18.
931 313 5	<i>Elkaber</i> 1.	1135 517 15	<i>Rachied</i> 25.
932 314 6	<i>Ratze</i> 7.	1160 542 16	<i>Mustenegedg</i> .
939 321 7	<i>Muclade</i> 4.	1169 551 17	<i>Mustazi</i> 10.
943 325 8	<i>Musteraphe</i> 2.	1179 561 18	<i>Narzi</i> 39.
947 324 9	<i>Macia</i> , and	1218 597 19	<i>Taber</i> .
	<i>Taia</i> 44.		20 <i>Mustenatzar</i> .
989 361 10	<i>Radur</i> 41.	1255 638 21	<i>Mustatzem</i> ,
1030 412 11	<i>Kaim</i> 5.		the last Caliph or High Priest
	of the <i>Saracens</i> of <i>Bagdat</i> or <i>Babylon</i> , starved in his		Castle of <i>Bagdat</i> , and his whole Posterity rooted out by
	<i>Allan</i> , or <i>Hallon</i> the <i>Tartar</i> , in the first Year of his		Reign.

The HISTORY of the TURKISH EMPIRE.

Wars between the CHRISTIANS and MAHOMET-TANS in ASIA.

THE *Turks* are of *Scythian* or *Tartarian* Original; *Turks*, they lived like the *Scythian* Nomades, in *Tents*, their *Ov-* and moved from Place to Place with their Flocks and *ginal*. Herds, as they could find Water and Pasture for their Cattle;

Cattle; inhabiting chiefly that Part of *Tartary* situate North of the *Palus meotis* and *Caspian Sea*.

They were very little known till the eighth Century; when they came down upon *Georgia*, and plundered that Country. In the Year 844 they penetrated as far as *Armenia Major*, where they fixed themselves; and from them this Country obtained the Name of *Turcomania*. About the Year 1000, the Sultan of *Persia* being reduced very low by the *Saracen* Caliph of *Babylon*, made an Alliance with the *Turks*, who sent three thousand Men to his Assistance, under the Command of *Tangrolipix*: By which Reinforcement, the Sultan obtained a signal Victory:

Tangrolipix conquers *Persia*;

turns Mahometan.

But *Tangrolipix* not being rewarded as he expected, there arose such a Misunderstanding between these new Allies, that it occasioned a War, wherein *Tangrolipix* defeated *Mahomet* the *Persian* Sultan, and killed him in the Field of Battle, and thereby became Sultan of *Persia*. But the *Turks*, who were Pagans at their coming into *Persia*, had conversed so long with the *Saracens* as to incline to the Religion they professed: And *Tangrolipix*, on his Accession to the *Persian* Throne, professed himself a Mahometan, without which Compliance, possibly it might have been difficult to establish his Empire. *Tangrolipix* afterwards marched against the Caliph of *Babylon*, whom he defeated and killed; but attempting the Conquest of *Arabia*, he did not meet with the same Success; whereupon he turned his Arms towards *Natolia*, or the *Lesser Asia*, and made a considerable Progress in the Conquest of it.

The *Saracens*, however, still remained possessed of *Arabia*, *Syria-proper*, *Palestine*, and *Egypt*; and the *Grecian* Emperor of the greatest Part of *Natolia* or the *Lesser Asia*.

• Battle between the *Grecian* Emperor and the *Turks*, 1031.

Tangrolipix having been so successful in *Persia* and *Mesopotamia*, demanded Tribute of the *Grecian* Emperor; and on his Refusal to pay it, invaded his *Asian* Dominions. A Battle was afterwards fought between Sultan *Axan*, and the Emperor *Diogenes*, (who married the Empress *Eudoxia*, and was by her advanced to the Throne), in which the Christians were victorious; but *Diogenes* was afterwards betrayed and taken Prisoner by the Sultan, who gave him his Liberty however some time after; but before his Return to his Dominions, a Revolution happened at *Constantinople*. *Eudoxia* the Empress, was confined in a Monastery, and *Michael Ducas*, her eldest Son by *Constantine Ducas*, the late Emperor, advanced

vanted to the Throne. The Malcontents proceeded to put out the Eyes of the Emperor *Diogenes* on his Return, and afterwards poisoned him.

While the Christians were thus divided among themselves, the *Turks* over-run the Territories of the *Grecian* Emperor in the *Lesser Asia*; and the Christians who remained at *Jerusalem* under the Dominion of the *Saracens*, being treated very barbarously at the same time, the Patriarch of *Jerusalem*, and the Knights Hospitallers there, deputed *Peter*, a *French* Hermit, to attend the Pope and the Christian Princes of *Europe*, to implore their Protection and Assistance against the Infidels.

The Hermit having represented the miserable Condition of the Christians in the East to the Pope, a Council was summoned to meet at *Clermont* in *France*, which consisted of three hundred and ten Bishops from the several Nations of Christendom; wherein it was resolved to assist the Christians of the East with all their Power.

The Pope and Clergy immediately preached up the Merit of defending Christendom against the Infidels, and proposed the conquering *Jerusalem* and the *Holy Land*, to the Ho- and rescuing the Sepulchre of our blessed Saviour out of ly Land. their impious Hands; and this in so moving a Manner, that all *Europe* seemed impatient to enter upon that Holy War. A. D. 1096.

An innumerable Multitude of People of all Conditions and Sexes, immediately took the Cross for their Badge: The most backward seem to have been the Kings of this Part of the World. There was not one of this exalted Dignity in the first Expedition, but a great Number of Princes and Lords, especially of the *French*, *Flemings*, and *Germans*: The chief of these were *Hugh*, Count of *Vermandois*, the King's Brother; *Robert*, Duke of *Normandy*, Son of the Conqueror; *Raymond*, Count of *Toulouse*; *Robert*, Count of *Flanders*; *Stephen*, Count of *Blois* and *Chartres*; and the celebrated *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorraine*, with *Eustachius* and *Baldwin* his Brothers, and an infinite Number of Lords and Gentlemen, that drew almost whole Provinces after them. They began their March in the Year 1096. Besides those who went as Soldiers, there were old Men, Women, Children, Priests and Monks engaged in the Enterprize, not less than seven or eight hundred thousand Souls of all Nations, most of whom had very little considered the Length of the Journey, or how they should subsist till they came into the Enemy's Country; and in

fact, one half of them perished before they arrived there; if perishing be a proper Term where the People were infallibly sure of being received into Paradise as soon as they left this World.

As they observed very little Discipline, many of them were destroyed, even in the Christian Countries through which they passed, by the Sword, Sicknefs, or Famine; and those of them that arrived at *Constantinople*, and had procured Vessels to transport them to the opposite Shore, were many of them cut to pieces as soon as they landed, for want of Conduct: But these, 'tis true, were for the most part a confused Multitude, the Fore-runners of the Army; the Princes and Generals who had been used to Military Exploits, marched with more Caution. *Godfrey of Bouillon*, and other Commanders who observed an exact Discipline, arrived at *Constantinople* with their Troops in pretty good Condition: And indeed they appeared so numerous upon their Rendezvous, that they put the *Grecian* Emperor into the utmost Consternation. He began to stand much more in Fear of them than he did of the Infidels; and instead of joining his Arms with theirs, took all Opportunities underhand to distress the Forces engaged in the Crusado: He durst not deny the Generals Shipping to transport their Troops, 'tis true, lest they should make him sensible of their Resentment; and perhaps he thought this the readiest Way to get rid of them: But notwithstanding all their Losses and Difficulties, when they came to draw up their Troops upon the *Asiatic* Shore, they found they had still near an hundred thousand Horse, and almost twice that Number of Foot; whereupon they immediately laid siege to *Nice* in *Bythinia*, almost over against *Constantinople*, and the usual Place of Sultan *Soliman's* Residence. The Sultan marched to the Relief of the Town, but was defeated; whereupon the Place capitulated, and was put into the *Grecian* Emperor's Hands, as had been agreed on when he engaged to furnish them with Shipping and Provisions, and to join them with his Forces.

From *Nice* the Christian Princes advanced to besiege *Antioch*; and *Soliman* opposing their March with an Army of 200,000 Men, they gained a complete Victory, and had the Plunder of his Camp, which was very rich; after which they over-run great Part of the *Lesser Asia*; and having made themselves Masters of *Antioch*, sent to the Emperor to join his Forces with them as he had promised: Instead of which, he only sent them Complaints,

be-

The Gre-
cians op-
pose the
Crusado's.

Nice taken
by the
Latins;

their vic-
tory over
the Turks;
take An-
tioch,

because *Antioch* was not delivered into his Hands. Whereupon they resolved to have no Concern with him, but to act independently of the *Greeks* for the future.

From *Antioch* these Heroes marched to *Jerusalem*, which they invested, though it is said their Numbers were so diminished, that they did not amount to 50,000 Men, and that the Garison in the Town was as numerous. But it seems, a Fleet of *English, Normans, Flemings,* and *Genoese*, luckily arrived at this Time with Supplies, which gave fresh Vigour to the Christian Army; who making an Assault upon the outward Wall, carried it Sword in Hand. At another Attack, which had lasted from Break of Day to Noon, when the Besiegers began to faint and give way, the famous *Godfrey of Bouillon* encouraged them, with an Assurance of Success, pretending he had seen an Horseman descending from the Clouds, and that Heaven fought on their Side; which so animated the Troops, that they carried all before them, and the Town was taken by Storm. and Jerusalem.

The celebrated *Godfrey*, who had distinguished himself by his Conduct and Bravery through the whole Expedition, was by universal Consent, crowned King of *Jerusalem*, who afterwards made *Ptolemais, Cesarea, Antipatris, Ascalon,* and other Cities tributary to him; but did not live to enjoy his Kingdom more than one Year. Godfrey Bouillon the first King, A. D. 1099.

Baldwin, surnamed *Brugensis*, Governor of *Edeffa*, and Cousin of the late King, was unanimously elected King of *Jerusalem*, anno 1100, in whose Reign the strong City of *Tyre* was taken from the Infidels; and he obtained three signal Victories over them; whereupon he laid Siege to *Damascus*, but a Sickness happening in his Army, he was obliged to raise the Siege. Baldwin's Accession, 1100.

Baldwin was succeeded in the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*, anno 1131, by *Fulk*, Earl of *Anjou*, who had married his Daughter *Melesinda*, or *Margaret*. It proved a troublesome Reign, the Christians falling out among themselves, and sometimes calling in the Infidels to their Assistance. Fulk's Accession, 1131.

The *Greek* Emperor also laid siege to *Antioch*, claiming it as Part of his Dominions. And the *Latins* were obliged to consent that *Raymund*, Earl of *Poitou*, the Governor, should hold that City of the *Greek* Emperor. King *Fulk* having reigned some time in Peace, was killed by a Fall from his Horse, as he was hunting; and leaving two

H 2

Sons,

Baldwin Sons, viz. Baldwin and Almeric, the Christian Princes elected the eldest.

his Accession. Baldwin II. succeeded his Father in the Year 1142, being then thirteen Years of Age; his Mother was joined with him in the Administration of the Government.

Territories of the Latins in Asia. The Christians, who had now been in Possession of the Holy Land, and the adjacent Countries, for forty Years, had formed four considerable States, viz. 1. That of *Edessa*, which comprehended the Countries on the Banks of the *Euphrates*. 2. The District of *Tripoli*, which lay in the Neighbourhood of the Sea. 3. The District of *Antioch*, and, 4. The Kingdom of *Jerusalem*. And had the Princes of these several Territories been unanimous, they would have been able to have maintained their Ground against the *Mahometans*; but falling out among themselves, *Sanguin*, Sultan of *Aleppo*, and afterwards *Noradin* his Son, made great Advantages of their ill-timed Disputes, and recovered most of the Conquests they had made; which occasioned the King of *Jerusalem* and the Prince of *Antioch* to desire Succours of the *European* Christians, and gave Birth to a second *Crusado*.

And Crusado, 1147. The Emperor *Conrad* was first ready, and began his March in *Easter*, 1147, with an Army of 100,000 Men, of whom 70,000 were Horse, armed Back and Breast. When he arrived on the Frontiers of the *Grecian* Empire, he found but a very indifferent Reception from the Subjects of the Emperor *Manuel Commenius*: They cut off the Stragglers of the Army, and refused to furnish *Conrad's* Troops with Provisions but at excessive rates: And in some Places their Disputes arose to such an Height, that they were upon the Point of coming to a general Battle. And it must be confessed, that the *Grecian* Emperor, if he was not consulted in this Affair, had Reason to be upon his Guard, and might very well entertain Apprehensions that these mighty Preparations were designed against his Dominions. The Difference of Religion also between the *Greeks* and *Latins*, might contribute to heighten their Aversion to each other. Nor was it at all improbable if the Emperor *Conrad* had met with Success in this Expedition, but he would have put what Terms he pleased upon the *Greeks*, and the Pope and Western Churches would have been for forming their Church after the Model of their own, and reducing the whole Christian World under one Spiritual Head. We cannot therefore entirely blame the *Grecian* Emperors for discouraging

couraging these Crusado's; tho' the treacherous Part they acted in *Asia* afterwards, if the *French* and *German* Accounts are to be credited, are never to be justified. The Emperor *Manuel* however furnished *Conrad* with Vessels to transport his Army cross the *Hellepont*, but supplied him with treacherous Guides, who led them into Ambuscades, and in effect, delivered this fine Army a Prey to the *Mabometans*; infomuch, that after they had traversed the greatest Part of the *Lesser Asia*, and undergone inconceivable Hardships, *Conrad* found himself obliged to return to the *Hellepont* again, having lost more than three Parts of his Forces. Here he had the Satisfaction indeed of meeting with the *French* King at the Head of much such an Army as he had lost. The Emperor advised the *French* King to continue his March by the Sea Coasts, to prevent his being surrounded by the *Mabometans*; which Precaution he observed for some Time, passing by *Smyrna* and *Ephesus*: but finding it very troublesome crossing the Mouths of Rivers, he altered his March, and turned off into the inland Country, where the *Turks*, being possessed of all the Passes, destroyed most Part of his Army; and the King, with a very few of his Lords, escaped to *Antioch*; after which he proceeded to pay his Devotions at *Jerusalem*, and returned to *France*. The Emperor *Conrad* also found Means to visit our Saviour's Sepulchre privately, before he returned to *Germany*, and thus ended the mighty Preparations for subduing the Infidels.

But I must not forget an Adventure in this Expedition, which afterwards had a considerable Influence on the Kingdoms of *France* and *England*. *Lewis* had married *Eleanor*, the Heiress of *Guienne* and *Gascony*, frequently called the Kingdom of *Aquitain*, and thereby made a considerable Addition to his Dominions. She was a beautiful Princess, of whom he was infinitely fond; which induced him to take her along with him to the *Holy Land*; but unluckily at *Antioch* she engaged in an Amour with the Prince of that Territory, who was her Uncle. So open they were in the Matter, that the King seemed fully convinced of their criminal Correspondence, and was forced to make Use of a Stratagem to bring her away with him. At his Return he procured a Divorce, though he had two Children by her, and was forced to return her the Territories she brought in Marriage.

Henry Duke of *Normandy*, and Earl of *Anjou*, Son of the Empress *Maud*, finding the Lady at Liberty, struck up Henry, a Match Earl of

Anjou. a Match with her within six Weeks after the Divorce, by which Means he added to his Dominions, *Aquitain, Maine*, and several other Provinces of *France*; so that when he came to the Crown of *England*, he was Sovereign of half *France*, his Dominions extending from *Normandy* in the North, to the *Pyrenean Mountains* in the South.

Noradin invades Palestine. *Noradin*, the *Turkish* Sultan of *Damascus*, invaded *Palestine* about this Time, and obtained a Victory over the Christians; but in another Battle was defeated; after which the Christians enjoyed some Rest: But King *Baldwin* taking a Dose of Physic from a Jewish Physician, fell sick and died, supposed to have been poisoned, anno 1163, after he had reigned twenty-one Years.

Almericus invades Egypt; *Almericus*, his younger Brother, Earl of *Joppa* and *Ascalon*, succeeded him. The *Egyptians* refusing to pay him the Tribute agreed on, for the Places they possessed in *Palestine*, he invaded *Egypt*; and obtained a Victory over *Dargan* the Sultan; whereupon the *Egyptians* cut the Banks of the *Nile*, and overflowed the Country; which obliged the Christians to retire to *Palestine*: *Almericus* marched with his Army into *Egypt* the next Year, to oppose the Forces Sultan *Noradin* had sent thither, commanded by his General *Saracon*, to restore *Sanar*, the deposed *Egyptian* Sultan, as was pretended; but, in reality, with a Design to reduce *Egypt* for his Master *Noradin*; which *Sanar* the *Egyptian* Prince discovering, united his Forces with *Almericus*, and drove *Saracon* out of *Egypt*. But while the King of *Jerusalem* was engaged in the *Egyptian* War, *Noradin* invaded the Christian Territories in *Syria*, took several Towns from them, and at length obtained a signal Victory over the Christians, taking Prisoners *Bohemund* Prince of *Antioch*; *Raymund*, Earl of *Tripoli*, and *Calamon*, Governor of *Cilicia*: And *Saracon*, *Noradin's* General, in his Return from *Egypt*, took several Places on the Frontiers of *Palestine* from the Christians. *Saracon* invading *Egypt* a second Time, *Almericus* marched again to the Assistance of the *Egyptian* Sultan, and compelled *Saracon* to abandon the Country, though he had possessed himself of *Alexandria*.

In these Enterprises against *Egypt*, 'tis said, *Almericus*, observing how wealthy and plentiful a Country it was, determined to make himself Master of it, and add *Egypt* to his Dominions; and actually besieged and took *Damietta* or *Pelusium* by Storm, putting the Garison to the Sword

Sword ; at which Sultan *Sanar* was so terrified, that he offered *Almericus* two Millions of Ducats to withdraw his Forces out of *Egypt* ; which *Almericus* consenting to accept, one Million was paid down ; but the Sultan delayed the Payment of the other so long, that *Saracen* the Turk, coming to his Assistance, drove the Christians out of the Country : And now *Saracen* having possessed *Saracen*, himself of some of the strongest Places in *Egypt*, resumed *Noradin's* his former Project of usurping the Dominion of that Kingdom ; pretending great Friendship for the Sultan, *General*, till he had drawn him into his Camp, under Pretence of *usurps the Throne of* entertaining him at a grand Festival ; when he caused *Egypt* ; him to be assassinated, and took Possession of his Kingdom, and was proclaimed Sultan by the *Saracen* Caliph, being the first *Turkish* Prince that ascended this Throne. He enjoyed it however but a little while, dying before the Year expired, and was succeeded by *Saladin*, his Brother's Son, who had so little Regard to the Confirmation of the *Saracen* Caliph, that he beat out his Brains with a Horseman's Mace, and extirpated all his Family.

Saladin no sooner found himself settled in his new ac- *Saladin*, quired Kingdom of *Egypt*, but he invaded *Palestine*, King of which was now situate in the Middle of the *Turkish* *Egypt*, in- Dominions, having *Damascus* on the North, and *Egypt* *wades Pa-* on the South-West. *Almericus*, King of *Jerusalem*, *lestin*. therefore observing the Danger he was exposed to, applied to the Christian Princes of *Europe*, and to the Emperor of *Constantinople* for their Assistance ; from whom he received large Promises ; but before any Reinforcement came, he ended his Life, *anno* 1173, and his old Enemy *Noradin* died the same Year, leaving an infant Son behind him ; whereupon the great Men at *Damascus*, invited *Saladin* King of *Egypt*, to accept that Throne ; and he accordingly took possession of *Damascus*, and all the strong Towns belonging to *Syria*, except *Acre* *thusa*.

Baldwin, succeeded his Father *Almericus*, in the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*, being about thirteen Years of Age, and *Raymund*, Count of *Tripoli*, was appointed Guardian and Protector of the Kingdom during his Minority. *Philip*, Earl of *Flanders*, bringing over a Reinforcement of Troops from *Europe* about this Time, it was thought advisable to invade *Saladin's* Dominions before he grew too powerful ; and several smart Actions happened between the Christians and *Turks*, with various Success. In the mean time, there were great Divisions in the Court

of *Jerusalem*, which gave the Infidels no small Advantage. The King, therefore, apprehending that the *Turks* would soon make a Conquest of the Country if he was not relieved, applied himself to the Princes of *Europe* again, imploring their speedy Assistance; but understanding that they were engaged in Wars at home, and could not afford him any Relief at present, and having been in a very ill State of Health a great while before, he died of mere Vexation, 'tis said, on the 16th of *May*, 1185, in the 12th Year of his Reign, and was succeeded by his Nephew *Baldwin*, an Infant: The Administration of the Government, during his Minority, being obstinately contended for by *Guy Lusignan*, Count of *Joppa*, and *Raymund*, Count of *Tripoli*; and the infant King *Baldwin V.* dying soon after, of Poison given him by his Mother, as was supposed, *Guy*, her second Husband, mounted the Throne; whereupon *Raymund*, Count of *Tripoli*, became a Malcontent, and entertained a Correspondence with the *Turks*.

Saladin, taking Advantage of these Divisions, invaded *Palestine*, and laid Siege to *Ptolemais*, (*Aleppo* had been betrayed into his Hands some time before). In this City was *Guy*, the last Christian King of *Jerusalem*, the Master of the Templars, *Boniface*, Marquis of *Montferrat*, and most of the principal Commanders in the Christian Army. The City was bravely defended a great while, but by the Treachery of the Count of *Tripoli*, was at length betrayed to the Infidels, together with the Cities of *Biblis*, and *Berithus*. *Saladin* soon after took all the Port Towns between *Sidon* and *Ascalon*, except *Tyre*. He then besieged *Jerusalem*, which surrendered to him within fifteen Days, (*viz. October 2, 1187*) after it had been in the Hands of the Christians 89 Years.

Jerusalem
taken,

A. D.

1187.

The Conditions of the Surrender were, that the Christians, who desired it, might remain there, and enjoy their Liberty and their Effects, or remove with them as they saw fit. The Christian Churches were immediately converted into Mahometan Mosques, except the Temple of the Sepulchre, which was redeemed by the Christians for a great Sum of Money. *Ascalon* was soon after surrendered to *Saladin*, upon Terms; and among others, that he should set at Liberty *Guy*, the King of *Jerusalem*, and the Master of the Templars. The Patriarch of *Antioch*, soon after betrayed that City to *Saladin* for a Sum of Money, with five and twenty Cities more in the adjacent Country, being one third Part of the Kingdom of *Jeru-*

Jerusalem. The Christians being thus greatly distressed in *Palestine*, applied themselves again to the Pope, and the Princes of *Europe*, who all promised them large Reinforcements; whereupon *Guy*, King of *Jerusalem*, depending on a sudden Supply, assembled the Christians of *Syria*, and laid Siege to *Ptolemais*, and was soon after joined by a Fleet of *Venetians* and *Pisans*. *Saladin* marched to the Relief of the Place, but was not able to raise the Siege. In the mean time, *Frederic* the Emperor, and several other *German* Princes, undertook another Crusade for the Recovery of the *Holy-Land*, and by the Em-transporting their Army into *Asia*, over the Straits of *peror*. *Constantinople*, encountered the Army of the *Turkish* Sultan of *Iconium*, and gaining a signal Victory, took the City by Storm. He continued his March into *Armenia* afterwards, and defeated the *Sultan*, in another Engagement, but was drowned in the Pursuit, on the passing a River on Horseback; whereupon *Frederic* his Son, then in the Army, was saluted Emperor by the Generals.

The Army then marched to *Antioch*, which surrendered to the Christians; but the Plague breaking out in the Army, the Emperor soon left it; the Forces of *Saladin* advancing towards the Christians, another Battle ensued, in which the Christians were victorious, and recovered several of the Cities of *Syria*. The Emperor coming to *Tyre*, embarked his Forces there, and joined the Christian Army before *Ptolemais*; whereupon a general Assault was given to the Town; but *Saladin* attacking the Trenches of the Besiegers at the same time, they were obliged to give over the Assault of the Town, and to return to the Defence of their Camp: Still the Siege was continued, but both Famine and Pestilence afflicting the Christian Army at this Time, the Siege was not much advanced; and the Emperor *Frederic*, dying of the Plague while they lay before the Town, all the Hopes the Christians now had of Success were from the Kings of *England* and *France*, who were coming to their Assistance with powerful Reinforcements: For the Pope had prevailed on *Philip Augustus*, King of *France*, and *Richard*, King of *England*, to engage in this holy War. The Armies were transported to *Palestine* by Sea, and *Sicily* was appointed by the two Kings for the Place of Rendezvous. The *French* King embarked at *Genoa*, and *Richard*, King of *England*, at *Marseilles*; and finding the Year pretty far advanced when their Forces arrived in *Sicily*, it was thought convenient to win-

winter there. There arose a Misunderstanding between the two Kings, which the *French* ascribe to King *Richard's* refusing to marry *Alice*, the *French* King's Sister, according to his Engagements; but *Richard* making it appear, that this Princess had been faulty in her Conduct, King *Philip* seemed to be satisfied. Some of the *French* Writers go so far as to say, that this Princess had a Child by King *Henry II.* *Richard's* Father, and the *English* Historians suggest something of the same Nature: But however that Matter was, the two Kings were never afterwards heartily reconciled. In the following Spring they sailed to *Palestine*, and assisted in the Siege of *Acon*, or *Ptolemais*, where there were perpetual Misunderstandings between them: They agreed however to attack the Place by turns, and when one of them was busied in carrying on the Siege, the other defended the Lines against Sultan *Saladin*, who lay within a Bow-shot of their Camp. At length the Town being taken, the two Kings divided it between them, and had each their Governor in it. The Summer not being half spent, it was expected these Princes would have entered upon some further Action; but the *French* King, who seems all along to have had some base treacherous Views with regard to King *Richard*, resolved to return to *Europe*, leaving only a small Body of Troops in *Palestine*, under the Command of *Eudes* of *Burgundy*. King *Richard* had that Precaution indeed before he went, to make King *Philip* swear, that he would undertake nothing against his Dominions in his Absence: But there are not many Instances in History where the *French* Kings have kept their Oaths or Promises longer with the *English*, than they have found their Interest in observing them; at least thus it happened on this Occasion. The King of *England* remained a Year after him in *Palestine*, and made some further Conquests: He had continued there longer, if he had not received Intelligence of the Practices of King *Philip* and his Brother *John* against his Dominions; and as he was hastening home to prevent the Consequences of this Confederacy, he was detained Prisoner by *Leopold*, Duke of *Austria*, and put into the Hands of *Henry VI.* the *German* Emperor, with whom he remained a Prisoner upwards of a Year, by the Artifices of *Philip*; who spared no Treasure to prevent his returning to his Kingdom. *Philip*, in the mean Time, did not only use his utmost Endeavours to get King *Richard* put into his Hands, but entered *Nor-*
mandy

King
Richard
made Pri-
soner.

mandy with an Army, and seized on several Towns and Provinces belonging to the *English*. The Emperor having squeezed what Money he could out of the *French* King, begun to listen to the Proposals which were made him by the *English* for the Ransom of their Sovereign; and having worked them up to an immense Sum, gave that Prince his Liberty, without consulting *Philip* in the Matter.

About the Year 1200, a vast Body of *Tartars*, from the North East of *Persia*, and the *Caspian* Sea, invaded *Persia*, and expelled the *Turks*; they advanced still further West, and subdued *Affyria*, *Mesopotamia*, and *Media*, from whence also they expelled the *Turks* of the *Selzucian* Family, who fled into *Asia Minor*, and founded the *Aladinian* Kingdom, so denominated from *Aladin* their Leader; *Sebastia* first, and afterwards *Iconium*, being the Capital of their Dominions.

The *Oguzian* Family (from which *Ottoman* descended) fled also into the *Lesser Asia*, and remained there a considerable Time in great Obscurity. In the mean time the *Tartars* added *Armenia*, *Colchis*, and *Iberia*, situate between the *Euxine* and the *Caspian* Sea, to their Dominions.

The Eastern Empire at this Time was miserably distracted by civil Dissentions. *Alexius* had usurped the Throne of his elder Brother *Isaac*, and burnt out his Eyes, and was about to destroy his Nephew *Alexius*, the Son of *Isaac*; but the young Prince having some Intimation of his Design, fled to the Court of *Philip*, Emperor of *Germany*, who had married *Irene* his Sister, Daughter of the late Emperor *Isaac*. And the Christian Princes, having assembled a numerous Army at this Time to recover the Places they had lost in the *Holy Land*, were persuaded by young *Alexius*, to take *Constantinople* in their Way, and restore his Father to his Throne: Which was agreed to; and the *Latins* arrived before *Constantinople*, with a Fleet of 500 Sail. They then proceeded to land their Army, and though the Harbour was bravely defended by the Usurper for some Time, the City was at length taken, and the Emperor *Isaac* restored; the Usurper having made his Escape out of the Place, during the Attack: But the old Emperor survived his Restoration but a few Days. *Alexius* his Son being thereupon proclaimed Emperor, *Alexius Ducas*, surnamed *Murzuffle*, a popular Nobleman, having an Eye upon the Throne, spirited up the People against

against the young Emperor, who had sold them, he affirmed, to the *Latins*, promising them such Sums for their Reward, as it was impossible for his Subjects to raise: And what was still worse, he had promised Subjection to the Pope of *Rome*, in Spirituals. And when he had thus put the whole City in a Ferment, he came to the young Emperor at Midnight, telling him, there was an Insurrection in the City, and that the People were so enraged at this Invasion of the *Latins*, that he feared his Life was in Danger, but that he would conceal him in some Place of Safety till the Tumult was appeased; the young Emperor putting an entire Confidence in the Traytor, as he had been raised by him from a mean Condition to the highest Posts in the Government, followed the Advice of *Murzuffle*, who led him to a Place where he confined him, and set a Guard upon him; and when he found the People began to enquire what was become of the Emperor, he strangled him with his own Hands, that he might no longer stand in the Way of his Ambition: Then he assembled all the Forces he could raise in the City, and ordered them to their several Posts to defend the Walls, and at the same Time attempted to burn the *Venetian* Fleet, in the Harbour: But in that he did not succeed. The Generals of the *Latins* now perceiving they were treated as Enemies by the People of *Constantinople*, laid Siege to the City, which they took by Storm, after a Siege of ten Weeks, and gave the Plunder to the Soldiers, but spared the Lives of the Citizens; the Traitor *Murzuffle* making his Escape out of the City in the Night-time, and carrying along with him the Empress *Ephrosina*, and *Eudocia*, her Daughter, whom he had married. It was in the Year 1200, that the City of *Constantinople* was thus taken by the *Latins*, and their Generals thereupon elected *Baldwin*, (Earl of *Flanders*, and *Hainault*,) Emperor of the East. And at this Time, the *Greek* Church began to follow the Rights and Ceremonies of the *Latins*, and acknowledge the Supremacy of the Church of *Rome*, *Thomas Maurocenus*, a *Venetian*, being constituted the first *Latin* Patriarch of *Constantinople*.

Constantinople taken by the Latins.

Baldwin, first Emperor of the Latins,
A. D.
1200.

The Grecian Territories in Europe divided among the Latins.

The Emperor *Baldwin*, however, had only Part of the *European* Provinces under his Dominion; viz. the City of *Constantinople*, and the Province of *Thrace*; to the *Venetians* was allotted the Island of *Candy*, and all the Islands in the *Egean* and *Ionian* Seas; to the Marquis of *Montferrat*, was allotted *Thessaly*, and Part of *Peloponessus*,

Peloponessus, with the Title of King: The Dukedom of *Athens* was given to *Godfrey of Troyes*, a *Frenchman*, who was constituted also Prince of *Achaia*; another Duchy was given to the Count de *Blois*; and other Territories were assigned to other Adventurers, who were to hold them however of the Emperor, as their chief Lord.

As to the *Asian* Dominions, these the Royal Family of the *Greek* Emperors were permitted to divide among them. *Theodore Lascaris*, Son-in-law of the Emperor *Alexius Angelus*, assumed the Dominion of *Bythinia*, *Phrygia*, *Missia*, *Ionis*, and *Lydia*, with the Title of Emperor, making the City of *Nice*, the Capital of his Empire. *The Asian Territories still possessed by the Grecians.*

David and *Alexius Comneni*, Nephews of the late *Grecian* Emperor *Andronicus*, possessed the Provinces of *Pontus*, *Galatia*, and *Cappadocia*, and were stiled Emperors of *Trapezond*, which they made the Seat of their Empire. *Nice and Trapezond, the Capital of their Empires.*

Adrianople, the second City of *Thrace* also, still remaining in the Possession of the *Greeks*, *Baldwin*, the Emperor of *Constantinople*, laid Siege to it; whereupon the *Greeks* invited the *Tartars*, who had lately possessed themselves of *Bulgaria*, near the Mouth of the *Danube*, to march to the Relief of that City: And accordingly the *Tartars*, commanded by *John* their King, in Person, advanced towards *Adrianople*, and skirmished several Days with the Besiegers, always retiring from every Engagement as if they fled, till they drew the *Latins* into an Ambuscade, and entirely defeated them, taking *Baldwin* the Emperor Prisoner, whose Hands and Feet they cut off, and then left him to perish in the Field. He died three Days afterwards in the thirty third Year of his Age, and before he had reigned a full Year. The *Tartars* afterwards took *Philippoli*, and several other Cities, which they plundered, together with the adjacent Country, putting to the Sword great Numbers of People, without regard to Sex or Age, and carrying more into Captivity. *Adrianople besieged, relieved by the Tartars;*

The *Latins*, upon the Death of *Baldwin*, elected his Brother *Henry*, Emperor of *Constantinople*, who, by the Assistance of the King of *Theffaly*, (Marquis of *Montferrat*) recovered all the Places the *Tartars* had taken in *Thrace*, and drove them out of that Province. About this Time, *Alexius Ducas*, surnamed *Murzuffle*, who murdered *Baldwin the Latin Emperor taken and killed by the Tartars.*

murdered *Alexius* the *Græcian* Emperor of *Constantinople*, was taken near *Corinth*, and put to Death.

The Christians of
Palestine
invade
Egypt,
A. D.
1209.

There having been a Truce made between the *Saracens* and the Christians in the *Holy-Land* for ten Years, Things remained in much the same State there, as they did before the Revolution at *Constantinople*. But that Truce being expired, the Princes of *Europe* sent over several Bodies of Troops to *Ptolemais*, and *John*, Count of *Brenne* in *France*, being constituted King of *Jerusalem* by Pope *Innocent*, anno 1209, (though *Jerusalem* was at this time in the Hands of the Infidels), he assembled the Christian Army, and marching into *Egypt*, laid Siege to *Damietta*, the ancient *Pelusium*; and having lain a Year before the Place, and lost great Part of his Army by Sickness or the Sword, the Town was at length so terribly afflicted with the Plague, that out of 70,000 Inhabitants, not 3,000 were left alive, and consequently very few to defend the Walls. The Besiegers observing a perfect Silence reign on every Side, scaled the Walls, and found the miserable Inhabitants lying dead, from one End of the Town to the other; whereupon they took Possession of the Town; and leaving a Garison it, returned with the rest of the Army to *Ptolemais*.

Take Da-
mietta.

The next Year the Christians of *Palestine*, by the Directions of the Pope's Nuncio, invaded *Egypt* again; for as *Syria* and *Palestine* were now subject to the Sultans of *Egypt*, the Christians concluded, that if they could subdue *Egypt*, from whence Supplies and Reinforcements were perpetually sent to *Syria* and *Palestine*, those Countries must fall into their Hands of course.

Cairo be-
sieged,

John, King of *Jerusalem*, and the Generals of the Army, however, seemed very averse to this second Expedition, possibly because it was late in the Year, when the Waters of the *Nile* were expected to overflow the *Lower Egypt*; but the Pope's Legate insisting on their advancing on Pain of Excommunication, the Army began their March, and on their entering *Egypt*, the Forces of the Infidels retired before them; whereupon the Christians laid Siege to *Grand Cairo*, where they had not lain long, but the Waters of the *Nile* overflowed great Part of their Camp: Multitudes of their Men perished by Famine or Sickness; and the *Egyptians* had possessed all the Passes and high Grounds, so that it was impossible for the Christians to retreat without their Leave. However, the Sultan agreed to let them pass, upon Condition of their surrendering *Damietta*; which being agreed to, the

the Christian Army returned to *Palestine*, and about the same time, a Truce was concluded between the Christians and *Corradin*, the Saracen Sultan of *Damascus*, for eight Years. *driven out of Egypt.*

In the mean while, *Robert*, Emperor of *Constantinople*, having married a young Lady, before contracted to a noble *Burgundian*; her first Lover taking Advantage of the Emperor's Absence, broke into the Palace with a Party of Soldiers he had hired for that Purpose, cut off the Nose and Ears of the young beautiful Empress, threw her old Mother into the Sea, that had given her Consent to the Espousals with him, and then made his Escape into the Mountains. The Emperor *Robert* soon after died, and was succeeded by his Son *Baldwin II.* in whose Reign *John Ducas*, Emperor of *Nice*, and Son of *Theodore Lascaris*, made great Encroachments on the Territories of the Emperor *Baldwin* in *Europe*, entering into an Alliance with *Affan*, the Tartarian King of *Bulgaria*, who promised him his Assistance against *Baldwin*.

Frederic, Emperor of *Germany*, had made a Vow about this time, to undertake a Crusado to the *Holy Land*, but was obliged to defer it a little while on account of some Practices of the Pope, who was continually inciting his Subjects against him. At length he embarked at *Brundisium* in *Italy*, and arriving at *Ptolemais* in *Syria*, he found that the Pope, in order to distress him, had written to the Christian Governors and Commanders in the *Holy Land*, not to obey him: So perverse and insolent did Popes behave towards Sovereign Princes in these Days, The Christians of *Palestine*, however, joined the Emperor; who being now at the Head of a numerous Army, the *Mahometan* Powers thought fit to grant him every thing he demanded. They agreed to surrender *Jerusalem* to him, (the Fortifications whereof had been demolished some time before): They restored also the rest of the Towns that had been taken from the Christians by *Saladin*; whereupon the Emperor having repaired the Walls of *Jerusalem*, and some other Places, and left strong Garisons in them, made a Truce with the *Saracens* for ten Years, (anno 1229) and returned to *Europe*. *Jerusalem and other Towns in Palestine restored to the Christians, and a Truce made,*

A. D.
1229.

Notwithstanding the ten Years Truce made with the Infidels, *Theobald*, King of *Navarre*, engaged in another Crusado the next Year 1230: He embarked his Forces in the South of *France*, and sailing through the *Egean* Sea, the *Hellefpont*, and Strait of *Bosphorus*, landed in *break the Bythinia*,

Truce, and Bythinia, and then marching through *Galatia*, was attacked by the Sultan of *Iconium*, and lost great Part of his Army. However, he arrived with the rest at *Antioch*, and embarking there again, arrived at *Ptolemais*; but the

A. D.

1230.

Emperor *Frederic*, having prohibited his Forces in *Palestine* to join them, they could undertake no considerable Action: But having plundered the Enemies Country as they were retiring, the *Turks* fell upon them and destroyed the greatest Part of the Christian Army. The King of *Navarre* escaped to *Joppa* almost alone, from whence he went to *Jerusalem*, and having visited the holy Places there, returned to *Europe*.

Jerusalem,

Gaza, &c.

lost again,

1234.

The Sultan of *Egypt*, being highly incensed at this Breach of the League by the Christians, invaded *Palestine*; and taking *Gaza* and *Ascalon* put all the Inhabitants to the Sword. The Knights Templars, assembling all the Forces of the Christians to oppose the Sultan, were defeated; whereupon the Sultan marched to *Jerusalem*, and took it with very little Opposition, putting to Death most of the Inhabitants; after which he demolished the Walls and the rest of the Buildings, not sparing the Temple of the Holy Sepulchre, or the Sepulchre itself, which had never been demolished before this Year, 1234.

Crusado by

the French

1248.

Lewis IX. King of *France*, undertook another Crusado in the Year 1248: He sailed first to *Cyprus*, where he erected large Magazines.

At the undertaking this Crusado, the Affairs of the Christians in *Palestine* were in a very desperate Condition; and had not the *Mahometan* Powers been engaged in Civil Wars among themselves, they would infallibly have been driven from thence. There were, however, still four Christian States remaining here, that had been formed by the *Europeans*, viz. That of *Acon*, or *Ptolemais*, which was defended by the *Venetians*, *Genoese*, and *Pisans*; 2. *Tyre*, and its District; 3. *Tripoly*; and, 4. *Antioch*. *Jerusalem* had been wrested from them, and was in the Hands of the Infidels, who surrounded them on every Side. The most formidable of the *Mahometan* Powers at this Time, was the Sultan of *Egypt*, who had possessed himself of great part of *Palestine*, as well as *Jerusalem*: At a Council of War therefore that was held before King *Lewis*, in the Island of *Cyprus*, it was thought proper first to invade *Egypt*, which if the Christians could have made themselves Masters of, *Palestine* would have fallen into their Hands of Course. In pursuance of this Resolution, the King having assembled a Fleet

a Fleet of eighteen hundred Sail, great and small, embarked his Land Forces, amounting to sixty thousand Men and upwards, amongst which were twelve or thirteen thousand Knights, *French, English, and Cypriots*, and set sail with them for *Egypt*, the beginning of *June*, 1249; but a violent Storm happening to disperse the Fleet, the King was forced back to *Cyprus*, with a very small number of his Ships. He set sail again on *Trinity Sunday*, and having joined the best part of the scattered Navy, they arrived in four Days within sight of *Damietta*, then one of the strongest Towns in *Egypt*, and situated at the Mouth of the most Eastern Branch of the *Nile*. They found a great Fleet of the Infidels in that River, and a numerous Army of them on shore, ready to oppose their landing; but upon the first Charge, both one and the other thought fit to quit their Stations, and suffer the Christians to land with very little Opposition. A Rumour being spread in the *Mahometan* Army that their Sultan was dead, the Garison retired from *Damietta* taken, without waiting to be besieged; whereupon King *Lewis* immediately possessed himself of that important Post. Here the *French* Historians observe, that while the King was taken up with Acts of Piety and Devotion, in his Army, on the contrary, was seen nothing but Revelling and Lewdness. They had succeeded at first so much beyond their Expectations, that they thought there was nothing more to do but to march and possess themselves of the capital City of *Cairo*, and all would fall before them; but the *Nile* having overflowed the Country, as usual at this Time of the Year, they were obliged to wait in their Camp near *Damietta*, till that River was fallen.

Egypt invaded.
1249.

A new Supply of Forces arriving from *France* at this Time, the King left the Queen with a good Garison at *Damietta*, and began his March towards *Grand Cairo*, with an Army of 20,000 Horse, and 40,000 Foot; with whom the Infidels did not think fit to come to a general Battle, but so harassed them and cut off their Provisions, that in three Months Time the Christians were scarce able to advance forty Miles; and the *Mahometans*, taking an Advantage of the King's Army, when the Van was separated a good Distance from the Rear, and most of them in an ill State of Health, fell upon them, and entirely routed the Christian Army, making the King Prisoner, with all his Forces that were not killed in the Battle: And no less could have been expected from a
I barbarous Nobility

The French defeated and the King and

made Pri-
soners.

The King,
&c. ran-
somed.

1250.

barbarous People, (as they are represented,) than that they should have murdered every one of them, considering the Provocations that had been given them. It was debated indeed among the *Turks*, whether they should not cut the Throats of every one of them; whereby they might deter the *Europeans* for the future, from undertaking these romantic Expeditions: But the Prospect of enriching themselves immediately by the Ransom of so many considerable Men, prevailing above their Revenge, or any Political Considerations, they agreed to give the King and his People their Liberty, upon their delivering up *Damietta*, and paying an immense Treasure for their Ransom, such as the Sultan, and his Emirs, could never have expected to have been Masters of, by any other Means; and for the raising of which, *France* was sufficiently fleeced. They had rejoiced indeed for the taking *Damietta*, and many other imaginary Successes; as the Conquest of *Grand Cairo*, and *Alexandria*, and even for dethroning the Sultan: And we may easily believe they were sufficiently mortified, when they understood that the King, with the Princes, and Lords, and the best Part of the Army, lay at the Mercy of the Infidels. The King having paid down a fourth Part of their Ransom, and left Hostages for the rest, and delivered up the Town of *Damietta*, withdrew the Garison, and embarked with his Court for *Acon*, or *Ptolemais*, in *Palestine*, where he arrived the beginning of *May*, 1250. The Pope, and the Princes of *Europe*, expressed abundance of Concern for this unfortunate Attempt upon *Egypt*. His Holiness sent Missionaries into every Kingdom in *Europe*, to preach up the Crusado, in hopes to have supplied the *French King* with such a Force, that he might have redeemed the Credit of the Christian Arms in *Palestine*, before his Return. But all Men were so confounded and astonished, at the Disgrace so fine an Army had met with, that nothing could induce them to run the like Hazard again, while it was fresh in their Memories. All that the Pope could do, was to send the *French King* such Supplies, as might enable him to put the Places in the *Holy Land*, which remained in the Possession of the Christians, in such a Posture, as they might not become an easy Prey to the Infidels: Which he effected during his stay in *Palestine*; where he continued six Years, returning to *France* in *July*, 1254.

In the mean time *Haalon*, the *Tartar*, brought the *Turks* very low; he took from them the Cities of *Bagdad*, *Aleppo*, *Damascus*, and *Iconium*, and obliged their Prince to fly the Country. The *Egyptians*, on the other Hand, invaded *Syria* and *Palestine*, and made themselves Masters of most of the Towns in those Provinces, except what were possessed by the Christians; for whose Defence another Crusado was undertaken by the Christian Princes, among whom was Prince *Edward*, (afterwards *Edward I.* King of *England*) who landed at *Ptolemais* in the beginning of the Year. 1271. He took *Nazareth*, and defeated the *Turks* in several Engagements; but not being supported by other Christian Princes, after he had remained in *Palestine* a Year and half, he returned to *England*; whereupon *Alphis*, or *Elpis*, Sultan of *Egypt*, assembled a great Army, and invading *Syria*, took *Tripoly* from the Christians, and afterwards *Sidon*, *Berethus*, *Tyre*, and the rest of the Towns possessed by the Christians except *Ptolemais*; but he was pleased to consent to a Truce for five Years; which was not well observed by the Christians: For another Reinforcement being sent to *Ptolemais*, they plundered the neighbouring Country then under the Dominion of the Sultan of *Egypt*, and refusing to make him any Satisfaction, he laid Siege to *Ptolemais*; but dying during the Siege, his Son *Araphus*, took the Town by Storm, and gave the Plunder of it to his Soldiers; after which he burnt it down to the Ground, and the Christians were entirely expelled from *Palestine*, being one hundred and ninety-two Years after the taking *Jerusalem* by *Godfrey of Bouillon*, the first Christian King of that City.

A Crusade

by Prince

Edward

King of England

and the

English.

1271.

Most of the

Towns in

Palestine

lost.

The Chri-

tians ex-

pelled Pa-

lestine.

The Kings of JERUSALEM.

1. *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorrain*. A. D.
1099
2. *Baldwin* of *Lorrain*, Brother of *Godfrey*, reduced *Ptolemais*, and many other Cities of *Syria*. 1100
3. *Baldwin* II. surnamed of *Bruges*, Cousin of *Godfrey*, and *Baldwin* the former Kings, defeated the Sultan of *Damascus*, and enlarged his Kingdom by the Addition of *Tyre*. 1118
4. *Fulk*, Earl of *Anjou*, having married *Melesinda*, the Daughter of *Baldwin* the Second, succeeded after his Decease, unfortunately killed with a Fall from his Horse. 1131
5. *Baldwin* III. Son of *Fulk* and *Melesinda*, fortified 1143
Gaza

Gaza against the Caliph of *Egypt*, and recovered *Paneada* from the King of *Damascus*.

1164

6. *Almericus*, the Brother of *Baldwin* the Third, so distressed the Great Caliph of *Egypt*, that he was forced to call in the *Turks* to aid him, by whom slain, and his Kingdom transferred to *Saracon*, the *Turkish* General.

1174

7. *Baldwin* IV. Son of *Almericus*, defeated *Saladin*, the victorious King of the *Turks*, in a Fight near *Ascalon*, and valiantly defended his Dominions.

1185

8. *Baldwin* V. Son of *Sybil*, the Sister of *Baldwin* the IVth by *William*, Marquis of *Montferrat*; unnaturally poisoned by his own Mother, having reigned only five Months, to make way for her second Husband, called

1185

9. *Guy* of *Lusignan*, the last King of *Jerusalem*, that had the Possession of the City: During whose time, *Saladin*, the Sultan of *Egypt*, subdued that Kingdom, anno 1187.

1187

After the taking of *Jerusalem*, by the Sultan *Saladin*, the Christians retreated with their Forces, into some of the other Towns of the *Holy Land*; which they made good against the Enemy, and defended them under the Government of these three Kings following, viz.

10. *Conrad* Marquis of *Monferrat*, Husband of *Isabel*, the Daughter of *Almericus*, King of *Jerusalem*.

11. *Henry*, Earl of *Compagne*, second Husband of *Isabel*.

12. *John di Brenne*, Husband of *Mary*, or *Yoland*, as some call her, Daughter of *Conrad* and *Isabel*, the last Christian King that ever had Possession in *Syria*, or *Palestine*: Inhabited ever since by *Moors*, and *Arabians*.

Cassanes, the *Tartar*, Sovereign of *Persia*, revenged the Quarrel of the Christians, on the Sultan of *Egypt*, defeating his Army, and recovering most of the Towns he had taken in *Syria*, and *Palestine*, and even rebuilt the City of *Jerusalem*, at the Instance of his Queen, who was a Christian, and a Native of *Armenia*: He offered also to join the Christian Princes, and establish them again in the *Holy Land*; but the Princes of *Europe*, were at this Time engaged in Wars among themselves, which the Pope had incited, and were not at leisure to send any more Forces to the *Holy Land*: Whereupon *Cassanes* retiring into *Persia*, the *Egyptian* Sultan invaded *Syria* and *Palestine* again, and recovered all he had lost.

The last Prince of the *Turks* of the *Selzucian* Family was *Aladin*, who dying without Issue, the *Turkish* Lords, upon the Retreat of the *Tartars*, into *Persia*, divided his Territories among them: Of these, *Otboman*, the Son of *Ertbogrud*, who was taken notice of for his great Abilities in the Court of the late Sultan *Aladin*, possessed the Lordship of *Seguta*, in *Bythinia*, near Mount *Olympus*, being the Heir of the *Oguzian* Family, esteemed the most honourable among the *Turks*, next to that of the *Selzucian*, which was now extinct.

During these Wars between the *Turks* and *Tartars*, *Theodorus*, the *Greek* Emperor of *Nice*, dyed, leaving an infant Son behind him. Not long after the Emperor's Death, *Paleologus*, an ambitious Nobleman, caused the young Prince's Guardian to be assassinated, and himself to be declared Guardian and Protector of the Empire; and not content with that Honour, was afterwards crowned Emperor; which Title he pretended to bear only during the Minority of the young Prince. *Paleologus* had not been two Years upon the Throne of *Nice*, but he surprised the City of *Constantinople*, and expelled the *Latins*: *Baldwin*, the last *Latin* Emperor flying into *France*, to beg the Assistance of the Princes of *Europe*, to assist him in the recovery of his Dominions. The taking of *Constantinople* by *Paleologus*, the *Grecian* Emperor, happened in the Year 1261, after it had been in Possession of the *Latins* fifty eight Years; and soon after most of the *Grecian* Cities in *Europe* revolted, and acknowledged *Michael Paleologus* their Emperor,

1260

Constantinople recovered from the Latins by the Greeks 1261.

Notwithstanding these Successes, *Paleologus* did not think himself safe, till he put out the Eyes of the young Emperor, *John*, of whom he had assumed the Guardianship, and afterwards usurped his Throne: He proceeded at length to murder him and his Brother *Theodore*, the Sons of his late Master, the Emperor *Theodore Lascaris*. *Michael Paleologus*, however, was called *The Great*, for his Expulsion of the *Latins* from *Constantinople*, and enlarging the *Grecian* Empire, though he obtained it by the wickedest Means, the Murder of his late Master's Sons, and every one who could legally claim any Title to that Empire. He was long engaged in War with the *Venetians*, and concerned in the Massacre of the *French* in *Sicily*, for which he was excommunicated by the Pope; and to make his Peace with the Pontiff, acknowledged the Pope's Supremacy; for which he was detested by the *Greeks*, and his Son *Andronicus*, would

not suffer his Body to be buried, for a Year and more after his Death.

TURKEY, or the OTTOMAN EMPIRE.

Turkey in Europe. **T**HE Grand Signior's Dominions, are divided into three Parts, viz. *Turkey in Europe*, *Turkey in Asia*, and *Turkey in Africa*.

Situation. *Turkey in Europe* is situate between 17 and 40 Degrees E. Longitude, and between 36 and 49 North Latitude, being 1000 Miles long, and 900 broad; bounded by *Russia*, *Poland*, and *Sclavonia*, North; by *Circassia*, the *Black Sea*, the *Propontis*, *Hellepont*, and *Archipelago*, East; by the *Mediterranean*, South; and by the same Sea, the *Venetian*, and *Austrian Territories*, West.

Mountains. The chief Mountains are the *Iron Gate Mountains*, *Rhodope*, or *Argentum*, *Mount Athos*, *Chimera*, *Parnassus*, and *Helicon*, and *Pelion*.

Rivers. Rivers, 1. *Nieper*, 2. *Bog*, 3. *Neister*, 4. *Pruth*, 5. *Danube*, 6. *Save*, 7. *Alauta*, 8. *Unna*, 9. *Drino*, 10. *Morava*, 11. *Moriza*.

Turkey in Asia. *Turkey in Asia* is situate between 27 and 45 E. Longitude, and between 25 and 45 N. Latitude; bounded by the *Black Sea* and *Circassia*, North; by *Persia*, East; by *Arabia* and the *Levant Sea*, South; and by the *Archipelago*, the *Hellepont*, and *Propontis*, which separate it from *Europe*, on the West.

Mountains. Mountains. 1. *Olympus*, 2. *Taurus*, and *Ante-Taurus*. 3. *Caucasus*, and *Arrarat*. 4. *Lebanon*. 5. *Hermion*. 6. *Ida*.

Rivers. Rivers. *Euphrates*, and *Tigris*, *Orontes*, *Meander*, *Sarabat*, *Kara*, *Jordan*, the *Lakes Van*, the *Sea of Gallilee*, and the *Dead Sea*.

Turkey in Africa will be described in treating of that Quarter of the World.

Produce and Manufactures. *Turkey* produces a Variety of Wine, Oil, and Fruit; Wool, Silk, Carpets, Mohair-Yarn, Leather, Shagrin, Skins, Coffee, Myrrh, Frankincense, Rhubarb, and other Drugs. Their Exports and Imports are made chiefly in foreign Vessels, and the *Greek* and *Armenian* Christians are the chief Merchants here,

The

The Grand Signior is an absolute Prince, elected and *Constituted* frequently by the *Janizaries*; but a particular regard is had to the *Ottoman Family*. Their Forces are very numerous, the *Turks* holding their Lands by Military Tenures; but the *Janizaries* and *Sphabis*, who are bred in the *Seraglio*, are chiefly relied on. These, as well as their *Bassa's*, *Beglerbeks*, and other Officers, are Slaves taken in War, or purchased of the Christians. A native *Turk* is seldom advanced to any Post, but then the *Turkish* Gentlemen live in great Freedom, and are seldom taxed.

The Grand Signior is Heir to all his *Bassa's*, Governors, and Officers, Civil and Military, and imprisons, and puts them to death when he pleases. The Confiscations and the Presents every Governor annually makes to the Sovereign, are the best part of the Revenue; the rest arises by a Poll Tax on the Christians, and the Duties of Import and Export upon all Merchandise, and the Tribute of some conquered Provinces and Islands, inhabited by Christians. The Women of the *Seraglio* are either Presents made by the respective Governors, or Slaves purchased or taken in War: The greatest Beauties are purchased in *Circassia*, *Georgia*, and *Mengrelia*, of Christian Parents, the *Jews* being the Brokers, or Factors, for this Merchandise. Their *Bassa's*, and great Men, purchase the Daughters of Christians, to fill their *Harams*. The Grand Signior never marries, but the first Son he has by a Slave, is deemed his Heir, and the Mother is Sultana, or Empress. Male Slaves have their Liberty when they become *Mahometans*, but they do not much regard what Religion the Females are of, never suffering them to resort to the Temples, or any Places of public Worship.

The common Slaves, both Male and Female, are sold in the Markets of *Constantinople*, and other Towns, like Cattle. The established Religion is *Mahometanism*; they are of the Sect of *Omar*, and subdivided into a hundred other Sects. The Christians are as numerous in the *European* Provinces and Islands, as the *Turks*, and in some Parts of the Empire, they are all Christians, as in *Moldavia*, *Walachia*, and the *Grecian* Islands.

The Christians also are divided into several Sects, as *Grecians*, *Armenians*, and *Latin Christians*, and have their respective Patriarchs, Archbishops, Bishops, and Clergy, but the *Greek* Christians are most numerous; their Patriarchs and Bishops are often nominated by

the Grand Signior, and these Offices frequently sold. At *Jerusalem* is the Church of the Sepulchre, where every Sect of Christians almost *Greek* and *Latin*, have their Chapels, and vast numbers of Pilgrims resort thither every Year, being protected by the *Turks* against the *Arabs*; for which great Presents are made by the Christians, insomuch, that the Government think it worth their while to maintain a *Bassa*, with a strong Garison at *Jerusalem*, for their Guard.

Jerusalem is not built upon the same Ground it was formerly. It stands on an Eminence, surrounded with Hills, and fruitful Valleys, Mount *Calvary* almost in the Middle; whereas, Mount *Sion*, on which *Solomon's* Temple was built, was formerly in the Middle of the Town, but now in the Suburbs. The *Lesser Asia* was formerly well cultivated, abounding in rich Corn-Fields and Pastures, and adorned with abundance of fine Towns, but is now a Defart in comparifon of what it was.

The Grand Signior's Titles. The Grand Signior is stiled by his Subjects, *the Shadow of God, a God on Earth, a Brother to the Sun and Moon, Disposer of all Earthly Crowns, &c.* He is generally esteemed something more than human, and not bound by any Laws whatsoever, except that of maintaining the *Mabometan* Faith.

Those who are in any Office, or Post, under the Grand Signior, or receive his Pay, are stiled his Slaves, which is the most honourable Title a Subject can bear; the Term Slave, in *Turky*, signifying one who is entirely resigned to the Emperor's Will and Pleasure, and ready to execute whatever he commands.

Officers educated in the Seraglio.

The Youth who are educated in the Seraglio, and designed for Employments in the Government or Army, are all the Children of Christian Parents, either taken in War, purchased, or Presents from the Viceroy and Governors of distant Provinces, the most beautiful, well made, sprightly Children, that can be met with, and always reviewed and approved of by the Grand Signior, before they are admitted into the Seraglio's of *Pera*, *Constantinople*, or *Adrianople*; which are the three Colleges, or Seminaries, where they are educated, or fitted for Employments, according to the Opinion the Court entertains of them.

The Eunuchs, to whose Care they are committed, treat them with extraordinary Severity, 'tis said, correcting them with Blows for the slightest Offence, and sometimes punishing them by Watching, Fasting, and other

Auste.

Austerities, making them undergo a severer Discipline, than the Novices in a Convent.

They are first taught Silence, and an humble, modest Behaviour; then instructed in the *Mahometan* Religion, and to speak, and write the *Turkish* Language, and afterwards the *Persian*, and *Arabic*. When they are fit for manly Exercises, they are taught the Use of Arms, and such other Arts and Sciences, as may render them serviceable to the State, and are advanced, and their Salaries augmented, according to their Proficiency; and as Places or Governments fall, they are preferred to them, but they are seldom preferred out of the Seraglio, until the Age of Forty, before which, they are not thought sufficiently qualified for Governors.

Part of the Grand Signior's Court is composed of Mutes *Mutes and Dwarfs.* and Dwarfs; the Mutes, who are born deaf, and consequently dumb, are about forty in Number; these are taught to discourse by Signs, and maintain a Conversation, without the Use of Words. With these, and the Dwarfs, who are also Buffoons, this Prince frequently diverts himself; and if a Dwarf happens to be an Eunuch, and a Mute, too great a Value can't be set upon him.

Two of the Grand Signior's Eunuchs, have very extensive Commands: One named the *Kislar Aga*, is a *Eunuchs.* a black Eunuch, and is Superintendent of the Women. Another, called the *Capi Agasi*, or white Eunuch, has the Command of all the Pages and white Eunuchs of the Court. The Ladies of the *Haram* are a Collection of *Ladies of the Court.* young beautiful Virgins, either the Presents of Governors, purchased, or Captives taken in War, most of them the Children of Christian Parents, who, on their Admission, are committed to the Charge of some old Lady, and taught Music, Dancing, and other Accomplishments, and furnished with the richest Cloaths and Ornaments; these frequently play and dance before the Grand Signior, while others entertain him with their Conversation; when any one of them is made choice of, to retire with him, she is complimented on the Occasion, by the rest of the Ladies of the Court.

These Ladies are scarce ever suffered to go abroad except when the Grand Signior removes; when a Troop of black Eunuchs convey them to the Boats, which are enclosed with Lattices. And when they go by Land, they are put into close Chariots, and Signals made at certain Distances, to give Notice, that none approach the Road, through which they march.

Besides

Besides these Ladies, there are a great many female Slaves in the Seraglio, whose Business it is to wait on them.

There are a Multitude of Male Slaves also in the Seraglios bred up to laborious Employments: There are not less than ten thousand Bostangis, or Gardeners, 'tis said, about the Gardens of the Palaces; and the *Bostangi Bassa* is a very great Man, having not only the Command of the Royal Gardens, Pleasure Houses, and Water-works, but also the Jurisdiction of the *Bosphorus*, or *Strait of Constantinople*, as far as the *Black Sea*.

GRECIAN and OTTOMAN EMPIRE.

The Rise of the Ottoman Family, 1289. **E**RTOGRUL Father of *Othman*, was the Chief of the *Oguzian* Tribe of *Turks*, as also been observed already. His People subsisted by breeding and feeding of Cattle, being at this time Masters only of the little Town of *Seguta* in *Bythia* and the Territory about it. *Ertogrul*, dying in the Year 1289, left three Sons behind him, viz. *Jundus*, *Sarugatin*, and *Othman*, of whom *Othman* was elected their Chief by the *Oguzian* Shepherds, though the youngest of the Three, purely in regard to his Merit, and was thereupon stiled *Osman beg*, or the Lord *Osman*, and afterwards *Othoman*, and by some *Othman* and *Ottoman*.

The Christians of *Bythia* having suffered the *Turks* to bring their Flocks and Herds into their Country, and graze them upon their Mountains when they were expelled from *Persia* and the rest of their Territories by the *Tartars*; the *Turks*, after they had continued here some time, began to claim the Places they possessed as their Right, and to dispute the Dominion and Property of the Country with the Christians: Whereupon the Christians complained to the Governors of the *Greecian* Castles in their Neighbourhood, that these *Turks*, who not many Years before, out of mere Compassion, were received as poor Herdsmen into their Country, seized on their Lands and Possessions by Force, and would in Time drive them out of the Country, if their Insolence was any longer connived at.

The *Greecian* Governors thereupon assembled a Body of Forces in order to compel the *Turks* to acknowledge the

the Dominion of the *Grecian* Emperor, and to relinquish the Territories they had seized: And *Ottoman*, on the other hand, raised Troops to defend the Possession of the Places the *Turks* had made themselves Masters of, and fought a Battle with the Christians, wherein *Sarugatin*, the Brother of *Ottoman*, was killed on one side, and *Culanus*, General of the Christians, on the other; but the *Turks* seem to have had the better in this Engagement, making themselves Masters of the *Grecian* Castle of *Cara Chisar*, soon after the Battle. (This Castle was situate on the Frontiers of *Bythinia* and *Phrygia*). *Ottoman*, notwithstanding this Success, thought fit to agree to a Truce with the Christians, apprehending he should be attacked by their whole Forces before he had established his infant State, and the rather as he found some of the other *Turkish* Tribes conspiring his Ruin, who envied his Exaltation.

*A Battle
between
the Chri-
stians and
Ottoman.*

Ottoman did not long observe the Truce he had made, but having corrupted *Michael Cossi*, one of the Christian Governors on the Frontiers, by his Advice and Direction, made an Incurſion into *Bythinia*, and plundering the Country, greatly enriched himself. Two Commanders of the *Grecian* Castles, falling out about the ſame Time, the weakeſt called in *Ottoman* to his Aſſiſtance, and obtaining a Victory over his Enemy, *Ottoman* afterwards took his Castle, and put him to Death. The Christians now beginning to entertain terrible Apprehenſions of *Ottoman*, prevailed on the Governor of *Belezuga*, whom he had aſſiſted in the late Engagement, to invite *Ottoman* to be preſent at a Wedding, that was to be ſolemnized at his Caſtle, with a Deſign to take him off, which his friend *Cossi*, acquainting him with, *Ottoman* found Means to introduce a Party of his Soldiers into the Caſtle in Diſguiſe, killed the Governor, and all his Gueſts, and poſſeſſed himſelf of the Caſtle. He afterwards made himſelf Maſter of ſeveral other *Grecian* Caſtles in *Phrygia*; putting to the Sword all he found there, whereby he rendered himſelf exceeding terrible to the Christians, and had the Boldneſs to lay Siege to the City of *Nice*, the Capital of the *Grecian* Empire, before the *Grecians* repoſſeſſed themſelves of *Conſtantinople*: The Citizens of *Nice* ſending to the Emperor to acquaint him with their Diſtreſs, an Army was raiſed for their Relief; but no ſooner landed on the Coaſt of *Asia*, but they fell into an Ambuſcade *Ottoman* had laid for them, and were moſt of them cut in Pieces:

*The City
of Nice
taken by
Ottoman,
he assumes
the Title
of Sultan,
1300,*

*Defeats
the Chri-
stians
again.*

Pieces: Whereupon the City of *Nice* surrendered to the *Infidels*, and *Ottoman* thereupon took upon him the State and Title of *Sultan*, (anno 1300) and made *Neapolis* the Seat of his Government. The Christian Princes and Governors of *Bythinia*, and *Phrygia*, hereupon confederated together, and invaded the new Kingdom erected by *Ottoman*, and joining Battle with him were defeated; the Prince of *Bythinia*, the Chief of the Confederates, retiring to his capital City of *Prusa*, which *Ottoman* not being able to take, built two Castles, which commanded all the Avenues to it, and returned to *Neapolis*: He had suffered his friend *Cossi*, that treacherous Christian Governor, to whom he was indebted for most of his Successes against the Christians, to remain undisturbed in his Government hitherto; but having him now in his Power, he gave *Cossi* to understand, that if he would not turn *Mahometan*, he would deprive him of all his Territories; which *Cossi*, with some seeming Reluctance consenting to, was circumcised, and became one of *Ottoman's* Vassals. The Sultan, now grown old, constituted his Son *Orchanes*, Generalissimo; who subdued almost all the rest of the Cities of *Bythinia* and *Phrygia*, the *Grecian* Emperors making no Efforts to relieve them; nor indeed could they, for *Paleologus* and his Successors, being Usurpers, and in Danger of being dispossessed by the Emperor of *Germany*, and other *European* Princes, who favoured the right Heir, they had no other Way to preserve themselves, but by submitting to the Pope, and engaging to be subject to his Jurisdiction in Spirituals; which made Malcontents of their *Grecian* Subjects. It was as much as they could do, to prevent the Restoration of the lawful Heir: It was not in their Power, therefore, to relieve the *Asiatic* Provinces; and the Governors of those Provinces perpetually jarring, and contending with one another for Superiority, the *Turks* made an easy Conquest of them while they were thus divided. Some of them proved such implacable Enemies to each other, it appears, that they called in the *Turks* to revenge their Quarrels; and probably few Countries have been conquered without the Assistance of a disaffected Party in the Country invaded.

*Prusa ta-
ken by the
Turks,
1327.*

Prusa having been blocked up several Years by *Orchanes*, was by Famine at length obliged to surrender, anno 1327; and the Year following dyed *Ottoman* in the 28th Year of his Reign. He was buried at *Prusa*,
esteemed

esteemed the Founder of the *Turkish* Empire, and his Successors from him denominated *Ottoman Emperors*.

Orchanes succeeded his Father *Ottoman*. *Nice* was re- *Orchanes*,
taken by the Christians in the beginning of his Reign; *his Accession*,
but the *Turks* soon after besieged it; whereupon *Andronicus*,
Andronicus the younger, the *Grecian* Emperor, transported an
Army into *Asia*, to relieve that City, and gave the *Turks*
Battle; in which Engagement, neither Side could claim
the Victory; but the following Night the Christian
Army was taken with such a Panic, that they fled to
the Sea-side, no Man pursuing them, and left the *Turks*
Masters of the Field; and the Emperor himself seeing his
Army dispersed, embarked again for *Europe*: The People
of *Nice*, however, still expected a Reinforcement of
Troops, which the *Turks* being acquainted with, clothed
800 Horse, in the Habits of Christians, and marching
them along the Road, which leads from *Constantinople* to
Nice, were let into the City by the Garison, before
they were discovered to be Enemies; and thus this im-
portant City fell into the Hands of the Infidels a second
Time. *Abydos* upon the *Hellepont* was next besieged
and taken, being betrayed into the Hands of the *Turks*,
as 'tis said, by the Governor's Daughter, who being in
Love with *Abdarachman*, the *Turkish* General, who
commanded the Siege, advised him to raise it, and re-
turn the Night following, with a select Party of Men,
when the Garison would be rejoicing for their Deliver-
ance, and consequently off their Guard; which *Abdurach-*
man consenting to, the Lady let her Lover and his
Party in, who took Possession of the Castle with very
little Resistance. *Nicomedia* was next besieged, which
expecting no Relief, surrendered upon Condition that
the Inhabitants might retire into *Europe* with their Effects.

Orchanes being now Master of *Abydos*, and several
other Towns on the *Asiatic* Side of the *Hellepont*, his
Son *Solyman* embarked with a small Party in a dark Night,
and surpris'd a little Castle on the *European* Side, and
bringing over more Forces afterwards, took the City of
Gallipoli, in the *Thracian Chersonese*, anno 1358, which
was the first considerable Town the *Turks* made them-
selves Masters of in *Europe*, the *Grecian* Emperor making
no Attempt to relieve it.

Solyman, in the midst of these Successes in *Europe*, was
killed by a Fall from his Horse, as he was hawking;
and two Months after dyed his Father *Orchanes*, in the
thirty-second Year of his Reign, anno 1359.

Amurath

Gallipoli,
the first
City taken
by the
Turks in
Europe,
1358.

Amurath's *Amurath* succeeded his Father *Orchanes*, and in the
Accession beginning of his Reign assembled a powerful Army
1359. near *Prusa*, in order to extend his Conquests in *Europe*; but receiving Advice, that the *Mahometan* Princes of *Asia* had entered into a Confederacy against him, he made a Truce with the *European* Christians, and engaged his Enemies in *Asia*, whom he had the good Fortune to defeat: Whereupon he resumed his former Design of invading the Territories of the *Grecian* Emperor in *Europe*, which the Governor of *Didymotichum* being acquainted with, was about adding several Works to the Fortifications of that important frontier Town, and invited Workmen from all Parts, offering them extraordinary Pay; which the cunning *Turk* being acquainted with, ordered 200 *Asian* Workmen to offer their Service in the Fortifications; who being employed by the Governor, though he was so cautious to make them lie without the Walls every Night, they surprised one of the Gates, and a Body of *Turks*, who were concealed at a little Distance, coming to their Assistance, the Town was taken. The City of *Adrianople* also was taken by Treachery soon after, though the Truce was not yet expired; and this City the Sultan made the Capital of his Dominions, both in *Europe* and *Asia*.
Adrianople taken by the Turks, 1362. In this Reign it was ordered, that every fifth Capture, above fifteen Years of Age, should be taken into the Sultan's Service, and be educated in the Seraglio, out of whom a certain Number should serve as the Sultan's Guards, and these first obtained the Name of *Janizaries* in this Reign. The Sultan afterwards visiting his *Asian* Dominions, the *Servians* and *Bulgarians* raised an Army for the Recovery of *Adrianople*, but falling out among themselves, were easily defeated. *Amurath* then invaded *Servia*, and took the City of *Nissa*, and *Apalonia*, with several other Towns in *Macedonia* and *Thrace*, but was called over again into *Asia*, by an Invasion of his Territories, by the *Mahometan* Princes who had not submitted to him, and were still apprehensive of being subdued by him. But he had the good Fortune to defeat those petty Princes, and make them tributary to him, as were most of the Powers in the *Lesser Asia* at this Time. The Princes of *Servia* and *Illyria*, and *Bulgaria*, again invaded the Sultan's Territories in *Europe*; but the *Grecian* Emperor of *Constantinople* seems to have stood neuter in these Wars, or rather to be in Alliance with

with *Amurath*; for the Sultan married his Daughter, and the Sultan's two Sons, *Bajazet* and *Jacup*, her two Sisters.

Amurath having raised an Army of 200,000 Men, and upwards, transported them into *Europe*, and encountered the Christian Army; who were no less numerous in the Plains of *Cossova*, near the River *Morava*, the Christian Army being commanded by the King of *Bosnia*, or *Illyria*, and *Lazarus* Despot of *Servia*. The Turks *The Turks* having no Hopes of breaking the Battallions of the Christians, while they preserved their Order, had recourse again. to their old Stratagem, of a pretended Flight, and the Christians pursuing them, the *Turks* returned to the Charge when the Christians were separated, and obtained a compleat Victory. *Lazarus* was killed in the *Amurath* Engagement, and *Amurath* afterwards, it is said, was *mortally* killed by a wounded Christian Soldier, who, coming to *wounded* beg his Life, as he pretended, stabbed *Amurath* with a *by a Christian* short Sword, of which Wound he died immediately. *Soldier, after* His Son *Bajazet*, on the Sultan's Death, sent for his Brother *Jacup*, in his Father's Name; and as soon as he arrived, ordered him to be strangled, that he might have no Rivals in the Government: And this Conduct has been frequently imitated by succeeding Sultans. *the Victory.*

Bajazet, surnamed *Gilderun*, or *Lightning*, from his *Bajazet's* swift Marches, and fierce Attacks upon his Enemies, invaded *Servia*, in the Beginning of his Reign, to which *Accession,* he was chiefly tempted by the silver Mines in that Province. He first laid Siege to *Cratova*, which surrendered to him, on condition they might retire to their Friends; but were no sooner out of Town, than he commanded a Detachment of his Army to put them all to the Sword. He then took *Uscopia*, and several other Fortresses in *Servia*. The next Year his Generals passed the River *Danube*, and plundered the Province of *Walachia*. *Bajazet* having spent the following Winter at *Adrianople*, passed over into *Asia*, and took the City of *Philadelphia*, in *Lydia*, being the only Place almost in the *Lesser Asia* possessed by the Christians, which having no Hopes of Relief, surrendered. The *Grecian* Emperor, it is said, was so far from assisting them, that he contributed to their Misfortune. After the taking of *Philadelphia*, *Bajazet* reduced *Ionis*, *Caramania*, and most of the Sea Coasts, then subject to several little *Mahometan* Princes. *1372.*

While *Bajazet* was making Conquests in *Asia*, the *Vayvod* of *Walachia* crossed the *Danube*, and laid that Part of

Makes
Walachia
tributary
to him.

Besieges
Constanti-
nople.

1396.

of *Servia* under Contribution, which had submitted to the *Turks*, making a great many Prisoners, and carrying off Abundance of rich Plunder. *Bajazet* repassing the *Helle-spont*, soon returned the Vayvod's Visit, and having defeated him in a general Battle, made *Walachia* tributary to him. The next Year *Bajazet* made Preparations to invade the Kingdom of *Hungary*; but intercepting a Letter from the Emperor of *Constantinople* to the King of *Hungary*, giving him an Account of his Motions, he altered his Design, and laid Siege to that City, or rather blockaded it, eight Years; for it does not appear, that he assaulted it during that Time; and *Sigismund*, King of *Hungary*, assisted by the *French*, raising an Army to relieve the City, *Bajazet* raised the Siege, and marched to give the *Hungarians* Battle, and was so fortunate to defeat them; which is ascribed to the ill Conduct of the *French*, who begun the Fight before the *Hungarians* were prepared to second them. The Christians in this Engagement lost several thousand Men; and so many of them were made Prisoners, it is said, that every *Turkish* Soldier had a Slave to his Share after this Battle. The King of *Hungary* not thinking himself safe in his own Country now, fled away almost alone, and did not return to *Hungary* again in eighteen Months. After this Victory *Bajazet* returned to the Siege of *Constantinople*, where having lain two Years more, he was obliged to raise it on the Approach of *Tamerlane*; for not only the Emperor of *Constantinople*, and other Christian Princes and States, but the *Mahometan* Princes, whom *Bajazet* had oppressed, and deprived of their Territories, hearing of the Conquests *Tamerlane* had made in the East, either attended his Court in Person, or sent Ambassadors to him, imploring his Assistance, and that he would deliver them from the Fury of this overgrown Tyrant, who was perpetually plundering the World about him.

Tamerlane is described by some as a poor *Tartarian* Shepherd, who raised himself on a sudden from Obscurity, as *Romulus*, the Founder of *Rome*, *Mahomet* the *Saracen*, and *Ottoman* the Emperor of the *Turks*, had done; but these, it is observed, advanced themselves by Degrees, and left their Posterity to enlarge their respective Empires, and finish what they had but begun; whereas we find *Tamerlane*, in his Life-time, subduing the most formidable Powers, and possessed of Dominions more extensive than any of the Monarchies that preceded this. The Conquests of *Alexander* and *Cæsar* are not to be com-

compared with the rapid Progress of *Tamerlane's* Arms; nor were any of their Views so commendable as his, namely, the delivering Nations from Oppression, and restoring Liberty to the several States:

I am inclined, therefore, to believe the Relations given us by more impartial Writers than the *Turks*, who had the Mortification to be subdued by him. These inform us, that *Tamerlane* was born at *Samerchand*, in *Uzbek Tartary*, situate on the River *Jaxartes*, in sixty-six Degrees of Eastern Longitude, and forty Degrees of North Latitude: That he was the Son of *Zam Cham*, or *Chan*, Prince of the *Zagathaian Tartars*, third in Descent from *Zingis*, the Chief of all the *Tartar Tribes*. *Tamerlane's* first Enterprize was against the *Russians*, who had plundered a City under his Protection; he defeated them in a general Battle, and obliged them to submit to such Terms as he was pleased to impose upon them. After this he married the Daughter of the great King of the *Mogul Tartars*, his Uncle, whom he succeeded in his Dominions, and from thence obtained the Title of the Great Mogul, or Mongul, as his Descendants, the Emperors of *India*, are stiled at this Day. The Emperor of *China* invading *Tamerlane's* Territories was defeated by him; and *Tamerlane* returning his Visit, he demolished Part of the great Wall which divides *Tartary* from *China*, made himself Master of the capital City of *Cambelu*, now *Pekin*; took one Half of his Kingdom from him, and obliged him to pay an annual Tribute for the rest; and having constituted a Viceroy over the other Parts, returned to *Samerchand*, where he met the several Princes of *Asia* and *Europe*, or their Ambassadors, who came to implore Protection against *Bajazet*, the common Oppressor and Enemy of Mankind. He assembled vast Bodies of Troops, therefore, from *China* and *Tartary*, which were joined by the *Russians*, and other Nations, in their March, insomuch, that it is computed his Army amounted to 800,000, or 1,000,000 of Men. He bent his March to the North of the *Caspian Sea*, till he came to the Mountains of *Caucasus*, by which he entered *Georgia*, *Circassia*, and the Countries which lie between the *Caspian* and the *Euxine Seas*. These Nations were in Alliance with him, and furnished him with Provisions; without whose Assistance it would have been impossible to have subsisted his Army, and passed this mountainous Country: But the Inhabitants being Christians, and Enemies to the *Turks*, whose Power they dreaded, did all that

Tamerlane invades Russia, China, and Turkey.

Tamerlane takes
Sebastia,
and buries
the Gar-
ison alive.

lay in their Power to facilitate the March of *Tamerlane's* Army ; but not to rely altogether on his Confederates for Provisions for so vast a Multitude, he had a Fleet upon the *Caspian Sea*, which attended the Army, and supplied his People with Provisions and Necessaries as they marched ; and when he came into the Enemies Country, which had been lately subdued by *Bajazet*, he found the People ready to furnish his Army with Provisions, looking upon him as their Deliverer from *Turkish* Tyranny, especially as he did not suffer his Soldiers to plunder or take any thing by Force ; not so much as an Apple, or a Draught of Milk, but the Offender was put to Death for it. *Sebastia* was the first City that disputed his Passage, and treated him with great Contempt when he summoned the Governor to surrender, being strongly fortified and defended by a numerous Garison : Whereupon *Tamerlane* surrounded the Town, but did not make any Assault on the Works for a Week and more, when of a sudden Part of the Walls and Towers about the City fell down, having been undermined so imperceptibly, that the Garison did not suspect it till they saw themselves laid open to the Enemy. After which *Tamerlane* would grant them no Terms ; and if we may credit the *Turkish* Accounts, he ordered great Pits to be dug, and tying the Soldiers of the Garison Hand and Foot, buried them every one alive ; which is not easily to be credited of a Prince of *Tamerlane's* humane Disposition. Others seem to justify this Slaughter, and say it was done *in terrorem*, and might be the Occasion of saving many Lives, for very few Cities afterwards durst oppose his Arms ; and no Prince was ever more indulgent to those who submitted to him, is agreed on all Hands, and to none did he express greater Favour than to the Christians, though he himself and his Subjects were Pagans.

Advice being brought to *Tamerlane*, that *Bajazet* was upon the March to meet him with an Army equal to his own, he made choice of a large Plain to engage in, understanding he was superior to the Enemy in Horse : As to the drawing up of his Army, or that of the Enemy, Historians give a very confused Account ; and indeed this is a Task that few Historians succeed in. I shall only observe, that *Tamerlane*, in order to prevent his numerous Troops falling into Disorder, drew them up in separate Bodies, proposing to engage but with Part of them at a Time, and to relieve them with fresh Forces, as there was Occasion ; and I make no doubt but *Bajazet* was as

skilful

skilful in the Military Art, and his Soldiers as good, or better, than the *Tartars*, having been in constant Service against the most warlike Nations, and generally victorious ; but the Disadvantage *Bajazet* lay under was, that many of his Men were not hearty in the Cause, having been raised in Countries he had lately enslaved and oppressed : Whereupon they deserted over to the Enemy in the Midst of the Engagement, and left their King to shift for himself ; and not only his Soldiers proved unfaithful, but the Country where the Battle was fought were Friends to *Tamerlane*, and contributed all that lay in their Power to his Success. There was all the Reason in the World, therefore, to expect, that *Bajazet* would be defeated, as he afterwards was, at Mount *Stella*, and himself made Prisoner with his Son *Musa*.

*Tamerlane visits the
Mount Stella.*

A. D.
1397.

Tamerlane, it is said, treated *Bajazet* with great Civility at first ; but meeting only with insolent Answers, and ill Language, and urging the Conqueror to put him to Death, he altered his Behaviour towards his Prisoner, put him in an Iron Cage, and carried him about with him wherever he went ; that having taken *Bajazet's* Wives, he made them wait upon him naked at his Table, and otherwise abused them ; which is the Reason, as it is said, that the *Turkish* Emperor never marries, lest by the Chance of War he should suffer the like Disgrace : But however that be, the proud *Bajazet* having been exposed for two Years to the Scorn and Scoffs of the People he had tyrannized over, died with Vexation, or, as some say, beat out his Brains against the Iron Bars of his Cage.

*Bajazet
made Pri-
soner.*

Upon this Victory most of the Towns of the *Lesser Asia* submitted to the Conqueror, particularly *Prusa*, the Capital. *Solyman*, *Bajazet's* eldest Son, fled over the *Hellepont*, and *Mahomet*, his youngest Son, to some other distant Country. The Emperor of *Constantinople* came to *Prusa* to congratulate *Tamerlane* on his Victory, and to offer him the Possession of his Capital ; but *Tamerlane* assured him he had no Intention to deprive him or any of his Friends of their Territories : On the contrary, he added several Countries in *Asia* to the Emperor's Territories, and made him a Visit at *Constantinople*, to see the magnificent Buildings and Antiquities of that City, which he observed exceeded any City he had seen in the East.

*Visits the
Grecian
Emperor at
Constanti-
nople.*

Tamerlane having quartered his Army in the adjacent Provinces during the Winter, assembled them again in the Spring, in order to invade the Sultan of *Egypt's* Do-

minions,

minions, who was now Master of *Palestine* and *Syria*, and had furnished *Bajazet* with a Body of Troops which composed Part of his Army ; but before *Tamerlane* began his March against the *Egyptian* Sultan, he restored all the little *Mahometan* Princes their Territories, which *Bajazet* had deprived them of in *Asia*.

Tamer-
lane re-
duces Sy-
ria,

A. D.

1399.

The first City *Tamerlane* took that belonged to the *Egyptians* was *Damascus*, where the Garison having made an obstinate Defence, were almost all put to the Sword ; at which the rest of the Cities of *Syria* were so terrified, that thirty of them surrendered immediately.

The next City *Tamerlane* arrived at was *Jerusalem*, from whence the Inhabitants having just expelled the *Egyptian* Garison, opened their Gates to him. Here this Conqueror visited all the holy Places the Pilgrims do, particularly the *Church of the Sepulchre*, to which he made considerable Presents.

and
Egypt.

The Sultan being now retired into *Egypt*, *Tamerlane* followed him thither, besieged the strong City of *Damietta*, at the Mouth of the *Nile*, and took it. He afterwards advanced to *Grand Cairo*, which having a Garison in it of near 100,000 Men, commanded by the Sultan in Person, made a long Resistance ; and when they could hold the Town no longer, marched out, and retreated towards *Alexandria* ; but being pursued by *Tamerlane*, were put to the rout ; however the Sultan escaped to *Alexandria* ; and not thinking himself safe there, abandoned that City, and went to *Lybia* : Whereupon *Alexandria* opened her Gates to the Conqueror, who remaining in this City some Time, two and twenty *African* Princes came thither, and made their Submission, and some of them gave him Hostages as Pledges of their Fidelity ; after which he returned with his Army towards *Syria*, having left Garisons in all the strong Towns, and appointed *Calibes*, one of his Generals, Governor of *Egypt*, *Lybia*, and the Coast of *Barbary* : He marched, in his Return to *Samercand*, through *Mesopotamia* and *Persia*, of which his Generals had made an intire Conquest, while he was employed in the *Egyptian* War.

Twenty-
two Afri-
can Princes
submit to
him.

He returns
to Samer-
cand.

Bajazet's
seven Sons.

Bajazet had seven Sons by his Wives ; 1. *Ertbogrud*, who was killed in a Battle in his Father's Reign ; 2. *Mustapha*, killed in the Battle of *Mount Stella*, when his Father *Bajazet* was made Prisoner ; 3. *Cusan* taken with his Father, and with his Sister *Statima*, delivered as Hostages by their Brother *Solyman* to *Emanuel*, the *Grecian* Emperor, and became Christians ; 4. *Solyman*, Sultan of *Adria-*

Adrianople afterwards; 5. *Isa*, who reigned as Sultan of *Prusa* a little Time; 6. *Musa*, who enjoyed the Title of Sultan also, for a Time; 7. *Mahomet*, the youngest, who being the only surviving Brother, after a ten Years Civil War, united all the Dominions of *Turky* in *Europe* and *Asia*, and reigned sole Sultan seven Years afterwards, as will be related more at large in the History of his Reign.

Tamerlane being retired to *Samercand*, *Mahomet*, *Bajazet's* youngest Son, assembled a Body of Forces in *Amasia*, and attacked the *Tartarian* Governors he had left behind him in *Asia*, with Success; of which *Tamerlane* receiving Advice, made Preparations for a second Expedition into *Turky*, determining to extirpate the *Ottoman* Family intirely, but was disappointed by his Death, which happened in *January*, 1402.

A. D.
1400.

Isa, *Mahomet's* elder Brother, disputed the Succession Wars be- to his Father *Bajazet's* Dominions in *Asia*, with *Ma- tween Ba- homet* for some Time; but being defeated, fled over in- jazet's to *Europe* to his Brother *Solyman*, who had possessed him- self of *Adrianople*, and all their Father's Territories on that Side the *Hellepont*, being the eldest Son of *Bajazet* then living. *Solyman* assembling an Army, gave the Command of it to his Brother *Isa*, who passing the *Hel- lespont*, fought several Battles with his Brother *Mahomet*, in all of which he was defeated, and in the last Battle lost his Life, as is supposed, being never heard of afterwards.

Sons.
1402.

Solyman receiving Advice of the ill Success of his Brother *Isa*, raised another Army, with which he passed the *Hellepont* in Person, and marching to *Prusa*, made himself Master of the City and Castle; and the People every where seemed ready to receive him as their Sovereign. *Mahomet*, however, still kept the Field, and, to make a Diversion, sent his Brother *Musa* to invade *Solyman's* Territories in *Europe*, where *Musa* found so many Friends, that the capital City of *Adrianople* submitted to him. *Solyman* returning into *Europe*, to defend his Territories on that Side, was surprized by *Musa* in a drunken Frolic, taken and put to Death, and *Musa* thereupon proclaimed Sultan at *Adrianople*; but reigning tyrannically, and laying heavy Duties on his Subjects, he soon lost their Affections; with which *Mahomet* being acquainted, assembled an Army, and passed over the Strait of *Constantinople*, with the Assistance of the *Grecian* Emperor, *Paleologus*, with whom he had concluded a defensive Alliance; whereby it was agreed, that if *Mahomet*

should

should obtain the Dominions of *Turky*, in *Europe*, he should always regard the Emperor as his Friend ; but if he should be defeated by his Brother *Musa*, the Emperor should assist him in his Retreat into *Asia* : And the Emperor was as good as his Word ; for *Mahomet* being routed, and returning to *Constantinople* with only 200 of the Army he carried over, the Emperor conveyed him in Safety to his *Asian* Dominions.

Mahomet still made another Attempt to recover the *European* Territories from his elder Brother *Musa*, but first contracted several Alliances with the neighbouring Powers, and found Means to corrupt some of the principal Officers in *Musa's* Army, who were very ready to change Sides, having seen many of their Brethren sacrificed to the Fury and Caprice of *Musa*, that had deserved well of him.

Mahomet, therefore, having transported his Army over to *Europe*, was joined every Day by large Bodies of *Musa's* Army, till at length that Prince being left almost alone, was taken Prisoner as he was endeavouring to make his Escape, and strangled by the Order of one of *Mahomet's* Generals, without being suffered to see his Brother, who, by the Death of *Musa*, now became sole Sovereign of the *Turkish* Dominions ; and therefore some Historians make this the Beginning of *Mahomet's* Reign, though it happened ten Years after the Death of *Bajazet*, his Father : And they place his Brothers, who were his Competitors, in the Number of their Kings. *Orchanes*, the Son of *Solyman*, also was complimented with the Title of Sultan for a few Days, and reckoned by some in the Number of their Kings ; but this unfortunate young Prince was taken by his Uncle *Mahomet*, and had his Eyes put out.

While *Mahomet* was absent in *Europe*, the Prince of *Caramania* invaded and plundered his *Asian* Territories, and burnt his capital City of *Prusa* ; but *Mahomet* coming into *Asia*, returned the Visit, defeated the Prince of *Caramania* in a general Battle, and obliged him to deliver up his strongest Cities and Fortresses, but suffered him to retain a Part of his Country, in consideration he had married his Sister.

This War being ended, *Mahomet* went over into *Europe*, passed the *Danube*, and invaded *Walachia* and *Transylvania*, burning and plundering those Countries from one End to the other, until he obliged their Princes to become tributary to him ; after which, reigning in Peace,

Mahomet
sole Sovereign,
by the Death
of all his
Brothers,
A. D.
1410.

Walachia
and
Transyl-
vania tri-
butary to
him.

Peace, he built a magnificent Palace, and a Mosque, at *Adrianople*: He also built and endowed a grand Convent for the religious *Mahometans*, sent large Sums to *Medina* and *Mecca*, for the Maintenance of poor Pilgrims; and thus having, as he imagined, purchased a Pardon for all the Murders and Robberies he had committed, he died at *Adrianople*, in the Year 1422, in the eighteenth Year of his Reign, reckoning from the Death of *Bajazet*, his Father.

The late Sultan, *Mahomet*, had five Sons; *Amurath* Amurath's
the eldest, who succeeded his Father; 2. *Mustapha*; *Accession*,
3. *Achmetes*, who died before his Father; 4. *Joseph*, A. D.
and, 5. *Mackmutes*, the two last dying in their Minority. 1422.

He had also seven Daughters: Three of them married to the three Sons of the King of *Caramania*, and the rest to other *Turkish* Princes. *Amurath* residing in *Europe* at the Death of his Father, the Ministry used every Stratagem to conceal the late Emperor's Death till his Arrival; for from the Death of a Sultan, until the Successor is installed, the Janizaries usually take the Liberty to plunder whom they please, and are under no Manner of Restraint. When the People, therefore, grew impatient to know if the sick Sultan was dead or alive, not having seen him a great while, they brought out the dead Prince in his usual Robes; and placing a Boy behind him, that could not be seen, he lifted the Sultan's Hand to his Head, and stroked his Beard as he used to do; with which Device, and some others of the like Nature, they amused the People for forty-one Days, till *Amurath* arrived at *Prusa*.

This Prince was exercised with several formidable Rebellions in the Beginning of his Reign. The Princes of *Smyrna* and *Mentesia*, in *Asia*, had recourse to Arms; And at *Thessalonica*, in *Greece*, an obscure Fellow counterfeited the late *Mustapha*, the Son of *Bajazet*, pretending that he escaped out of the Battle of *Mount Stella*, though it had been reported he was killed there. This Impostor so much resembled that Prince, and acted his Part so well, that he was joined by most of the People of *Greece*, and even acknowledged to be Prince *Mustapha*, and supported by *Emanuel*, the *Grecian* Emperor; and marching to the capital City of *Adrianople*, was there received and proclaimed Sultan. And *Amurath* sending the *Bassa*, *Bajazet*, over into *Europe*, at the Head of a numerous Army to suppress this Insurrection, most of the Generals, with their Troops, deserted over to this counterfeited Prince, who thereupon transported his Army into *Asia*.

Amurath despairing of subduing the Rebels by Force, had Recourse to Stratagem. He caused some of his Ministers, who had a perfect Knowledge of the deceased *Mustapha*, and were very popular Men, to desert over to the Impostor, who found Means to disabuse the People; whereupon they abandoned their Pretender at once; he was delivered up to *Amurath* without his running the Hazard of a Battle, and he caused him to be hanged.

Amurath having suppressed this Insurrection, determined to be revenged on the *Grecian* Emperor, for countenancing of it, and thereupon laid Siege to *Constantinople*; but the Inhabitants defended themselves so bravely, that, after several furious Attacks, he was compelled to rise from before it; and the *Grecian* Emperor, to prevent his returning again, found other Employment for him, by conspiring with the King of *Caramania*, to set *Mustapha*, *Amurath's* younger Brother, on the Throne. To which End, an Army was raised in *Caramania*, and the neighbouring Provinces, which marched with *Mustapha* at their Head (though he was then but thirteen Years of Age) and having invested *Nice*, that City surrendered to him; but *Amurath* corrupting some of the principal People in *Mustapha's* Court, he was betrayed to his Brother, who caused him to be strangled; whereby *Amurath* put an End to this second Insurrection.

The King of *Caramania*, however, still kept the Field, and invested the City of *Attalia* in *Pamphilia*, where he was killed as he was taking a View of the Works; whereupon his Son *Ibrahim*, who succeeded him, raised the Siege. *Tzunites*, Prince of *Smyrna*, having been concerned also in the late Insurrection, was, about the same Time, subdued by *Amurath's* Generals; and the Prince and his Son being made Prisoners, had their Heads struck off: Whereupon the Dominions of that Prince were united to those of the Sultan's.

Theffaly
and Mace-
don in-
vaded by
Amurath.

A. D.

1435.

Theffalonica, and other Cities of *Greece*, having given great Encouragement to that Insurrection of the First *Mustapha*, were now called to an Account by *Amurath*; who, marching through the Provinces of *Macedonia* and *Theffaly*, plundered those Countries, and possessed himself of several of their Cities, and at length laid Siege to *Theffalonica*, one of the richest and most beautiful Cities of *Greece*; which made a long and brave Defence, but was at length taken by storm, the Plunder given to the Soldiers, and the most unheard-of Cruelties exercised on the miserable

miserable Inhabitants, on Account of their being Christians.

Amurath next invaded *Servia*, the Prince whereof submitted to such Terms as the Sultan was pleased to impose upon him; viz. That he should pay an annual Tribute, give him his Daughter *Mary*, a celebrated Beauty, for one of his Wives; That he should not suffer the *Hungarians* to pass through his Country, and should never deny the *Turks* a Passage through *Servia*.

While *Amurath* was invading *Servia*, the Prince of *Caramania* in *Asia* invaded the Sultan's Dominions on that Side: For the Christian Princes of *Europe* were in a Confederacy with the little *Mahometan* Princes of *Asia*; and it was agreed among them, That when the Territories of the one were attacked by *Amurath*, the other should make a Diversion in their Favour. The Sultan, therefore, as soon as the *Servian* War was ended, transported his Army into *Asia*, where having subdued the Prince of *Caramania*, and the rest of the *Mahometan* Princes his Tributaries, he expelled most of them, and reduced their Territories into the Form of a Province.

Then pretending that the Prince of *Servia* had entered into a Treaty with the King of *Hungary*, returned to *Europe*, invaded and plundered both Countries, made himself Master of most of the strong Towns in *Servia*, and having taken the two Sons of the Prince of *Servia* Prisoners, burnt out their Eyes.

Albertus, King of *Hungary*, making great Preparations to defend his Territories against the *Turks*, died about this Time, leaving his Wife *Elizabeth*, the Daughter of *Sigismund* the Emperor, with child; whereupon she was advised by her Nobility to offer the Crown of *Hungary* to *Uladislaus* King of *Poland*, a brave and powerful Prince, who might be able to defend the Kingdom of *Hungary* against the *Turks*, and to marry him; to which the Queen consented: But, before the Treaty with the King of *Poland* was concluded, the Queen being brought-to-bed of a Son, repented her having given Consent to the advancing the King of *Poland* to the Throne, to the Prejudice of her new-born Son; and some of the Nobility inclining one Way, and some the other, the Kingdom was divided, and a Civil War like to ensue, at this critical Time, when an Invasion of the *Turks* was daily expected: The Queen, however, caused her Infant Son, then but three Months old, to be crowned King of *Hungary*. The King of *Poland*, on the other Hand, marched with a great Army into *Hungary*, and
being

being joined by a Majority of the Nobility, was acknowledged their King; and the Queen, thereupon, sent her young Son to the Emperor of *Germany's* Court for Protection.

Belgrade During these civil Dissensions in *Hungary*, *Amurath* laid
besieged by Siege to *Belgrade*, the strongest frontier City the *Hungarians*
Amurath. had; but though he attacked it with very great Fury,
 1436. both by Land and Water, and lost a Multitude of Men before it, he was at length obliged to raise the Siege.

The *Turks*, however, who were now Masters of *Walachia* and *Moldavia*, to be revenged for their Disgrace before *Belgrade*, plundered the Province of *Transylvania*, which was subject to *Hungary*. But *John Hunniades*, a General of great Fame, being made Governor of *Transylvania*, repulsed the *Turks*, recovered *Moldavia* out of their Hands, and, passing the *Danube*, plundered the *Turkish* Territories, carrying off great Numbers of Captives; and being attacked by the *Turks* in his Retreat, obtained a signal Victory. The *Turks* afterwards assembling a more numerous Army, invaded and plundered *Transylvania*; but as they were returning with their Booty, were set upon by *Hunniades*, and totally defeated, *Mesites* their General being killed in the Battle.

Amurath afterwards invaded *Walachia*, *Moldavia*, and *Transylvania*, with an Army of 80,000 Men, destroying those Countries, and killing or enslaving the miserable Inhabitants. This Army *Hunniades* also engaged, and defeated, recovering all the Plunder they had taken; with which, and the rich Spoils he took from the *Turks*, he rewarded his Troops, which did not consist of more than 20,000 Men.

The King of *Poland* and *Hunniades* afterwards raised a more powerful Army, and having passed the *Danube*, surprised the *Turks* in the Night-time, in their Camp; in which Engagement it was computed the *Turks* did not lose less than 30,000 Men: After which Successes, *Hunniades*, and the rest of the Christian Generals, were so elated with their Victories, that they imagined it would be no difficult Matter to drive the *Turks* out of *Europe*, and advanced as far as the Mountain *Hemus*, which divides *Serbia* from *Thrace*, over which there are only two difficult Passes; but these they found so well guarded and defended by the *Turks*, that it was impracticable to pass them, and they lost some of their Men in attempting it; and the *Turks* pursuing the *Hungarians* into the Plain, received another Defeat: And in this Engagement it was that the celebrated

celebrated *Scanderbeg*, who commanded a Body of *Turks*, deserted over to the Christians.

This General was the Son of *John Castriot*, Prince of *Scander-Epirus*. *Amurath* had invaded that Country, and the beg Prince adjacent Provinces, and obliged *John* to deliver up his of *Epirus*. four Sons to him as Hostages, as a Pledge of his Fidelity, and to secure the annual Tribute demanded of him; but when the Sultan returned to his Capital, he caused them all to be circumcised, and instructed in the *Mahometan* Superstition; and hearing afterwards of the Death of *John Castriot* their Father, he caused the three elder Brothers to be poisoned, and seized upon the Country of *Epirus* as his own. As to *George*, the youngest Brother, whom he seemed to have a great Affection for, he gave him a genteel Education, and the Name of *Scanderbeg*, or Lord *Alexander*; made him at length Sanziac, or Governor of a Province, and a General in his Army.

Scanderbeg being sensible of the Wrongs he had received in being deprived of his Inheritance, and compelled to profess *Mahometanism*, had long meditated his Escape, which he effected in the last Battle, carrying over 3000 Soldiers with him, who were Natives of *Epirus*, forcing the Secretary of the *Turkish* General to bear them Company; and as soon as he arrived at a Place of Safety, he compelled the Secretary to write Letters in the Name of the Bassa his Master, to the Governor of *Croia*, the Capital of *Epirus*, commanding him to deliver up that City to *Scanderbeg*; and when he had obtained those Letters, he killed the Secretary, and marched immediately to *Croia*, which the Governor, upon the Receipt of the Letter, delivered up to him. *Scanderbeg* having introduced the Soldiers that followed him into the City, the next Night, with the Assistance of the Inhabitants of *Croia*, put all the *Turkish* Garison to the Sword that refused to turn Christians: Whereupon the whole Province of *Epirus* *Epirus* revolted from the *Turks*, except two or three strong *revolts to* Towns that were garrisoned by them. *Scander-*

beg.
Scanderbeg having assembled an Army of 12,000 Men, marched to *Petrella*, a Place strongly situated upon a Rock, which surrendered to him upon the first Summons; and afterwards *Stellusa*, another important Fortrefs, was delivered up to him, without giving him the Trouble to besiege it. He then invaded *Macedonia*, and laid that Province under Contribution, raising Money enough in the Enemy's Country to pay his Army: Of which *Amurath* receiving Advice, sent Ali Bassa, at the Head
of

*He defeats
the Turks.*

of 40,000 Men, to put a Stop to these Excurſions. But *Scanderbeg* had the good Fortune to defeat the *Baſſa*, and drive him out of the Country; whereupon *Amurath*, that he might be in a Condition to oppoſe *Scanderbeg*, clapped up a Peace with the *Hungarians*, which they were extremely cenſured for agreeing to at this Time, when *Scanderbeg* was ſo ſucceſſful; for, if the *Hungarians* had joined their Forces with the *Epirots*, they might have driven the *Turks* over the *Helleſpont*; and the *Hungarians* were at length prevailed on to break it, and take the Field againſt the *Turks*; but the Prince of *Servia*, in this War, joining the *Turks*, and his Country lying between *Epirus* and *Bulgaria*, the Scene of Action, *Scanderbeg* found it impracticable to join the *Hungarians*, or make a Diverſion in their Favour: However, the *Hungarians* ventured to engage the *Turks* ſingly, though they were not half ſo numerous as the *Turks*, and were in a fair Way of obtaining the Victory. When *Amurath*, it is ſaid, taking the Treaty of Peace the *Hungarians* had ſigned with him in his Hands, cried out, *Behold, thou cruciſt Chriſt, the League thy Chriſtians, in thy Name, made with me, which they have violated without Cauſe; and if thou art a God, revenge the Wrong done unto thy Name, and ſhew thy Power upon thy perjured People.* Whereupon the Battle took another Turn; and the Chriſtians being entirely defeated, *Ulaſiſlaus*, the *Hungarian King*, loſt his Life in the Field. This is called the Battle of *Varna*.

*The King
of Hunga-
ry defeat-
ed, and
killed at
the Battle
of Varna,
by the
Turks.*

A. D.
1447-

*The Morea
invaded by
Amurath.*

*Coffova
Battle.*

*Scander-
beg's Suc-
ceſſes.*

In the mean Time *Amurath* ordered a Detachment of his Army to plunder *Epirus*, which, while they were doing, *Scanderbeg* fell upon them, and cut moſt of them in Pieces; and a ſecond Detachment met with no better Succeſs: However, *Amurath* had the good Fortune to break through the Wall that run croſs the *Iſthmus* of *Corinth*, and ſubdued the greateſt Part of the *Morea*, then in the Poſſeſſion of the *Venetians*. He gained alſo a great Victory over the *Hungarians*, commanded by *Hunniades*, in a Battle fought at *Coffova*, which laſted three Days.

Scanderbeg's good Fortune, however, ſtill attended him; for *Muſtapha*, *Baſſa*, being ſent with a great Army to invade his Country again, was defeated, and made Priſoner. In all theſe Encounters the Army of *Scanderbeg* ſcarcely amounted to a third Part of that of the *Turks*; but *Epirus* being for the moſt Part a mountainous Country, with the Paſſes whereof the Natives were well acquainted, *Scanderbeg* fortified the Avenues, and ſeldom attacked the *Turks*, but when he found he had a conſiderable Advantage

tage of them. *Amurath* being enraged at his Losses and Disappointments in *Epirus*, raised an Army of 140,000 Men, at the Head of which he marched in Person, and laid Siege to the capital City of *Croia*, in which *Scandegreb* left a brave Governor, and a strong Garrison, while he himself commanded a flying Army in the Mountains, and perpetually alarmed and harassed *Amurath's* Army; from thence frequently attacking them in several Parts at once, in the Night Time, and retiring to his inaccessible Retreats before they could assemble their Troops to oppose him: During which Time, however, *Amurath* gave a great many furious Assaults to the Place, but was not able to carry it, and died at length, before the Walls of *Croia*, anno 1450, in the thirtieth Year of his Reign. He had six Sons, three of which died before him; and *Mahomet*, his eldest, who succeeded him, murdered his two surviving Brothers in the Beginning of his Reign.

1449.

Amurath dies at the Siege of Croia.

Amurath was no sooner dead, but *Mahomet* raised the Siege, and returned to *Adrianople*, to take Possession of the Throne, to the great Joy of the *Epirots*, and especially of the besieged City of *Croia*.

Mahomet began his Reign with the Murder of his Brothers, and after subduing some little *Mahometan* Princes in *Asia* made Preparations for the Siege of *Constantinople*. Whereupon *Constantine* the Emperor sent to all the Christian Princes, desiring their Assistance to defend his Capital against the *Turks*; but they were otherwise employed in Wars amongst themselves, and could afford him none; whereupon *Mahomet* invested the City by Sea and Land; and notwithstanding it was bravely defended, *Constantinople* was taken by Storm, on the 20th of May 1453, *Constantine Paleologus* the Emperor being killed in the last Assault, all his Relations with the principal Citizens also were put to Death by *Mahomet* in cold Blood afterwards, the Plunder of this wealthy City was given to the Soldiers, and the Seat of the Government removed from *Adrianople* to *Constantinople*, and the Sultan, upon this Destruction of the *Grecian* Empire, assumed the Title of Emperor; which all succeeding Emperors of the *Turks* have retained.

A. D.

1450.

Title of Emperor assumed.

taken and made the Capital of the Turkish Empire.

1453.

Among the Captives taken in this City was a beautiful Greek Virgin named *Irene*, with whom *Mahomet* was so enamoured, that he spent his whole Time in her Company, for almost a Year, abandoning the Administration of the Government intirely to his Ministers, and scarce appearing to his People in all that Time; whereupon they

tivates

Mahomet.

they began to mutiny, especially the Janizaries, threatening to proclaim another Emperor; and so much was this Prince dreaded by his Subjects, that no Man durst acquaint him with the Danger this Conduct laid him open to, till at length Things becoming desperate, one of the Bassas ventured to acquaint him with the Danger he apprehended of a Revolution, if he did not speedily shew himself to the People. *Mahomet* it seems severely reprehended the Bassa for his Insolence in pretending to censure his Conduct; but convinced however of the Seasonableness of the Advice, said his Subjects should see he had as great a Command of his Passions as any of them, and ordered, that all his great Officers and Ministers of State should attend him in the Divan the next Day. In the mean Time, he ordered the lovely *Irene* to be dressed in her finest Robes, and to attend the Assembly; where the Emperor having placed her on a raised Floor in the Middle of his Lords, demanded if they thought he deserved Censure for devoting himself to so charming an Object: And every one declaring it was impossible to resist so much Beauty, he replied they should see he had as great a Command of himself as any of them, and immediately seizing the fair *Irene* by the Hair, struck off her Head with his Scymetar.

He strikes
off her
Head.

Soon after, *Mahomet* engaged in an Enterprize against some of the Princes in the *Morea*, whom he deprived of their Territories: He reduced *Servia* also, and laid Siege to *Belgrade*, then in the Possession of the *Hungarians*; but was defeated by the celebrated *Hunniades*, and compelled to raise the Siege, anno 1456; but that most successful General *Hunniades*, who had for many Years defended the Frontiers of *Christendom*, against all the Power of the *Turks*, died the same Year. *Mahomet* next attacked the *Mahometan* Princes that lay upon the South Coast of the *Euxine Sea*, and particularly the Prince of *Sinope*; whose Capital he besieged by Sea and Land, which the Prince thought fit to surrender to him, upon certain Conditions; and thus having opened a Way to *Trapezand*, he besieged that City, the Capital of the Emperor *David Comnenius's* Dominions, whose Ancestors had formerly reigned in *Constantinople*; but upon the taking of that City by the *Latins*, who possessed themselves only of the *European* Territories of the *Grecian* Emperor, leaving their *Asiatic* Territories to the Family of the late *Grecian* Emperors; one Branch thereof possessed *Nice*, and the Western Provinces of *Asia*, and the other Branch

Defeated
by Hun-
niades,
A. D.
1456.

Sinope
taken by
Mahomet.

seized

seized the Eastern Provinces, making *Trapezond*, by the 497.
lies on the Coast of the *Euxine Sea*, their Capital; In
the *Comneni* had enjoyed that City, with the small Te- 521.
ritories about it, and the Title of Emperor, in Peace almost
to this Time; the *Ottoman* Princes lying at a Distance,
and divided from them by the Dominions of several 528.
Mahometan Princes, before *Mahomet* reduced *Sinope*.

Trapezond having been besieged a Month, and sustained Trape-
several furious Assaults, the Emperor *David Comnenus* 528.
offered to surrender upon Terms; whereupon *Maho-*
met desired to treat with him personally without the A. D.
Walls, which *David* consenting to, *Mahomet* no sooner 1461.
had him in his Power, but he made *David* and all his At-
tendants Prisoners, saying, as he frequently did, *That no*
Faith was to be kept with Christians: And the Citizens
understanding their Prince was made Prisoner, soon after
surrendered the Town. All the rest of the Emperor's
Cities followed their Example; *David* himself, and the
Grecian Nobility, were sent Prisoners to *Constantinople*,
the most desirable Ladies *Mahomet* divided among his Fa-
vourites; made choice of eight Hundred of the most per-
sonable Youths to be educated in the Seraglio, and the Re-
fuse of the People were left behind to be Slaves and Drudg-
es to their new Masters. Thus was the little Empire of *An End put*
Trapezond subverted in the Year 1461, and *David* the 1461.
last Emperor of the *Comneni*, with all his Sons and *to the Gre-*
Relations, and the principal of the Nobility, were put *cian Em-*
to Death, soon after their Arrival at *Constantinople*, except
David's Son *George*, who turned *Mahometan*, and one
of his Daughters, who was *Mahomet's* Concubine.

*The Constantinopolitan, Grecian, or Eastern Em-
perors.*

1. *Constantine*, surnamed the Great, having reigned A. D.
twelve Years in *Rome*, translated his Imperial Seat 331.
to *Constantinople*, which himself had founded.
2. *Constantius*, the second Son of *Constantine*, in the 341.
Division of the Empire, had for his Part *Thrace*, *Con-*
stantinople, and all the Provinces of the East. After the
Death of his two Brethren he remained sole Emperor, but
reided for the most Part in the East, a great Patron of
the *Arians*.
3. *Julian*, surnamed the Apostate, Son of *Constantius*, 366.
the Brother of *Constantine* the Great, at first a Christian,
afterwards a professed Enemy of the Gospel; fortunate in
his

144. *The* CONSTANTINOPOLITAN, GRECIAN;

his Wars against the *Almans*, *Franks*, and other *Transalpine* Nations, was slain in the *Persian* War.

368. 4. *Jovian*, or *Jovinian*, chose by the Army, a religious Prince, made Peace with the *Persians*, and settled the Affairs of the Church; who being dead, *Valentinian*, one of mean Birth, but great Abilities in War, was elected Emperor.

369. 5. *Valens*, the Brother of *Valentinian*, made Partner in the Empire with him, ruled in *Constantinople*, and the East, *Valentinian* taking more Delight in *Rome*, and the Western Parts; a great Patron of the *Arian* Faction, and the first that brought in the *Goths* on this Side of the *Danube*, whom he placed in the Desert Parts of *Thrace*.

382. 6. *Gratian*, the eldest Son of *Valentinian*, succeeded his Father in the West, and his Uncle *Valence* in the East; after whose Death he left *Italy*, and the West to *Valentinian*, his younger Brother. Distressed by the *Goths*, he made *Theodosius* Partner in the Empire with him, and was treacherously murdered by *Andragathies*, at the Appointment and Command of the Tyrant *Maximus*.

383. 7. *Theodosius*, a *Spaniard* born, revenged the Death of *Gratian* on the Tyrant *Maximus*, and of *Valentinian* the second, on the Traitor *Eugenius*. He subdued the *Goths*, utterly suppressed the Pagan Superstitions, which till his Time continued even in *Rome* itself.

399. 8. *Arcadius*, the eldest Son of *Theodosius*, succeeded his Father in the East, as his Brother, *Honorius*, did in the West.

The *Roman* Empire, after this last Division of it, was so distracted and torn in Pieces, that it was never since united.

412. 9. *Theodosius*, second Son of *Arcadius*, made Peace with the *Goths*, whom he employed against the *Huns* and *Persians*, his more dangerous Enemies.

454. 10. *Martianus*, Lieutenant to *Theodosius*, succeeded his Master, and married with *Pulcheria*, his Master's Sister.

461. 11. *Leo*, a *Thracian* born, elected by the joint Consent of the Senate and Soldiery.

478. 12. *Zeno*, the Son-in-Law, and Lieutenant of *Leo*, sent *Theodoric*, and the *Goths*, into *Italy*, against *Odoacer*, a Tyrant, and a great Drinker; in one of his drunken Fits buried quick by his Empress. In his Time *Constantinople* was almost wholly destroyed by Fire; in which perished, amongst other Things, 120,000 Volumes of good Manuscripts.

13. *Anastatius*, a mean Officer of the Court, by the Power and Favour of the Empress, created Emperor. In his Time *Constantinople* was besieged by the *Scythians*. 497.
14. *Justin*, the Son of a *Thracian* Shepherd, and Captain of the Guard unto *Anastatius*. 521.
15. *Justinian*, the Sister's Son of *Justin*, with whom he was at first Consort in the Empire, recovered *Afric* from the *Vandals* by *Belisarius*, and *Italy* from the *Goths* by *Narjes*, and, finally, reduced the Laws of *Rome* into Form and Method. 528.
16. *Justin*, second Nephew of *Justinian*, instituted the Exarchate of *Ravenna*, and lost a great Part of *Italy* to the *Lombards*; unable of himself to oppose the *Persians*, he chose, 566.
17. *Tiberius*, one of his chief Commanders, to be Consort with him, who afterwards succeeded in the sole Command. 577.
18. *Maurice*, a *Cappadocian*, fortunate in his Wars against the *Persians*, from whom he recovered *Mesopotamia*, in the Time of *Tiberius*, by whom, at his Return, he was married to *Constantia*, his Daughter, and declared his Successor. 584.
19. *Phocas*, a common Soldier, in a military Tumult chosen Emperor, murdered the Emperor *Mauritius*, with his Wife and Children, and made Pope *Boniface* supreme Bishop, or Head of the Church; slain in a popular Tumult by the common People, for his Lusts and Cruelties. 604.
20. *Heraclius*, a Nobleman of *Constantinople*, chosen by the general Consent, repaired the Ruins of the Empire, subdued the *Persians*, recovered *Jerusalem* out of their Hands, and brought home the Cross unto *Constantinople* in a triumphant Manner; whence the Feast called *Exaltatio Crucis*, Sept. 14. In his Time *Mahomet* began to preach. 611.
21. *Constans*, or *Constantine II.* Son of *Heraclius*, unfortunate in his Wars against the *Saracens*, who prevailed in all Places. He picked a Quarrel with the *Romans*, defaced *Rome*, robbing it of all the choicest Ornaments which the *Goths*, and other barbarous People, had left; and ransacking the Isle of *Sicily*, was there slain by the Women. 641.
22. *Constantinus III.* Son of the former *Constantine*, from his long or early Beard, surnamed *Pogonatus*, repulsed the *Saracens* from *Constantinople*, but could not hinder the *Bulgarians* from passing over the *Danube*. 670.

687.

23. *Justinian II*, Son of *Constantine III*. subdued *Mesopotamia*, *Armenia*, and some Part of *Persia*, forcing the *Saracens* to sue for Peace, and become his Tributaries; against whom *Leontius*, on the one Side, and *Abismarus* on the other, severally taking Arms, were declared Emperors. *Justinian* being taken by *Leontius*, had his Nose cut off; but making an Escape by Means of *Trebellin*, King of the *Bulgarians*, recovered his Imperial Dignity; and being too violent in the Pursuit of his Revenge, was finally murdered at the Altar, by the Command of,

713.

24. *Philippus Bardanes*, Admiral of his Navy, elected Emperor by the Soldiers, a great Enemy of Images, which he caused to be cast out of the Church, thereby incurring the Displeasure of,

715.

25. *Anastatius II*. called also *Artemias*, his principal Secretary, who usurped the Empire; but forced to relinquish it by that Army which he had raised against the *Saracens*; in which Tumult the City of *Constantinople* was taken by Storm and plundered.

717.

26. *Theodosius III*. made Emperor in this Tumult by the Soldiers, hearing of the Approach of *Leo*, Commander of the Eastern Armies, resigned the Empire, and took Orders, to preserve his Life.

718.

27. *Leo Isaurus*, in whose Time Caliph *Zuliman* besieged *Constantinople* the Space of three Years, and when by Cold and Famine 300,000 of the *Saracens* were destroyed, they desisted. At this Siege was that Fire invented, which we, for the Violence of it, call Wild-fire; and the *Latins*, because the *Greeks* were the Authors of it, *Græcus ignis*; by which the *Saracens* Ships were not a little molested. He was also a great Enemy to Images, and for this Cause hated by the Pope and Clergy of *Rome*, who gave him thereupon the Nickname of *Iconomachus*.

741.

28. *Constantinus IV*. Son of *Leo* surnamed *Copronymus*, followed his Father's Zeal in removing Images, which created him much Trouble, one *Artabardus* being chosen Emperor against him, but at last defeated.

777.

29. *Leo III*. Son of *Constantine Copronymus*, honoured with the Adjunct of *Porphyrogenitus*, but commonly called *Leo IV*. (*Leontius* the Usurper being reckoned for one) an Enemy to Images, and fortunate in his Wars against the *Saracens*.

782.

30. *Constantine V*. the Son of *Leo* and *Irene*, first governed the Empire with his Mother; by whom, at last, supplanted, and deprived of Sight, died with mere Vexation.

798.

31. *Irene*, Wife of *Leo III.* first Consort with *Constantine* her Son, and afterwards sole Empress of *Constantinople*; for her better Support sided with the Popes of *Rome*, and called the second Council of *Nice*, for Defence of Images. In her Time *Charles*, surnamed the Great, was by the Pope and People of *Rome* created Emperor of the West.

803.

32. *Nicephorus*, a *Patrician*, made Emperor by the Soldiers, slain in a Battle against the *Bulgarians*.

812.

33. *Michael*, surnamed *Europalates*, from his Office (the Mayor of the Palace, as it were) Husband to *Procopia*, the Daughter of *Nicephorus*, assumed the Empire, which, finding his own Weakness, he did soon relinquish, and betook himself unto a Monastery.

814.

34. *Leo V.* surnamed *Armenius*, from his Country, General of the Horse to *Michael*, demolished the Images which his Predecessors had set up. He was slain in the Church during the Time of divine Service.

821.

35. *Michael II.* surnamed *Balbus*, having murdered *Leo*, assumed the Empire; unfortunate in his Government, and died mad.

830.

36. *Theophilus*, the Son of *Michael Balbus*, an Enemy of Images, like his Father, and as unfortunate as he, losing many Battels to the *Saracens*; at last he died melancholly mad.

842.

37. *Michael III.* Son of *Theophilus*, first reigning with his Mother *Theodora*, who assumed the supreme Command, and afterwards sole Emperor, his Mother being made a Nun.

866.

38. *Basilus*, surnamed *Macedo*, from the Place of his Birth, made Consort in the Empire by *Michael*, the Son of *Theophilus*, whom he basely and treacherously murdered, killed casually by a Stag.

886.

39. *Leo VI.* for his Learning surnamed *Philosophus*, the Son of *Basilus*, a vigilant and provident Prince; most of his Time at War with the *Bulgarians*.

912.

40. *Constantine VI.* commonly called the seventh Son of *Leo Philosophus*, first under his Uncle *Alexander*, next under *Zoe*, his Mother, and afterwards under *Romanus Lacopenus*, governed the Empire.

961.

41. *Romanus*, the Son of *Constantine*.

963.

42. *Nicephorus*, surnamed *Phocas*, first Governor or Protector of the young Emperor *Romanus*, after whose Death created Emperor by the Army, he recovered *Antioch*, *Cilicia*, and the greatest Part of *Asia minor*, from the

the Power of the *Saracens*; slain in the Night by *John Zimisces*, his Wife *Theophania* being privy to it.

971. 43. *John Zimisces*, Emperor, in the Place of *Nicephorus Phocas*, governed the Empire better than he did obtain it, defeating the *Bulgarians*, *Russes*, and others of the barbarous Nations, and left it at his Death to the Son of *Romanus*.
977. 44. *Basilus II.* surnamed *Porphyrogenitus*, as many of the Emperors had been before him, in regard that at their Births they were wrapped in Purple (which the *Greeks* call *Porphyry*) the Imperial Colour. He subdued the *Bulgarians*, and made them Homagers to the Empire.
1027. *Constantine VII* or *VIII.* Brother of *Basilus*, and with him Partner in the Empire; after whose Death he governed three Years by himself, but did nothing memorable.
1030. 46. *Romanus II.* for his Prodigality surnamed *Argyropolis*, Husband of *Zoe*, the Daughter of *Constantine VIII.* drowned in a Bath, by the Treason of his Wife and her Adulterer.
1035. 47. *Michael IV.* surnamed *Papblago*, from his Country; first the Adulterer, and afterwards the Husband of *Zoe*.
1042. 48. *Michael V.* surnamed *Calaphates*, a Man of obscure Birth, adopted by *Zoe*, whom he deposed from the Government, and turned into a Monastery; out of which being again taken in a popular Tumult, she put out the Eyes of *Calaphates*; and being then sixty Years of Age, bestowed both the Empire and herself upon
1043. 49. *Constantine IX.* surnamed *Nonomachus*, formerly the Husband to a Niece of *Romanus II.*
1055. 50. *Theodora*, Sister unto *Zoe*, after the Death of *Constantine*, managed for two Years the Affairs of the Empire, with great Contentment of all People; but grown in Age, she surrendered it to,
1057. 51. *Michael VI.* surnamed *Stratioticus*, an old, but military Man, deposed within three Years by
1060. 52. *Isaacius*, of the noble Family of the *Comneni*, of great Courage, and diligent in his Affairs; which having managed for two Years, he left it at his Death, with Consent of the Senate and People, to
1063. 53. *Constantine X.* surnamed *Ducas*, a great Lawyer, and very devout, but exceeding covetous, whereby he became hated of his Subjects, and condemned by his Enemies.
1071. 54. *Romanus III.* surnamed *Diogenes*, married *Eudoxia*, the Wife of *Constantinus Ducas*, and had with her the Empire;

pire ; taken Prisoner by the *Turks*, and sent home again, he found a Faction made against him ; by which *Eudoxia* was expelled, himself at his Return deposed, and died in Exile.

55. *Michael VII.* the Son of *Constantius Ducas*, surnamed *Parapinatus*, by reason of the Famine which in his Time happened, made Emperor in the aforesaid Tumult ; but being found unable for so great an Honour (the *Turks* prevailing in all Places) he was deposed again, and put into a Monastery. 1075.

56. *Nicephorus II.* surnamed *Botoniates*, of the House of *Phocas*, succeeded in the Place of *Parapinace* ; deposed within three Years by the *Comneni*. 1081.

57. *Alexius Comnenus*, Son of the Emperor *Isaacius Comnenus*, obtained the Empire ; in whose Time the Western Christians, with great Forces, prepared for the Recovery of the holy Land ; of whose Purposes being very jealous, he denied them Passage through his Country ; but was in the End forced to find them Victuals, and other Necessaries. 1084.

58. *Calo-Joannes*, the Son of *Alexius*, was successful against the *Turks*, from whom he took *Laodicea*, and some other Places of Importance. He also defeated the *Scythians* or *Tartars*, passing over the *Ister* ; most of which he either slew in Battle, or sold as Captives, permitting the Remainder to abide on this Side that River. He also conquered the *Servians* and *Bulgarians*, transporting many of them into *Bithynia*. 1113.

59. *Manuel*, or *Emanuel*, the younger Son of *Calo-Joannes*, an under-hand Enemy to the Western Christians, and an open Enemy to the *Turks* ; by whom being surprized in the dangerous *Streights of Cilicia*, and his Army miserably cut off, he was on honourable Terms permitted to return again. 1142.

60. *Alexius*, second Son of *Manuel*, deposed, and barbarously murdered by *Andronicus*, the Cousin-german of his Father, with his Wife and Mother. 1180.

61. *Andronicus Comnenus*, confined by *Manuel* to *Oenum*, in *Paphlagonia*, by reason of his dangerous and ambitious Practices, after his Death, pretending to reform the State, came to *Constantinople* ; first made Protector, afterwards Consort in the Empire with young *Alexius* ; whom having barbarously murdered, and got the Empire to himself, he was not long after cruelly torn in Pieces, in a popular Tumult. 1183.

1185. 62. *Isaicius Angelus*, a Nubeman of *Constantinople*, and of the same *Comnenian* Race, designed to be murdered by *Andronicus*, was in a popular Election proclaimed his Successor; deposed by *Alexius*, his own Brother, and his Eyes put out.
1195. 63. *Alexius Angelus* deprived his Brother, and excluded his Nephew from the Empire.
1195. 64. *Alexius Angelus* II. Son of *Isaac Angelus*, who being unjustly deposed by his Uncle *Alexius*, applied himself to *Philip*, the Western Emperor, whose Daughter *Mary* he had married; who so prevailed with Pope *Innocent* III. (upon a Promise for subjecting the Church of *Greece* to the See of *Rome*) that the Army prepared for the *Holy Land* was employed to restore him: On the Approach whereof *Alexius*, the Usurper, fled. *Alexius*, the young Emperor, was seated in his Father's Throne, and not long after slain by *Alexius Ducas*. In revenge whereof, the *Latins* assaulted and took *Constantinople*, made themselves Masters of the Empire, and divided it amongst themselves; allotting to the *Venetians* *Candia*, many good Towns of *Peloponesus*, and most of the Islands; to *Beniface*, Marquis of *Montferrat*, the Kingdom of *Thessaly*; to the other Adventurers other liberal Shares; and, finally, to *Baldwin*, Earl of *Flanders*, the main Body of the Empire, with the Title of Emperor. The Seat of the Empire of the *Greeks* being transferred unto *Nice*, a City of *Bythinia*, in the *Lesser Asia*, by *Theodorus Lascaris*, Son-in-Law to *Alexius*, the Usurper, continued there till the regaining of *Constantinople* by the *Greeks* again, after it had been sixty Years possessed by the Western Christians.

Emperors of the *Latins* in *Constantinople*.

1200. 65. *Baldwin*, Earl of *Flanders*, first Emperor of the *Latins*, reigning in *Constantinople*, taken in Fight by *John* King of *Bulgaria*, coming to aid the *Greeks*, and sent Prisoner to *Turnova*, where he was cruelly put to Death.
1202. 66. *Henry*, the Brother of *Baldwin*, repulsed the *Bulgarians* out of *Greece*.
1215. 67. *Peter*, Count of *Auxerre*, in *France*, the Son of *Peter*, youngest Son to *Lewis* the Gros of *France*, and Husband of *Toland*, the Daughter of *Henry*, succeeded in the Empire.
1220. 68. *Robert*, the Son of *Peter*, having seen the miserable Usage of his beautiful Empress, to whom a young
Bur-

Burgundian was formerly contracted, died of Grief, as it is said.

69. *Baldwin II.* Son of *Robert*, by a former Wife, under the Protection of *John de Brenne*, the titular King of *Jerusalem*, succeeded in his Father's Throne; which having held for the Space of thirty-three Years, he was forced to leave the City of *Constantinople*, being regained by the *Greeks*, and the poor Prince, compelled to sue in vain for Succours to the *French, Venetians*, and other Princes of the West. And though both *Philip*, the Son of this *Baldwin*, and *Charles* of *Valois*, Father of *Philip de Valois*, the *French* King, in right of *Catharine* his Wife, Daughter of that *Philip*, did sometimes please themselves with the Title of Emperors of *Constantinople*, yet neither of these two had ever any Footing, or Possession there.

1227.

The EMPIRE restored unto the *Greeks*:

70. *Michael VIII.* surnamed *Paleologus*, descended from the *Comnenian* Emperors of the *Greeks*, in the City of *Nice*, most fortunately recovered *Constantinople*; the Town being taken by a Party of fifty Men, secretly put into it by some Country-Labourers under the Ruins of a Mine. Present in Person at the Council of *Lions*, at the Persuasion of the Pope, he admitted the *Latin* Ceremonies into the Churches of *Greece*, for which he was greatly hated by his Subjects, and denied the Honour of Christian Burial.

1260.

71. *Andronicus II.* disturbed with unnatural Wars by his Nephew *Andronicus*, who rebelled against him.

1283.

72. *Andronicus III.* first Partner with his Grandfather, afterwards sole Emperor.

1328.

73. *John Paleologus* Son of *Andronicus III.* in whose Minority *Contacuzenus* his Protector usurped the Empire, and held it sometimes from him, and sometimes with him, till the Year 1357, and then retired into a Monastery, leaving the Empire unto *John*; during whose Reign the *Turks* first planted themselves in *Europe*.

1341.

74. *Andronicus IV.* the Son of *Joannes Paleologus*.

1384.

75. *Emanuel Paleologus* the Son of the said *John* and Brother of *Andronicus IV.* in whose Time *Bajazet*, the sixth King of the *Turks*, did besiege *Constantinople*; but found such Resistance, that he could not force it,

1387.

76. *John II.* Son of *Andronicus IV.*

1417.

77. *John III.* Son of *Emanuel Paleologus*, in Person, at the

1420.

the Council of *Florence*, for reconciling of the Churches, in hopes thereby to get some Aid from the Western Christians, but he did not obtain any.

1444. 78. *Constantinus Paleologus*, the Brother of *John III.* in whose Time the famous City of *Constantinople* was taken by *Mahomet* the Great, in 1452, the miserable Emperor, who had in vain gone from Door to Door to beg or borrow Money to pay his Soldiers (which the *Turks* found in great Abundance when they took the City) was trod to Death in the Throng.

Emperors of *Trabezond*.

1204. 1. *Alexius Comnenus*, surnamed *the Great*, who being Governor of *Trabezond* under the Emperor, when *Constantinople* was taken by the *Franks*, in the Year 1204, took upon him the Sovereignty of that City by the Title of Duke only, or Lord of *Trabezond*.
2. *N. Comnenus*, Duke and Prince of *Trabezond*, Son of *Alexius*.
3. *N. Comnenus*, whose Parents are not known, but he was certainly descended of *Alexius*.
1274. 4. *Joannes Comnenus*, who was the first of these Princes that assumed the Name of Emperor of *Trabezond*, in opposition to *Michael Paleologus*, who had embraced the *Latin* Rites in the Council of *Lyons*: He married *Eudocia*, Daughter of this *Michael*, in the Year 1276, and died anno 1295.
1295. 5. *Alexius Comnenus II.* Emperor of this Family, born in 1282. He beat the *Genoese* in the Year 1303.
1320. 6. *Basilus Comnenus*, Son of *Alexius*.
1339. 7. *Basilus Comnenus II.* called by *Nicephorus*, *Gregory* the younger, who was murdered by his Wife in 1339.
8. *N. Comnenus III.* Son of *Basilus II.*
9. *Alexius Comnenus III.*
1449. 10. *Joannes Comnenus II.* called *Calo-Joannes*, or the Beautiful. He murdered his Father, to attain the Empire, which he defended with great Difficulty against the *Turks*: At last was forced to pay 3000 Crowns in Gold to *Amuratb*, Son of *Mahomet II.*
- The Empire of *Trabezond* ruined, 1461. 11. *David Comnenus*, Brother of *John*, who was conquered by *Mahomet* the Great, in the Year 1461, when he had reigned but a short Time. His seven Sons were all slain by the Conqueror, because they would not renounce the Christian Religion, and turn *Mahometans*. So ended this noble Family with the Empire of *Trabezond*.

OTTOMAN EMPIRE.

Mahomet returning with his Army into *Europe*, soon, *Walachia* after the taking of *Trabezond*, made a Conquest of *reduced*, *Walachia*; from whence he brought a beautiful Youth, *A. D.* Son of the *Vayvod*, named *Dracula*; with whom he would 1462. have committed Sodomy: At which the young Prince was so incensed, that he wounded the lustful Emperor in his Thigh, with a Dagger. And even this *Mahomet* forgave him; and, by his Presents and kind Usage, at length prevailed on the young Fellow to become his *Ganymede*, as he was many Years afterwards, and raised to the highest Posts in the Army.

Mahomet having made a Conquest of *Bosnia*, the *Bassa*, *Bosnia* who commanded his Forces when the Capital City of *conquer- Cityssa* surrendered to him, had given his Oath, that the *ed*, Prince of *Bosnia*, who was then in the Place, should be 1463. honourably used, and his Life secured: Notwithstanding which, when the Prince arrived at *Constantinople*, *Mahomet* caused him to be put to Death; which was the Reason that in the long Wars *Mahomet* carried on afterwards, the Garison Towns had so mean an Opinion of *Turkish* Faith, scarce a single City surrendering to him upon Terms afterwards.

Mahomet in the very Beginning of his Reign had sent Wars several Armies successively to invade and plunder the *with* Country of *Scanderbeg*, Prince of *Epirus*; every one *Scander-* of which had been defeated by that Hero: Whereupon *beg*, *Mahomet* had recourse to Stratagem, and twice corrupted *Prince of* some of his principal Officers to betray him, but the *Epirus*. Treachery was timely discovered and defeated. Two *Turks* were hired also to assassinate *Scanderbeg*, and, to gain his Confidence, turned Christians; but quarrelling among themselves, let fall some Expressions which discovered their Intention, and they were thereupon put to Death. None of these Measures to destroy *Scanderbeg* succeeding, and the Armies *Mahomet* had sent against him being constantly beaten, he invaded *Epirus* in Person, with an Army of 150,000 Men, and laid Siege to the capital City of *Groia*; and because *Epirus* is a mountainous Country, difficult of Access, he carried Metal along with him to cast a Train of Artillery, when he came before the Place; which he battered and assaulted with great Fury. *Scanderbeg*, in the mean time, possessed himself of the Woods and Hills in the Neighbourhood of the *Turkish* Army; from whence he sallied, and cut off their Provisions,

sions, and perpetually alarmed their Camp, destroying many Thousands of their Foragers, till at length he compelled *Mahomet* to raise the Siege.

Negropont taken from the Venetians.

The Turks invade the Venetian Territories in Italy.

The *Venetians* being in Alliance with *Scanderbeg*, during this War, and making a considerable Diversion in his Favour, *Mahomet* next turned his Arms against that State; in which he was not successful at first; for they recovered the Places the *Turks* had taken from them in *Peloponessus*, and rebuilt the Wall cross the *Isthmus of Corinth*. The *Turks* hereupon made a Descent on the Island of *Negropont*, took the Capital City, and at length made themselves Masters of the Island: The *Venetians* on the other Hand made several Descents on the Coast of the *Lesser Asia*, and plundered the *Turkish* Territories on that Side: The *Turks* thereupon raised a numerous Army, and laid Siege to *Scodra*, a *Venetian* Town on the Coast of *Dalmatia*; but *Matthias* King of *Hungary*, making an Incurfion into the Territories of *Mahomet* at the same Time, the *Turks* were forced to raise the Siege of *Scodra*, to defend their own Country; but the brave *Scanderbeg* being dead, who was the most potent Ally the *Venetians* had, *Mahomet* besieged *Scodra* again in Person; and after his Army had lain before it a whole Year, the Town surrendered upon honourable Terms, the *Turks* giving Hostages to perform their Articles; nor had the Town surrendered at this Time, but the *Turks* had defeated the *Venetian* Army that was coming to the Relief of it, and afterwards advanced as far as *Friuli* in *Italy*, burning and plundering the Country as they went; which so terrified the *Venetians*, that they were glad to make Peace with *Mahomet* upon any Terms almost; and one of the Articles he insisted upon, it seems, was their Surrender of

Epirus and Albania reduced by the Turks.

War with Persia.

A. D.
1474.

Scodra. Soon after which, the *Turks* became Masters of *Epirus*, *Albania*, and most of the Country near the Eastern Coast of the *Adriatic*; for the *Venetians* had not only lost their good Ally *Scanderbeg*, who used to defend their Territories, but *Uffan Cassanes*, King of *Persia*, who was also in Alliance with the *Venetians*, and used to make a considerable Diversion on that Side in their Favour, had now made Peace with the *Turks*; so that they had no other Princes to contend with at this Time, but the *Venetians* and *Hungarians*. And here it may be proper to give some Account of the Wars between the *Turks* and *Persians*, and the Occasion of them. This *Uffan Cassanes* had married *Martha* the Daughter of the King of *Trahezond*, which City having been taken, and a Period

put

put to that Empire by *Mahomet*, as related already; and he having extirpated all the rest of the *Trabezond* Family, *Uffan Cassanes* laid Claim to that City and Country, in the Right of his Wife *Martha*, and *Mahomet* refusing to restore them, *Uffan Cassanes* invaded the *Turkish* Territories, and fought a Battle with *Mahomet's* Forces, in which he was victorious, anno 1474. However, the *Turks* and *Persians* soon after clapped up a Peace, in which the *Venetians* were not included; and the *Turk* having now no Enemy in *Persia*, found himself at Liberty to bend his whole Force against the Christians in *Europe*; he attempted therefore at this Time to conquer the *Ile of Rhodes*, possessed by the Knights of *St. John of Jerusalem*, and laid Siege to their Capital, but was beaten off with very great Loss; then he invaded the Kingdom of *Naples* in Italy, at a Time when the Christian Princes seem to have been all asleep, there being no Fleet assembled to intercept the Passage of the Infidels, or any Army, to prevent their landing. The *Turks* therefore making a Descent in *Apulia*, laid Siege to the City of *Otranto* (olim *Hydruntum*) and took it, and laid all the Kingdom of *Naples* under Contribution; at which the Pope was so alarmed, that he was about to abandon *Rome*; but *Mahomet* Emperor of the *Turks* happening to die in this critical Juncture, the *Turks* withdrew their Troops from *Italy* soon after, and that fine Country was preserved from the Destruction that threatned it; nor would the Death of *Mahomet* have saved them, if it had not been for the Contentions between his two Sons, *Bajazet* and *Zemes*, for the *Ottoman* Throne.

I should have remembered also, that it was a Piece of great Good Fortune to the Christians, that *Mahomet* did not immediately pour in a great Army into *Italy*, upon the taking of *Otranto*; but he was diverted from it by a War in *Asia*: The Kings of *Persia*, *Caramania*, and *Egypt*, had all invaded his Territories at the same Time, and defeated *Bajazet* his eldest Son; whereupon *Mahomet* withdrew the greatest Part of his Forces out of *Europe*, and was marching at the Head of them through *Bythinia*, when he was suddenly taken ill near the City *Nicomedia*, and died within three Days, anno 1481, in the 52d Year of his Age, and the 33d of his Reign: The Character the Christians give of him is, that he was the cruellest and most perfidious Prince that ever reigned; that he had no Regard to his Oaths or Treaties, but tortured and put to Death Princes that had submitted

Wars with
Uffan Cassanes.

Rhodes
repulsed
the Turks.

Naples invaded, and
Otranto
taken by
the Turks,
A. D.
1479.

Mahomet
II. d. s.,
1431.

to him on Terms; nor will they allow him to have any Religion; but still they admit he was a Man of Parts and Learning, and very brave; that he vastly enlarged the Bounds of his Empire on every Side; and though he was constantly engaged with the greatest Powers in the World; he was successful in almost every War. They sometimes also applaud him for his Justice; but this is hardly consistent with his frequent Breach of Treaties, of which they give us so many Instances.

Having concluded the Reign of *Mahomet*, who took the Cities of *Constantinople* and *Trapezond*, and thereby put a final End to the *Grecian* Empire, I return now to the History of *Persia*.

The HISTORY of PERSIA continued.

Cheik Aider *af-james the Sovereignty of Persia.* **T**AMERLANE having defeated *Bajazet*, and returning through *Persia*, with great Numbers of *Turkish* and *Persian* Captives, *Cheik Aider* a Doctor of Law, in great Reputation for his Sanctity among the *Mahometans*, obtained of him the Release of most of his Prisoners, which still encreased the Fame of the *Cheik*, and when *Tamerlane* marched away, the *Cheik* began to entertain Thoughts of assuming sovereign Power: In order to it, he gave out, that he was rightly descended from *Haly*, the Son-in-law and only legal Successor of *Mahomet*, and took upon him the Title of *Caliph*, which signifies Priest, as well as Prince. *Ismael Sephi*, or *Sephi*, the Son of *Aider*, followed his Father's Steps, and being successful in several Battles, established himself in the Government, and is reckoned the first King of the last Dynasty or Family. To *Ismael Sephi* succeeded *Sba Thomas*, who being a cruel Prince, was deposed and succeeded by his Brother *Mahomet Codabundi*, a weak Man, famous for nothing but his being Father of the great *Sba Abbas*.

Ismael Sephi his Son esteemed the first King of this Race,
A D.
1505.

Sba Abbas the great,
1585.

Sba Abbas enlarged the Empire on every Side; he took the Province of *Candabor* from the *Great Mogul*; he conquered the Kingdoms of *Lar* and *Ormus*, and drove the *Turks* almost out of *Armenia* and *Georgia*: He encouraged all Arts and Sciences; and as he found the *Persians* were not at all inclined to foreign Trade, he transplanted the *Armenians* of *Zulpha* to *Ispahan*, and made them his Factors and Merchants in every Part of *Europe* and *Asia*, where there was any such Thing as Traffic; and as he

ob-

observed the Pilgrimages to *Mecca* carried abundance of Treasure out of his Dominions, he went himself a Pilgrimage to the Tomb of *Imanrezeez*, which is situated in the Dominions of *Persia*, in hopes his Subjects would carry their pious Alms thither, and the Money might circulate in his own Country: He was also so severe against those who were guilty of the least Fraud, that he ordered a Cook to be roasted alive, and a Baker to be baked in his own Oven, for keeping of false Weights. But with all his Virtues, I find *Sha Abbas* is generally charged with Cruelty, especially towards his Son *Sefi Mirza*, a Prince of great Expectations, and the Darling of the People; for he was not shut up in the Haram, as is usual, but attended his Father in all his Wars, and was looked upon to be one of the greatest Generals of his Time; and being bred up among the Soldiers, and frequently commanding them in the most hazardous Enterprises, became extremely popular in the Army. Whether he was really concerned in any Conspiracy with the Generals, to depose his Father, does not appear, but the King was so apprehensive of it, that he did not think himself in any Security while his Son lived. Some Writers, who pretend to have enquired into the Truth of the Fact, tell us, that *Sha Abbas* having rendered himself odious to the principal Chans, by his repeated Cruelties, they made an Offer of advancing his Son *Sefi Mirza* to the Throne; which the Father having an Intimation of, commanded a Nobleman who attended him, to bring him his Son's Head; but he excusing himself, another Courtier, named *Bebut Bey*, undertook to do it, and surprizing *Sefi Mirza*, as he came out of the Bagnio, attended only by one Page, acquainted him, it was his Father's Pleasure that he should die, and immediately seized the unfortunate Prince, and threw him upon the Floor; who lifting up his Eyes to Heaven, cried out, *Good GOD! what have I done to merit this Disgrace? Curse on the Traitor who was the Occasion of it; but since it is God's Will, his and the King's be done.* The Words were scarce ended, when *Bebut* stabbed him twice with a Ponyard, and cutting off his Head, carried it to his Father.

The People were no sooner acquainted with this tragical Event, but they assembled at the Palace Gates, and it had like to have occasioned a general Insurrection: The Mother of *Sefi Mirza* upbraided the old King with his Cruelty and Tyranny, and in the Transport of her Passion, flew in his Face: All which his Majesty took very

very patiently, and with Tears in his Eyes, demanded of her what she would have had him done, when he was informed there was a Conspiracy against his Life; besides, it was now past Redress, and could not be undone: That none had a greater Share of Grief than himself, and of two Evils he had only chose what he then esteemed the least, tho' if his Son was alive again, he would run any Hazard, rather than take the same Measures; and indeed he discovered all the Signs of Grief imaginable; he covered his Face, and would not see the Light for several Days: He mortified himself by fasting, and mourned a whole Year; and in the Place where his Son was killed, he built a Sanctuary, and endowed it with large Revenues: And to revenge himself on the *Persian* Lords, who had instilled these Fears and Jealousies of his Son into his Head, he ordered them to be invited to a Feast, and to mix Poison with their Wine, and saw them every one expire before his Face.

Bebut Bey, who had so readily and officiously obeyed the King's Commands, in murdering his Son, the King commanded to cut off the Head of his own Son; and when he brought it him in his Hand, and told his Majesty, that the Reflection of what he had done would certainly bring him to his Grave; the King replied, That now he was capable of judging what his Grief must be, and bid him comfort himself; that in this Particular, he was equal to the King his Master. *Sba Abbas* having reigned about forty Years, died *anno* 1628, appointing his Grandson *Sba Sefi*, or *Sophi* the Son of *Sefi Mirza*, his Successor.

Sba Sefi succeeded to the Crown, when he was not above fifteen Years of Age, and the Administration continued in the same Hands his Grandfather left it for some Time; but he was no sooner come to Man's Estate, than he began to call the principal Ministers to a severe Account, and cut off the Head of *Ali-Couli-Chan*, Viceroy of *Persia*, who had deserved very well of his Country, and contributed as much as any General to the Conquests that were made in the late Reign: He also sent for the Heads of his three Sons, and of seven other great Lords of the Court. His Reign was violent and tyrannical; and he drank to that Excess, that in one of his Debauches, he killed the Queen; for which he was under the deepest Concern, when he grew cool, and prohibited the drinking of Wine in any Part of his Dominions; but within a Year's Time, he fell into the same

same Courses again, and died in a Debauch, after he had reigned fourteen Years.

Sha Abbas II. succeeded his Father *Sha Sefi*, being then about twelve Years of Age; he had the Reputation of a brave Prince, and was hospitable to Strangers, especially Christians, but so addicted to his Father's Vice of Drunkenness, that he ordered three of his Women to be burnt, because they refused to drink as long as he did. He died, some say, of an Inflammation, caused by hard drinking; and others, that he was carried off by the Venereal Disease, in the Year 1664, after he had reigned one and twenty Years.

He was succeeded by his Son *Sha Sefi II.* but the Grandees apprehending that this Prince had been dead, were about to advance his younger Brother *Hamzel Mirza* to the Throne, till they were undeceived by an old Eunuch, who assured them, that *Sha Sefi* was alive. This Prince changed his Name, and took that of *Solyman* instead of *Sefi*: In his Reign 'tis observed, that the Kingdom was afflicted with War, Famine, and Epidemic Distempers, but his Government was much milder than his immediate Predecessor's. He died on the 29th of July 1694, and was succeeded by his Son *Sha Sultan Houssein*, whom his Father expressly prohibited to put in Practice that cruel Custom of putting out the Eyes of his Brothers.

This Prince chose to live an indolent unactive Life among his Women in the Haram, leaving the Administration of the Government entirely to his Ministers, who placed and displaced whom they saw fit, oppressed the Subjects with Taxes and Impositions, though in a Time of a profound Peace; and setting every thing to Sale, a general Corruption spread itself through the whole Magistracy, and Justice was as often bought and sold as any other Commodity; the Public Buildings were neglected, and even the ordinary Exercises of the young Nobility and Gentry, which used to be performed in the Royal Presence, were disused: Hunting, and all rural Sports were laid aside, while one Part of the People were employed in devouring and preying upon their Fellow Subjects, and others following the Example their Prince had set them, spent their whole Time in the Harams with their Women. Among others who were displaced, for Want of a Bribe or Present, as it is called in *Persia*, suitable to the Expectation of the Ministry, the famous *Mereweys* was one. This Gentleman was

originally a *Tartar*, at least he commanded four or five Hundred Tents, on the utmost Bounds of the *Persian* Empire, towards *Uzbek Tartary*, where the *Persians* live in Hords, as the *Tartars* do, on the other Side the River *Oxus*, moving from Place to Place with their Tents, as they can find Provision for their Cattle. *Mereweys* understanding that he was removed only to make Way for another who had outdone him in Presents, made use of all his Friends, and raised such a Sum, as in a short Time procured him to be re-instated in his Command: However, he was so impoverished by this last Present, that he found himself in very uneasy Circumstances; and taking Advantage of the Weakness of the Government, and his Distance from Court, he determined to seize on the neighbouring Province of *Candahor*, and set up for himself. Accordingly he communicated his Design to his Friends the *Tartars*, who promised to assemble their Troops, and assist in the Enterprize; but the City of *Candahor* being a Frontier towards *India*, and a pretty good Body of Troops usually quartered thereabouts; he was in Doubt whether he should be able to carry the Place by Force; whereupon he had Recourse to the following Stratagem: When he received his Firman or Commission to re-instate him in his Command, he pretended also, that he had received a Commission to succeed the Governor of *Candahor* in that Province, and accordingly marched that Way with his Troops: When he came within a Mile or two of the Town, he sent to the Governor, to acquaint him with his pretended Commission; whereupon he knew, that the Governor, as is usual in those Cases, would come out to meet him, as he accordingly did; but after some Compliments passed, *Mereweys*, who had posted his Men so, as to prevent the Governor's retiring into the Town, fell upon his Guards, and cut them to Pieces; and marching forwards to *Candahor*, had the Gates opened to him, before the City was apprized what had happened.

The late
Civil War
commenced
by Mereweys.

1720.

The Province of *Candahor* formerly belonging to *India*, *Mereweys* had no farther Views at this Time, than the erecting it into an independant State; but this he could not expect to accomplish, without forming some powerful Alliances: In order therefore to protect himself against the Forces of the *Persian* Empire, which he had Reason to expect would be suddenly brought down against him, he dispatched an Omrah to the

Mogul's Court, to give Advice of his Success, and to propose an Alliance against *Persia*, the ancient Enemy of *India*. This was joyfully received by the Mogul, who began now to entertain Hopes of recovering the Province of *Candahor*, and annexing it to his Dominions again, which would be no hard Matter to effect, if he could make *Mereweys* dependant on him. He sent him, therefore, all imaginable Assurances of his Affection, offering him what Number of Troops he thought fit to support him, giving him, at the same Time, the Title he then aspired to, namely, that of Prince of *Candahor*.

The *Persian* Ministry receiving Advice of the Surprise of *Candahor* by *Mereweys*, detached a Body of four or five thousand Horse, to endeavour to reduce him; but *Mereweys* having been joined by the *Uzbek Tartars*, and some others, who, in hopes of meeting with glorious Plunder in *Persia*, every Day came in to him, did not shut himself up in *Candahor*, but attacked the *Persians* in their March, and defeated them. This Success made him begin to extend his Views, and he seemed now to aim at a Revolution. He dispatched, therefore, his Emissaries into all the Provinces, and even to *Ispahan* itself, who complained loudly of Mal-Administration, the Oppressions and personal Vices of the Sophy, whom he insinuated was unworthy to command the true Believers.

The Ministry were now sufficiently alarmed; but they had disoblged so many of the great Chans and Omrahs, that they knew not who to trust; should they assemble them with their Troops to make head against this formidable Rebel, they were under Apprehensions they would join with him, at least in exposing their Administration, and perhaps demand their Heads as an Attainment for their Crimes. On the other hand, if they suffered him to march forwards without Opposition, they knew the Consequence would be no less fatal. They dispatched another General, therefore, whose Skill and Fidelity in military Affairs they had a great Opinion of, to attend the Motions of *Mereweys*, and awe the Country at least, that they should not go over to him, or supply him with Provisions. But this Detachment had no better Success than the former, being surprized by *Mereweys*, and most of them cut to Pieces. And in those two Engagements he furnished his Followers with Arms and Accoutrements, who were at first little better than a naked Rabble. And he began now to talk of advancing to the capital City of *Ispahan*; but as there was a vast

Extent of Country between *Candahor* and *Ispahan*, and his Troops did not yet amount to more than eight or 10,000 Horſe, he thought proper to ſtrengthen himſelf by an Alliance with the Grand Signior firſt, and to put the City of *Candahor* into a Condition to reſiſt any Attempt that might be made upon it in his Abſence. His Negotiations at the Port ſucceeded to his Heart's Deſire; and the Baſſa of *Bagdad* was immediately ordered to aſſemble an Army, and march to the Frontiers of *Perſia*. And now *Mereweys* began to throw off all Diſguiſe, and ſtile himſelf Protector of the Kingdom of *Perſia*, and to prepare for his March to *Iſpahan*; but in the miſt of all his Projects, when he had ſwallowed the whole World, in his Imagination, Death put a Period to his Views.

Mahomood carries on the Rebellion.

This had probably diſcouraged his Adherents, and been fatal to the Cauſe, if he had not left a Son behind him, named *Mahomood*, equal, if not ſuperior to him in every Reſpect. This Gentleman being conſcious of the great Reputation his Father had gained by the Surpriſe of *Candahor*; and the Victories he had obtained, thought fit to conceal his Death, and to tranſact all Affairs in his Father's Name, till his own Reputation ſhould be eſtabliſhed. Accordingly all Things went on as if *Mereweys* was alive. The Preparations for marching to *Iſpahan* were continued, new Forces were raiſed, and Alliances cultivated, as if no ſuch Accident had happened.

The Turks and Ruſſians invade Perſia.

The *Turk* and the *Muſcovite* did not fail to make their Advantages of theſe Diſtractions in *Perſia*. The *Muſcovites* ſurpriſed *Derbent* and *Tarki*, which lay next them, on the Weſt Side of the *Caspian Sea*; and afterwards extended their Arms into *Gylan*, or the ancient *Hyrkania*, all along the South-Coaſt of the ſame Sea. The *Turk*, on the other hand, took Poſſeſſion of *Hamadan*, and ſeveral other Frontier Places, finding little or no Oppoſition. The *Perſian* Miniſtry were now in the utmoſt Conſternation, not knowing which Way to turn themſelves; and what added to their Miſfortune was, that the Treafury was entirely exhausted.

They came, however, to this Reſolution, at length, to let the Frontiers ſhift for themſelves, and to aſſemble an Army of 8 or 10,000 Horſe about *Iſpahan*, to oppoſe the Uſurper, of whom they received repeated Advices, that he was in full March for that Capital. *Mereweys* dying at *Candahor*, as has been ſaid already, his Son, *Mahomood*, had the Command of the Army when it marched to *Iſpahan*. The King, when he underſtood the

the Usurper's Army was in the Neighbourhood of his capital City, and that the People were in general discontented with the Administration, proposed to his Omrahs to resign his Crown, and set his eldest Son upon the Throne, which was generally approved; but the poor young Gentleman, who had never been out of the Seraglio, and sufficiently frightened with the Representation the Eunuchs made of the Strength and Power of the Usurper, declined the Offer, looking upon it, that he was only set up to be made a Sacrifice.

The second Son, Sultan *Thamas*, or *Thomas*, was not altogether of so pusillanimous a Spirit; but was contented to succeed his Father in the Throne, and put himself at the Head of the Army, which encamped in that fine Walk called the *Char Bag*, between *Ispahan* and *Zulpha*.

Here the Army lay some Time; and an Engagement between the Royal Troops and the Usurper was daily expected. *Sha Thamas*, in the mean time, endeavoured to discover how the great Men and Officers stood affected to his Cause; and among others, he sent to the *English* Factory, reminding them of the Privileges they had enjoyed in *Persia* under his Ancestors; and let them know, that he expected all the Assistance they could give; and, in short, Things had so good a Countenance, that it was expected he would have driven the Usurper from the Neighbourhood of *Ispahan*, when News was brought one Morning, that *Sha Thamas*, with some few of his Friends, had left the Army the Night before, and was fled no body knew whither. Whereupon the Officers of the Royal Army, as well as the Citizens, thought of nothing else but making their Peace with the Usurper, and inviting him into the Town, which he soon after took Possession of, making the old King, and the whole Court, his Prisoners. And this *Mahmood* effected with so small a Force as 6 or 7000 Horse, in the Month of *February*, 1721-2, his Father, *Mercutays*, being dead some time before. But to proceed: *Mahmood* finding an empty Treasury, and being under a Necessity of raising more Forces for the Support of his Usurpation, confiscated the Goods of all those who were not in his Interest. He also cut off the Heads of the Prime Minister, and some others, who for several Years had been fleecing the People; whereby he replenished his Coffers, and at the same time gained a general Applause.

The old King was soon after sent under a Guard to *Candahar*; and the Usurper took Possession of the royal Palace.

Ispahan
taken by
the Usurper
Mahmood.
A. D.
1721.

Sultan *Thamas*, who took the Road of *Tauris* when he left *Ispahan*, assembled a Body of Horse, and made a Shew of opposing the *Turks*, which drew many of the *Persians* over to his Party ; but the *Turks* were so much superior to him; that he could do little towards stopping the Progress of their Arms ; and the Towns being for the most part without Walls or Garisons, became an easy Conquest to the Grand Signior's Forces.

Esfreff assassinated Mahomood, and succeeds him.

Mahomood had not long enjoyed the Fruits of his Rebellion, before one of his Officers, named *Esfreff*, found Means to destroy *Mahomood*, and succeed him in the Government ; and to establish his Usurpation, entered into Alliances with the *Turks* and *Muscovites*, confirming to them all the Towns they had seized on the *Persian* Frontiers, on condition they would guarantee his Usurpation. But these Alliances proved his Ruin ; for the *Persians* seeing their Country dismembered, and their best Towns given up to their Enemies, determined to adhere to Prince *Thamas* (who had gathered a good Body of Men about him in the Northern Provinces of *Persia*.) They proclaimed him their Sovereign therefore ; and the Prince being assisted by *Kouli Kan*, a General of great Bravery and Experience, had the good Fortune to defeat Sultan *Esfreff* in several Engagements ; in one of which he was killed or taken Prisoner, and put to a cruel Death : The General *Kouli Kan* was grown so popular by a long Series of Success, as well against the *Turks*, from whom he recovered most of the Frontier Towns that had been taken during the War, as by his Victories over *Esfreff*, that he also set up for himself, and at length usurped the Throne of his Master Prince *Thamas*, whom he deposed and confined (if he did not put him to Death) and to strengthen his Usurpation, entered into an Alliance offensive and defensive with the *Russians* against the *Turks*. But the *Persians* not approving the Conduct of *Kouli Kan*, in deposing Prince *Thamas*, several strong Parties were formed against him ; and a Brother of *Mereweys*, who was in Possession of the Town and Province of *Candabor*, raised an Army, and began to advance towards *Ispahan* ; whereupon *Kouli Kan* found himself obliged to clap up a Peace with the *Turks*, and to turn his Arms against his domestic Enemies.

Kouli Kan usurps the Throne.

He afterwards laid Siege to *Candabor*, of which a Son of *Mereweys* had possessed himself. While he was engaged in this Siege, the Court of the Great Mogul being distracted

great Men frequently take their Wives and Concubines, of which every one hath a Number in his Haram suitable to his Condition or Quality. Both Men and Women, if they can procure them, are cloathed in the richest flowered or brocaded Silks. The Turbants of the Men also are of great Value; and as they generally ride along the Streets, the Furniture of their Horses is proportionably rich, no People being observed to make a better Figure abroad than the *Persians*. Their great Meal is towards the Evening, but they have very little Variety in their Dishes; Rice makes up the principal Part in most of them; and they seldom drink any strong Liquors, but raise their Spirits, like other *Asiatics*, with Opium.

Food.

Sports and Exercises.

No People excel more in Horsemanship, or are more dexterous in Archery, and the Use of the Bow, than the modern *Persians*; and their Ancestors, the *Parthians*, were remarkably famous at these Exercises: Their rural Sports have something particular in them, for they hunt down their Game, and even wild Beasts, with Hawks, and other Birds of Prey, as well as with Dogs. These are taught to fix their Talons on the Head of the hunted Beast, and buffet him with their Wings, that he cannot see his Way, which makes him an easy Prey to the Dogs. There are no Wheel Carriages in *Persia*, but every body travels on Camels, Horses, Mules, or Asses; and the Women are shut up in a Kind of covered Paniers, which are hung on each Side of a Camel.

Manufactures.

The *Persians*, nor any other of the Eastern People, understand Watches or Clock-work; but in Embroidery, and other curious Needle-work, they excel the *Europeans*. And the Earthen Ware of *Persia* is said to be almost equal to that of *China*. Silks are the principal Manufactures of the Country, viz. Brocades, Tissues, Taffeties, Tabbies, and Sattins; and some Stuffs they make, which are a Mixture of Silk, with Cotton, Camel and Goats Hair. The Gold Velvet which is wrought in *Persia* is much admired; and all their rich Stuffs are very durable: Carpets and Camblets also are Branches of their Manufactures, in which they excel most Nations; and they make some Calicoe, but it is not comparable to that of *India*.

Traffic.

A Merchant is esteemed a very honourable Employment in *Persia*: The King himself, not many Years since, had his Agents and Factors abroad in foreign Countries to deal for him. The *Armenian* Christians, and the *Banians* of *India*, have much the greatest Share of the foreign Trade here at present. The *Mahometans* of *Persia* seldom

seldom deal so far as *Europe*, but from one Province of *Persia* to another, and sometimes to *India*. The raw Silk which our *Turky* Merchants bring home, is, for the most Part, of the Growth of *Persia*. The *English East India* Company during the Civil Wars in this Country, removed their Factors to *Bossora*, near the *Persian* Gulph, in the Dominions of the *Turks*. The *India* Company used to export *English* Broad-Cloth to *Persia*, for which they received Goats Wool in Return, bringing home about a Thousand Bags every Year: Until very lately, also, the *English East India* Company received annually, of the Government of *Persia*, 3333*l.* 6*s.* 8*d.* as an Acknowledgment for the Services the Company did them, in reducing the Island of *Ormuz*; and upon the same Account, the Company are exempted from the Payment of any Duties or Customs to that Crown; but while the Country remains in that distracted Condition it is in at present, these Privileges, no Doubt, are suspended. As to the Trade between *Persia* and *India*, the Company do not meddle with it, but leave it to their Factors and Servants, to make what private Advantages they can, only they take Freight of the *Indi*an and *Armenian* Merchants, for such Merchandize as they transport to *Surat* in *India*. The *Russia* Company now tradethrough *Russia* to *Persia*.

As to the Soil, it is observed, that there is no Country Soil and which has more Mountains and fewer Rivers than *Persia*. *Produce.* *Persia*, their Mountains are generally dry barren Rocks, without Trees or Herbage on them; and we pass over wide Sandy Desarts, where scarce any Water is to be found, on which Side soever we approach this Country. There are however some fruitful Valleys, in which their great Towns usually stand; and no Country is more fertile, than the Provinces on the *Caspian Sea*; but as to *Persia* in general, there is not a tenth Part of it cultivated at present. They sow more Rice than any other Grain, and have some Wheat and Barley. Of Wine they have several Sorts, the best is made about *Shiraz*. Dates and Pistachio Nuts also abound here; and in the North Part of *Persia*, they have Apples, and many other *European* Fruits. In their Kitchen Gardens, they have several Kinds of the most delicious Melons, and all Manner of Kitchen Garden Stuff; and in their Valleys, the finest Flowers grow wild, which they scarce think worth transplanting into their Gardens, they are so common: Rhubarb, Senna, and other Drugs of the Growth of

Perſia, our *Turky* Company import in abundance. Among their Animals, the Camel and Dromedary are the moſt uſeful ; they have a fine Breed of Horſes, but thoſe of *Arabia* are in moſt Eſteem. The King has a large Stud of Horſes in every Province of the Kingdom, with which he remounts his Cavalry from Time to Time, moſt of his Forces conſiſting of Horſe. Their Goats are valuable, not only on account of their Fleſh, but for their Hair and Wool, which are uſed in ſeveral Sorts of Manufactures. No People take more Pains to train up Hawks, and other Birds of Prey for the Game, than the *Perſians* do : The Falconers, with their Hawks, make up part of the Train of every great Man ; which they fly at all Manner of wild Beaſts, as well as Fowls. The Pearl Fiſhery, which was once looked upon to be ſo valuable in the Gulph of *Perſia*, is now very inconfiderable, probably becauſe the *Arabs* have of late Years interrupted the Navigation in thoſe Seas, and ſurprized the Iſlands which belonged to the *Perſians* there.

*Pearl
Fiſhery.*

*Conſtitu-
tion.*

Perſia is now an abſolute Monarchy, the Lives and Eſtates of the People being entirely at the Diſpoſal of their Prince ; and the *Perſians*, rather out of Conſcience, it is ſaid, than Fear of Punishment, obey the Commands of their Sovereign without Reſerve. The greateſt Men ſurrender their Heads without murmuring, when their Prince demands them, it is ſaid, though they are not allowed to answer for themſelves. The King has no Privy Council eſtabliſhed, but is adviſed by ſuch Miniſters as are moſt in Favour ; and the Reſolutions taken among the Women in the Haram, frequently defeat the beſt laid Deſigns. The Crown is hereditary, excluding only the Females ; and the Sons of a Daughter are allowed to inherit. The Laws of *Perſia* particularly exclude the Blind from the Throne, which is the Reaſon, that the reigning Prince uſually orders the Eyes of all the Males of the Royal Family, of whom he has any Jealouſy, to be put out.

There is no Nobility in *Perſia*, or any Reſpect given to a Man on Account of his Family, except to thoſe who are of the Blood of their great Prophet or Patriarchs ; but every Man is eſteemed according to the Poſt he poſſeſſes ; and when he is diſmiſſed he loſes his Honour, and is no longer diſtinguiſhed from the Vulgar. Their Spiritual and Temporal Laws are the ſame, and their Cadis, and other Eccleſiaſtics, are the ordinary Judges ; but then the King, his Viceroys and Governors, take the

the Liberty of controlling the Civil Magistrate, and frequently act in an arbitrary Manner, without Regard to any Law whatever. They have no public Prisons or Goalers ; but upon a Complaint, the Magistrate orders the Offender to be brought to his own House, and guarded by his Servants, till he is condemned or acquitted ; which is usually within four and twenty Hours : If he be punished for any thing short of Murder, some Slave is made the Executioner ; but where one hath killed another, he is assigned over to the Relations of the Deceased, to execute, in what Manner they see fit.

In the Haram, or Women's Apartment, the Eastern *Women*. People spend the greatest Part of their Time ; and there is no Country, where the Ladies are so strictly guarded as in *Persia*, or more Pains taken to conceal them from the Eyes of all Men, but their Lords. It is reckoned indecent, if not criminal, to look towards the Place where a great Man's Women are confined ; and if one meets the Camels, on which they ride, he endeavours to pass by at a Distance from them, though they are shut up so close, that it is impossible to see their Faces. When the Ladies of the Royal Haram travel, it is usually in the Night ; and Proclamation is made for all Men to quit the Road, and leave their Houses near which they are to pass, on Pain of Death. Every Family has one *Eunuchs*. or more Eunuchs, according to the Number of their Women, to have an Eye on their Conduct ; and those Fellows generally insinuate themselves so far into their Master's Favour, that they have the Management of all their other Concerns.

The *Persians*, who were in the last Age the best Soldiers in the Eastern Part of the World, by living long in Peace, under an indolent Race of Kings, were much degenerated ; however, none of their Neighbours thought fit to attack them, till the Rebel *Mereweys*, observing the Weakness of the State, broke out into Rebellion, on Account of some Hardships he had suffered, either real or pretended, and invited Foreign Powers to invade his Country at the same Time, to facilitate his Usurpation. The *Turks* and *Muscovites* having so favourable an Opportunity of enlarging their respective Territories, while *Persia* was distracted with Civil Wars, seized upon such Towns as lay next them ; and the *Arabs*, by their Fleets, made themselves Masters of all the Islands in the *Persian Gulph*. The *Turks* seem to have been much the most formidable Enemy to *Persia*,
and

and penetrated farthest into that Kingdom; but the *Persians* observing their Danger, and the antient Antipathy between the two Nations reviving, they united their Forces to oppose the common Enemy, and recover all that the *Turks* or *Muscovites* had taken from them. There is not a Country in the World more unfit to subsist large Armies than those wide Deserts without Water, or Provisions, which must be passed by an Enemy. A Body of *Persian* Light-Horse always attends their Motions, destroying the Country before them, cutting off their Convoys, and distressing them in a fatiguing March of many hundred Miles. By these Means the *Persians* have formerly ruined the greatest Armies of the *Turks*, when they have not had a fifth Part of their Number; and what makes them to be dreaded, is the Swiftneſs of their Marches; for they have neither Artillery, Baggage, or Carriages to retard their Motions: They are all Horse, and every Man carries a Bag of Flower behind him, sufficient for several Days; and being acquainted with those Parts of the Country where Springs and Forage are to be found, will subsist themselves in Places where their Enemies can find no Food for Horse or Man.

Forces.

The Forces of *Persia* consisted of Persons who held their Lands of the Crown by Military Tenures; but these Gentlemen, after they had been some Time settled in their Estates, appearing to have Interests distinct from the Crown, and to apprehend they had Rights of their own, with which they were not obliged to compliment their Prince, this Kind of Militia was discouraged and neglected; and their Princes formed themselves Guards and Armies for their Security, which had an entire Dependance on themselves, and no Views but their Master's Glory; such are the Coullars of *Persia*, the Janizaries of *Turkey*, and such were the Mamalukes of *Egypt*; and such many Christian Princes endeavour to establish, for it is in vain to aim at absolute Power, while the Militia of a Country are commanded by Gentlemen, who have Estates and Properties of their own to defend: They will ever be tenacious of those Laws and Customs which secure them in their Properties, and are a Barrier against Tyranny. The *Persians* have scarce any fortified Towns, which upon this Account may be thought an easy Conquest; but then, as their Towns may be soon surprized, so may they be as suddenly recovered again; and there being no Places of Strength, I cannot see how the Conquests the *Turks* make can ever be established, but by the Concurrence and Affections

fections of the People, which they can never expect: So insuperable an Aversion have the *Persians* to the *Turks*.

As to the Religion of the modern *Persians*, they are *Religion* *Mahometans* of the Sect of *Hah*; and though a Stranger would look upon the Differences between them and the *Turks* to be meer Trifles, yet are they worked up to such an inveterate Hatred, and Detestation of each other, that they never mention one another without Curses and Imprecations, even in their Devotions. They acknowledge the same God, the same Prophet, and the same Alchoran; but are so divided about the true Successors of *Mahomet*, and the Interpretation of some Passages in the Alchoran, that an Infidel shall meet with better Quarter at their Hands, than a Brother Mussulman of a different Tribe. The annual Festival of *Hossein* and *Hassien*, who were killed by the *Turks*, is kept up by the *Persians*; in which no Arts are left untried, to create an Aversion in the People to the *Turks*, who so barbarously murdered these two Fathers of their Sect. The *Persians* tolerate all Religions, only laying an easy Tax on those who differ from the Establishment. They neither consecrate their Temples or Priests; but any one who will put on an Air of Gravity, and apply himself to read the Alchoran, is qualified for a Living, or a Subsistence in some of their Mosques, when there is a Vacancy; and if he be removed, he is looked upon as a mere Layman again.

The Government, Religion, Customs, Arts and Sciences of the Ancient Persians, and other Asiatics.

Monarchical or Regal Government was the only *The ancient* Form almost established among the Eastern Nations; a Republican Government was unknown in that *Constitution* Part of the World.

Among the *Assyrians*, and more particularly among the *Persians*, the Prince used to be stiled, *The great King, the King of Kings*. The Crown was hereditary among them, descending from Father to Son, and generally to the Eldest. When an Heir to the Crown was born, all the Empire testified their Joy by Sacrifices, Feasts, and all manner of public Rejoicings; and his Birth-day was thenceforward an annual Festival and Day of Solemnity for all *Persians*. As to his Education, some *Education of their Princes* of the most approved Merit and Probity were chosen to take care of the young Prince's Person and Health, till he

he was seven Years of Age, and to begin to form his Manners and Behaviour. He was then taken from them and put into the Hands of other Masters, who were to teach him to ride as soon as his Strength would permit, and to exercise him in Hunting. At fourteen Years of Age, when the Mind begins to attain some Maturity, four of the wisest, and most virtuous Men of the State, were appointed to be his Preceptors. The first, says *Plato*, taught him Magic, that is, the Worship of the Gods according to their ancient Maxims, and the Laws of *Zoroaster*, the Son of *Oromasus*; he also instructed him in the Principles of Government: The Second was to accustom him to speak Truth, and to administer Justice: The Third was to teach him not to be overcome by Pleasures, that he might be truly a King, and always Master of himself and his Desires: The Fourth was to fortify his Mind against Fear, which would have made him a Slave, and to inspire him with a noble and prudent Assurance, so necessary for those who are born to Command. But all this Care was frustrated by the Luxury, Pomp, and Magnificence, with which the young Prince was surrounded, by his numerous Train of Attendants, that paid him a servile Submission, recommending a shining Equipage, a voluptuous and effeminate Life, in which Pleasure, and the inventing of new Diversions, seemed to engross all Attention: The corrupt Manners of the Nation therefore quickly debauched the Prince, and drew him into the reigning Pleasures, against which no Education is a sufficient Defence.

*Grand
Council.*

The regal Authority among the *Persians* was kept within some Bounds by a Council of State, which consisted of seven Princes, or Lords, distinguished by their Wisdom and Abilities, the Prince seldom transacting, or determining any Affair of Importance without their Advice.

Their Kings were very careful to see Justice duly administered. A Judge having been corrupted by Bribery, *Cambyfes* condemned him to die, and had his Skin nailed upon the Seat where he used to sit in Judgment, and where his Son, who succeeded him in the Office, was to sit.

And it was not lawful either for a private Person to put any of his Slaves to Death, or for the Prince to inflict capital Punishment upon any of his Subjects for the first Offence; because it might rather be considered as
an

an Effect of human Weakness and Frailty, than of a confirmed Malignity of Mind.

The *Persians* thought it reasonable to put the Good, as well as the Evil, the Merits of the Offender, as well as his Demerits, into the Scales of Justice: Nor was it just, in their Opinion, that one single Crime, should obliterate all the good Actions a Man had done during his Life. Upon this Principle it was, that *Darius*, having condemned a Judge to Death for some Prevarication in his Office, and afterwards calling to Mind the important Services he had rendered both the State and the Royal Family, revoked the Sentence, and acknowledged, that he had pronounced it with more Precipitation than Wisdom.

But one important and essential Rule which they observed in their Judgments, was, in the first Place, never to condemn any Person without bringing his Accuser to his Face, and without giving him Time, and all other Means necessary for defending himself against the Articles laid to his Charge: And in the second Place, if the Person accused was found innocent, to inflict the very same Punishment upon the Accuser, as the other was to have suffered, had he been found guilty.

The *Persian* Empire was divided into an hundred and twenty-seven Governments, the Governors whereof, were called Satrapæ. Over them were appointed three principal Ministers, who inspected their Conduct, to whom they gave an Account of all the Affairs of their several Provinces, and who were afterwards to make their Report of the same to the King. It was *Darius* the *Mede*, that is, *Cyaxares*, or rather *Cyrus*, in the Name of his Uncle, who put the Government of the Empire into this excellent Method.

These Satrapæ being the most considerable Persons in the Kingdom, *Cyrus* assigned them certain Funds, and Revenues, proportionable to their Station, and the Importance of their Employments. And to prevent, as far as possible, all Abuses, which might be made of so extensive an Authority, as that of Satrapæ, the King reserved to himself alone, the Nomination of them, and caused the Governors of Places, the Commanders of the Troops, and other such like Officers, to depend immediately upon the Prince himself; from whom alone they were to receive their Orders and Instructions; that, if the Satrapæ were inclined to abuse their Power, they might

might be sensible those Officers were so many. Checks upon their Conduct.

Nor was the Care of the Provinces entirely left to the Satrapæ and Governors: The King himself took Cognizance of them in his own Person, being persuaded, that the governing only by others, is but to govern by halves. An Officer of the Household was ordered to repeat these Words to the King every Morning when he awaked: *Rise Sir, and think of discharging the Duties, for which Oromasdes has placed you upon the Throne.* (*Oromasdes* was the principal God, antiently worshipped by the *Persians*).

The King of *Persia* thought himself obliged, according to the ancient Customs established in that Country, from Time to Time, personally to visit all the Provinces of his Empire; being persuaded, as *Pliny* says of *Trajan*, that the most solid Glory, and the most exquisite Pleasures, a good Prince can enjoy, is from Time to Time to let the People see their common Father; to reconcile the Dissensions and mutual Animosities of rival Cities, to calm Commotions or Seditions among the People, and that, not so much by the Dint of Power and Severity, as by Reason and Temper; to prevent Injustice and Oppression in Magistrates, and cancel and reverse, whatever has been decreed against Law and Equity. When the King was not able to visit the Provinces himself, he sent in his stead some of the greatest Men of the Kingdom, such as were the most eminent for Wisdom and Virtue. These Persons were generally called the Eyes and Ears of the Prince, because by their Means, he saw, and was informed of every thing. The Attention of the King, and his Ministers, was not only employed upon great Objects, as War, the Revenue, Justice and Commerce, but Matters of less Importance; as the Security and Beauty of Towns and Cities, the Convenience of their Habitations, the Reparation of High-roads, Bridges and Causeways, the keeping of Woods and Forests, from being laid waste, and destroyed; and above all, the Improvement of Agriculture, and the encouraging and promoting of all sorts of Trades, even to the lowest, and meanest of handicraft Employments.

The Invention of Posts and Couriers is ascribed to *Cyrus*. As the *Persian* Empire, after its last Conquests, was of a vast Extent, and *Cyrus* required that all his Governors of Provinces, and the chief Commanders of his

his Troops, should write to him, and give an exact Account of every Thing that past in their several Districts and Armies; in order to render that Correspondence the more sure and expeditious, and to put himself into a Condition of receiving speedy Intelligence of all Occurrences and Affairs, and of sending his Orders thereupon with Expedition, he caused Post-houses to be built in every Province.

The Revenues of the antient *Persian* Kings consisted *Revenues:* partly in Taxes imposed upon the People, and partly in the Products of the Earth, paid in kind; as Corn, and other Provisions, Forage, Horses, Camels, or whatever each particular Province afforded. *Strabo* relates, that the Satrapæ of *Armenia* sent regularly every Year, to the King of *Persia*, 20,000 young Colts. By this we may form a Judgment of the other Levies, in the several Provinces: But these Tributes were only exacted from the conquered Nations; for the natural Subjects, that is, the *Persians*, were exempt from all Impositions: Nor was the Custom of imposing Taxes, and of determining the Sums each Province was yearly to pay, introduced till the Reign of *Darius*; at which Time, the pecuniary Impositions, as near as we can judge, from the Computation made by *Herodotus*, which is attended with great Difficulties, amounted to near four Millions Sterling.

The Place where the public Treasure was kept was called, in the *Persian* Language, *Gaza*. There were Treasuries of this kind at *Susa*, at *Persepolis*, at *Pasargada*, at *Damascus*, and other Cities. The Gold and Silver were there kept in Ingots, and coined into Money, according as the King had occasion. The Money chiefly used by the *Persians*, was of Gold, and called *Daricus*, from the Name of *Darius*, who first caused them to be coined with his Image on one side, and an Archer on the reverse. The *Daric* is sometimes also called *Stater Aureus*, because the Weight of it, like that of the *Attic Stater*, was two Drachms of Gold, which were equivalent to twenty Drachms of Silver, and consequently were worth ten Shilling Sterling. Besides these Tributes which were paid in Money, there was another Contribution made in Kind, by furnishing Victuals and Provisions for the King's Table, and Household; Grain, Forage, and other Necessaries, for the Subsistence of his Armies; and Horses, for the remounting his Cavalry. This Contribution was imposed upon the Sa-
trapæ

trape, or Provinces, each of them furnishing such a Part, as they were severally taxed at. *Herodotus* observes, that the Province of *Babylon*, the largest and wealthiest of them all, did alone furnish the whole Contribution, for the Space of four Months, and consequently bore a third Part of the Burden of the whole Imposition, whilst all the rest of *Asia* together did but contribute the other two Thirds.

There were likewise certain Cantons assigned, and set apart, for the maintaining of the Queen's Toilet, and Wardrobe; one for her Girdle, another for her Veil, and so on for the rest of her Vestments: These Cantons took their Names from the particular Use, or Part of the Garments, to which they were appropriated, and were accordingly called, one the Queen's Girdle, another the Queen's Veil, and so on. In *Plato's* Time, the same Custom continued among the *Persians*. The Way of the King's giving Pensions in those Days, to such Persons as he had a Mind to gratify, was exactly like what I have observed, concerning the Queen. It is said, that the King of *Persia* assigned the Revenue of four Cities to *Themistacles*; one of which was to supply him with Wine, another with Bread, the Third with Meats for his Table, and the Fourth, with his Clothes and Furniture. Before that Time, *Cyrus* had acted in the same Manner with *Pytharchus* of *Cyzicus*, to whom he gave the Revenues of seven Cities. In following Times, we find many Instances of a like Nature.

Roman.

The *Persians* were trained up to military Service, from their Infancy, passing through different Exercises: Generally speaking, they served in the Armies, from the Age of twenty to fifty Years, and whether they were in Peace, or War, they always wore Swords, as our Gentlemen do; which was never practised among the *Greeks*, or the *Romans*. They were obliged to lift themselves at the Time appointed, and it was esteemed a Crime to desire to be dispensed with in that respect. *Herodotus* speaks of a Body of Troops appointed to be the King's Guard, which were called immortal, because this Body, which consisted of 10,000 Men, perpetually subsisted, and was always complete; for as soon as any of the Men died, another was immediately put in his Place. The Establishment of this Body probably began with the 10,000 Men sent for by *Cyrus* out of *Persia*, to be his Guard; they were distinguished from all other Troops, by the Richness of their Armour, and still more by their singular
Courage

Courage. *Quintus Curtius*, mentions also this Body of Men, and another Body besides, consisting of 15,000, designed in like manner to be a Guard to the King's Person; the latter were called *Doryphori*, or the *Lancers*.

The ordinary Arms of the *Persians* were a Sabre, or Scymitar, with a kind of Dagger, which hung in their Belt on the right Side; a Javelin, or Half-spike, having a sharp-pointed Iron at the End.

They carried two Javelins or Lances, one to fling, and the other for close Fight. They made great Use of the Bow, and of the Quiver, in which they carried their Arrows: The Sling was not unknown amongst them, but they did not set much Value upon it. It appears, from several Passages in ancient Authors, that the *Persians* wore no Helmets, but only their common Caps, which they called Tiaras. This is particularly said of *Cyrus* the younger, and of his Army; and yet the same Authors, in other Places, make Mention of their Helmets; from whence we must conclude, that their Custom had changed according to the Times. The Foot, for the most Part, wore Cuirasses made of Brass, which were so artificially fitted to their Bodies, that they were no Impediment to the Motion, no more than the Vambraces, or other Pieces of Armour which covered the Arms, Thighs and Legs of the Horsemen: Their Horses themselves, for the most Part, had their Faces, Breasts, and Flanks covered with Brass. These were what are called *equi cataphracti*, Barbed Horses. Authors differ very much about the Form and Fashion of their Shields: At first they made use of very small and light ones, made only of Osiers: But it appears from several Passages, that they had also Shields of Brass, which were of great Length.

Cyrus introduced a considerable Change in their Chariots of War: These had been in Use a long while before his Time, as appears both from *Homer* and the Sacred Writings. These Chariots had only two Wheels, and were generally drawn by four Horses abreast, with two Men in each; one of distinguished Birth and Valour, who fought, and the other only for driving the Chariot. *Cyrus* altered the Form of the Chariots, and doubled the Number of the fighting Men that rode in them, by putting the Drivers in a Condition to fight, as well as the others.

He caused the Wheels of the Chariots to be made stronger, that they should not be so easily broken;

and their Axletrees to be made longer, to make them the more firm and steady: At each End of the Axletree, he caused Scythes to be fastened, that were three Foot long, and placed horizontally; and caused other Scythes to be fixed under the same Axletree, with their Edges turned to the Ground, that they might cut in Pieces Men or Horses, or what the impetuous Violence of the Chariots should overturn. It appears, from several Passages in Authors, that in After-Times, besides all this, they added two long Iron Spikes at the End of the Pole, in order to pierce whatever came in the Way; and that they armed the hinder Part of the Chariot with several Rows of sharp Knives, to hinder any from mounting behind.

These Chariots were in Use for many Ages, in all the eastern Countries: They were looked upon as the principal Strength of the Armies; and as an Apparatus, the most capable of all others, to strike the Enemy with Consternation and Terror; but in Proportion, as the Military Art improved, the People found the Inconveniences of them, and at length laid them aside: For to reap any Advantage from them, it was necessary to fight in vast large Plains, where the Soil was very even, and where there were no Rivulets, Gutters, Woods, nor Vineyards. In after Times, several Methods were invented, to render these Chariots absolutely useless: It was enough to cut a Ditch in their Way, which immediately stopped their Course.

Cyrus caused his Troops to be frequently exercised, endured them to Fatigue and Hardships, employed them in laborious Works, to prepare them for actual Service. It was the Custom amongst all *Asiatics*, whenever they encamped, tho' but for a Day or a Night, to have their Camp surrounded with pretty deep Ditches. This they did, to prevent being surprized by the Enemy, and that they might not be forced to engage against their Inclinations. They usually contented themselves with covering their Camp with a Bank of Earth dug out of these Ditches, though sometimes they fortified them with good Pallisades, and Stakes driven into the Ground.

Cyrus at first used some Severity, which is necessary in the Beginning, in order to establish a good Discipline; but this Severity was always accompanied with Reason, and tempered with Kindness. The Example of their Leader, who was the first upon all Duty, gave Weight and Authority to his Orders, and softened the
Rigour

Rigour of his Commands. The unalterable Rule he laid down to himself, of granting nothing but to Merit only, and of refusing every thing to Favour, was a sure Means of keeping all the Officers attached to their Duty, and of making them perpetually vigilant and careful.

As there were but very few fortified Places in *Cyrus's* Time, all their Wars were little else but Field Expeditions; for which Reason, that wise Prince found out, by his own Reflection and Experience, that nothing contributed more to Victory, than a numerous and good Cavalry; and that the gaining of one single pitched Battle was often attended with the Conquest of a whole Kingdom. Accordingly we see, that having found the *Persian* Armies destitute of good Cavalry, he turned all his Thoughts towards remedying that Defect; and so far succeeded, by his great Application and Activity, as to form a Body of *Persian* Horse superior to that of his Enemies, in Goodness at least, if not in Number. There were several Breeds of Horses in *Persia* and *Media*; but in the latter Province, those of a Place called *Nisæa* were the most esteemed; and it was from thence the King's Stable was furnished.

The first Method of attacking a Place was by Blockade; they invested the Town with a Wall built quite round it, and in which, at proper Distances, were made Redoubts, and Places of Arms: And between the Wall and the Town, they dug a deep Trench, which they strongly fenced with Pallisadoes, to hinder the Besieged from going out, as well as to prevent Succours or Provisions from being brought in. In this Manner they waited, till Famine did what they could not effect by Force or Art. From hence proceeded the Length of the Sieges related by the Ancients, as that of *Troy*, which lasted ten Years, that of *Azoth* by *Psammeticus*, which lasted twenty, that of *Nineveh*, where we find *Sardanapalus* defended himself for the Space of seven; and *Cyrus* might have lain a long Time before *Babylon*, where they had laid in a Stock of Provisions for twenty Years, if he had not used a different Method for taking it.

As they found Blockades extremely tedious from their Duration, they invented the Method of Scaling, which was done, by raising a great Number of Ladders against the Walls, by Means whereof, a great many Files of Soldiers might climb up together, and force their Way in.

To render this Method of Scaling impracticable, or at least ineffectual, they made the Walls of their Cities extremely high, and the Towers wherewith they were flanked still considerably higher, that the Ladders of the Besiegers might not be able to reach the Top of them. This obliged them to find out some other Way of getting to the Top of Ramparts; and this was, by building moving Towers of Wood, still higher than the Walls, and by approaching them with those Wooden Towers. On the Top of these Towers, which formed a kind of Platform, was placed a competent Number of Soldiers, who, with Darts and Arrows, and the Assistance of their Balistæ and Catapultæ, scoured the Ramparts, and cleared them of the Defenders; and then from a lower Stage of the Tower, they let down a kind of Draw-bridge, which rested upon the Wall, and gave the Soldiers Admittance.

A third Method, which extremely shortened the Length of their Sieges, was that of the Battering-Ram, by which they made Breaches in the Walls, and opened themselves a Passage into the Places besieged. This Battering-Ram was a vast thick Beam of Timber, with a strong Head of Iron or Brass at the End of it, which was pushed with the utmost Force against the Walls.

They had still a fourth Method of attacking Places, which was that of sapping and undermining; and this was done two different Ways; that is, either to carry on a subterranean Path quite under the Walls into the Heart of the City, and so open themselves a Passage and Entrance into it, or else, after they had sapped the Foundation of the Wall, and put Supporters under it, to fill the Space with all Sorts of combustible Matter, and then to set that Matter on Fire, in order to burn down the Supporters, calcine the Materials of the Wall, and throw down part of it.

With respect to the fortifying and defending of Towns, the Ancients made use of all the fundamental Principles and essential Rules now practised in the Art of Fortification. They had the Method of overflowing the Country round about, to hinder the Enemy's approaching the Town; they made their Ditches deep, and of a steep Ascent, and fenced them round with Pallisadoes, to make the Enemy's Ascent or Descent the more difficult, they made their Ramparts very thick, and fenced them with Stone or Brickwork, that the Battering-Ram should not be able to demolish them; and very high, that the scaling of them should be equally impracticable. They had their projecting Towers, from whence our modern Basti-

Bastions derived their Origin, for the flanking of the Curtains; and the ingenious Invention of different Machines for the shooting of Arrows, throwing of Darts and Lances, and hurling of great Stones with vast Force and Violence; their Parapets and Battlements in the Walls for their Soldiers Security; and their covered Galleries, which went quite round the Walls, and served as subterraneous Passages; their Intrenchments behind the Breaches and Necks of the Towers; they made their Sallies too, in order to destroy the Works of the Besiegers, and to set their Engines on Fire; as also their Countermines, to defeat the Mines of the Enemy. Lastly, They built Citadels as Places of Retreat, in case of Extremity, to serve as the last Resource to a Garison, upon the Point of being forced, and to make the taking of the Town of no Effect; or, at least, to obtain a more advantageous Capitulation. All these Methods of defending Places, against those that besieged them, were known in the Art of Fortification, as it was practised among the Ancients; and they are the very same as are now in use among the Moderns, allowing for such Alterations as the Difference of Arms and Gunpowder has occasioned.

Monsieur *Bossuet* has observed, that after the Death of *Cyrus*, the *Persians* neglected Military Discipline, that full of vain Ostentation of their Power and Greatness; and relying more upon Strength than Prudence, upon the Number, rather than the Choice of their Troops, they thought they had done all that was necessary, when they had drawn together immense Numbers of People; who fought indeed with Resolution enough, but without Order, and who found themselves incumbered with the vast Multitudes of useless Persons, in the Retinue of the King and his chief Officers; for to such a Height was their Luxury grown, that they would have the same Magnificence, and enjoy the same Pleasures and Delights in the Army, as in the King's Courts; so that in their Wars the Kings marched accompanied with their Wives, their Concubines, and all their Eunuchs: Their Silver, and Gold Plate, and all their rich Furniture, were carried after them in prodigious Quantities, and all the Equipage and Utensils so voluptuous a Life requires. An Army composed in this Manner, and already clogged with the excessive Number of Troops, had the additional Load of vast Multitudes of such as did not fight. In this Confusion, the Troops could not act in Concert, their Orders never reached them in Time; and in Acti-

on every thing went on at random, as it were, without the Possibility of any Commanders preventing Disorder. Add to this the Necessity they were under of finishing an Expedition quickly, and of passing into an Enemy's Country with great Rapidity, because such a vast Body of People, greedy not only of the Necessaries of Life, but of such Things also, as were requisite for Luxury and Pleasure, consumed all that could be met with in a short Time; nor indeed is it easy to comprehend from whence they could procure Subsistence.

But with all this vast Train, the *Persians* astonished those Nations that were as unexpert in Military Affairs as themselves; and many of those that were better versed therein, were yet overcome by them, being either weakened or distressed by their own Divisions, or overpowered by their Enemy's Numbers. And by this Means, *Egypt*, as proud as she was of her Antiquity, her wise Institutions and the Conquest of her *Sesostris*, became subject to the *Persians*: Nor was it difficult for them to conquer the *Lesser Asia*, and such *Greek Colonies* as the Luxury of *Asia* had corrupted; but when they came to engage with *Greece* itself, they found what they had never met with before, regular and well disciplined Troops, skilful and experienced Commanders, Soldiers accustomed to Temperance, whose Bodies were enured to Toil and Labour, and rendered both robust and active, by Wrestling, and other Exercises practised in that Country. The *Grecian Armies* indeed were but small, but they were like strong vigorous Bodies, that seem to be all Nerves and Sinews, and full of Spirits in every Part: At the same Time, they were so well commanded, and so prompt in obeying the Orders of their Generals, that one would have thought all the Soldiers had been actuated by one Soul, so perfect an Harmony was there in all their Motions.

*Mechanic
Arts first
introduced
in Asia.*

Soon after the Deluge several Discoveries were made worthy of our Notice. 1. The Art of spinning Gold Thread, and of interweaving it with Stuffs. 2. That of beating Gold, and with light thin Leaves of it to gild Wood, and other Materials. 3. The Secret of casting Metals; as Brass, Silver or Gold, and of making all Sorts of Figures with them, in Imitation of Nature; of representing any kind of different Objects; and of making an infinite Variety of Vessels of those Metals for Use and Ornament. 4. The Art of Painting, or carving upon Wood, Stone, or Marble: And, 5. to name no more, that of dying their Silks and Stuffs, and giving them the most exquisite and beautiful Colours. As
it

it was in *Asia*, that Men first settled after the Deluge, it is easy to conceive that *Asia* must have been the Nurse, as it were, of Arts and Sciences.

The building of the Tower of *Babel*, and shortly after, *Architecture* of those famous Cities of *Babylon* and *Nineveh*; their royal Palaces divided into Apartments, and adorned with every thing that either Decency or Conveniency could require; the Regularity and Symmetry of the Pillars and vaulted Roofs, raised and multiplied one upon another; the noble Gates of their Cities; the Breadth and Thickness of their Ramparts; the Height and Strength of their Towers; their large commodious Quays on the Banks of their great Rivers; and their curious bold Bridges built over them: All these Things, with many other Works of the like Nature, shew to what a Pitch of Perfection Architecture was carried in those ancient Times.

The very Names of the principal Notes of ancient *Music*. Music, which the Moderns have still preserved, namely, the *Doric*, *Phrygian*, *Lydian*, *Ionian*, and *Æolian*, sufficiently indicate the Place where it had its Origin; or, at least, where it was improved, or brought to Perfection.

It is generally allowed, that the Ancients were acquainted with the triple Symphony; that is, the Harmony of Voices; that of Instruments, and that of Voices and Instruments in Concert: But the principal Point in Dispute among the Learned, concerning the Music of the Ancients, is to know whether they understood Music in several Parts; that is, a Composition consisting of several Parts, and in which all those different Parts form each by itself a compleat Piece, and at the same time have an harmonious Connexion, as it is in our Counter-point or Concert, whether simple or compounded.

In those early Times we discover the Origin of *Physic*. *Physic*. The Beginnings of which, as of all other Arts and Sciences, were very rude and imperfect. *Herodotus*, and after him *Strabo*, observe, that it was a general Custom among the *Babylonians* to expose their sick Persons to the View of Passengers, in order to learn of them whether they had been afflicted with the like Distemper, and by what Remedies they had been cured. From hence several People have pretended, that *Physic* is nothing else but a conjectural and experimental Science, entirely resulting from Observations made upon the Nature of different Diseases, and upon such Things as are conducive or prejudicial to

Health. It must be confessed, that Experience will go a great Way ; but that alone is not sufficient. The famous *Hippocrates* made great Use of it in his Practice ; but he did not rely intirely upon it. The Custom was in those Days for all Persons that had been sick, and were cured, to put up a Picture of *Æsculapius* ; wherein they gave an Account of the Remedies that had restored them to their Health. That celebrated Physician caused all these Inscriptions and Memorials to be copied out, which were of great Advantage to him.

Physic was, even in the Time of the *Trojan War*, in great Use and Esteem. *Æsculapius*, who flourished at that Time, is reckoned the Inventor of that Art, and had even then brought it to a great Perfection by his profound Knowledge in Botany, by his great Skill in Medicinal Preparations, and Chirurgical Operations ; for in those Days these several Branches were not separated from one another, but were all included together under the Denomination of Physic.

That Branch of Physic which treats of Herbs and Plants was very much known, and almost the only Branch of the Science used in those early Times. It was Nature herself that offered those innocent and salutary Remedies, and seemed to invite Mankind to make use of them. Their Gardens, Fields and Woods supplied them *gratis* with an infinite Plenty and Variety. As yet no Use was made of Minerals, Treacles, and other Compositions, since discovered by closer and more inquisitive Researches into Nature.

Hippocrates carried this Science to its highest Perfection ; and though it be certain, that several Improvements and new Discoveries have been made in that Art since his Time, yet is he still looked upon, by the ablest Physicians, as the first and chief Master of the Faculty, and as the Person whose Writings ought to be the chief Study of those that would distinguish themselves in that Profession.

Astronomy.

The *Babylonians* have the Honour of being the first Astronomers. The advantagious Situation of *Babylon*, which was built upon a wide, extended flat Country, where no Mountains bounded the Prospect ; the constant Clearness and Serenity of the Air in that Country, so favourable to the free Contemplation of the Heavens ; perhaps also the extraordinary Height of the Tower of *Babel*, which seemed to be intended for an Observatory : All these Circumstances were strong Motives to engage this People to a more nice Observation of the various Mo-
tions

tions of the heavenly Bodies, and the regular Course of the Stars.

The ancient *Babylonians* could not carry their Observations to any great Perfection for Want of the Help of Telescopes, which are of modern Invention, and have greatly contributed of late Years to render our Astronomical Enquiries more perfect and exact. Whatever they were, they have not come down to us. *Epigenes*, a great and credible Author, according to *Pliny*, speaks of Observations made for the Space of 720 Years, and imprinted upon Squares of Brick, which, if it be true, must reach back to a very early Antiquity. Those of which *Callisthenes*, a Philosopher in *Alexander's* Court, makes mention, and of which he gave *Aristotle* an account, include 1903 Years, and consequently must commence very near the Deluge, and the Time of *Nimrod's* building the City of *Babylon*.

The *Persians* adored the Sun, and particularly the rising Sun, with the profoundest Veneration. To him they dedicated a magnificent Chariot, with Horses of the greatest Beauty and Value. Sometimes they likewise sacrificed Oxen to this God, who was very much known amongst them by the Name of *Mithra*. Religion.

By a natural Consequence of the Worship they paid to the Sun, they likewise paid a particular Veneration to Fire; always invoked it first in their Sacrifices, carried it with great Respect before the King in all his Marches; intrusted the keeping of the sacred Fire which came down from Heaven, as they pretended, to none but Magi; and would have looked upon it as the greatest of Misfortunes, if it had been suffered to go out. History informs us, that the Emperor *Heraclius*, when he was at War with the *Persians*, demolished several of their Temples, and particularly the Chapel in which the sacred Fire had been preserved till that Time, which occasioned great Mourning and Lamentation throughout the whole Country. The *Persians* likewise honoured the Water, the Earth and the Winds, as so many Deities.

The cruel Ceremony of making Children pass through the Fire, was undoubtedly a Consequence of the Worship paid to that Element; for this Fire-worship was common to the *Babylonians* and *Persians*. The Scripture positively says of the People of *Mesopotamia*, who were sent as a Colony into the Country of the *Samaritans*, that they caused their Children to pass through the Fire. It is well known how common this barbarous Custom became in

in many Provinces of *Asia*. Besides these, the *Persians* had two Gods of a more extraordinary Nature, namely, *Oromasdes* and *Arimanius*. The former they looked upon as the Author of all the Blessings and good Things that happened to them; and the latter as the Author of all the Evils wherewith they were afflicted.

The *Persians* originally erected neither Statues nor Temples, nor Altars to their Gods, but offered their Sacrifices in the open Air, and generally on the Tops of Hills, or on high Places. It is supposed to have been through the Advice and Instigation of the Magi, that *Xerxes*, the *Persian* King, burnt all the *Grecian* Temples, esteeming it injurious to the Majesty of God to shut him up within Walls, to whom all Things are open, and to whom the whole World should be reckoned as an House or Temple.

The Laws of *Persia* suffered no Man to confine the Motive of his Sacrifices to any private or domestic Interest. This was a fine way of attaching all particular Persons to the public Good, by teaching them, that they ought never to sacrifice for themselves alone, but for the King, and the whole State, wherein every Man was comprehended with the rest of his Fellow Citizens. The Magi were the Guardians of all the Ceremonies relating to their Worship; and it was to them the People had recourse, in order to be instructed therein, and to know on what Days, to what Gods, and after what Manner they were to offer their Sacrifices. As these Magi were all of one Tribe, and that none but the Son of a Priest could pretend to the Honour of the Priesthood, they kept all their Learning and Knowledge, whether in religious or political Concerns, to themselves and their Families; nor was it lawful for them to instruct any Stranger in those Matters, without the King's Permission. It was granted in favour of *Themistocles*, and was, according to *Plutarch*, a particular Effect of the Prince's great Consideration for that distinguished Person.

This Knowledge and Skill in religious Matters, which made *Plato* define Magic, or the Learning of the Magi, the Art of worshipping the Gods in a becoming Manner, gave the Magi great Authority both with the Prince and People, who would offer no Sacrifice without their Presence and Ministration. And before a Prince in *Persia* could come to the Crown, he was obliged to receive Instruction for a certain Time from some of the Magi, and to learn both the Art of reigning, and that of worshipping

shipping the Gods after a proper Manner: Nor did he determine any important Affair of the State when he was upon the Throne, without taking their Advice and Opinion before hand; for which Reason *Pliny* says, that even in his Time they were looked upon in all the Eastern Countries as the Masters and Directors of Princes, and of those who stiled themselves Kings of Kings.

They were the Sages, the Philosophers, and Men of Learning in *Persia*; as the Gymnosophists and Brachmans were amongst the *Indians*, and the *Druids* among the *Gauls*. Their great Reputation made People come from the most distant Countries to be instructed by them in Philosophy and Religion; and we are assured it was from them that *Pythagoras* borrowed the Principles of that Learning by which he acquired so much Veneration and Respect among the *Greeks*, excepting only his Doctrine of Transmigration, which he learned of the *Egyptians*.

It is generally agreed, that *Zoroaster* was the original Author and Founder of this Sect; but Authors are considerably divided in their Opinions about the Time in which he lived. What *Pliny* says upon this Head may reconcile that Variety of Opinions, as is very judiciously observed by Dr. *Prideaux*. We read in that Author, that there were two Persons named *Zoroaster*, between whose Lives there might be the Distance perhaps of 600 Years. The first of them was the Founder of the Magian Sect about the Year of the World 2900; and the latter, who certainly flourished between the Beginning of *Cyrus's* Reign and the End of *Darius's*, the Son of *Hystaspes*, who was the Restorer and Reformer of it.

Through all the Eastern Countries Idolatry was divided into two principal Sects; that of the Sabeans, who adored Images, and that of the Magians who worshipped Fire. The former of these Sects had its Rise among the *Chaldeans*, who from their Knowledge of Astronomy, and their particular Application to the Study of the several Planets, which they believed to be inhabited by so many Intelligences, who were to those Orbs what the Soul of Man is to his Body, were induced to represent *Saturn*, *Jupiter*, *Mars*, *Apollo*, *Mercury*, *Venus* and *Diana*, or the Moon, by so many Images or Statues; in which they imagined those pretended Intelligences, or Deities, were as really present as in the Planets themselves. In Time the Number of their Gods considerably increased: This Image-worship from *Chaldea* spread itself throughout all the East; from thence passed into *Egypt*; and at length came

came among the *Greeks*, who propagated it through all the Western Nations.

To this Sect of the Sabeans was diametrically opposite that of the Magians, which also took its Rise in the same Eastern Countries. The Magians utterly abhorred Images, and worshipped God only under the Form of Fire, looking upon that on account of its Purity, Brightness, Activity, Subtily, and Incorruptibility, as the most perfect Symbol or Representation of the Deity. They began first in *Persia*; and there and in *India* were the only Places where this Sect was propagated; where they remain even to this Day. Their chief Doctrine was, that there were two Principles; one the Cause of all Good, and the other the Cause of all Evil: The former is represented by Light, and the other by Darkness, as their truest Symbols. The good God they name *Yazdan* and *Ormuzd*, and the evil God, *Abraman*. The former is by the *Greeks* called *Oromasdes*, and the latter *Arimanius*. And therefore, when *Xerxes* prayed, that his Enemies might always resolve to banish their best and bravest Citizens, as the *Athenians* had *Themistocles*, he addressed his Prayer to *Arimanius*, the evil God, and not to *Oromasdes*, their good God.

Concerning these two Gods, they had this Difference of Opinion; that whereas some held both of them to have been from all Eternity, others contended, that the good God only was eternal, and the other was created: But they both agreed in this, That there will be a continual Opposition between these two, till the End of the World; that then the good God shall overcome the evil God; and that from thenceforward each of them shall have his World to himself; that is, the good God his World with all the Good, and the evil God his World with all the Wicked.

The second *Zoroaster*, who lived in the Time of *Darius*, undertook to reform some Articles in the Religion of the Magian Sect, which for several Ages had been the predominant Religion of the *Medes* and *Persians*; but since the Death of *Smerdis*, and his chief Confederates, and the Massacre of their Adherents and Followers, was fallen into great Contempt. It is thought this Reformer made his first Appearance in *Ecbatana*.

The chief Reformation he made in the Magian Religion was in the first Principle of it: For whereas before they had held as a fundamental Principle the Being of the
two

two supreme first Causes ; the first *Light*, which was the Author of all Good, and the other *Darkness*, the Author of all Evil ; and that of the Mixture of these two, as they were in a continual Struggle with each other, all Things were made : He introduced a Principle superior to them both ; one supreme God, who created both Light and Darkness, and who out of these two Principles made all other Things, according to his own Will and Pleasure.

But to avoid making God the Author of all Evil, his Doctrine was, that there was one supreme Being, independent and self-existing from all Eternity ; that under him there were two Angels, one the Angel of Light, who is the Author of all Good, and the other the Angel of Darkness, who is the Author of all Evil ; that these two out of the Mixture of Light and Darkness made all Things that are ; that they are in a perpetual Struggle with each other ; and that where the Angel of Light prevails, there Good reigns, and that where the Angel of Darkness prevails, there Evil takes place ; but this Struggle shall continue to the End of the World ; that then there shall be a general Resurrection, and a Day of Judgment, wherein all shall receive a just Retribution according to their Works : After which the Angel of Darkness and his Disciples shall go into a World of their own, where they shall suffer in everlasting Darkness the Punishments of their evil Deeds ; and the Angel of Light and his Disciples shall also go into a World of their own ; where they shall receive, in everlasting Light, the Reward due unto their good Deeds ; that after this, they shall remain separated for ever, and Light and Darkness be no more mixed together, to all Eternity. And all this the Remainder of that Sect, which is now in *Persia* and *India*, do, without any Variation after so many Ages, still hold even to this Day.

Another Reformation made by *Zoroaster* in the ancient Magian Religion was, that he caused Temples to be built, wherein their sacred Fires were carefully and constantly preserved ; and especially that which he pretended himself to have brought from Heaven. Over this the Priests kept a perpetual Watch Night and Day, to prevent its being extinguished.

As the Kingdom of *Lydia* constituted Part of the *Assyrian* and *Persian* Empires, and made a very considerable

Figure in that Part of the World, I shall, in the next Place, give a short Abstract of the History of that Kingdom.

The HISTORY of the Kingdom of LYDIA.

Situation.

LYDIA Proper was a Country of no great Extent, situate in the *Lesser Asia*, and bounded by the two *Phrygias* on the North and East; by *Caria* on the South, and *Ionia* on the West; but taking it in its most flourishing State, in the Reign of *Cræsus*, and we shall find it comprehended not only *Phrygia*, but *Mysia*, *Paphlagonia*, *Bythinia*, *Pamphylia*, *Caria*, *Ionia*, *Doris* and *Eolia*; most of the Western Provinces of the *Lesser Asia* from North to South, the capital City whereof was *Sardis*, situate on the Banks of the River *Pactolus*, at the Foot of *Mount Tmolus*, in twenty-eight Degrees of Eastern Longitude, reckoning from the Meridian of *London*, and thirty-seven Degrees, forty-five Minutes, North Latitude. In this Province also stood those celebrated Cities of *Philadelphia*, *Thyatira*, and *Magnesia*. The *Lesser Asia*, like other Countries, was at first divided into a Multitude of little Principalities or States, till some one of them, more powerful than the rest, reduced several of these under their Obedience.

Sardis, the Capital.

Many such States, for their common Defence, chose a General, or Chief, to command their Armies, whose Successes recommended him to the good Opinion of the Allies, so far as to compliment him with the Title of King, or Sovereign of the Confederates; which seems to have been the Case of the Kings of *Lydia* and *Pergamus*, who successively reigned over many of the Western Provinces of the *Lesser Asia*; but what were the exact Limits of their respective Dominions cannot possibly be ascertained at this Day.

The first Kings.

The first Kings that reigned over the *Lydians*, are said to be the *Atyades*, or Descendants of *Atys*, who derived their Origin from *Lydus*, from whom this People obtained the Name of *Lydians*, but were before called *Mæonians*; and from *Atys* some conjecture this Part of the World obtained the Name of *Asia*.

The Heraclidae.

The *Atyades* were succeeded by the *Heraclidae*, or Descendants of *Hercules*. *Argo*, the Great Grandson of *Alcæus*,

cæus, Son of *Hercules*, is said to be the first of the *Heraclidæ* that reigned in *Lydia*; and tho' this Family continued 500 Years upon the Throne, if we may credit their Historians, they do not furnish us with the Names of scarce any of them, till we come down to *Candaules*, the last of them; who being married to a Lady of exquisite Beauty; and being perfectly infatuated by his Passion for her, was perpetually boasting of her Charms to others. Nothing would serve but *Gyges*, one of his chief Officers, should see and judge of them by his own Eyes: The King, to this end, placed *Gyges* secretly, in a convenient Place; but notwithstanding that Precaution, the Queen perceived him when he retired, yet took no Manner of Notice of it, but studied to revenge the Injury she had received, and to punish the Fault her Husband had committed by a still greater Crime: Possibly a secret Passion for *Gyges* had as great a Share in that Action, as the Resentment for the Dishonour done her. Be that as it will, she sent for *Gyges*, and obliged him to expiate his Crime, either by his own Death, or the King's, at his own Option. After some Remonstrances to no Purpose, he resolved upon the latter; and by the Murder of *Candaules* became Master of his Queen and his Throne: By this Means the Kingdom passed from the Family of the *Heraclidæ* into that of the *Mermnades*. Candaules.
Usurpation
of Gyges.

Plato relates the Story of *Gyges* in a different Manner from *Herodotus*: He tells us, that *Gyges* wore a Ring, the Stone of which, when towards him, rendered him invisible; so that he had the Advantage of seeing others, without being seen himself; and that by Means of this Ring, with the Concurrence of the Queen, he deprived *Candaules* of his Life and Throne.

Cicero, after having related this Fable of *Gyges*'s famous Ring, adds, That if a wise Man had such a Ring, he would not use it to any wicked Purpose, because Virtue considers what is honourable and just, and has no Occasion for Darkness.

The Murder of *Candaules*, however, caused an Insurrection in *Lydia*; but the two Parties, instead of coming to Blows, agreed to refer the Matter to the Decision of the *Delphic* Oracle, which declared in favour of *Gyges*. The King made large Presents to the Temple of *Delphos*, which undoubtedly preceded, and had no little Influence upon the Oracle's Answer. Among other Things of Value, *Herodotus* mentions six Cups, weighing thirty Talents,

Talents, amounting to near a Million of *French Money*, which is about 48,000 Pounds *Sterling*.

As soon as he was in peaceable Possession of the Throne, he made War against *Miletus*, *Smyrna*, and *Colophon*, three powerful Cities belonging to the neighbouring States. After having reigned thirty eight Years, he died, and was succeeded by his Son *Ardys*, who reigned 49 Years. It was in the Reign of this Prince, that the *Cimmerians*, driven out of their Country by the *Scythian Nomades*, went into *Asia*, and took the City of *Sardis*, but not the Citadel. He was succeeded by *Sardyates*, who reigned twelve Years. This Prince declared War against the *Milesians*, and laid Siege to their City. In those Days the Sieges, which were generally no more than Blockades, were carried on very slowly, and lasted many Years. This King died before he had finished that of *Miletus*, and was succeeded by his Son

Ardys,
his Accession.

Sardyates

Halyates. *Halyates*, who reigned 57 Years: This was the Prince who made War against *Cyaxares* King of *Media*. He likewise drove the *Cimmerians* out of *Asia*; he attacked and took the Cities of *Smyrna* and *Clazomenæ*; he vigorously prosecuted the War against the *Milesians*, begun by his Father; and continued the Siege of their City, which had lasted six Years under his Father, and as many under him: It ended at length in the following Manner: *Halyates*, upon an Answer he received from the *Delphic Oracle*, had sent an Ambassador into the City, to propose a Truce for some Months. *Thraſybulus*, Tyrant of *Miletus*, having Notice of his coming, ordered all the Corn and other Provisions, assembled by him and his Subjects, for their Support, to be brought into the public Market; and commanded the Citizens, at the Sight of a Signal that should be given, to be all in a general Humour of Feasting and Jollity. The Thing was executed according to his Orders. The *Lydian* Ambassador, at his Arrival, was in the utmost Surprise, to see such a Plenty in the Market, and such Chearfulness in the City. His Master, to whom he gave an Account of what he had seen, concluding, that his Project of reducing the Place by Famine would never succeed, preferred Peace to so fruitless a War, and immediately raised the Siege.

Craſus.

Craſus, whose very Name is become a Proverb, carries in it an Idea of immense Riches. The Wealth of this Prince, to judge of it only by the Presents he made to the Temple of *Delphos*, must have been excessive great,

great, most of those Presents were still to be seen in the Time of *Herodotus*, and were worth several Millions. We may partly account for the Treasures of this Prince, from certain Mines that he had, situate, according to *Strabo*, between *Pergamus* and *Atarnes*; as also, from the little River *Pactolus*, the Sand of which was mixed with Gold: But in *Strabo's* Time this River had not the same Advantage.

This uncommon Affluence, which is a thing extraordinary, did not enervate or soften the Courage of *Cræsus*. He thought it unworthy of a Prince to spend his Time in Idleness and Pleasure; for his Part, he was perpetually in Arms, made several Conquests, and enlarged his Dominions by the Addition of all the contiguous Provinces, as *Phrygia*, *Mysia*, *Paphlagonia*, *Bithynia*, *Pamphylia*, and all the Country of the *Carians*, *Ionians*, *Dorians*, *Eolians*. *Herodotus* observes, that he was the first Conqueror of the *Greeks*, who till then had never been subject to a Foreign Power; doubtless he must mean the *Greeks* in *Asia Minor*.

His Conquests.

Cræsus had reigned in *Lydia* fourteen Years, when *Neriglasser*, King of *Babylon*, in order to oppose the *Medes* and *Persians*, who were about to invade his Dominions at this Time, invited the *Lydians* and other Powers of the *Lesser Asia* to enter into a Confederacy with him against them: Whereupon they assembled their Forces, and having joined the *Babylonians*, gave Battle to the *Medes*, but were defeated, and *Neriglasser* being killed in the Battle, the Command of the Army devolved upon *Cræsus*, who made good his Retreat into *Lydia*.

His Alliance with the King of Babylon.

The Allies defeated.

The *Medes* and *Persians* growing still upon the *Babylonians*, and *Cyrus* making a great Progress in his Conquests, by taking Fortresses, Towns and Provinces from them, to put a Stop to this prevailing Power, the King of *Babylon*, about the fifth Year of his Reign, taking a great Part of his Treasure with him, went into *Lydia* to King *Cræsus* his Confederate, and there, by his Assistance, framed a very formidable Confederacy against the *Medes* and *Persians*, and with his Money hiring a very numerous Army of *Egyptians*, *Greeks*, *Thracians*, and all the Nations of *Lesser Asia*, he appointed *Cræsus* to be their General, and sent him with them to invade *Media*, and then returned again to *Babylon*.

A second Alliance.

Cyrus having full Intelligence of all these Proceedings, from one of his Confidants, who by his Order, under the Pretence of a Deserter, had gone over to the Enemy,

Q

made

*Cræsus
defeated.*

made suitable Preparations to withstand the Storm, and when all was ready, marched against the Enemy. By this Time *Cræsus* had passed over the River *Halys*, taken the City of *Pteria*, and in a Manner destroyed all the Country thereabouts. But before he could pass any further, *Cyrus* came up with him, and having engaged him in Battle, put all his numerous Army to Flight; whereupon *Cræsus* returning to *Sardis*, the chief City of his Kingdom, dismissed all his Auxiliaries to their respective Homes, ordering them to be with him again, by the Beginning of the ensuing Spring, and sent to all his Allies for the raising of more Forces, to be ready against the same Time, for the carrying on of the next Year's War, not thinking, that in the Interim, now Winter being approaching, he should have any Need of them; but *Cyrus* pursuing the Advantage of his Victory, followed close after him into *Lydia*, and came upon him just as he had dismissed his Auxiliaries: However, *Cræsus* getting together all his own Forces, engaged *Cyrus* again; but the *Lydians* being most Horse, *Cyrus* brought his Camels against them, whose Smell the Horses not being able to bear, they were all put in Disorder by it; whereupon the *Lydians* dismounting, fought on Foot, but but being soon overpowered, were forced to make their Retreat to *Sardis*, where *Cyrus* immediately shut them up in a close Siege.

*Panthea's
Funeral.*

While *Cyrus* lay there, he celebrated the Funeral of *Abradates* and *Panthea* his Wife. He was Prince of *Shushan*, under the *Babylonians*, and had revolted to *Cyrus* about two Years before. His Wife, a very beautiful Woman, had been taken Prisoner by *Cyrus*, in his first Battle against the *Babylonians*. *Cyrus* having treated her very kindly, and kept her chaste for her Husband, the Sense of this Generosity drew over this Prince to him, and he happening to be slain in this War, as he was fighting valiantly in his Service, his Wife, out of Grief for his Death, slew herself upon his dead Body; and *Cyrus* took care to have them both honourably buried together, and a stately Monument was erected over them, near the River *Pactolus*, where it remained many Ages after.

*Cræsus
made Pri-
soner by
Cyrus.*

Cræsus being shut up in *Sardis*, sent to all his Allies for Succours; but *Cyrus* pressed the Siege so vigorously, that he took the City, before any of them could arrive to its Relief, and *Cræsus* in it, whom he condemned to be burnt to Death; and accordingly a great
Pile

Pile of Wood was laid together, and he was placed on the Top of it for the Execution; in which Extremity calling to Mind the Conference he formerly had with *Solon*, cried out, with a great Sigh, three times, *Solon! Solon! Solon!* This *Solon* was a wise *Athenian*, and the greatest Philosopher of his Time, who coming to *Sardis* on some Occasion, *Cræsus*, out of the Vanity and Pride of his Mind, caused all his Riches, Treasures and Stores, to be shewn unto him, expecting that on his having seen them, he should have applauded his Felicity, and pronounced him, of all Men, the most happy herein. But on his Discourse with him, *Solon* plainly told him, that he could pronounce no Man happy, as long as he lived, because no one could foresee what might happen unto him before his Death. Of the Truth of which *Cræsus* being now thoroughly convinced by his present Calamity, this made him call upon the Name of *Solon*. Whereupon *Cyrus* sending to know what he meant by it, had the whole Story related to him; which excited in him such a Sense of the Uncertainty of all human Felicity, and such a Compassion for *Cræsus*, that he caused him to be taken down from the Pile, just as the Fire had been put to it, and not only spared his Life, but allowed him a very honourable Subsistence, and made use of him as one of his chief Counsellors all his Life after, and at his Death recommended him to his Son *Cambyzes*, as the Person whose Advice he would have him chiefly to follow. The taking of this City happened in the first Year of the 58th Olympiad, which was the 8th Year of *Belshazzar*, and the 41st after the Destruction of *Jerusalem*.

Cræsus being a very religious Prince, according to the *He consults* idolatrous Superstition of those Times, entered not on *the Oracle* this War without having first consulted all his Gods, and taken their Advice about it; and he had two Oracular Answers given him from them, which chiefly conduced to lead him into this unfortunate Undertaking, that cost him the Loss of his Kingdom. The one of them was, That *Cræsus* should then only think himself in Danger, when a Mule should reign over the *Medes*; and the other, That when he should pass over *Halys* to make War upon the *Medes*, he should overthrow a great Empire. The first, from the Impossibility of the Thing, that ever a Mule should be a King, made him argue that he was for ever safe. The second made him believe, that the Empire that he should overthrow, on his passing

over the River *Halys*, should be the Empire of the *Medes*. And this chiefly encouraged him in this Expedition, contrary to the Advice of one of the wisest of his Friends, who earnestly dissuaded him from it. But now all Things having happened otherwise than these Oracles had made him expect, he obtained Leave of *Cyrus* to send Messengers to the Temples of those Gods, who had thus misled him, to expostulate with them about it. The Answers which he had hereto were, That *Cyrus* was the Mule intended by the Oracle, for that he was born of two different Kinds of People, of the *Persians* by his Father, and of the *Medes* by his Mother, and was of the more noble Kind by his Mother: And the Empire, which he was to overthrow by his passing over the *Halys*, was his own.

Having finished the History of *Persia* and of *Lydia*, once a Part of the *Persian* Empire, I return to the History of *Turky*.

The HISTORY of the OTTOMAN EMPIRE continued.

Bajazet II. *B*AJAZET II. succeeded his Father *Mahomet* anno A. D. 1481. The late Emperor *Mahomet* had verbally appointed *Bajazet* Viceroy of *Anasia*, and his youngest Son *Jem* Viceroy of *Iconium*, and they were at their respective Governments at the Time of their Father's Death: *Bajazet* was preparing for a Pilgrimage to *Mecca* when he received Advice of it, but was importuned by the Grand Vizier to come to *Constantinople*, and take Possession of the Throne his Father left him by his Will; he still persisted, however, on performing his Pilgrimage, and commanded his Ministry to obey his Son *Coroud* until his Return from *Mecca*, which he did nine Months afterwards, and then would have resigned his Throne absolutely to his Son, and lived a private life at *Nice*; but the Great Men inclined to abdicate his Throne. insisting on the Father's taking into his Hands the Reins of Government, he submitted at length to be an Emperor, and his Son most dutifully resigned the Administration to him, and went to his Government of *Magnesia*.

Jem, *Bajazet's* younger Brother, gave him some Disturbance, pretending that he was in Reality Heir to the Empire, being born after his Father ascended the Throne; whereas *Bajazet* was born while their Father was a private

yate Man, and that the verbal Will above-mentioned, was only a Contrivance of the Vizier's: With such Suggestions as these, he drew over most of the *Asiatic* Provinces, as well as the Forces on that Side, to his Interest, and was proclaimed Emperor at *Prusa*; which alarming *Bajazet*, he transported his Army into *Asia*, and giving him Battle, defeated him near the City of *Prusa*: After which, *Jem* fled to the Sultan of *Egypt* for Protection; who advised him to wave his Pretensions to the Throne of *Turkey* for the present, and wait a proper Opportunity to attack his Brother when he (the Sultan) would not fail to assist him: But *Jem* was so much in haste to be an Emperor, that he soon left the *Egyptian* Court, and associating himself with the Prince of *Paphlagonia*, and some other disaffected Lords in *Asia*, he assembled an Army, and a second Time gave Battle to his Brother *Bajazet*, and was a second Time defeated: After which he had Recourse to the Christian Princes, imploring their Assistance against his Brother; he first sent to the Island of *Rhodes*, then to *Naples* and *Rome*, hoping to engage the Pope in his Quarrel by the Promises he made him, of being favourable to the Catholics, when he should obtain the Empire.

While *Jem* remained in *Italy*, *Mustapha*, a Runnegade Italian, who had turned Mahometan, and was chief Barber to *Bajazet*, observing how uneasy the Emperor was, under an Apprehension that *Jem* would one Day attempt to dethrone him, offered his Master to take off this Prince, and ease him of his Fears on that Account. To which *Bajazet* replied, he would make him Prime Vizier if he succeeded: Whereupon *Mustapha* returned to *Italy*, pretending he had with Difficulty made his Escape from the *Turks*, renounced the Mahometan Superstition, and desired to be reconciled to the Church again, and afterwards settled in the very Town where *Jem* resided, who, hearing there was a Barber arrived from *Turkey*, sent for him, and directed *Mustapha* to attend him, telling him, that the Barbers of *Italy* were mere Bunglers in Comparison of those of *Turkey*; and *Mustapha* thereupon attended him a considerable Time, till at length *Jem* falling asleep as he was shaving, *Mustapha* laid hold of the Opportunity, and cut his Master's Throat, and leaving him dead upon the Floor, went out, telling his Servants their Master was asleep, and they must not go in to disturb him. In the mean time he went on board a Vessel he had hired to attend his Motions, and made his Escape to

Constantinople, where the News of *Jem's* Death being confirmed, *Bajazet* was as good as his Word, and preferred his Barber to the Post of Prime Vizier: And sending for his Brother's Body from *Naples*, caused it to be buried at *Prusa*, among his Ancestors of the *Ottoman* Race. Others relate, that this Prince was poisoned by the Pope, who received great Sums from *Bajazet* to dispatch him.

Walachia
reduced.

A. D.

1493.

Bajazet having now no Rival in the Government invaded *Walachia* and *Moldavia*, which had revolted, and garisoned the chief Towns with his own Troops: He also built two strong Castles near the Isthmus of *Corinth*, to defend his Territories on that Side, against the IncurSIONS of the *Venetians*: His next Enterprize was designed against the Sultan of *Egypt*, who had harboured his Brother *Jem* or *Zemes*, and supported him in his Exile; and because the Strength of the *Egyptian* Armies consisted in the *Mamelukes*, who were annually recruited by Draughts from *Circassia*, of which Country the *Mamelukes* were Natives, *Bajazet* entered into a Confederacy with some Princes adjoining to *Circassia*, and taking the Passes leading to that Country, cut off all Communication between that Country and *Egypt*: He also subdued *Tarsus* and several other Places in the *Lesser Asia*, which had adhered to the Sultan of *Egypt*, and afterwards fought a Battle with the *Egyptian* Sultan, in which he got little but Blows.

War with
the Vene-
tians.

1491.

In *Europe* he took several Towns from the *Venetians* in the *Morea*, and reduced *Bosnia* and *Croatia*, which had revolted.

The *Mahometans* or *Moors* of *Spain* being very near subdued by the *Spaniards* at this Time, *Bajazet* sent a Fleet to their Assistance, which could not, however, prevent their being subdued, and expelled that Country within a few Years afterwards.

The Jani-
zaries mu-
tiny.

In the mean time *Bajazet* having received some Intimation that *Achmetis*, the most popular General in his Army, was concerned in a Conspiracy against him, had ordered him to be put to death, but the Janizaries mutinied upon the Occasion, and saved the General for some time, tho' *Bajazet* caused him to be murdered privately afterwards; and tho' the Emperor did not immediately punish the Janizaries, apprehending a general Insurrection, he took an Opportunity, some time after, to send several of the Officers of the Janizaries, who had promoted the Mutiny, to distant Countries, under Pretence of

of preferring them, giving Orders to the Governors of the Places they were sent to, to put them to death; which being discovered by the Janizaries at *Constantinople*, occasioned another Mutiny, that was appeased with great Difficulty: Whereupon *Bajazet* was determined to extirpate the whole Body of the Janizaries, and sent for Soldiers from all Parts of his Dominions to effect it. Of which the Janizaries receiving some Intimation, were about to depose the Emperor directly; and tho' they seemed to be pacified on his coming amongst them and making their Leaders considerable Presents, he found, too late, that they remembered his Usage of them a great while after, and were the principal Occasion of his being deposed at last.

Bajazet, indeed, was weary of the Cares the Administration of the Government brought upon him, and declared his Intention of abdicating the Throne in Favour of his Son *Achmet*, with which his Son *Selim* being acquainted, came from his Government of *Trabezond* to *Adrianople*, in order to prevent it, giving out, that he was coming only to pay a Visit to his Father, as the *Mahometan* Religion requires every Son to do, after a considerable Absence: But advancing at the Head of twenty thousand Men from *Adrianople* towards *Constantinople*, *Bajazet* was convinced he had an Eye upon his Throne; he assembled an Army therefore, and marching out of *Constantinople*, gave his Son Battle, and defeated him, but would not suffer his Generals to pursue this ambitious Prince; whereupon he escaped over the *Hellepont* again, and the Emperor sent for his Son *Achmet*, in order to resign the Throne to him; but *Achmet* finding the Janizaries and great Men averse to his Advancement, persuaded his Father to defer the Matter to a more favourable Juncture. In the mean time the Janizaries, and the rest of *Selim's* Friends, sent an Express to acquaint him, that they were all determined to declare him Emperor; whereupon he ventured to return to *Constantinople* again, being met by the Janizaries in Crouds as he entered the City, and *Bajazet* was in a manner compelled by them to resign his Empire to his Son *Selim*, in the Year 1512. *Bajazet* desired he might retire to a Town a little Distance from *Constantinople*, but *Selim* suspecting his Father had a Design to resume the Government again, or at least to transfer it to another of his Sons, contrived to have his Father murdered upon the Road, and then ordering his Corps to be brought back to *Constantinople*, went in great

Bajazet
deposed and
murdered.

Solemnity to meet the Proceſſion, ſhedding ſome hypocritical Tears over his Remains.

Bajazet died in the Year 1512, in the 63d Year of his Age and the 33d of his Reign, having had five Sons, viz. *Achmet*, *Selim*, *Shubinſhab*, *Alemſhab*, and *Coroud*.

He is ſaid to have been naturally a pious peaceable Prince, but frequently forced into Wars by the mutinous Janizaries, in which he was generally ſucceſsful, and much enlarged his Empire. He laid out a great deal of Money in public Buildings, and among the reſt built a marble Bridge of nineteen Arches, over the River *Kyzilirmak*.

Selimus. *Selim* or *Selimus* having corrupted the chief Baſſas and Janizaries, by whoſe Aſſiſtance he depoſed and murdered *Bajazet* his Father, was no ſooner poſſeſſed of the Empire and the Treasures the *Turkiſh* Monarchs had for many Generations been heaping up, but he diſtributed two Millions of Ducats among the Janizaries and the reſt of his Friends, who had contributed to advance him to the Throne, as the moſt infallible Means to ſecure their Fidelity.

He then paſſed the *Helleſpont* into *Aſia*, in hopes of ſurprizing his eldeſt Brother *Achmet* or *Achmetes*, but that Prince being ſenſible that his Forces were not equal to *Selim*'s, fled into the Mountains of *Armenia*, and poſſeſſing himſelf of the Paſſes, *Selim* ſpent the whole Summer in endeavouring to ſurprize him, but was not able to effect it; whereupon he retired to *Pruſa*, where he took up his Winter Quarters. While *Selim* remained there, he commanded five of his Brother's Sons to attend him, being all Princes of great Expectations, between ſixteen and twenty Years of Age: *Selim* having them all in his Power, propounded the following Queſtion to the Doctors of the Law, viz. Whether it were not better that five, eight, or ten Perſons, ſhould be taken off, rather than that the whole Empire ſhould be rent aſunder, and by civil Wars, and a vaſt Effuſion of Blood, be brought to utter Ruin? And tho' the Doctors were very ſenſible to what End the Queſtion tended, yet afraid of the cruel Emperor's Diſpleaſure, they answered unaniſmouſly, That it were better ſuch a ſmall Number ſhould periſh, than that the whole Empire ſhould by Civil Wars be brought to Confuſion. Whereupon he ordered the five young Princes to be led into the Caſtle of *Pruſa*, and then ſtrangled; which Sentence was immediately executed: Theſe were the Sons of his younger Brothers. His next Care was

Selim
murders
five of his
Brother's
Sons.

was to find out the Sons of his eldest Brother *Achmet*, viz. *Amurah* and *Aladin*, after whom he sent *Ufegi*, Bassa, with a Detachment of several thousand light Horse to surprize them in the City of *Amasia*, where they resided; but *Mustapha*, Bassa, who had advanced *Selim* to the Throne, now detesting his Cruelty, sent the young Princes Word of the Danger they were in: Whereupon an Ambuscade was laid for the Party, *Ufegi*, Bassa commanded, by their Father *Achmet*; and the Bassa and most of his Men were made Prisoners: *Selim* afterwards discovering that *Mustapha* had defeated his Design of seizing the young Princes, ordered him to be strangled without any Regard to his Merit; to retaliate which, *Achmet* caused his Prisoner *Ufegi*, Bassa, to be put to Death.

Selim next pursued his Brother *Corcutus*, who lived innocently at *Magnesia*, diverting himself with his Books, and far from any ambitious Views; but nothing could secure him against the Rage of this unnatural Brother, for though he had some Notice of the Design against his Life, and fled from his House, to the most obscure Retreats, *Selim* employed such Numbers to search for him, and offered such Rewards, that he was at length discovered and strangled by the Tyrant's Orders, as they were bringing him to *Prusa*.

The next Spring *Selim* took the Field again in Order to engage his Brother *Achmet*, who was now determined to give him Battle, the King of *Persia* promising to send a Body of Forces to his Assistance, and several considerable Officers of *Selim's*, with their Troops, promising to desert over to him, but *Selim* understanding by intercepted Letters, the Design of some of his Officers to desert him, caused them to be apprehended and executed, which *Achmet* knowing nothing of, ventured to engage his Brother before the *Persians* had joined him, and was defeated and taken Prisoner; whereupon *Selim* ordered him to be put to Death; but *Achmet's* Son *Amurah* fled to *Ismael* King of *Persia*, and *Aladin*, to *Campson Gaurus*, Sultan of *Egypt*, and escaped their Uncle's Fury. *Ismael*, King of *Persia*, promised *Amurah* all the Assistance he could give him, and married one of his Daughters to him, and the next Spring gave him the Command of 10,000 Horse, with which he made an Incurſion into *Armenia*, being supported by *Ismael*, who followed him with a much larger Army: *Selim* hereupon taking the Field, *Amurah* retired, having first laid waste all the Country through which *Selim* was to march. *Selim* however

Achmet
defeated,
A. D.
1513.

1514.

ad-

Ismael
defeated.

advanced to the Frontiers of *Perſia* with 300,000 Men, where *Ismael* met him, and gave him Battle with only 30,000 Horſe, and was victorious, till *Ismael* happened to be wounded by a Shot, and carried out of the Battle; after which the *Perſians* retired. The *Turks* thereupon advanced as far as the great City of *Tauris*, which ſurrendered to them on condition of their Lives, Liberties and Effects being ſecured unto them: *Selim* would have taken up his Winter Quarters in *Perſia*, but the *Janizaries* reſuſed to continue there, for the whole Country being deſtroyed before them, after the *Perſian* Manner of making War, it was impoſſible for them to ſubſiſt ſo numerous an Army in the Winter.

Selim therefore was under a neceſſity of retreating; whereupon *Ismael* aſſembled his Forces again, attacking and harraſſing the *Turks* in their March, eſpecially on their paſſing the River *Euphrates*, and afterwards the Prince of *Aladulia*, having poſſeſſed the Paſſes in his Country (Mount *Taurus*) gave the *Turks* great Diſturbance, and cut off many of them in their Retreat.

Aladulia
reduced by
Selim,
A. D.
1515.

The next Year *Selim*, determining to be revenged on the Prince of *Aladulia*, for diſturbſing his Retreat from *Perſia*, invaded his Country, and, though he retired into the Mountains, made him Priſoner, and having put him to Death, reduced the Country of *Aladulia* into the Form of a Province. The next Year (1516) *Selim* marched towards the Frontiers of *Perſia*, in order to invade that Kingdom again, and in the mean time ſent an Embaſſy to *Campſon Gaurus*, Sultan of *Egypt* and *Syria*, offering to enter into an Alliance with him; but the *Egyptian* let him know, he would have no Friendſhip with him, if he attacked his Ally, the King of *Perſia*. Whereupon *Selim* altered his Deſign, and bent his March towards *Syria*, not thinking it ſafe to enter into a War with *Perſia*, and leave ſo formidable an Enemy as *Campſon Gaurus* behind him. *Selim* approaching near the Frontiers of *Syria*, received an Invitation from *Cayerbius*, one of the *Egyptian* Generals, to advance with all Expedition, and attack the *Egyptians* before their whole Force was aſſembled, promiſing to deſert over to him during the Engagement; for this *Cayerbius* had long meditated the Deſtruction of *Campſon Gaurus*, for taking off his Brother, who was engaged in a Conſpiracy againſt him; and he was informed alſo, that the Sultan intended to diſpatch him; at leaſt theſe were the Apologies he made for his Treachery,

Egyptian
War,
1516.

The Armies meeting in the Plains near *Aleppo*, a Battle was fought with great Bravery on both Sides, but *Cayerbius* deserting over to *Selim* as he had promised, the *Turks* gained a compleat Victory over the *Egyptians*, the Sultan *Campson* being killed in the Field of Battle, and the next Day *Cayerbius* delivered up the City of *Aleppo*, of which he was Governor, to *Selim*: From *Aleppo* the *Turks* advanced to *Damascus*, which opened her Gates to them, as did also *Tripoly*, *Beritus*, *Sydon*, and *Ptolemais*; none of which would *Selim* suffer his Soldiers to plunder, but on the contrary enlarged their Privileges, and eased them of many of their Taxes, not thinking it politic to provoke them, as he designed the Invasion of *Egypt*. From *Damascus* *Selim* detached a Part of his Army under *Sinan*, Bassa, to march towards the Frontiers of *Egypt*, and discover the Condition of the Enemy: Of which the *Egyptians* receiving Intelligence, sent an Army to surprise them, and both Armies meeting in *Arabia Petrea*, a smart Engagement happened, in which the *Egyptians* (or rather the *Mamalukes*, who were the Strength of their Armies, as the *Janizaries* are of those of the *Turks*) were defeated a second time, *Tomombeius*, one of the Body of the *Mamalukes*, having been a little before elected Sultan of *Egypt*.

These *Mamalukes*, as has been observed already, were Slaves purchased in *Circassia*, and constituted the Sultan's Guards, being all chosen Men, and bred up to Arms from their Infancy: And finding themselves the most considerable military Power in *Egypt*, deposed their Sovereign, and chose one of their own Number Sultan; but upon every Vacancy of the Throne, they proceeded to a new Election out of their own Body, never suffering the Son of any Sultan to succeed his Father in the Throne, tho' he might inherit his private Estate. These *Mamalukes* had enjoy'd the Sovereignty of *Egypt* about three hundred Years, and grievously oppressed the native *Egyptians*, using them little better than Slaves; so that they looked upon *Selim* as their Deliverer, and rather promoted than opposed the Invasion of the *Turks*. *Tomombeius*, then Sultan, therefore, sensible that the Natives were not hearty in his Cause, but would probably deliver up their Towns upon the Approach of the *Turks*, chose to throw the greatest Part of his Army into the City of *Cairo*, to prevent their Revolt; and here he waited the Approach of *Selim*, having barracadoed the Streets, dug Trenches, and done every thing he thought proper for the Defence of

of the City, (for there was no Wall or Fortifications about it) but he depended chiefly on the Strength of the numerous Garison. Two Things, however, gave the *Turks* a great Advantage, first, their Train of Artillery, of which I don't find the *Mamalukes* had any; and then, the Disaffection of the *Egyptians*, who acquainted *Selim* with all the Motions and Designs of his Enemies, the *Mamalukes*.

Grand
Cairo taken by Selimus.

A.D.
1517.

Egypt annexed to the Turkish Empire.

1518.

There was, however, a long and terrible Battle fought between the *Turks* and the *Mamalukes* in the Streets of *Cairo*, before the City was taken, and *Tomombeius* finding himself unable to defend it any longer, abandoned the Place, and retired with the Remains of his Army into *Lybia*, where being joined by some *Africans* and *Arabians*, he prepared to engage *Selim* again, and surprising him when his Army was passing the River *Nile* upon a Bridge, attacked that Part of the Army that was come over, and was very near cutting them off, before their Friends could come to their Assistance; but *Selim* knowing that every thing depended on the uniting his Forces, came down to the River in Person, commanded the Horse to take the River at once, and relieve the Van. Which Orders were so speedily executed, that the Enemy was repulsed, and the Sultan *Tomombeius* taken in the Pursuit, and being first tortured, to make him discover his Treasures, (tho' they got nothing out of him but Groans) *Selim* ordered him to be strangled; after which he reduced *Egypt* into the Form of a Province, constituting *Cayerbeius* who betrayed the last Sultan, Bassa of *Cairo* and Viceroy of the Kingdom. Many of the Princes of *Cyrene* and the Coast of *Barbary* also submitted to him, as well as the Princes of *Arabia*. Before he left *Egypt* he murdered all the *Mamalukes* he had made Prisoners, and many more of the native *Egyptians*, to whom he had given their Lives upon their surrendering to him. These Cruelties made the *Egyptians* detest *Selim*, whom they had a little before looked upon as their Deliverer: They began to wish for their old Masters the *Mamalukes* again; but he took care to leave such a powerful Army in his new Conquests, that all Resistance was to no Purpose.

How it came to pass that the *Persians*, the Allies of *Egypt*, made no Diversion in Favour of that Kingdom, during this War, seems very strange, especially when the Occasion of this War was a Declaration of the *Egyptian* Sultan, that he would attack the *Turkish* Territories, if *Selim* invaded *Persia*. Some pretend to account for this In-

Inactivity of the *Persians*, by observing, that the Nobility and Gentry of *Persia*, who used to take the Field at their own Charges, are only obliged to serve in *defensive Wars*, and but for a certain Time, and that therefore it did not lie in the Power of *Ismael* to invade, or make a Conquest of any Part of *Turky*, how much soever he might be inclined to it. Others say, *Persia* was at this Time invaded by some *Tartar* Princes, and the *Persians* had no Forces to spare: But however that was, the next War *Selim* prepared for was against the Christian Princes of *Europe*; for which End he returned to *Constantinople*, and gave Orders to his Bassas to assemble a powerful Army; but in the midst of these Preparations, he was eaten up by a Cancer, and died in *September* 1520, in the 54th Year of his Age, and the 10th Year of his Reign.

Selim died.
A. D.
1520.

This Prince is allowed to be an able Politician and a great Soldier, but unmercifully cruel. He frequently walked in Disguise through the Streets of the City, and through his Camp, and had Spies in every Part of his Dominions. It is related, that he ordered six hundred innocent Persons, Men of figure, to be impaled, upon a false Suggestion of their being in a Conspiracy against him, without examining into the Truth of the Accusation. His Son *Solyman* was at his Government of *Trabezond* at the Time of his Death, which was concealed by *Feribates*, Bassa, the only Bassa then at Court, until he sent to *Solyman* to acquaint him with it, lest the *Janizaries* should, as they usually do, between the Death of one Sultan and the Installation of another, plunder the foreign Merchants. But this Intelligence coming only from one Bassa, *Solyman* suspected it was a Stratagem of his Father's to get him into his Hands: For *Selim* observing this Son to be of an ambitious aspiring Nature, had attempted to poison him once before; but *Solyman* receiving Advice of his Father's Death soon after, from the rest of the Bassas, repaired to *Constantinople*, and was proclaimed Emperor, without any Disturbance.

Solyman no sooner ascended the Throne, but *Gazellus*, *Solyman's* Governor of *Syria*, a Native of *Circassia*, formed a Design of erecting *Syria* into an independent Kingdom; and to strengthen himself in this Revolt from the *Turkish* Empire, invited *Cayerbeius*, Viceroy of *Egypt*, to throw off his Allegiance also to the *Turkish* Empire, and assume the Title of Sultan of *Egypt*; but *Cayerbeius*, either out of his Aversion to *Gazellus*, who had shewn himself his most inveterate Enemy in the Reign of *Selimus*, or doubt-

Accession.
1520.
Syrian Rebellion suppressed.

ing

ing the Success of such an Enterprize, sent an Express to *Solyman*, to acquaint him with the intended Revolt of *Cayerbeius*; whereupon *Solyman* sent a powerful Army into *Syria*, which defeated *Gazellus*, and killed him in the Battle, after a very brave Defence.

Belgrade
taken.

A. D.
1521.

Solyman, the same Year, assembled an Army, and in Person laid Siege to *Belgrade*, one of the strongest Towns in *Europe*, being situate in *Servia*, on the South Shore of the *Danube*; where the River *Save* discharges itself into it. This City was then under the Dominion of *Hungary*; but *Lewis*, King of *Hungary*, being an Infant, and his Ministers negligent in the Defence of this their most important Frontier, the Garison surrendered on the 29th of *August*, 1521.

Rhodes
besieged.
1522.

The next considerable Enterprize *Solyman* entered upon was the Siege of *Rhodes*, situate upon the Island of the same Name, near the *Ionian Coast*, in the *Mediterranean Sea*, then possessed by the Knights of *St. John of Jerusalem*, *Philippus Valerius*, a Native of *France*, being their Grand Master or Governor. The Knights of the several Christian Nations had each of them their Convent in this City, governed by a Grand Prior, particularly the *Germans*, *English*, *French*, and *Spaniards*. The Garison consisted of 5000 Men, among whom were 600 Knights of the Order: These were joined also by 500 Soldiers from *Crete* or *Candy*; and there were a great Number of Mariners, Citizens, and Inhabitants of the Island, which contributed to the Defence of the Place.

The *Rhodeans* having demolished the Suburbs of the City, and laid open the Country for a Mile or two round about it, that the Enemy might find no Shelter there, *Solyman* assembled an Army of 200,000 Men, which his Fleet transported into the Island, and invested the Place in the Beginning of *June*, 1522, his Fleet remaining at the Mouth of the Harbour, to prevent any Relief coming to the Besieged.

The *Turks* battered the Walls with a numerous Artillery, and undermined them in several Places, blowing up Part of them; but the Countermine of the Besieged defeated their Attempts of this Nature in most Places; and where the Walls were demolished, built up other Walls within the Breaches; and though the *Turks* made a great Number of furious Assaults, they were constantly repulsed: In one of their Attacks it was computed they lost 20,000 Men, and upwards. The Besieged thus bravely defend-

defending themselves near six Months, *Solyman* was so enraged, that he ordered *Mustapha*, one of his bravest Generals, who had advised the Siege, to be put to death; at which the rest of the Bassas and Officers were astonished, knowing the Merit of the Man: And *Pyrrhus*, the eldest of the Bassas, ventured to throw himself at *Solyman's* Feet, and beg the Life of *Mustapha*; which he was so far from granting, that he ordered both of them to be immediately executed: Whereupon all the Bassas and great Men fell upon their Faces, and implored his Mercy; and the Emperor's Passion being something cooled, or rather the Sultan, apprehensive of the Consequences of disobliging all his Officers, thought fit to pardon the two Bassas, and restore them to their Posts; but one of them, it appears, never forgot the Disgrace.

In the mean time *Solyman*, almost despairing of reducing the City by Force, thought fit to offer the Garison honourable Terms: He offered to give them their Lives and Effects, with Liberty either to remain in the Island, or remove wherever they saw fit: Whereupon there were great Debates among the Knights and the Natives, whether they should accept the Terms, or continue to defend themselves. The Grand Master talked big, and was for defending it to the last Man; while others represented, that great Part of the Garison was killed, their Walls demolished, and the Town beat about their Ears; nor was there now any Expectation of Relief from the Christian Powers: Whereupon it was carried by a great Majority to accept the Terms offered; and the City was accordingly surrendered to the *Turks* on *Christmas* Day, *Rhodes* 1522, after it had been in Possession of the Knights *surrenders.* 214 Years, it having been taken from the Infidels by the Knights, in the Year 1308.

Whilst *Solyman* was engaged in the Siege of *Rhodes*, he sent the Bassá, *Feribates*, to subdue *Alis Beg*, Prince of *Aladulia*, which lies on the Frontiers of *Armenia* and *Cappadocia* (a mountainous, inaccessible Country). *Feribates* apprehending it difficult to reduce this Prince by Force, pretended that he was sick, like to die, and wanted to communicate something to him, that would be to his Advantage: The Prince, not apprehending any Danger, repaired to the Quarters of *Feribates*, with his four Sons; who were no sooner in his Power, but he ordered them all to be put to death: Nor was *Alis Beg* much lamented on this Occasion, for he had in the last Reign betrayed his Uncle, *Aladules*, his Sovereign, with all his Children,

into

into the Hands of the *Turks*, and had thereupon the Government of *Aladulia* conferred on him by the late Sultan, *Selim*: But as it seems to be a Maxim among the *Turks* never to suffer any Prince to live, who may lay claim to the Country they conquer, though they may reward a treacherous Relation with the Government of a Country they acquire by his Treason, they seldom suffer him to reign long. The *Turks*, therefore, having now destroyed all the Family of the Prince of *Aladulia*, reduced his Territories into the Form of a Province.

Aladulia
reduced in-
to the Form
of a Pro-
vince.

During the Siege of *Rhodes*, *Cayerbius*, Governor of *Egypt*, happened to die, and leave an immense Treasure behind him; whereupon the *Egyptian* Nation unanimously resolved to have recourse to Arms, and free themselves from Slavery: But *Solyman* hearing of these Transactions, sent his Vizier, *Mustapha*, Bassa, with five Ships, into *Egypt*, to stifle this Flame before it broke out. *Mustapha*, Bassa, arrived in a few Days at *Eskendere*, and surprised the Rebels unprepared, who did not think their Designs so much as known to the Sultan; and entirely routing and dispersing them, restored the *Ottoman* Dominion in *Egypt* to its former Lustre: But as it took him up some Time to collect *Cayerbius's* Riches, and settle the *Egyptian* Affairs, *Solyman*, to whom the whole Administration of the Government seemed too great a Burden, made *Ibrahim Aga*, from a common Janizary of the ninth Company, Prime Vizier.

A Conspi-
racy in
Egypt de-
feated.

The News of this Promotion could not but grieve *Mustapha*, who imagined his late Victory deserved rather an Addition of Honour, than such an Affront. But reflecting that he was Servant to a Prince whose Will was a Law, he craftily concealed in his Breast the Wound he had received; and, as if he was entirely ignorant of what had passed at *Rhodes*, sent the Emperor an Account of his Proceedings, requesting him to give him, as a Reward for all his past Services, the Government of *Egypt*. *Solyman* readily granted his Petition, telling him, he reserved nothing in the whole *Egyptian* Kingdom but the royal Name and Coin, every Thing else he most willingly gave him. *Mustapha* being invested with this Power, and enriched with *Cayerbius's* Treasures, and with the Plunder of those he had conquered or proscribed, aspired to Sovereignty, and resolved to subject all *Egypt* to his Dominion. But whilst he was meditating on these Things, he imparted his Design to *Mehemmed Effendi*, Secretary of the Divan, and created him Vizier, think-
ing

Mustapha,
Bassa, at-
tempts to
make him-
self Sove-
reign of
Egypt.

ng him a faithful Friend ; but *Mehemned*, either out of Conscience, or detesting his Lord's wicked Purpose, resolved to revenge Treachery with Treachery : To this End he contrived to kill *Mustapha* as he was bathing ; but *Mustapha* being informed of the Danger by a faithful Servant, escaped out of the Assassin's Hands thro' a Back-door, and fled with a few Attendants to the Sheikh of the *Arabians* : There, by the great Promises he made them, he assembled a numerous Band of *Arabs*. In the mean while the Secretary had acquainted *Solyman* with what was done, and for a Reward of his Service obtained the Government of *Egypt* ; and having assembled an Army, he encouraged the Soldiers with a large Distribution of Money, and leading them against *Mustapha* his former Lord, defeated him, after a bloody Battle, and cut off his Head. *He is defeated and killed.*

Solyman, after that terrible and destructive Siege of *Rhodes*, in which he did not lose less than a hundred thousand Men by the Sword or Sickness, remained quiet for three Years, not entering upon any considerable Action during that Time ; but having recruited his Army and his Treasury, and observing the Wars among the Christian Princes, he thought it proper to attempt the Enlargement of his Dominions on the Side of *Hungary*. He took the Field therefore in the beginning of the Year 1525, with an Army of two hundred thousand Men, and having passed the *Danube*, advanced to *Mohats*, where *Lewis*, the young King of *Hungary*, venturing to engage the *Ottoman* Army, with a seventh Part of their Number, was entirely defeated, and the King himself falling into a Bog was suffocated. The victorious Army then marched to *Buda* and *Pest*, both which Cities surrendered to them, and afterwards *Segedin* ; and, the Campaign being ended, *Solyman* returned to *Constantinople*. Whereupon *John Sepusius*, Vayvod of *Transylvania*, who came with an Army to the Assistance of the *Hungarians*, procured himself to be elected King of *Hungary*. But *Ferdinand*, King of *Bohemia* and Brother to the Emperor *Charles V.* claiming that Kingdom as his Inheritance, assembled an Army as soon as the *Turks* were retired, and drove *John Sepusius* both out of *Hungary* and *Transylvania*. Whereupon *John* sent an Embassy to *Solyman*, desiring his Assistance to recover the Kingdom of *Hungary*, promising to hold it of *Solyman*, if by his Means he should recover it. *Victory of Mohats. 1525. Lewis, King of Hungary, killed. Buda and Pest taken by Solyman. Ferdinand and John contend for the Crown of Hungary.*

Solyman
assists
John.

1529.

Solyman returned with his Army into *Hungary* again, in the Year 1529, and marched to *Buda*, which King *Ferdinand* had possessed himself of a little before. The City surrendered to *Solyman* again upon the first Summons, but the Castle, having in it a Garison of *Germans*, the Governor refused to capitulate, whereupon his Soldiers bound him Hand and Foot, and surrendered the Castle against his Consent; which *Solyman* being acquainted with, commanded all the Garison to be put to death for their Treachery, but dismissed the Governor.

Viennain-
vested.

From *Buda* *Solyman* advanced and invested the capital City of *Vienna*, but having only Fieldpieces in his Train of Artillery, could make no Breach in the Walls with them, and his heavy Cannon, which were designed for Battery, were taken or destroyed by a Detachment of *Germans*, as the *Turks* were bringing them up the River; whereupon *Solyman* set his Miners to work, and blew up part of the Walls, after which he gave several terrible Assaults, but the Garison, consisting of sixteen or twenty thousand Veteran Troops, besides the Citizens, and a Multitude of noble Volunteers from several Christian Countries, the *Turks* were not able to carry it; and the Rains beginning to fall in *October*, which filled their Trenches with Water, and occasioned a Sickness in the Army, *Solyman* found himself under a Necessity of retiring to *Buda*, which he restored to King *John*, with the rest of that Kingdom. The *Turks* did not lose less than sixty thousand Men before *Vienna*, and being much incumbered with the Baggage they had plundered, and the Multitude of Captives they had taken, it is said they were commanded to kill all their Prisoners.

The Siege
raised.

The Turks
invade
Austria
again.

1532.

Solyman returned into *Hungary* again in the Year 1532, with an Army of more than half a Million of Men, with which he advanced into *Austria*, and plundered that Country as far as the City of *Lintz*, carrying off a Multitude of Captives; but one of his Parties, consisting of seven or eight thousand Men, was surrounded by the *Germans*, and cut in Pieces; and the Emperor *Charles V.* having assembled a great Army, the *Turks* did not besiege any considerable Town, though the Imperial Generals did not think themselves strong enough to engage them in a general Battle. The Campaign being ended, *Solyman* returned to *Constantinople*, and the Emperor marched with most of his Forces into *Italy*.

Charles V.
comes to
their Re-
lief.

During

During the War between the *Christians* and *Turks* in *Hungary* and *Germany*, *Andrew Doria*, the *Genoese* Admiral, joined by the *Spaniards* and other *Christian Powers*, invaded the *Morea*, took the City of *Coron*, and plundered several other Towns upon the Sea Coast, and might have recovered the *Morea*, if the *Venetians* had not stood neuter, under Pretence of being in Alliance with *Solyman*. But the *Turks* assembling a much stronger Fleet than *Doria's*, soon recovered *Coron* again, and to retaliate the Ravages the *Christians* had committed in the *Morea*, *Solyman* sent his Admiral *Barbarussa* to invade the Coast of *Italy* in-
Italy, where he took several Towns, plundered the Coun-
try, and so terrified the Pope, that he was upon the Point
of abandoning *Rome*; but *Barbarussa* having greater
Things in View, quitted the Coast of *Italy*, and stood
over to the Coast of *Barbary*, (*anno 1533.*) He had be-
fore expelled the King of *Algiers*, and obtained the Do-
minion of that Country, and in this Expedition he de-
posed *Muleasses* King of *Tunis*, and reduced that King-
dom under his Obedience; the People taking an Oath of
Allegiance to *Solyman*, and to *Barbarussa* as his Viceroy,
though it was afterwards recovered, and *Muleasses* restored
by the Emperor *Charles V.*

Italy in-
vaded and
plundered
by the
Turks.

A.D.
1533.

Tunis ta-
ken by Bar-
barussa.

Solyman in the mean time invaded *Persia* with a nu-
merous Army, and meeting with no Opposition, made
himself Master of the great City of *Tauris* (*olim Ecbat-
ana*) and advancing still farther, *Thomas* King of
Persia retired before him, destroying the Country as
he went, till the *Turkish* Army became greatly distressed
for want of Provision; and at the same time happened
such a Tempest, and Flights of Snow upon the Moun-
tains, as destroyed some Thousands of *Solyman's* Army:
Whereupon he bent his March to the Southward, and in-
vested the City of *Bagdat* on the *Tigris*, about forty
Miles to the Eastward of the Ruins of *Babylon*: The Go-
vernor of *Bagdat* abandoning the City on *Solyman's* Ap-
proach, he took Possession of it, and made several Ad-
ditions to the Fortifications.

Persia in-
vaded.

1534.
Bagdat
taken by
the Turks.

Several other Cities in *Mesopotamia* surrendered soon
after *Bagdat*; but I don't perceive *Solyman* left Garisons
in any of the rest before he retired out of the Country,
and in his Retreat, being followed by a Body of *Persian*
Horse, he lost a great Part of his Army; which so put
him out of Conceit with his chief Bassa *Abraham*, who
advised this Expedition, that it cost him his Head;

though it is related by some, that he was put to death for embezzelling his Treasure, as the Treasurer himself was a little before, who accused the Bassa at his Death of sharing the public Money with him.

Solyman
sends a
Fleet to
India to
dispossess
the Portu-
guese.

Solyman observing that the *Portuguese* at this Time monopolised most of the Trade of *India*, which used to be carried on by the Ports of *Egypt* on the *Levant*, before the *Portuguese* discovered the Way to *India* by the *Cape of good Hope*; in order to recover that Traffic again, ordered a Fleet of Ships of War to be built at *Suez*, which lies at the Bottom of the *Red Sea*, and to sail from thence to *India*, to demolish the Forts and Factories the *Portuguese* were possessed of there, and to destroy their Merchant Ships. And a Fleet was accordingly built and sent to *India*, which attacked the *Portuguese* Fort of *Diu*, but without Success: The *Portuguese* were much too strong, in that Part of the World, for the *Turks* at that Time. This seems to have been one of the most idle and romantic Projects that ever *Solyman* was engaged in; however, the Admiral he employed in this Expedition, because he would do something to be talked of, at his Return to *Arabia*, inviting the Kings of *Aden* and *Sibit* to come on board his Ship to an Entertainment, caused them both to be hanged; for which it may be difficult to assign a Reason: Christians, indeed, have sometimes been thus treacherously dealt with by the *Turks*; but these were Princes of the same Religion, and the same Sect the *Turks* are of. But as the *Turks* claim the Dominion of *Arabia*, and the Kings of that Country look upon themselves as independent Sovereigns, I am apt to conjecture, that it was their refusing to acknowledge themselves subject to *Solyman*, which occasioned their Execution; for *Solyman*, from the constant Tenor of his Actions, appearing the most just and generous Prince that ever possessed that Throne, would have punished his Admiral, if he had put those *Arabian* Kings to Death, for any other Reason, than their refusing to acknowledge his Jurisdiction over them.

A.D.
1538.
The
French
Kings enter
into an Al-
liance with
the *Turks*.

The Emperor of *Germany* and the *French* King having long contended for the Dominion of the Duchy of *Milan* in *Italy*, and the Emperor generally prevailing against the *French*, his Most Christian Majesty invited the *Turks* to invade *Naples*, to make a Diversion in his Favour; which *Solyman* readily consented to, and sending a Fleet upon the Coast of *Italy*, his Generals took some small Places,

Places, plundered the Country, and carried off great Numbers of Captives; and *Solyman* himself, at the Head of a great Army, was come as far as *Epirus*, opposite to the Coast of *Naples*, in order to make a Descent on that Kingdom, and in all Probability would have made himself Master of it, if he had not been diverted from his Designs by a sudden Quarrel with the *Venetians*, who had sunk some of his Ships at Sea, on their Refusal to strike to the Flag of *Venice* in the *Adriatic*.

Solyman hereupon bent his Forces entirely against the *Venetians*, invaded the Island of *Corfu*, and their Territories upon the Coast of *Dalmatia*, carrying away more than sixteen thousand of the Natives into Slavery. His Admiral plundered and subdued also several *Venetian* Islands in the *Archipelago*, making them tributary to *Turky*: But *Solyman* was so just to put to death several of his Officers, for breaking their Articles with Places that had surrendered to them, and gave the Prisoners their Liberty who had trusted to their Faith.

A. D.
1539.
Venetian
Territories
invaded.

The *Venetians* finding that they were not able to maintain a War against the *Turks*, purchased a Peace of them, by the Surrender of some of their frontier Towns in *Dalmatia*. And now *Ferdinand*, King of *Hungary*, thought fit to break the Treaty he had concluded with *Solyman*; but his General taking the Field with his Army, was defeated. King *John* his Rival was dead at this Time, having left one Son, the Kingdom of *Hungary* being divided between them, *Ferdinand* possessed *Presburg*, the Capital of *Upper Hungary*; and the Queen, *John's* Widow, and her infant Son, the City of *Buda*, Capital of the *Lower Hungary*. The *Turks* being engaged in War with other Powers, *Ferdinand* invaded the *Lower Hungary*, taking from the Queen several Towns, and afterwards laid Siege to *Buda*, where the Queen and the young Prince then resided; but *Solyman* advancing to her Assistance, *Ferdinand's* Army was defeated, and forced to raise the Siege: After which *Solyman* garisoned *Buda* with his own Troops, and the Queen and Prince removed to *Tockay*, and *Solyman* returned to *Constantinople*.

Buda re-
lieved by
the *Turks*.

Maylat, Vayvod of *Transilvania*, having taken the Part of King *Ferdinand* in this War, was invaded by a powerful Army of the *Turks*, about the Time that *Solyman* returned to *Constantinople*, and being unable to keep the Field, shut himself up in the strong Fortrefs of *Fogaras*; *Achmet*, the *Turkish* General, soon after invested the Place,

Transilva-
nia subdued
by the
Turks.
1540.

and observing that it would take up a great deal of Time, to take it by Force, had recourse to Stratagem: He sent a Messenger to *Maylat*, to assure him, that if he would surrender the Fort to him, he would engage that he should still remain Vayvod of *Transilvania*, paying a small Tribute *Solyman* being a generous Prince, and having restored several Countries to the natural Princes on their submitting to him, and desired the Vayvod to come out, and settle the particular Articles with him, which *Maylat* consented to on *Achmet's* giving Hostages for his Security; and a Treaty was accordingly begun; but the cunning *Turk* drew out the Treaty to such a Length, that he prevailed on the Deputy Governor of *Fogaras*, to deliver up the Town to him before it was concluded; whereby the *Turks* became possessed of *Transilvania*; but *Solyman* assigned it, however, to his Ally the Queen of *Hungary*, Widow of the late King *John*, and her Infant Son, and *Maylat*, the Vayvod, was made Prisoner.

The Reason the *Turks* were so successful in *Hungary* and *Transilvania*, was the Emperor's employing his Forces against *Algiers*, and the Coast of *Barbary*, which would have been much more usefully employed in reinforcing his Brother, King *Ferdinand*, for the Defence of *Christendom*: And this *African War* proved very unfortunate to the Emperor, most of his Land Forces, as well as his Fleet, being destroyed by Tempests, or the Sword of the Enemy, in the Year 1541.

In the mean time the *German Princes* assembled a considerable Army, and marched to the Assistance of *Ferdinand*, laying Siege to the Town of *Pest*, situate on the *Danube*, opposite to *Buda*; but they were soon obliged to raise the Siege, and return home, wanting either experienced Generals or Engineers to conduct their Approaches; and in their Retreat lost a great many Men by the *Turks* falling out upon them from *Pest* and *Buda*.

Naples invaded by
the Turks.

A. D.

1542.

The *French King* finding himself inferior to the Emperor, especially in *Italy*, sent an Ambassador to *Constantinople*, in order to conclude a Treaty of defensive and offensive Alliance with the *Turks*, proposing, that the *Turks* should invade and plunder *Naples*, and other Maritime Countries in *Italy*, subject to the Emperor, while he carried on the War against the *Germans*, in the *Milanese*; to which *Solyman* consenting, sent his Fleet under the Command of *Barbarussa*, his Admiral, to make a Descent in *Naples*; who took several Places, and

carried

carried away the miserable Inhabitants into Slavery: Among other Towns, he took *Rhegium*, opposite to *Messina*, in *Sicily*: Here having the Governor and his fair Daughter his Prisoners, he was so enamoured with the Lady, that he made her one of his Wives, and for her Sake gave her Father his Liberty. The *Turkish* Fleet afterwards visited the Port of *Ostia*, and lay before the Mouth of the *Tyber* some Time; which put the People of *Rome* into a great Consternation; and many of them were leaving their Houses, and flying into the Country; but the *French* Ambassador, who was on board the *Turkish* Admiral, assuring the Pope, that his Subjects, and the rest of the *Italian* Princes, need be under no Apprehensions, for the *Turks* would commit no Hostilities in their Territories, or any where else, except in such Places as were subject to the Emperor, they recovered from their Fright, and *Barbarussa* soon after sailed to the Port of *Marseilles*, in *France*, there to wait the Orders of the *French* King, as to his future Motions.

While *Barbarussa* was thus harassing the Coast of *Italy* *Solyman* with frequent Descents, *Solyman* passed the River *Save* reduces several Towns in Hungary. A D. 1543. with a numerous Army, and invested the strong Town of *Walpo*; which the Governor having bravely defended three Months, the Garison mutinied, and delivered up the Town, together with their Governor, to *Solyman*; whereupon he gave the Governor his Liberty, but put all the Garison to the Sword, for their Treachery. *Quinque Ecclesiæ*, and several other Cities, surrendered to the *Turks* upon the taking of *Walpo*; but the Garison of *Soclosia*, a little Place, standing upon their Defence, were all put to the Sword.

The next considerable Place *Solyman* invested was *Strigonium*, or *Gran*; which being situate on a Hill, the River *Danube* runs at the Foot of it. This Place being battered with a numerous Artillery, and Part of the Wall beaten down, three furious Assaults were made upon the Breach; in which the *Turks* were as often repulsed; but one of the Engineers deserting from the Town to the *Turks*, and discovering where the Place might be most advantageously attacked, the Garison were at length compelled to surrender; and *Solyman* entered *Gran* in Triumph, on the tenth of *August*, 1543.

Solyman advanced, and laid Siege to *Alba Regalis*, or *Stul Stul Weissenburg*, where the *Hungarian* Kings are usually crowned: He would probably have met with very great Re- taken.

Resistance here, if the Citizens would have consented to the demolishing the Suburbs before he arrived; but their endeavouring to save these proved the Loss of the City in a few Days: The *Turks*, finding very little Difficulty in lodging themselves in the Suburbs, destroyed a Multitude of People as they fled from thence towards the Town; and when the Garison offered to surrender, they could obtain no better Terms than that the *Germans* and *Spaniards* should be at Liberty to march out: As to the Magistrates of the Place, they were put to death as Traitors, having formerly sworn Allegiance to King *John. Solymán* having thus reduced the important Towns of *Strigonium* and *Alba Regalis*, returned to *Constantinople*.

The
French
and the
Turks be-
siege Nice.

I left *Barbarussa*, the *Turkish* Admiral, at *Marseilles*, where he lay most Part of this Summer, without receiving any Orders from the *French* King to enter upon Action; at which the old *Turk* stormed sufficiently; for he expected to have been employed all the while in plundering some Christian Country, and making Prisoners of the Inhabitants: At length both the *French* and *Turkish* Fleets were ordered to besiege *Nice*, a Town of the Duke of *Savoy's*, who was then in Alliance with the Emperor: This City surrendered in a little Time, on condition of saving their Lives and Effects; but the Castle held out till the *Germans* had assembled an Army, and were marching to their Relief: Whereupon the *French* and the *Turks* raised the Siege; but the *Turks* plundered the City, and set it on fire before they left it, in breach of the Articles on which the Town capitulated.

The
French
King and
Barbarussa
die,

A. D.
1547.

Barbarussa, in his Return to *Constantinople*, plundered the Coasts of *Tuscany*, and several *Italian* Islands; from whence he carried a Multitude of People into Slavery; which, with those he had taken before, so crowded his Ships, that many of them died, and were thrown over board every Day, their Friends and Relations cursing both the Emperor and the *French* King, whose Quarrels had occasioned the Destruction of so many innocent Christians: But this Year 1547 put an End to the Life of *Francis*, the *French* King, and of *Barbarussa*, that *Grecian* Runnegade, who, from a private Mariner and Pirate, had arrived to the Post of Captain Bassa, or Admiral of the *Turks*, obtained the Dominion of the Kingdom of *Algiers*, and destroyed more Christians in *Italy*, and the *Grecian* Islands, than any Admiral or General of the Infidels had ever done,

Solyman having lived in Peace two or three Years, invaded *Persia*, being invited thither by *Imirza*, the King of *Persia*'s Son, who pretended that his Father *Thamas* was about to deprive him of the Kingdom of *Shirvan*, which he had conferred upon him. *Solyman* thereupon levied a great Army; and marched at the Head of them to the Frontiers of *Persia*; and having taken the City of *Van*, which was then under the Dominion of the *Persians*, he advanced further into that Kingdom; and the *Persians* not being able to engage so great an Army as *Solyman* commanded, retired before him, destroying the Country as they went, till the *Turks* were much distressed for Want of Provisions: Whereupon the *Turkish* *Bassas*, weary of this unprofitable War, where nothing was to be got, suggested to *Solyman*, that *Imirza* betrayed him into these Difficulties, and at the same time insinuated into the young Prince, that *Solyman* had a Design to take him off: Whereupon *Imirza* fled into *Chaldæa* for Protection; but the Prince of that Country delivered him up to his Father, who put him to death; and *Solyman* soon after retired to *Constantinople*, anno 1549, having acquired very little Honour by this Expedition, in which he had spent near two Years: The following Year the Emperor's Admiral, *Deria*, joined by the Knights of *Malta*, invaded the Coast of *Barbary*, took several Places from the *Turks*, which they demolished, and brought away 7000 Prisoners. The *Turks* of *Barbary* complaining to *Solyman* of this Outrage, which was committed during a Truce, he sent his Admiral the Year following to revenge himself on the Christians; and making a Descent on the Island of *Sicily*, they plundered the Maritime Places: Then they landed at *Malta*, and committed the like Ravages; and invading the Island of *Goza*, under the Government of the *Maltese*, they carried from thence 5000 Prisoners: After this they made a Descent in *Tripoli*, in *Barbary*, which the Emperor had given to the Knights of *Malta*, and made themselves Masters of the capital City, which surrendered on condition of having their Lives and Liberties given them: Notwithstanding which, they were all made Slaves, except the Governor, and about 200 more, who were transported to *Malta*; and *Tripoli* has ever since been possessed by the Infidels,

The Turks invade Persia,
A. D.
1548.

1549.

Sicily and Malta plundered by the Turks,
1550.
They take Tripoli.

The same Year, 1551, *Solyman* sent *Achmet*, *Bassia*, his Viceroy in *Europe*, to renew the War in *Hungary*; and Temestinyesting *Temeswar*, that Town surrendered upon waer.

Terms;

1551.

Terms; but he put all the Garison to the Sword, in breach of the Articles agreed on. The *Turks* then besieged *Agria*; but here they met with a Repulse, and were obliged to raise the Siege.

The French King prevails on the *Turks* to invade Naples, Sicily, &c. Henry II. the French King, inheriting the Enmity of Francis to the Emperor, incited the *Turks* to equip another Fleet, to invade the Emperor's Maritime Places in Italy and Spain; and accordingly, in the Year 1553, the *Turks* made a Descent in Naples, the Island of Sicily, Sardinia, Majorca, Corsica, Elba, &c. plundering those Countries, and carrying off abundance of People into Slavery.

Roxalana persuades Solyman to murder his eldest Son. Solyman growing old, and doating on Roxalana one of his Concubines, she gained such an Ascendant over him that she governed every thing at Court, and had the Address to make him suspect his eldest Son *Mustapha*, of Designs against his Life, a Prince of the highest Merit, and who had ever expressed the greatest Duty to his Father: She once endeavoured to take off *Mustapha* by Poison, in order to make way for her own Sons to the Throne; but not succeeding in that Attempt, she associated herself with *Rustan*, Bassa, the Prime Vizier, by whose Credit and her own, she persuaded Solyman at length, that his eldest Son *Mustapha* had formed a Conspiracy to depose him: At the same Time, she persuaded Solyman formally to marry her, though none of the Turkish Sultans had ever been married since the Reign of *Bajazet*, (on account of the Indignities offered to that Prince's Wives by *Tamerlane*;) but the first Son they had by any of their Slaves was ever deemed Heir to the Crown. The Reason of *Roxalana's* desiring to become the Sultan's Wife therefore, 'tis presumed, was, that her Children only might be looked upon as legitimate, and consequently have a better Claim to succeed their Father than any Sons he had by other Women; but still she was apprehensive, that as *Mustapha* was infinitely beloved by the People, and especially by the Janizaries, this Project of hers would little avail her Sons upon a Vacancy of the Throne, while *Mustapha* lived. She persuaded the old Sultan therefore to assemble an Army, and march towards the Province of *Caramania*, of which *Mustapha* was Governor, which Solyman complying with, she then directed *Rustan*, Bassa, to put the Sultan upon sending for his Son *Mustapha* into his Camp, and there to provide Mutes, the usual Executioners of the Sultan's barbarous Orders

Orders, to strangle him with a Bow-string. The Prince had some Intimation of a Design against his Life, and was advised to excuse his going to his Father; but trusting to his own Innocence, and his Father's benign Disposition, which he had often experienced, he went to the Royal Pavilion, where he expected to see him; but instead of *Solyman*, he met with five or six Mutes, who seized him, and strangled him; which was no sooner known to the Army, but it occasioned a general Mutiny, which could not be appeased, but by deposing the Grand Vizier, whom they looked upon as the Author of this wicked Advice; however, after some Time, the Vizier was restored, and died a natural Death in that Office.

Solyman had still two Sons left, viz. *Selimus* and *Bajazet*, and the old Emperor declaring *Selimus* the eldest War in his Heir, *Bajazet*, who knew there was no Medium Turkey. between the Throne and a Grave; that whenever his Brother ascended the Throne, he must be made a Sacrifice, determined to try if he could not avoid this unhappy Fate; and to this End caused it to be given out, that his Brother *Mustapha* was still alive, a Prince that was perfectly adored by the People; at the same Time, he provided one to personate *Mustapha*, and furnished him with Money to levy Forces, and purchase Friends, knowing, that if the pretended *Mustapha* succeeded, it would be easy for him to discover the Impostor, and succeed to the Empire. *Bajazet* having chosen *Bulgaria* for the Scene of Action, here the Pretender first appeared, and assembled a very numerous Army; but *Solyman* producing full Evidence of the Death of *Mustapha*, and sending a powerful Army against the Impostor; most of his Adherents forsook him, and fled; whereupon he was taken Prisoner, with some of his Followers, who being put to the Torture, declared, that *Bajazet* was the Principal in the Plot: However, the Sultana *Roxalana* procured his Pardon, this being her Favourite Son; but that Princess dying soon after, *Bajazet* broke out into Rebellion again, and engaged his Father's Forces in a general Battle, in which he was defeated, and forced to fly for Refuge to *Thamas* King of *Persia*, who received him very kindly at first, and promised to mediate with *Solyman* for his Pardon; but considering afterwards the Merit of *Bajazet*, and that he was a bold enterprising Prince, who might give him great Uneasiness, if he should ascend the Throne of *Turky*, whereas his Brother *Selimus* was a luxurious indolent

dolent Prince, from whom he had nothing to fear, he thought it might be for his Advantage, to deliver up *Bajazet* to his Father *Solyman*, or take him off, while he remained in the Court of *Persia*; but what prevailed with him most, to destroy a Prince that fled to him for Protection, was his Covetousness, *Solyman* offering him a great Sum of Money, if he would take away *Bajazet's* Life; but threatening him with another Invasion, if he protected him, and espoused his Quarrel; whereupon the *Persian* caused *Bajazet* to be strangled, and put to Death all those that had followed him into that Kingdom, and with them three of *Bajazet's* Sons, the fourth being a young Infant, which *Bajazet* left at *Prusa*, where he was strangled, by the Command of *Solyman* his Grandfather; the Child smiling in the Executioner's Face, and throwing his Arms about his Neck, so melted the *Russian* into Compassion, that he had not the Heart to murder the young Prince; but the Person who employed the Executioner was forced to do the barbarous Deed himself.

It has already been related, that when the Knights Hospitallers were forced to abandon the Isle of *Rhodes*, the German Emperor, *Henry V.* gave them the Island of *Malta*, the City and Kingdom of *Tripoli*, and the Island of *Zerby* or *Cerby* upon that Coast; but the *Turks* afterwards took *Tripoli*, and the Isle of *Zerby* from them; Whereupon *Philip*, King of *Spain*, who succeeded his Father *Charles V.* in the Kingdom of *Spain*, joining with the Knights of *Malta*, the Duke of *Florence*, and other Christian Princes invaded the Island of *Zerby*, and were in a fair Way of recovering it, when *Solyman* sent a Fleet to the Assistance of the Bey of *Tripoli*, and compelled the Christians to retire from the Island of *Zerby* with great Loss, both of Ships and Men, several great Commanders being carried to *Constantinople*, and made Slaves of. The *Turks* meeting with such Success in this Enterprize, the next Summer invaded the Isle of *Malta*, and took the Castle of *Elmo* by Storm, putting all the Garison to the Sword, after a very long and brave Defence; still the City held out, and repulsed several furious Assaults; and at length *Don Garcias*, the Viceroy of *Sicily*, with a Fleet of seventy Sail, and ten Thousand Landmen, arrived to their Relief: Whereupon the *Turks* abandoned the Island, losing a great Number of Men in their Retreat; their whole Loss in this Invasion of *Malta* amount-

The *Turks*
besiege
Malta a-
gain.

A. D.
1565.

amounting to twenty-four thousand Men; the Christians lost five thousand, among whom were two hundred and forty Knights of the Order, the City having been besieged about five Months.

The *Turks*, in Revenge of this Disgrace at *Malta*, the next Year reduced the Island of *Chios*, anno 1566, sending the Governor and Senators Prisoners to *Constantinople*, but permitted the common People to continue there, and cultivate their Vines, and follow their Husbandry, exacting of them an annual Tribute. The *Turkish* Fleet afterwards came upon the Coast of *Naples*, where landing some Troops, they plundered the Country, and carried off some thousands of Prisoners into Slavery.

The War was the same Year revived between the *Germans* and the *Turks* in *Hungary*. *John*, Vayvod of *Transylvania*, protected by the *Turks*, had assumed the Title of King of *Hungary*, great Part of which Kingdom he and the *Turks* were possessed of, and the *Imperialists* of the rest, between whom were frequent Engagements, small Towns taken and retaken, till at length *Solyman* determined to make an entire Conquest of *Hungary*, took the Field in Person, with 200,000 Men and upwards, which the *Germans* being in no Condition to oppose, *Solyman* passed the Rivers *Save* and *Drave*, and laid Siege to *Sigeth*, in which was a brave Garison of 2000 Men, commanded by Count *Serini*. This Town standing in the Middle of a Morass, was of very difficult Access; but the *Turks* being so very numerous, and all Hands commanded to assist, they filled up the Morass in several Places, made Causeways, and raised Mounts, from which they battered the Place with a numerous Artillery, driving the Garison first out of that Part of the City called the New Town, and then raising other Batteries there, took the Old Town, from whence they played incessantly on the Castle. In the mean time *Solyman* the *Turkish* Emperor died of the Flux, on the 4th of September 1566, in the 77th Year of his Age, and 47th of his Reign. The Grand Vizier *Mahomet*, Bassa, still carried on the Siege, concealed the Death of *Solyman*, and the Day after took the Castle by Storm, Count *Serini* the Governor dying bravely in the Defence of it; and the better to conceal *Solyman's* Death, all the Physicians and Surgeons that used to attend him in his Sickness were murdered. The *Turkish* Army soon after retired to *Belgrade*,

*Sigeth be-
sieged and
taken.
A. D.
1566.*

*Solyman
dies.*

Belgrade, their Emperor's Death being still concealed from them; and in the mean time, the Grand Vizier sent Expresses with the News to *Selimus* his only surviving Son, who was then in *Asia*, advising him to repair to *Constantinople*, and take the Government upon him, before the Janizaries were acquainted with his Father's Death, to prevent the Outrages they were used to commit on a Vacancy of the Throne.

During the Siege of *Sigeth*, the *Turks* also laid Siege to *Gula*; which was betrayed to them by *Nicholas Keretschen* the Governor, who was however carried Prisoner to *Constantinople*, where, instead of the Reward he expected for his Treachery, he was put into a Hoghead stuck full of Nails, with the Points inwards, and rolled about in it while he was dead, the Vessel having this Inscription on it, (*Here receive the Reward of thy Avarice and Treason; if thou wast not faithful to Maximilian thy Lord, neither wilt thou be so to me.*)

Selimus's
Accession.

A. D.
1566.

Selimus, the only surviving Son of *Solyman*, was proclaimed at *Constantinople*, on the 20th of *September* 1566; from whence he went the next Day to meet the Army returning from the Siege of *Sigeth* with the Corps of the late Emperor, whom the Janizaries still thought was living, and carried in his Horse Litter in which he used to travel. *Selimus* meeting the Army at *Belgrade*, took a View of his Father's dead Body, kissed it, and wept over it, in which he was imitated by all the *Bassas*. And now the Officers being commanded to trail their Colours and beat a dead March, the Army was assured of the late Emperor's Death, and proceeded to salute *Selimus*, Emperor, who marched at the Head of them to *Constantinople*; but when he came to the Gates of the Palace the Janizaries refused to let him enter, demanding of him a large Donative, as they had been deprived of the Plunder they always expect to be indulged in (particularly of the Christians and *Jews*) upon the Death of an Emperor. Whereupon *Selimus* found himself under a Necessity of promising them a large Donative, to make them amends, together with an Enlargement of their Privileges; after which he was admitted to take Possession of his Palace.

Hostilities continued for some time in *Hungary*, after the taking of *Sigeth*, between *Maximilian* the Emperor on one Side, and *John* the Vayvod of *Transilvania*, supported by the *Turks*, on the other; but at length a Treaty of Peace, or rather Truce, was concluded between

tween these Powers in the Year 1568, for eight Years; *A Truce between the Germans and the Turks,* it being agreed, that each Party should retain what he was possessed of, and that the Emperor should pay the *Turks* an annual Tribute of thirty thousand Ducats for that Part of *Hungary* possessed by him: And at the same time *Selimus* concluded a Peace with the *Persians*; and now being at Peace with all the World, he began to erect a magnificent Tomb and Temple at *Adrianople*, where he chose to be buried, in Imitation of his Ancestors; and in order to endow it, considered what People he should make War upon; for the *Mahometan* Princes are prohibited to convert any Lands to such pious Uses which they have not conquered by their own Swords from the Enemies of their Religion, being the most acceptable Sacrifice they could make their Prophet.

A. D.
1568.

At length he cast his Eyes on that beautiful and fruitful Island of *Cyprus*, near the Coast of *Syria* and the *Lesser Asia*. Against which Expedition, however, it was objected, that this Island being subject to the *Venetians*, with whom his Father had concluded a Peace, it would be looked upon as a Breach of Faith to invade it; but it was answered, This Island was formerly subject to *Egypt*, and the *Turks* being now Sovereigns of that Kingdom, *Cyprus*, as being an Appendant to it, was indeed his Right, with which he acquainted the *Venetians*, and required they should immediately resign *Cyprus* to him; and that State refusing it, he made Preparations to reduce it by Force; in which he had a Prospect of succeeding, the Christian Powers being engaged in Wars among themselves, and neglecting to give the *Venetians* any Assistance.

He first invaded the *Venetian* Frontiers in *Dalmatia*, *Cyprus* to draw their Attention on that Side, then equipped a great Fleet and assembled a numerous Army, the Command whereof he gave to *Mustapha*, Bassa, who, according to the Orders he had received, made a Descent on the Island of *Cyprus*, and laid Siege to the City of *Nicosia*: Whereupon the *Venetians*, having received some small Reinforcements, assembled their Fleet, and sailed towards the Relief of the Town; but the Admirals disagreeing among themselves, they returned home without ever seeing the Island.

invaded.
1570.

The *Turks* in the mean time having given the City several violent Assaults, summoned the Governor to surrender; which he refused, though several Breaches were made in the Walls, and the Garrison very much weakened:

Where-

Nicosia
taken by
Storm.

Whereupon Bassa *Mustapha* renewed his Attacks, and took the City by Storm, on the 9th of September 1570. The Governor *Dandulus*, and *Contarenius* Bishop of *Paphos*, and fourteen thousand more of the Garison and Inhabitants were put to the Sword, the Houses plundered, and all manner of Outrages committed, as usual where a Town is taken by Storm.

A Lady
sent to Se-
limus
blows up
herself and
the Ship's
Company.

In this City the *Turks* made themselves Masters of a prodigious Treasure, Part whereof *Mustapha* sent in three Ships to his Master *Selimus*, that he might be sensible of the Importance of this Conquest: He sent him also a great Number of beautiful Virgins and promising Boys, to adorn his Seraglio; among which was a Lady of exquisite Beauty, put on board one of the Ships in which was a great Quantity of Gun-powder: This Lady found means to set fire to the Gun-powder, which blew up all the three Ships, with the Christian Captives and *Turks* on board, not more than three Persons being saved out of them; and this terrible Slaughter she chose to commit, rather than fall alive into the Hands of *Selimus* the *Turkish* Emperor.

Famagusta
besieged.
A. D.
1571.

Nicosia being thus lost, and the whole Island of *Cyprus* in Danger, after the Reduction whereof it was expected that the *Turks* would invade *Italy* and *Spain*; the Pope, the *Spaniards*, and *Venetians*, entered into a Confederacy for their mutual Defence against the Infidels. The *Venetians* also sent an Ambassador to the King of *Persia*, to persuade him to break with the *Turks*; but this Negotiation did not succeed, and the next Year (1571) *Mustapha* invested *Famagusta*, and thundered against it with his numerous Artillery, till he had made several Breaches in the Walls, which the Defendants repaired, or erected Works within them for their Security; but one of the Breaches that was most practicable was left open and undermined, several Barrels of Powder being lodged in the Mine; and at the next Assault, when Crouds of *Turks* were pressing into the Breach, Fire was given to the Powder, which blew up an incredible Number of the Infidels, and some of the Christian Defendants, there being more Powder lodged in the Mine than there was Occasion for. But the Garison being reduced to a very small Number, and their Powder failing, the Inhabitants entreated the Governor to capitulate, which he seemed very averse to, having no great Opinion of *Turkish* Faith, telling them, that whatever Terms were made, it was very

very doubtful whether the Articles would be observed; however, on their Importunity, he beat a Parley, and a Treaty was concluded; wherein it was agreed, that the Famagusta *furnishes* Inhabitants should enjoy their Lives, Liberties, and Effects, with the free Exercise of their Religion; that the Governor and his Garison should be conducted in Safety *renders,* to the Island of Candy, with their Baggage, by the *and the* Turkish Fleet: But they were no sooner marched out of the Place, than most of the principal Officers were murdered, *whose* and the brave Governor, *Island sub-* *mits.* *Bragadinus*, was dead alive, *The Go-* under Pretence that he had put to death some Turkish Officers, who had been taken Prisoners by him. The *dead alive,* City of *Famagusta* thus falling into the Hands of the *Turks*, all the other Places surrendered as soon as they were summoned, and *Selimus* became Sovereign of the Island. As to the common People, they were suffered to remain there, to cultivate the Lands, and allowed the Exercise of their Religion, as they are at this Day.

While *Mustapha* lay before *Famagusta*, the Turkish Admiral made a Descent on the Island of Candy, but was repulsed and forced to abandon that Island, with the Loss of two thousand of his Men. He then plundered the Islands of *Cerigo*, *Cephalonia*, and *Zant*, carrying away six thousand of the Inhabitants into Slavery. Then the *Turks* visited the Coasts of *Epirus* and *Dalmatia*, and took the Towns of *Dukigno*, *Antivari* and *Budua* from the *Venetians*, which made little or no Defence, tho' *Antivari* was strongly fortified, and had a good Garison in it. The *Turks* afterwards investing *Curzola*, a Town situate on an Island of the same Name, in the *Adriatic* Sea, the Governor and most of the Men in the Town fled; whereupon the Women took their Arms, and defended the Venetian Place, till fortunately a Storm arose, wherein the *Turks* were in Danger of losing all their Gallies, and thereupon abandoned the Place.

The *Turks* assembling their grand Fleet this Spring, after they had plundered the Coast of *Dalmatia*, the Island of *Corfu*, and several other *Venetian* Islands, from whence they carried off fifteen thousand Captives, sailed to the Gulph of *Lepanto* (or *Corinth*.) Whereupon the *Venetian* Fleet, commanded by Admiral *Venerius*, and the *Spaniards* by Don *John* of *Austria*, natural Brother of *Philip* King of *Spain*, with the Gallies of the Pope, the Duke of *Florence*, *Malta*, and other Christian Powers, arrived at the general Rendezvous in the Harbour of

Q

Messina

Lepanto
Victory,
Octob. 7.
A. D.
1571.

Messina in *Sicily*, and having called a Council of War, determined to engage the *Turkish* Fleet the first Opportunity that offered. The *Turks* at the same time resolving not to decline the Fight, came out of the Gulph of *Lepanto*, and drew up their Fleet in Order of Battle, and being met by the united Fleets of the Christians, an obstinate Engagement ensued, which lasting five Hours, with admirable Conduct and Bravery on both Sides, the *Turks* were at length defeated, their Admiral killed, with fifteen or twenty thousand Men. The Christians also lost a great many brave Officers, and seven or eight thousand of their Men, but took one hundred and sixty of the *Turkish* Gallies, and sunk or burnt forty, besides sixty Gallies and smaller Vessels. The Admiral Galle of the *Turks*, three times as large as any of the rest, is said to be the finest Vessel that ever swam upon the Sea. Thus it appears the Naval Strength of every Country almost, in those Days, especially of such as bordered on the *Mediterranean*, consisted chiefly in low built Gallies. The Christians had but six tall Ships, as they are called, or Men of War, built after the modern Model, in the Engagement, and these belonged to the *Spaniards*. As to the *Turks*, it does not appear they had one Ship of this Kind; and it is to the Strength of these Ships, possibly, that the Victory is to be ascribed, for they stood like so many Castles in the Front of the Line, where they sunk several of the *Turkish* Gallies, and disordered their whole Line at the first Onset. The Christians also had the Weather-gage, which, no Doubt, contributed considerably to the Victory, but was not of that Importance then as it would be now the Use of Oars is laid aside. This Victory was obtained on the 7th Day of *October* 1571, N. S. The Gallies, Guns, and Spoils that were taken were divided among the several Christian Powers, in Proportion to the Number of Vessels each Prince or State had in the combined Fleet.

Selimus, the *Turkish* Emperor, receiving Advice of the Destruction of his grand Fleet, resolved at first to massacre all the Christians in his Dominions, who were near one fourth of his Subjects, reflecting, that as the Christian Powers were now Masters at Sea, they might invade what Part of his Territories they pleased; and if the Christians under his Dominion should join with them, as it was probable they would, the *Ottoman* Empire might be greatly distressed: But he was diverted from this sanguine

guine Resolution by his Grand Vizier *Mahomet*, who shewed him that the Loss was not so great but he might have as good a Fleet the next Year; and thereupon all Hands were immediately set to work to repair the Loss, while on the other hand, the Christians dispersed their Fleet, and returned to their respective Countries, making no manner of Use of this great Victory. But two Years afterwards Don *John* sailing over to the Coast of *Africa*, subdued the City and Kingdom of *Tunis*, of which he made *Mahomet* the Moor King, on Condition of his paying an annual Tribute to the King of *Spain*. In the mean time the *Venetians* finding there was no Dependence on their Allies the *Spaniards*, entered on a Treaty of Peace with the *Turks*, wherein it was agreed, that the *Venetians* should pay the *Turks* three hundred thousand Ducats; that the Merchants Effects taken during the War should be restored on both Sides; that the *Turks* should retain the Towns and Countries they had taken, but that the *Venetians* should deliver up all the Places they had made themselves Masters of during the War.

A. D.

1574-
Tunis sub-
dued by
Don John.

Treaty be-
tween the
Venetians
and the
Turks.

The War was no sooner ended with the *Venetians*, but *Moldavia* *Selimus* turned his Arms against *Moldavia*, deposed *Bog-danus* the Vayvod, and constituted *John* the Son of *Stephen*, a former Vayvod, Prince of *Moldavia*; but it was on Condition, that *John* should turn *Mahometan* and become tributary to him: To which *John* consenting, was declared Vayvod of *Moldavia*. But *John*, repenting of his Apostacy, became a Christian again, and was contriving to render his Country independent of the *Turks*; which *Selimus* being acquainted with, sent several Detachments of his Forces against *John*, who were all successively defeated by him. At length *Selimus* offered to make *Peter*, the Brother of *John*, Vayvod, on Condition of his paying double Tribute; which *Peter* agreeing to, the *Turks* passed the *Danube* with an Army of an hundred thousand Men, while *Peter* tampered with the *Moldavian* Generals, and, in Consideration of a large Sum of Money, prevailed on great Part of *John's* Officers to desert him, which they did in a Battle fought soon after. *John* was defeated, and retired to an old Castle, where he defended himself some time, but being at length obliged to surrender, was murdered by the *Turks*, and *Moldavia* became a Province of their Empire.

The *Turks* equipping a great Fleet the same Year, and embarking in it a large Body of Land Forces, stood

Tunis recovered to the Coast of *Africa*, where they laid Siege to the Fortrefs of *Goletta* and the City of *Tunis*, both which they recovered out of the Hands of the *Spaniards*. This was the last considerable Action performed in the Reign of *Selimus*, who died on the 9th of *December* 1574, in the fifty-second Year of his Age, and the ninth Year of his Reign, leaving six Sons, (*viz.*) 1. *Amurath* the eldest, 2. *Mustapha*, 3. *Solyman*. 4. *Abdalla*. 5. *Osman*, and, 6. *Tzibanger*.

Amurath's
Accession,
A D.
1574.

The Death of *Selimus*, the late Emperor, was concealed as usual, until his eldest Son *Amurath* arrived, who was then in *Asia*: This Prince, receiving Advice from the Prime Vizier of his Father's Death, repaired to *Constantinople*, on the twenty-fifth of *December*; when he was proclaimed Emperor; and to appease the *Janizaries*, who had not now an Opportunity of plundering the *Christians*, he distributed large Sums amongst them, and encreased their Pay: He also commanded, that the Sons of the *Janizaries*, when twenty Years of Age, should be inrolled in the Number of the younger *Janizaries*; and that he might have no Competitors in the Empire, he ordered his five Brothers, *Mustapha*, *Solyman*, *Abdalla*, *Osman*, and *Tzibanger*, to be murdered in his Presence: Whereupon the Mother of *Solyman*, who was present, stabbed herself to the Heart; over whom, it is said, the cruel Tyrant let fall some Crocodile Tears; and those who write his Character say, notwithstanding he was the Author of this dismal and unnatural Tragedy, he was in Reality a merciful Prince: They relate also, that he reformed his People, by setting them an Example of Sobriety and Temperance, whereas they ran into all Manner of Excesses in the Reign of his Father, who was a most luxurious Prince.

He murders his
five Brothers.

The Poles
choose Stephen
Battor their
King, on the
Recommendation
of Selimus.

In the Beginning of this Reign, *Henry de Valois* abdicating the Throne of *Poland* for that of *France*, there were several Competitors for the Throne of *Poland*, particularly *Maximilian*, Emperor of *Germany*, and the Czar of *Muscovy*: Whereupon *Amurath* recommended *Stephen Battor*, Vayvod of *Transylvania*, for their Sovereign, not willing that either of the other Powers who were his natural Enemies, should add the Kingdom of *Poland* to their Dominions: And the Poles had so great a Regard for *Amurath*, that they elected *Stephen Battor* their King: After which *Amurath* remained at Peace with all his Neighbours for three Years; but being informed, that

Thomas,

Thomas, King of *Persia*, was dead, and left a great Number of Sons, who became Competitors for his Kingdom, and consequently that *Persia* would be involved in Civil Wars, he determined to invade *Persia*, though the Peace was not expired which the two Nations had concluded some Years before: And this Prince not chusing to take the Field in Person, gave the Command of his Army to the Bassa, *Mustapha*, who had reduced the Island of *Cyprus*.

War with Persia,
A. D.
1578.

This General having observed, that the *Turkish* Army was always much distressed in their Invasions of *Persia*, the Frontiers being a barren Soil for many Miles, and the little Forage and Provisions there being constantly destroyed by the Enemy, he caused vast Quantities of Corn, and other Provisions, to be brought into his Camp to attend the Motions of his Army.

Mustapha, in the first Encounter with the *Persian* Army on the Frontiers, obtained a Victory, 5000 *Persians* being killed in the Field of Battle, and 3000 taken Prisoners, whom he afterwards caused to be beheaded in cold Blood, and with their Heads erected a Mount in the Plain where the Battle was fought; but the Weather proving wet and tempestuous afterwards, a Sickness happened in the *Turkish* Army, which carried off 40,000 of them: And now their Army being distressed also for Want of Provisions, and being obliged to wander a great Way from the Camp for Forage, the *Persians* cut off 10,000 of the *Turks* as they were marching in Search of Food; but *Mustapha* soon after pursuing the *Persians* with his whole Army, destroyed great Numbers of them in their Retreat. *Mustapha* afterwards marched into *Georgia*; where the Snows being fallen on the Mountains, and the Winter begun, he lost a great Number of his Men, which occasioning a Mutiny, he was compelled to return to *Erzerum*, and send his Army into Winter Quarters: Whereupon the *Persians* recovered most of the Places the *Turks* had made themselves Masters of.

1578.
The Turks
obtain a
Victory.

In the Year 1579 the *Turks* invaded *Persia* again, and obtained another Victory over the *Persians*; but on their Retreat to *Erzerum*, great Part of the *Turkish* Army was cut off by the *Persians*, or destroyed by the Inclemency of the Weather; which gave *Amuratb* so ill an Opinion of *Mustapha's* Conduct, that he turned him out of his Office; and *Sinan*, Bassa, was the next Year, 1580, constituted General against the *Persians*.

A second Invasion.
1579.

A. D.
1580.
*Various
Success.*

1583.
*A third
Expedition
against
Persia.*

1584.
*Persia in-
vaded
again.*

ians in his stead: *Sinan* advanced as far as *Teflis*, the Capital of *Georgia*, in which *Mustapha*, the last Campaign, had left a *Turkish* Garison, which he found in great Distress for want of Provisions; and *Sinan*, being informed that in the adjacent Countries he might meet with great Plenty of Corn, sent a Detachment of 10,000 *Turkish* Horse to bring it into the City; but the *Persians* foreseeing the *Turks* would march this Way, had laid an Ambuscade, which fell upon the *Turks* when they were loaded with the Plunder, and cut to Pieces 7000 of them. *Sinan*, Bassa, being informed of this Misfortune, marched immediately in Pursuit of the *Persians*, but could not overtake them: Whereupon Winter coming on, he retired to *Erzerum*, and sent his Forces into Quarters of Refreshment, and returned to *Constantinople*. The next Year he sent 25,000 Men to the Relief of *Teflis*, who were defeated by the *Persians* and *Georgians*, and the Supplies they were carrying to that City taken by the Enemy; which Misfortune *Amurath* ascribing to the ill Conduct of *Sinan*, deposed him from his Office of Prime Vizier, and banished him from *Constantinople*, *Ferrat*, Bassa, being appointed General against *Persia*, in his stead; who marching to the Frontiers of *Persia*, anno 1583, was so fortunate as to relieve the *Turkish* Garison in *Teflis*: He afterwards plundered *Georgia* and carried away a Multitude of Captives from thence, in revenge for the Revolt of *Mustapha*, a *Georgian* Prince, who had till now expressed great Friendship for the *Turks*: After which, *Ferrat*, Bassa, returned with his Army to *Erzerum*.

The following Year, 1584, *Ferrat*, Bassa, invaded *Persia* again, defeated a Body of *Georgians*, and plundered their Country; but was afterwards greatly distressed by Famine, and lost Part of his Army by the Hardships they underwent in the Mountains of *Georgia*, which occasioned a Mutiny among the Janizaries, who compelled him to retire to *Erzerum*; in which Retreat the Bassa lost his Women and Baggage; and afterwards the Command of the Army, which was given to *Osman*, Bassa, Governor of *Shumachia*, in *Chirvan*. This General being attacked by the *Circassian Tartars*, had the good Fortune to defeat the *Tartars*, took their King Prisoner, caused him to be strangled, and made his younger Brother, *Islan*, King in his stead, on condition of his becoming tributary to *Amurath*; for which Service *Osman* was made Prime Vizier.

In

In the mean time an Accident happened, which was very near occasioning a Rupture between the *Venetians* and the *Turks*. *The Barbarity of a Captain of the Venetian Gallies.*

The Widow of *Ibrahim*, Bassa, late Governor of *Tripoli* in *Barbary*, being about to embark with her Son and Family for *Constantinople*, with Goods and Money to a very great Value, had hired three armed Gallies for her Convoy, and, setting sail, was driven by Strefs of Weather on the *Venetian* Island of *Corfu*; where *Peter Emus*, a Senator of *Venice*, happening to be at that Time with a Squadron of Men of War, designed for the Defence of the *Adriatic Sea*, against Pirates, attacked the three Gallies of *Tripoli*; and having taken them, killed all the Men, amounting to 250, with the Widow's Son; and caused the Women to be ravished: After which, he caused the Womens Breasts to be cut off, and then threw them into the Sea, being forty in Number. A beautiful Virgin of the Company falling into the Hands of the Brother of *Emus*, was earnestly entreated by her to spare her Honour; for she said she was a Christian, taken Prisoner twelve Years before, on the Invasion of *Cyprus*, and had lived in Captivity among the *Turks* ever since; and now falling into the Hands of a noble *Venetian*, she had great Hopes of recovering her Liberty unviolated, beseeching him, for the Love of God, not to imbrue his Hands in her Blood; but he was deaf to her Prayers; and after he had abused her, threw her into the Sea with the rest. The Reason *Emus* spared none of them, is supposed to be, that it might not be known what Treasure he had taken, or the Villany discovered he had committed; which he could not, however, prevent, it being revealed by a *Turk* then on board (who was saved by a Surgeon of *Candy*, that knew him) on his Return to *Constantinople*: Whereupon *Amurath* demanded of the *Venetians*, that the Offender should be punished, the Gallies with the Goods restored, and Satisfaction be made for the Slaves they had taken, or he would revenge the Outrage upon them. The *Venetians* examining into the Matter, represented to *Amurath*, that the People on board the Gallies of *Tripoli* had landed on the Island of *Corfu*, and plundered the Country, sparing neither Man nor Beast; which was the Reason that *Emus*, who commanded the *Venetian* Squadron, had taken so severe a Revenge upon them: However, they agreed, that *Emus* should be put to death; and he was beheaded accordingly. The Gallies and Effects were restored, and as many *Tur-*

kish Slaves released as there were on board the *Tripoli* Gallies; which Satisfaction *Anurath* thought fit to accept, rather than enter into a War with the *Venetians*, while he was engaged in a War with the *Persians*; to which I now return.

Persia invaded,
1585.

Osman, the Grand Vizier, having appointed the Rendezvous of his Army to be at *Erzerum*, began his March from thence on the 11th of *August*, 1585, at the Head of 180,000 Men; but before he had continued his March two Days, the *European* Soldiers, who were the best in his Army, began to mutiny, for Want of their usual Allowance of Bread; which the Commissaries, it seems, withheld, to enrich themselves; but this was soon appeased, by ordering them their full Allowance; but when they perceived it was designed they should march to *Tauris*, they were still more discontented, and could not be appeased till some Money was distributed amongst them: At length, to the great Joy of the whole Army, they came within Sight of *Tauris* (the ancient *Ecbatana*, Capital of *Media*).

The Turks surprised,
near
Tauris.

The Van Guard of the Army being arrived in that pleasant and fruitful Country which surrounds the City of *Tauris*, and meeting with no Enemy, began to refresh their weary Bodies after this tedious March; when *Emir Hamze*, Prince of *Persia*, expecting that some Parties of the *Turkish* Army would halt in this delicious Valley, surprised the *Turks*, who lay dispersed about the Fields, and killed 7000 of them, and made great Numbers of Prisoners, taking several *Turkish* Standards, with their Arms, and other Trophies of their Victory; which *Osman* receiving Advice of, detached 14,000 Men to pursue the Prince: These having overtaken the *Persians*, were so warmly received, that the *Turks* lost 3 or 4000 Men more in this Engagement, and had lost many more, if the Night had not favoured them: The *Turkish* Army, the next Morning, encamped within two Miles of the City; from whence the Garison made several Sallies, and cut off 3 or 4000 more of the *Turks*; after which the Governor withdrew the Garison, and joined the *Persian* Army, which consisting of no more than 60,000 Men, the King did not think it prudent to join Battle with the *Turks*, who were three Times his Number, and provided with a numerous Artillery. Thus the miserable Inhabitants of *Tauris* were left to the Mercy of the Enemy, the City not being deemed tenable against so great an Army.

The

The *Turks* entering the Gates, and taking Possession of *Tauris*, *Osman*, the Vizier, gave strict Orders, that the Soldiers should not use Violence of any kind; but some Janizaries and Spahis being found murdered in a Bath afterwards, the Janizaries insisted on revenging the Death of their Companions, and procured the General's Leave for plundering the City, and committing what Outrages they pleased; after which, Murders, Rapes, and Robberies ensued without Number.

The *Turks* built a Citadel at *Tauris*, and left a Garrison of 8000 Men in it: After which they began their March homewards, proposing to return to *Tauris* again, the next Campaign; but their General, *Osman*, dying about this Time, and the *Turks* retiring in some Disorder, were frequently attacked by the Prince of *Persia*; and, by the Sword or Sicknefs, lost 80,000 Men in this Expedition: A Civil War, however, breaking out soon after in *Persia*, their King found himself under a Necessity of concluding a Peace with the *Turks*; by which *Tauris* and several other Forts built by them, were ceded to *Turky*.

The *Persian War* was no sooner ended, but the *Turks* turned their Arms against the Christians, invading *Hungary* and *Croatia*. In the Beginning of this Campaign, they surrounded a Body of 6000 *Germans*, which were marching to the general Rendezvous, killed and destroyed most of them; but the *Turks* afterwards laying Siege to *Siseg*, were attacked by the *Germans*, and 18,000 of them killed; among whom were several great Bassas and Generals: However, the grand Army of the *Turks* being assembled soon after, made themselves Masters of *Siseg*, and several other Fortresses: On the other hand, the *Germans* having assembled their Army as usual, the latter End of the Year laid Siege to *Alba Regalis*; and the *Turks* coming to raise the Siege were defeated, and great Numbers of them killed; however, it being now November, and the Winter coming on, it was not thought practicable to take *Alba Regalis*; the *Germans*, therefore, marched into Winter Quarters, without attempting any thing further this Campaign.

In the Year 1594 the *Germans*, being superior to the *Turks* in the Field, laid Siege both to *Gran* and *Hatiwan*, which they continued to batter a great while; but, having lost several thousand Men before these Towns, were obliged to raise the Siege of both; to which they

were

The Inhabitants of *Tauris*

A D. 1589. The *Turks* sustained

great Losses in their Retreat.

The *Turks* War with *Hungary*, 1592-

1594-

Raab
taken by
the Turks.

were induced, probably, upon Advice that the *Turkish* Army, consisting of 150,000 Men, commanded by *Sinan*, Bassa, was marching towards them: The *Turks* having plundered and laid waste all the open Country, almost as far as *Vienna*, *Sinan*, Bassa, their General, laid Siege to *Raab*, which was soon after surrendered to him by the treacherous Count *Hardeck*, whom he had purchased; for which the Governor was afterwards hanged, being condemned by a Council of War.

Transil-
vania,
Molda-
via, and
Walachia
revolt
from the
Turks.

There happening a Mutiny of the Janizaries at *Constantinople* the following Winter, and all Things in Confusion there, the Prince of *Transilvania*, and the Countries of *Moldavia* and *Walachia* revolted from the *Turks*, and entered into a Confederacy with the *Germans* against them: Which Revolt, with the Tumults at *Constantinople*, were supposed to have had some Effect on the Health of *Amurath*, the Grand Signior, who died on the 18th of *January*, 1595, in the fifty-third Year of his Age, and the twentieth of his Reign.

Amurath
dies.

A. D.
1595.
Mahomet
III. his Ac-
cession,

1595.
Murders
his twenty
Brothers,
and ten of
his Fa-
ther's Con-
cubines.

The Jani-
zaries
plunder
the City.

Gran, &c.
taken by
the Chris-
tians.

The Tur-
kish Gene-
ral stran-
gled.

Mahomet, eldest Son of the last Grand Signior, *Amurath*, being at *Amasia* when he received Advice of his Father's Death, came to *Constantinople*, while it was yet a Secret; and inviting his twenty Brothers to an Entertainment, caused them all to be strangled; and ten of his Father's Concubines, whom he suspected to be with Child by him, he ordered to be thrown into the Sea: The Janizaries, enraged that they had not been consulted in the Choice of an Emperor, plundered the City of *Constantinople*, and were not pacified till a considerable Large sum was promised them. As soon as the Tumult was quieted, the Corpse of the late Emperor, and those of his twenty murdered Sons, were publicly exposed before the Temple of *Sophia*, from whence they were magnificently interred after the *Turkish* Manner.

While the *Turks* were employed in proclaiming their new Emperor, and congratulating his Accession, the Christians laid Siege to *Strigonium*, (*Gran*) in *Lower Hungary*; and the *Turks* sending an Army to relieve it, were defeated; after which the Town surrendered: *Vicegrade* was afterwards taken by the Christians, and *Lippa* in *Transilvania*; with which Successes of the Christians *Mahomet* was so incensed, that he sent for *Ferrat*, Bassa, who commanded his Army on the Frontiers of *Hungary*, to answer for this Misconduct: This Bassa had been warned of his Danger, and advised not to appear before his

his Sovereign till his Peace was made ; but he, confident of his Innocence, the most comfortable, but weakest Defence of the Great, was strangled as soon as he returned to Court : Whereupon *Sinan*, Bassa, who had contributed to his Destruction, by misrepresenting his Actions to the Grand Signior, was appointed General in his stead ; who passing over the *Danube* with a numerous Army, in order to reduce *Transilvania*, *Walachia*, and *Moldavia*, those Provinces had so well provided for their Defence, that they defeated the Bassa, took all his Artillery, Tents, and Baggage, he himself escaping with Difficulty over the *Danube* again : After which he immediately went to Court, chusing to carry the News of the Misfortune first himself, rather than his Enemies should make their malicious Remarks upon it, and prejudice *Mahomet* against him before his Arrival. Soon after this Victory, the *Germans* obtained another on the Frontiers of *Croatia*, and made themselves Masters of *Petrovna*, and several other small Places on that Side.

Bassa *Sinan* had still such an Influence over his Sovereign, *Mahomet*, that he was impowered to raise another Army, more numerous than the former ; with which he promised his Master to recover the revolted Provinces : Whereupon having laid a Bridge of Boats over the *Danube*, a Mile in Length, he entred *Walachia*, advancing as far as *Tergovisco*, which he strongly fortified ; but hearing the Prince of *Transilvania* was advancing towards him with an Army no less numerous than his own, he left a Garison in *Tergovisco*, and retired over the *Danube* again with great Precipitation ; and the Prince pursuing him closely, he lost 20,000 of his Men, with great Part of his Cannon and Baggage, before he could get out of his Reach ; and the Castle the Bassa had fortified he took by Storm : But while the Prince was driving the *Turks* beyond the *Danube*, the *Poles* invaded *Moldavia*, and put a Stop to his victorious Arms : Whereupon the Pope and the Emperor both wrote to the Republic of *Poland*, representing the Prejudice they had done to the Christian Cause, by obliging the *Moldavians* to withdraw their Troops from the Prince's Army, to defend their own Country. As to *Sinan*, Bassa, he was sent for by *Mahomet*, to give an Account of his Conduct ; but he delayed his Journey, till, by his Friends and Presents, he had procured a Pardon : However, he died, soon after his Return, a natural Death, though War had been his Profession upwards of fifty Years.

The

A. D. 1596. The Christians having gained several Advantages of the *Turks* on the Frontiers of *Hungary* and *Walachia*, *Mahomet* took the Field in Person, anno 1596, at the Head of 200,000 Men, and laid Siege to *Agria* about thirty-five Miles North-East of *Buda*; which the Christians not being able to relieve, surrendered upon Terms; but the *Turks* murdered most of them, after they marched out; some they dismembered, and others they fled alive; telling them, that no Faith was to be kept with Unbelievers. After this there happened a Battle between the Christians and *Turks*, near *Camissa*; wherein the Christians having much the Advantage, fell to plundering the Enemy's Camp; the *Turks* returning to the Charge when they saw the Christians dispersed, obtained a signal Victory, but a very bloody one, there not being less than 70,000 Men killed on the Spot.

Moldavia and Walachia recovered by the *Turks*. The *Turks* being victorious, *Mahomet* recovered the Countries of *Walachia* and *Moldavia*, which became tributary to the Grand Signior again, from whence he annually draws great Supplies of Provisions, no less than 10000 Measures of Wheat, and as much of Barley, besides 2000 Horses and other Cattle sent to *Constantinople* from either of these Provinces, and a Tribute yearly of a Tun of Gold from each: And now the Prince of *Transilvania* being deprived of these Allies, and finding himself unable to resist the Power of the *Turks* alone, thought fit to transfer his Country of *Transilvania* to the Emperor *Rodolph*, as best able to defend it against the Infidels.

A. D. 1598. The *Turks* being distracted with Rebellions in *Asia*, *Insurrections in Asia*. in the Year 1598, and apprehensive of an Invasion from *Persia*, the Janizaries also proving mutinous at *Constantinople*, the *Germans* were Masters of the Field in *Hungary*, and thereupon laid Siege to *Buda*, but the *Turks* marching to the Relief of the Place, they thought fit to raise the Siege; however, the *Turkish* Army being distressed, both by Famine and the Plague, they entered upon no further Action this Campaign.

War in Hungary. In the Year 1601 the Christians, being superior to the *Turks* in *Hungary*, took *Alba Regalis*, and the *Bassia* of *Buda* marching to the Relief of the Place, not knowing it was taken, was encountered by the Imperial General, and defeated, in which Battle the *Bassia* lost his Life; about the same Time, the *Bassia* of *Agria*, marching with 10000 Men to surprise *Tockay*, was defeated by the Imperialists, and pursued to the Gates of *Agria*: On the other

other Hand, the *Turks* besieged and took *Alba Regalis*, which surrendered upon Terms, and yet most of the Garrison were cut to Pieces by them.

In the mean time there happened such an Insurrection *Mahomet* at *Constantinople*, occasioned by *Mahomet's* Cruelty and Oppression, that he was in great Danger of being deposed, and his eldest Son advanced to the Throne in his stead; but *Mahomet* having the good Fortune to suppress the Insurrection, caused his Son to be strangled.

Nor was *Hungary* in a much better Condition than *Turky*, the *Tartars* plundering it from one End to the other, and carrying the Christian Inhabitants into Slavery; but they were sometimes met with, and cut off by the Imperial Generals without Mercy.

The *Turks* appear to have had ill Success on every Side in the Year 1603: They received several Defeats upon the *Danube*; the *Persians* recovered *Tauris*, and other Places the *Turks* had possessed themselves of upon their Frontiers; the Fleet which *Mahomet* sent against the Emperor of *Morocco* was dispersed and ruined by a Storm; the Rebels in *Asia* were still in Arms, and could not be suppressed. With all which Misfortunes *Mahomet* was so distressed, that he imputed them to the Anger of Heaven for his Sins, and ordered Prayers to be put up in all the Mosques, to avert the Judgments of Heaven, and ordered two of his Priests or Mollahs to go in Pilgrimage to *Mecca* barefoot.

And to put an End to the many barbarous Cruelties which had been exercised during this long War, *Mahomet* made the Christians some Overtures of Peace; but before it was concluded he fell sick, and died in *January* 1604, in the 45th Year of his Age, and the 9th Year of his Reign, having had four Sons and three Daughters, (*viz.*) *Mahomet* his eldest Son, whom he strangled. 2. His second Son, who died in his Infancy. 3. *Achmet*, who succeeded him. 4. A fourth Son about sixteen Years of Age, who had never appeared out of the Seraglio; his three Daughters were married to three Bassas.

Achmet, the eldest of the two surviving Sons of the late Emperor *Mahomet*, succeeded his Father; and to prevent the Tumults and Disorders of the insolent Janizaries, and Spahis, which usually happen on the Vacancy of the Throne, was advised to distribute large Sums amongst them: To the Janizaries he gave thirty Crowns a Man, adding one Asper a Day to their Pay; to the Spahis

Spahis, or Horse, he gave ten Crowns a Man, and added five Aspers a Day to their Pay; with which they were all satisfied, and committed no Riots or Disorders. This Bounty being paid, he was proclaimed and installed with the utmost Magnificence, being then fifteen Years of Age, and was the first *Ottoman* Prince that took the Reins of Government into his Hands before he was of Age; but these Monarchs are never crowned.

The first Act of Power this young Prince exercised, was the taking the Administration out of the Hands of his Grandmother, who had the Direction of all Affairs in his Father's Reign.

The Wars continuing between the *Germans* and *Turks*, Skirmishes happened frequently between them in *Hungary* and *Transilvania*; but there was no considerable Action on that Side, the *Turks* being obliged to withdraw their Forces from *Europe* to oppose the Rebels in *Asia*, who had gained several Victories over *Cicala*, Bassa, the *Turkish* General: The *Persians* also recovered most of the Places that had been taken from them by the *Turks*, about this Time.

In *Hungary* the *Turks* were Masters of *Buda*, which lies on the South Side of the *Danube*, and the *Germans* possessed the City of *Pest*, which lies opposite to it, on the North Side of the *Danube*. *Jagendorf*, Governor of *Pest*, receiving Advice, that *Hussan*, Bassa, with a numerous Army, was coming to besiege the City, abandoned it with his whole Garison on this Rumour, before he had any Assurance the *Turks* were on their March; whereupon the Garison of *Buda* sent over a Detachment of their Forces, and took Possession of *Pest* without Opposition; and it was not long after, that *Hussan*, Bassa, took the Field, and laid Siege to *Strigonium* or *Gran*; which he could not however take, but was compelled to rise from before it, by the mutinous Janizaries: From which the Christians might have made great Advantages, if they had not been divided among themselves; for it appears, that the Protestants in *Austria*, *Hungary*, and *Transilvania*, were so severely persecuted by the Roman Catholics, that they chose rather to put themselves under the Protection of the *Turks*, than remain under the Dominion of the *Germans*, who imprisoned, tortured, and burnt many of them for Heresy: Nor were the Protestants the only disaffected People amongst them, but many of the Nobility and Gentry were so oppressed by Taxes, and the

the arbitrary Government of the *Germans*, that they joined the Protestants, in order to obtain a Restoration of their Rights and Privileges, making Choice of Lord *Istavan*, more known by the Name of *Botschay*, for their General, and keeping a Correspondence with the *Turks*, were by them supplied with Money, and enabled to oppose the *Germans*, whose tyrannical Government made them detested by the *Hungarians* and *Transilvanians*. In the mean time, these Countries were miserably harassed and plundered, Towns taken and retaken every Day, the Fields uncultivated, and Trade entirely ruined; and had not the *Turkish* Forces been engaged against the Rebels in *Asia* and the *Persians*, nothing could have hindered their making an entire Conquest of these Countries. As it was, the *Turks*, having no Enemy in the Field to oppose them, laid Siege to *Strigonium* again, and battered it so furiously, that the Garrison agreed to surrender, without the Consent of the brave Governor *Dampiero*, whom they confined till they delivered up the Town to the Enemy; for which the Captains who consented to it were afterwards executed.

Gran taken by the Turks.

The *Germans* finding it impossible to make Head against the *Turks*, while they were assisted by the *Hungarians*, at length granted their Subjects very advantageous Terms, to induce them to lay down their Arms, as, 1. A free Exercise of Religion. 2. That they might elect a *Palatine* for their Governor. 3. That *Botschay* and his Posterity should be Lords of *Transilvania*, subject however to the Kingdom of *Hungary*. 5. That the *Hungarians* might invite the Princes of *Europe* to guarantee this Treaty made anno 1606.

The Hungarians relieved from their Oppressions, A. D. 1606.

This Treaty was no sooner concluded, but another was begun, between the Emperor of *Germany* and the Grand Signior, wherein it was agreed, that each Party should retain the Places they respectively possessed, and all Prisoners be released.

Truce between Germany and Turkey.

The following Year, the Rebellion of the *Bassa* of *Aleppo* was suppressed; or rather the Grand Signior granted him his own Terms, sent him a Pardon, and restored him to his Command.

Still the War was carried on at Sea, between the *Turks* on one Side, and the Knights of *Malta*, the *Spaniards*, *Sicilians*, *Neapolitans* and *Florentines* on the other, who were perpetually attacking and making Prizes of their Enemies, and sometimes landing and carrying away

Multi-

The Moriscoes expelled from Spain, A. D. 1610. Multitudes of unhappy People into Captivity. The *Spaniards* charged the *Moriscoes*, or new Converts in Spain, with corresponding with their Brethren on the Coast of *Barbary*, and occasioning frequent Descents in Spain; whereupon the *Spaniards* expelled and banished no less than 150,000 of the *Moriscoes* from Spain, in the Year 1610, seizing on their Estates, but giving them leave to dispose of their Goods: However, as they had but three Weeks time to sell them in, and there were but few Chapmen for them, they were forced to part with them for little or nothing, or leave them behind.

The Turks Doctrine of Fate. The Plague raging at *Constantinople* at this Time, as it usually does, once in five or six Years, the Grand Signior thought fit to remove from *Constantinople*; from whence it appears, that they are not always governed by their Doctrine of Fate or Predestination, though we are told they seldom refuse to visit their Friends, when they are sick of the Plague, believing that the Time of every Man's Life is fixed, and that there is no avoiding Danger by any Precautions or Remedies we can use; and yet we find them frequently taking Physic, to preserve their Healths: So inconsistent are these People with themselves, and possibly few of the better Sort really believe this Doctrine of Fate, but promote it among the Military Men as much as they can, to induce them to venture their Lives, in Defence of their Country. Turkey was not only afflicted with the Plague at this Time, but with Locusts, which destroyed all the Fruits of the Country, eating up almost every green thing.

This Grand Signior does not seem to have been very happy in his Family; which proceeded from the Jealousy of the Sultana, who finding he had been familiar with one of his Sister's Maids, caused her to be strangled; which so enraged *Achmet*, that he stabbed the Sultana with his Dagger, stamped her under his Feet; and it is related that this Sultana had strangled several other Women of the *Seraglio*, when she suspected they were with Child by him; for though the first Woman that has a Son is stiled *Sukana*, or Empress, yet if that Son dies, the next Lady who has a Son bears the Title of Sultana; and though the eldest Son is held to be the Heir apparent, the reigning Prince sometimes takes the Liberty of appointing which of his Sons he pleases to succeed him; and the *Bassas* and *Janizaries*, after the Death of the Sultan, sometimes advance which of the Sons they think fit to the Throne.

Achmet

Achmet about this Time very narrowly escaped being stabbed by a *Dervis* or *Mahometan* Monk; but who put him upon this desperate Attempt was not known, the *Dervis* being immediately cut in Pieces. Notwithstanding the Sultan has such a Multitude of Beauties in his Palace, he does not confine himself to the fair Sex, but young Boys as well as Girls are sent him as Presents from the *Bassas*, or collected out of the Prisoners taken in War, to add to the Grand Signior's brutish Pleasures. These are as richly cloathed, and as well attended, as any of the Ladies of the *Seraglio*.

As the last Sultan was governed by his Mother, so this was entirely under the Influence of the Prime Vizier, who obtained an Order, that no Man should speak to the Sultan, but in his Presence.

There happening a dreadful Fire at *Constantinople* this *Fires frequent at* Year, as they are seldom three Years without one, the Grand Signior sent a *Bafon* of Holy Water to quench it; that is, Water in which a Piece of *Mahomet's* Garment has been dipped; however, the Fire continued to rage several Hours afterwards: The City being built of Wood, several thousand Houses are usually consumed in one of these Conflagrations; and what still renders them more terrible is, the Robberies of the *Janizaries*, who frequently break open Houses, and plunder them, while the People are busied in extinguishing the Flames.

The *Dutch* Ships being frequently taken in the *Levant*, by the *Turkish* Rovers, the States sent an Ambassador to *Turky*, in the Year 1612, and entering into a Treaty with the Grand Signior, by rich Presents purchased an Order for securing their Ships from the Depredations of the Rovers, which the *Algerines*, and other States of *Barbary* do not always think themselves obliged to observe, especially if a particular Treaty be not entered into with those Powers. They also obtained an Order for the Release of all *Dutch* Captives, for a free Trade with the Grand Signior's Dominions; and to have an Ambassador at the Port, to take Care of their Affairs.

A Treaty between the Port and the Dutch, A. D. 1612.

Several of the *Morisques* banished from *Spain* coming to *Constantinople*, made such Relations of the Cruelties of the *Spaniards* exercised on the *Mahometans* there, that the *Turks* were upon the Point of making a Retaliation on the Christians at *Constantinople*, and were with Difficulty restrained from putting their Threats in execution by the Government, on the Application of the Ambassadors of the Christian Princes residing there,

The Vizier confirms the Patriarch.

The Greek Christians, who are very numerous in Turkey, fell out among themselves, about the Choice of a Patriarch of *Constantinople* at this Time, which gave the *Turks* a great Advantage over them: The Vizier insisting, that he who should be confirmed in the Patriarchate by him, should pay the Government 15000 Chequins, which was 10000 more than had hitherto been paid. This Year the Grand Vizier insisted on the Christian Merchants paying one *per Cent.* Custom for their Goods more than the present Duties.

50,000 Dogs banished from the Port during the Plague.

Another Plague happening at *Constantinople*, the Court ordered all the Dogs to be killed, that they might not spread the Infection; but the Mufti declaring, that these Animals had Souls, and therefore it would be a wicked thing to kill them, they were transported over the *Bosphorus* into *Asia*, amounting to 50,000 and upwards, and Care was taken to supply these Dogs with Provisions during their Banishment; which is a Confirmation, that the *Mahometans* do not firmly believe their Doctrine of Fate; for if the Time of every Man's Death was decreed, it would be vain to endeavour to prolong it.

Drunkennes severely punished.

Though the *Turks* will sometimes drink Wine in private, or take a Glass by Way of Physic, they punish public Drunkennes very severely; for one who was at *Constantinople* at this Time relates, that a *Turk* being convicted of Drunkennes before a Magistrate, he condemned him to be put to Death, by pouring melted Lead into his Mouth and Ears.

The Grand Vizier put to Death; his Rise from a Slave.

But a much greater Criminal was executed the next Year, namely *Nassuf* the Prime Vizier. This Man, who was the Son of a Greek Priest of *Salonichi*, and taken by Way of Tribute from his Father when a Child, the *Turks* then insisting on one Child in three from the miserable Christians their Subjects, this Child was afterwards sold at *Constantinople* for three Chequins or Sultanas, (about twenty-five Shillings) but proving a sprightly Lad, was afterwards introduced into the Seraglio, preferred gradually to the Post of General; and at length constituted Prime Vizier, the greatest Honour a Subject is capable of being advanced to; and long he enjoyed the Ear of his Sovereign unrivaled; but assuming at length a kind of Superiority over his Master, suffering none to come near him without his Leave, *Achmet* was so incensed at this Conduct, that he sent the Vizier a Bow-string, to take him out of this World, and convey him to *Paradise*. There were found in the Vizier's House eighty Bags of Gold,

Gold, each containing 10,000 Chequins, and two Bushels of Diamonds and precious Stones, as it is said. He was succeeded by *Mahomet*, Basia, the Admiral, who had married *Achmet's* eldest Daughter, being the first native *Turk* that was made Prime Vizier since the taking of *Constantinople*.

In the mean Time, some Jesuits coming from *France*, *The Christians* and residing at *Pera* (that Part of the City which lies on *the opposite Side of the Harbour to Constantinople*) where *the danger of the Franks, or European Christians, inhabit, were accused being mas-* as Spies, from *Spain*, and employed in giving Absolution *sacred.* to Renegadoes, baptizing *Turks*, concealing fugitive Slaves, and sending them home: They were also charged with the Doctrine of King-killing; whereupon these Jesuits were apprehended, and thrown into a Dungeon; and the Emperor's Ambassador making his public Entry at the same Time, with a large Retinue, it was suggested, that there were in *Constantinople* and *Pera* many Thousand *Latin Christians* disguised in the Habits of *Greeks* and *Turks*, who were ready to execute whatever the Jesuits commanded: It was affirmed also, that the Churches at *Pera*, and the Christian Ambassadors Houses were full of Arms; and that it was intended to draw the *Greeks* into a Conspiracy to subvert the Government, and to invite the *Cossacks* to cross the *Black Sea*, and join them. The Grand Signior and his Court were terribly alarmed at this pretended Conspiracy; every Man was commanded to wear the Habit of his Nation, and none to wear Hats but the *Franks*; and a List or Roll was ordered to be made of all Christians in *Constantinople* and *Pera*: Nor did the Sultan think these Precautions sufficient, but was once determined to order all the Christians in the City to be massacred without Exception, till his Ministers represented of what pernicious Consequence this might be to the State, by drawing all the Christian Powers upon him, to revenge the Injury; and the *European Ambassadors*, who resided at *Constantinople* demonstrating, that the whole was a Fiction formed by some zealous People, to prejudice him against the Christians, he recovered from his Fright, and contented himself with executing one poor *Greek Priest*, who used to keep Company with the Jesuits.

The *Turks* had at this Time two Armies on Foot, and *The Turks* two Fleets at Sea; one Army was employed against *Persia*, *isth Fleets.* their constant Enemy almost, the other against *Poland*, who supported the Vayvod of *Moldavia* against the *Turks*; one of their Fleets was stationed on the *Black Sea*, to prevent

vent the Incursions and Descents of the *Muscovites* and *Cossacks*, who used in little wicker Boats to issue out of the Mouths of the *Nieper* or the *Danube* by thousands, and infest the Southern Shores of the *Black Sea*, carrying away whole Villages into Slavery, their Boats being so light, that if they were opposed at one Branch of a River, they could carry them over to another by Land, the other was stationed in the *Mediterranean*, or *White Sea*, as the *Turks* call it, which was employed in collecting the Tribute from the *Grecian Islands* and *Egypt*, and against the *Maltese*, and *Italian* and *Spanish* Cruisers. In this Situation was the State of *Turky* when *Achmet* fell sick, and died on the 15th of *November* 1617, in the 31st Year of his Age, and the 16th Year of his Reign.

Achmet
dies,

A. D.

1617.

Mustapha's
Accession.

Mustapha succeeded his Brother *Achmet*; an Event which till then scarce ever happened; for upon the Accession of a Sultan, he usually puts to Death his Brothers and all their Children; but the late Emperor *Achmet* being but fifteen at his Accession, was advised to spare his Brother *Mustapha*, till he saw whether he should have any Children of his own, there being no other Prince of the *Ottoman* Family then living, except the Cham of *Tartary*, who being a remote Branch of that Family, was to have succeeded, if *Achmet* and his Brother *Mustapha* left no Male Issue.

Before *Achmet* had Children, therefore, there were no Thoughts of taking off *Mustapha*, especially as he did not seem to have any Ambition, but spent his Time in reading and Contemplation; but after *Achmet* had Children, it had several Times been resolved in Council to put him to Death, which he escaped once, only by a Dream that *Achmet* had. He dreamed, it seems, that he saw his Brother executed, which so terrified and disordered him, that he prohibited the putting the Sentence in Execution. At another Time, when *Achmet* saw *Mustapha* walking in the Gardens of the Seraglio, and was incited by the Ministers about him to take him off, as the preserving of him would probably be the Destruction of his own Children, *Achmet* drew his Bow with a Design to shoot him, but felt such a Pain in his Arm at that Instant, that he was forced to lay his Bow down; whereupon he said *Mustapha* shall not die; and *Mustapha* lived to succeed him, but he had been kept up so close, and conversed so little with the World, that he seemed as little qualified to govern such an Empire, as the Children of the late Sultan; and when they came to acquaint him with his Accession, he

he was under the greatest Consternation, imagining they were come to put him to Death; nor would he a great while accept the Honour, telling them, that the Throne belonged to his Brother's eldest Son: However, he did at length suffer himself to be proclaimed Emperor; and he reigned about five Months; but then the Bassas finding him perfectly unqualified for that high Dignity, confined him to the Seraglio again, and advanced his Nephew *Osman*, eldest Son of the late Sultan *Achmet*, to the Throne.

Osman succeeded his Uncle *Mustapha*, in whose Reign *Osman's* the *Turks* were very successful against the *Persians*, oblig- *Accession.* ing them to accept a Peace on their own Terms. A. D.

While the *Turkish* Forces were employed against the *Persians*, and the Emperor of *Germany* had little to fear 1618. from them on the Side of *Hungary*, he bent his whole Force against the Protestants of *Bohemia*, *Austria*, *Hun-* *The Pro-* *testants of* *Hungary*, and *Transylvania*; whereupon those States entered into a Confederacy against the Emperor, into which *League* the *Venetians* and *Turks* also came, and *Bethlem* *Turks.* *Gabor*, Prince of *Transylvania*, was elected King of *Hun-* *Gabor e-* *gary*, and General of the Confederates.

The *Cossacks*, then under the Protection of *Poland*, *led King* having made several Incursions into the Territories of the *of Hun-* *Turks*, the young Emperor assembled a numerous Army, *gary.*

and marched to the Frontiers of *Poland*, but his Sol- *Osman* *murdered,* *1622.* diers, and especially the Janizaries, refusing to fight, he was obliged to make Peace with the *Poles*; which provoked him so highly against the Janizaries, that he determined to dissolve that Body and form another of his *Mustapha* *Asiatic* Subjects; which the Janizaries having some In- *restored.* *Deposed* *four Years*, and restored his Uncle *Mustapha* to the *again.* *Throne*; who appearing the same stupid Mortal he was *Amurat* *proclaim-* *ed.* *1623.* at his first Advancement, they deposed him a second Time, and advanced *Morat*, or *Amurat*, the younger Brother of *Osman*, to the Imperial Throne.

Amurat, or *Morat*, succeeded his Uncle *Mustapha*: *Amurat's* *Accession,* *1623.* The Janizaries had murdered his Brother *Osman*, when they found he resented their Insolence, and restored *Mustapha*; but when they found that Prince no less prejudiced against them than *Osman*, they deposed him a second Time, under Pretence that he was unqualified for Government. The Mother of *Amurat* and the Musti joined with them, having each of them a View to their respective Interests. In the mean Time *Abassi*, Bassa of

Erzerum, a faithful Friend of the late Sultan *Osman*, being in *Asia* at the Head of fifteen thousand Horse, declared he would take a full Revenge on the Janizaries, for the Murder of that Prince, and not only killed such Janizaries as fell into his Hands, but their Wives, Children, and all their Relations, and defeated a Body of Forces that was sent over to suppress him.

The Janizaries declared at the Accession of *Amurat*, that they would not insist on the usual Donative given them on the Accession of an Emperor, the Treasury being extremely low; but they soon repented them of this Act of Generosity, and compelled the Christians, and even the Ambassadors of foreign Princes residing at *Constantinople*, to contribute to the raising Money to satisfy them.

The Tartars *revolted*. The *Tartars* of *Crim* assumed an Independency at this Time; they deposed the Cham appointed to govern them by the Port, and advanced his Brother *Mahomet* to that A. D. Dignity, and defeated the Forces sent against them by 1624. the *Turks*.

Cossacks *incursions*. The *Cossacks* also took Advantage of the Minority of 1626. the Grand Signior, many thousands of them crossing the *Black Sea*, plundered the Shores of the *Bosphorus*, carrying whole Villages into Slavery; and such was the Weakness or Distractions at Court, that it was with Difficulty they were restrained from plundering *Constantinople*.

The Hungarian Liberties confirmed. *Bethlem Gabor*, Prince of *Transylvania*, with his Confederates, the Protestants, and other Malcontents of *Hungary*, *Bohemia*, and *Austria*, being supported by the *Turks*, compelled the Emperor of *Germany* to grant them their own Terms, viz. A Restoration of their Privileges; and the free Exercise of their Religion; and it was agreed, that they should remain possessed of all the Towns they had taken during the War.

In the mean time the *Persians* invaded *Turky*, and took the City of *Bagdat*; and *Abassi*, Bassa of *Erzerum*, being joined by the Bassa of *Damascus*, became very formidable in *Asia*.

1627. The prime Vizier hereupon raised a great Army, and *The Turks* marched to *Bagdat*, which he in vain besieged: He was forced to rise from before it with such Precipitation, that he left his Artillery and Baggage behind him; and the *Persians* pursuing him, he lost great Part of his Army in his Retreat, and his Life on his Return to *Constantinople*; The want of Success being a Crime never to be forgiven by the *Turks*. The

The *Turks* being now at Peace with the Emperor, the *The Turks Venetians*, and other Christian Powers; the Rovers of *support the Algiers and Tunis* however attacked and made Prize of *Algerine Rovers.* all Christian Ships that came in their Way, pretending that they were independant of the Grand Signior, and not obliged by any Articles the Port could make with other Powers: And when Complaint was made to the Port of these Depredations, the *Algerines* making the Grand Signior a Present of Part of the Spoils they had taken, no Redrefs could be had for the Captures those Rovers had made.

The *Turks* having raised an Army to reduce *Abassi*, laid Siege to *Erzerum*, but were forced to rise from before it, and the Ministry despairing of putting an End to that Rebellion by Force, made Peace with that General, who was thereupon confirmed in his Post of Bassa of *Erzerum*. Neither were the *Turks* able to reduce the *Crim Tartars and Cossacks*; for sending an Army into *Tartary*, in order to restore the Cham that had been deposed, their Army was defeated; after which the *Cossacks* plundered the Southern Shores of the *Black Sea*, and carried Multitudes of People into Slavery.

In the mean time *Bethlem Gabor*, Prince of *Transilvania*, being dead, the States of that Principality elected *Prince Ragotski* their Sovereign; who being Proprietor of several Castles in *Hungary*, and a vast Estate in that Kingdom, they presumed he would be able to protect them against the Oppressions of the *Germans* and the Invasions of the *Turks*; both of these Powers looking on the Princes of *Transilvania* as their Vassals. A. D. 1629. Ragotski elected Prince of Transilvania.

Hitherto the Grand Signior seems to have given himself up to his Pleasures, and minded Affairs of State very little; but there happening a terrible Storm of Thunder and Lightning, in which his Shirt, and Part of the Sheets he lay in, were burnt, it made a sober Man of him for a Time, and he went in a solemn manner to the Grand Mosque, to give Thanks for his Deliverance.

The *Turks* laid Siege to *Bagdat* again in the Year 1631, and meeting with no better Success than before, the Grand Vizier, who commanded the Army, was deposed and fined one hundred thousand Chequins, and the rest of the Generals were fined in Proportion.

The Janizaries and Spahis were exceeding mutinous at this Time, and compelled the Grand Signior to deliver up the Vizier, the Aga of the Janizaries and high Treasurer, to their Fury; which the young Emperor re-

sented to that Degree, that he once determined to extirpate both the Janizaries and Spahis: He fortified the Seraglio therefore, and introduced such Soldiers as he could trust, distributed the Janizaries and Spahis into distant Provinces, and caused the Heads of the principal Mutineers to be struck off.

An Interpreter of an Ambassador impealed,

There happened a Dispute at this Time between the French Ambassador and the Port, on Account of a *Turkish* Woman that was found on board a *French* Ship; it being suggested that the *French* were carrying her to *Europe*, in order to make a Christian of her: Whereupon the Captain Bassa made a Seizure of the Vessel. The *French* Ambassador, attended by the rest of the *Frank* Ambassadors at the Port, applied to the Vizier thereupon, to have the Ship released, shewing, that the Master of the Vessel had no Concern in the bringing the Woman on board, or knew who she was, and prevailed on the Grand Signior to release the Ship; but he was so enraged at the *Druggerman* or Interpreter, for saying all the severe Things that were dictated to him by the Ambassador, that he caused him to be impaled alive, saying, he would never suffer his own Slaves to repeat such unacceptable Speeches: And ever since the Interpreters, 'tis observed, take care to soften such Expressions as they apprehend may displease, and seldom express the Sense of their Masters so fully as they ought.

A. D.
1633.
Ragotski
obliged to
pay the
Turks a
double Tri-
bute.

The *Swedes* having met with great Success in *Germany*, under *Gustavus Adolphus*, about this Time (1633) and *Ragotski*, Prince of *Transylvania*, offering to join the *Turks* against the Emperor with thirty thousand Men, they were about to renew the War against the Empire; but receiving Advice that *Gustavus Adolphus* was killed at the Battle of *Lutzen*, and that the War began to take another Turn on that Side, they agreed to continue the Truce with the Emperor; and the *Turks* looking upon *Ragotski* as a Prince true to no Interest but his own, confederating either with the Port or with their Enemies, as might be most to his Advantage, they insisted on his paying them a double Tribute for his Principality of *Transylvania*.

1632.
The Musti
put to
Death.

Amurat being now of full Age, began to act as arbitrarily as any of his Predecessors. Having a vast Quantity of Copper in his Magazines, he obliged his People to buy it of him at an extravagant Price; which occasioning a Mutiny, he hanged up fifty of the chief Mutineers, and amongst them a Cadi or ecclesiastical Judge: And hearing the *Musti* and his Clergy were assembled

on the Occasion, and conspiring how they might secure themselves against such arbitrary Sentences, he caused the Mufti and his Son to be strangled, without hearing what they had to say for themselves: Which Act of Violence exercised upon the Chief Priest of their Religion made all his Subjects tremble.

He drank Wine himself to great Excess, but published a very severe Decree, however, against his Subjects drinking it, imagining the Liberty the Soldiers had lately taken of drinking Wine, was the Occasion of those frequent Mutinies and Riots he had been exercised with. He frequently walked the Streets *incognito*, and if he found a drunken Man, would order him to be drubbed to death almost. No Prince was ever so jealous of his Honour, *Amurat's* or more severely punished those that did not shew him *Tyranny*, the Respect he required. A deaf Man happening to be in the Street he passed through, and not sensible of *Amurat's* Approach, remained sitting upon his Horse as the Grand Signior passed by, who ordered him to be strangled immediately, without enquiring into the Reason of his Disrespect. A *Venetian* Merchant, who had erected a Turret on the Top of his House to enlarge his Prospect, being accused of erecting it with a Design to overlook the Ladies of the Seraglio with a Glass, was ordered to be hanged up in his Shirt on the Turret, without being allowed to offer any thing in his Defence: And the Merchant's Goods having been disposed of among his Friends, so that the Officers could not find them, he imprisoned the Franks, or Christians, residing in the City, and would not release them until they had paid him forty thousand Dollars.

A War with *Poland* being proclaimed about this time, *War with* *Abassi*, who advised it, was constituted General, who *Poland* marching into *Poland* with sixty thousand Men, was entirely defeated, and put to Death for having met with ill Success; and the Grand Signior found himself under a Necessity of making Peace with *Poland*, *anno* 1634, on the following Terms, (*viz.*) That the Vayvods of *Moldavia* and *Walachia* should be confirmed by the King of *Poland* and the Grand Signior: That the *Poles* should prevent the Excursions of the *Cossacks* on the *Black Sea*: That the *Turks* should renounce all Demands of Tribute from *Poland*, and should erect no new Forts on the Frontiers: And, That the Navigation of the River *Nieper* should remain undisturbed.

The same Year happened a terrible Fire at *Constantinople*, which reduced one third of that City to Ashes; up-

A. D.
1634.
A Peace.

upwards of twenty thousand Houses, and two hundred Mosques were burnt.

The Grand Signior being at Peace with most of the Powers in *Europe*, resumed his Design of invading *Persia*; at which the Janizaries murmuring, he hanged up their Aga and seized his Effects, which amounted to a Million of Dollars and upwards: Several other Officers were put to death, on Pretence of Disaffection, but chiefly on Account of their Wealth; whereby the Emperor's Treasury was well replenished. Those who could discover Men of Wealth were the Sultan's greatest Favourites, for if the Man was rich, he knew how to make him appear guilty; and because such Executions naturally encreased the Number of Malcontents, he ordered all Fires and Candles to be put out an Hour and half after Sun-set. He put down all Taverns, Tobacco-Shops, Coffee-Houses, and Places of public Resort, where he apprehended Plots and treasonable Conspiracies were begun. As he was riding through the Streets he met thirty *Indian* Pilgrims, at whose odd Dress his Horse started, and threw him down; whereupon he killed his Horse with his own Sword, and sent the Pilgrims to the Gallies.

War with Persia. Vast Preparations having been made to carry on the *Persian* War, *Amurat* determined to command his Army in Person, and arriving at *Erzerum*, he put the *Bassa* to death, for the numberless Oppressions he had been guilty of, and seized his Effects to a very great Value. Here he mustered his Army, which amounted to three hundred thousand Men; to every one of whom he advanced a Dollar, as is usual when the Sultan takes the Field. Then he besieged and took the City of *Revan*, from whence he advanced as far as *Tauris*; which rich City he gave to the Plunder of his Soldiers. After which Success, returning to *Constantinople*, he proclaimed a Festival, which lasted seven Days. While the Sultan remained here, he exercised several Acts of the greatest Cruelty: He caused the Legs and Arms of two Men to be sawed off for selling Tobacco, and another Man and Woman to be impaled alive for the same Offence: And hearing that two thousand Janizaries had deserted to the King of *Persia*, he caused several of their Officers to be put to death, and ordered so many other Executions, that dead Bodies lay exposed in every Street, to the great Terror of the Inhabitants. Among others he caused his two Brothers, *Bajazet* and *Orchan*, to be strangled.

He

A. D.
1635.
*Several
put to death
on Account
of their
Wealth.*

*War with
Persia.*

*Tauris
plundered.
Acts of
Cruelty.*

He took great Pleasure in sitting in a Chiosk, or Summer-House, in the Gardens of the Seraglio, and shooting People as they passed by in Boats. When he drank to Excess then it was he did most Mischief: His only Companions at the Bottle were *Gumar the Persian*, who betrayed *Revan* to him, and *Branchi a Venetian*, who had been educated in the Seraglio. The Sultan, it seems, had much the weakest Head of the three, and destroyed his Constitution by drinking. He was so sensible of the mad Orders he gave when he was drunk, that he commanded the Caimacan or Governor of *Constantinople*, that he should not obey any Orders he gave after Dinner. As he was feared and dreaded by every body, so never any Prince was readier obeyed by his Servants. Happening to let a Paper fall out of the Window, his Pages run with all imaginable Haste to take it up, and one of them jumped out of the Window and broke his Leg, which pleased the Sultan so much, that he advanced him to the highest Posts.

1636.
*Drunken
Frolics.*

In the mean time Advice came, that *Revan* was retaken by the *Persians*, and that the *Turkish Army* quartered in that Country had been defeated: Whereupon the Grand Vizier was deposed, and another Vizier appointed; and the Sultan made Preparations for another Invasion of *Persia*; but before he begun his March, he sent for his Brother, a Prince of great Expectations, about twenty two Years of Age, and caused him to be strangled. The Army of the *Turks* being vastly superior to that of the *Persians*, the Sultan met with no Opposition, but laid Siege to *Bagdat*, in which was a Garison of 30,000 *Persians*, who made several brisk Sallies, and killed a great many thousands of their Enemies: However, there being several large Breaches made in the Walls, the *Turks* at length forced their Way into the Place; where they found still 20,000 *Persians* advantageously posted, who offered to surrender, on condition of sparing their Lives; to which *Amurat* consenting, they laid down their Arms: The faithless *Amurat*, however, kept his Word with them no longer than the next Night, when he ordered them all to be massacred, and did not spare so much as the Women or Children, which he found in the City.

A. D.
1637.
*War with
Persia re-
newed.*
*Amurat
murders his
Brother.*

1638.
*Bagdat
taken by
the Turks;
The Inha-
bitants
massacred.*

Upon this Success *Amurat* wrote to the Caimacan of *Constantinople*, to celebrate a Thanksgiving and Festival for twenty Days, for this dear-bought Conquest, in which he lost 100,000 Men, as he found upon a general Muster of his Forces, after the Siege was over.

The

Amurat
died,
1640.

The Grand Signior returning to *Constantinople*, was followed by an Ambassador from *Persia*, with Proposals of Peace, which was concluded, on condition of the *Persians* confirming *Bagdat* to the *Turks*, and the *Turks* yielding *Revan* to the *Persians*. And now the Grand Signior, being at Peace with every Power, fell to drinking again, till he was seized with a Fever that carried him off; and leaving no Sons was succeeded by his Brother *Ibrahim*. He died anno 1640, in the thirty second Year of his Age, and eighteenth Year of his Reign.

Ibrahim's
Accession,
A. D.
1640.

Reported
to be an
Idiot.

Ibrahim, the only surviving Brother of Sultan *Amurat*, succeeded him on the eighth of *February*, 1640. It was his Incapacity for State Affairs that saved his Life, it is said; his Brother *Amurat* having murdered the rest of his Brothers, whom he apprehended his Rivals; but whether *Ibrahim* was really that Idiot the *Turkish* Historians represented him, may very well be questioned, the same Writers relating some Particulars of him, which shew he neither wanted Sense nor Spirit. It is not improbable, but the Folly they charge him with, might be counterfeit, when he knew it was Death to be found in his Senses.

Cossacks
Invasion,
1641.

Asoph
taken,
1642.

The first War he engaged in was against the *Cossacks* that made their Descents on the Coasts of the *Black Sea*, and frequently advanced to the *Bosphorus*, and the very Suburbs of *Constantinople*, plundering the Country about it, and carrying the Inhabitants into Captivity: And because *Asoph*, at the Mouth of the River *Don*, or *Tanais*, was the usual Place from whence they embarked their Forces, *Ibrahim* caused it to be besieged two Years successively, and in the last compelled the *Cossacks* to abandon the Town. This was esteemed a very happy Beginning of the Sultan's Reign; but the Conduct of it is ascribed to his Prime Vizier.

Invasion of
Candia,
1645.

Canea
taken.

In the Month of *June*, 1645, the *Turks* declared War against the *Venetians*, and made a Descent on the Island of *Candia*, in which they met with no Opposition; and having defeated the *Venetians* in several Skirmishes, after they landed, laid Siege to the City of *Canea*, where the *Turks* lost a great many Men, by the brave Defence the Christians made; but the Garison was at length obliged to surrender. Though the *Venetians* were superior to the *Turks* at Sea, they gave them very little Interruption in conveying Forces or Supplies to that Island, which gave them an Opportunity of reducing several other Towns in *Candia* this Campaign.

In the Year 1647 the *Turkish* Fleet, consisting of 300 Sail, landed 40,000 Men on the Island.

The War was carried on by the *Turks* against the *Venetians*, in *Dalmatia*, at the same Time; but here they were generally repulsed, and the *Venetian* General took the strong Fortrefs of *Cliffa*.

It is observed in this Reign, that all Successes were ascribed to the Ministry, and every unfortunate Event to the Grand Signior. Their Historians will not allow him to have any good Quality: They not only represented him as an Idiot, but impotent and incapable of having Children; and for Proof of this, pretended they had the Authority of the Ladies of the Seraglio; but *Ibrahim* having several Sons in the second and third Years of his Reign, this Calumny was sufficiently confuted; and it was conjectured, that the Reason of his Inability to oblige the Ladies, at first proceeded from the Terror he was under while he remained a Prisoner in the Seraglio, of being put to Death every Day; and they imagine, when his Fears were removed, and he came to live luxuriously, his Vigour was restored; and this also is enumerated among his Crimes; for they relate, that he devoted himself entirely to amorous Pursuits, and left the Administration of the Government to his Ministers, furnishing the World with innumerable Instances of his inordinate Passion for the Fair, even for those he had never seen: That he employed *Shechir Para*, one of his cast-off Mistresses, to visit all the Womens Baths in the City; and when she met with a fine Girl, to acquaint him with it; and he never failed to send for the Person she recommended, and introduced her among the Number of his Concubines, of whatever Quality she was: Among the rest that he debauched, was the Musti's Daughter; and he would have ravished his Brother *Amurat's* Widow, if she had not drawn her Dagger upon him: That he would turn the Ladies naked into the Gardens of the Seraglio, and pursue them as naked himself. It is reported of *Ibrahim*, that he gave Orders to his Governors and Officers, to furnish him with the largest Women they could meet with in his Dominions; and that they sent him an *Armenian* Lady of a prodigious Size, who became his greatest Favourite, insomuch, that the Valide, (the Sultan's Mother) who directed Affairs of State at this Time, was so jealous of her Power, that she caused her to be strangled privately, pretending she died in a Fit. It is reported also, that he caused his Bed-chamber to be lined

*Instances
of the Sul-
tan's
Lewdness.*

lined on the Sides and Cieling with Looking-glass, that he might thus multiply the lewd Scenes he acted.

But notwithstanding he is represented as such an effeminate Prince, the *Turkish* Dominions were never better defended than in this Reign; and he considerably enlarged their Territories. The Island of *Candia*, or *Crete*, was first invaded at this Time; in which Attempt the *Turks* made themselves Masters of the City of *Canea*, and the best Part of that fine Island, the first Campaign, and had very probably subdued the capital City of *Candia*, if he had not been deposed for resenting the Affronts put upon him by those who had usurped the Administration, and would have excluded the Sultan from meddling in Affairs of State; among whom were his Mother, the Musti, Prime Vizier, and the Aga of the Janizaries. These having first represented the Sultan as a Debauchee, and a Fool, found no great Difficulty afterwards to obtain the People's Consent to depose him, and advance his Son, *Mahomet*, to the Throne, being then about seven Years of Age. *Ibrahim* was deposed in the Year 1648, and murdered soon after.

Ibrahim
deposed and
murdered.

Mahomet
IV. his Ac-
cession to
the Throne.

A. D.
1648.

Mahomet being an Infant, succeeded his Father, *Ibrahim*, in *August*, 1648; during whose Minority, which was to continue ten Years, the Sultana, his Mother, and the Prime Vizier, had the greatest Share in the Administration; and the Aga of the Janizaries having been their Tool in deposing and murdering the late Emperor, they found some Difficulty in protecting him against the Spahis and People, who detested the Means they had used to establish themselves in Power. This had very near produced a Civil War; but the Ministry and the Janizaries at length prevailing, and subduing the Malcontents, the Court had leisure to prosecute the War in *Candia*. The *Venetians*, indeed, thought it a proper Time to treat of Peace, while the *Turks* were thus divided; but the Court, instead of listening to Terms, seized the *Venetian* Ambassador, and threw him into Prison; and *Chusan*, Bassa, General of the *Turkish* Forces in *Candia*, laid Siege to the City of that Name; which he found so strongly garisoned and fortified, that he was compelled to abandon that Enterprise, and raise the Siege.

Candia
besieged in
vain,
1649.

The War was also continued in *Dalmatia*, *Albania*, the *Morea*, and *Bosnia*, with various Success. In *Hungary* also the *Germans* and *Turks* made Incursions into each other's Territories; and the *Cossacks* passing the *Black*

Cossack's
Invasion,
1650.

Black Sea, landed in the *Bosphorus*, and plundered the Country to the very Gates of *Constantinople*; with which the Court was so distracted, that the War in *Candia* was carried on but very faintly at this Time. The Queen-Mother ascribing the ill Conduct of this War to the Prime Vizier, caused him to be deposed, and introduced the Bassa of *Buda* in his stead; and he being deposed in a short Time, *Chusan*, Bassa, General of *Candia*, was constituted Prime Vizier.

In the Year 1651 the *Turks* fitted out a Fleet of 700 *The Venetians beat* Sail, small and great; on which were embarked Land Forces to be transported to the Island of *Candia*; but the *the Turks Venetians* attacking them in their Passage, took and destroyed great Part of this Fleet; which Victory, with the Differences between the *Turks* at home, gave the *the Venetians* Time to breathe, and provide for a vigorous Defence of the City of *Candia*. *at Sea, A. D. 1651.*

The following Years were spent rather in Treaties with the *Venetians*, than in warlike Actions, the Ministry being employed in suppressing Riots and Insurrections at home, which occasioned frequent Alterations in the Ministry. The Office of Prime Vizier was seldom possessed more than a Year, till the celebrated *Kuperlee* was advanced to that high Station, in the Year 1656, a Man of great Experience, and near fourscore Years of Age. *Kuperlee Prime Vizier.*

The *Venetians* gained a great Victory over the *Turks* at Sea, in the Year 1657, but lost their Admiral *Mocenigo*, and with him seem to have lost their good Fortune and Success at Sea.

In the Year 1658 there was a formidable Insurrection in *Asia*, occasioned by the beheading one of the Generals, who came too late to the Rendezvous at *Adrianople*, with a Part of the Army designed for *Dalmatia*: The Bassa of *Aleppo*, his near Kinsman, thereupon raised an Army of 50,000 Men, demanding the Head of the Grand Vizier, who had commanded the Execution. This Rebellion took up the whole Attention of the Ministry to suppress it; and the Plague destroying Abundance of People at the Port the same Year, the *Turks* did not make any considerable Progress in the War of *Candia*. *Insurrection in Asia, 1658.*

The Rebellion became so formidable the next Year, that the Grand Signior marched in Person, at the Head of 100,000 Men, against them; and not being able to subdue the Bassa by Force, entered into a Treaty with him, during which he caused him to be assassinated; whereupon his Troops dispersed.

Ra-

Ragotski
killed,
1661.

Ragotski, Prince of *Transilvania*, having disoblged the Port (who was looked upon as their Vassal) by joining the *Suedes* against the *Poles*, the *Turks* compelled him to abdicate that Principality, and transfer it to another Prince; and *Ragotski* attempting a Restoration afterwards, was killed in a Battle by the *Turks*, in the Year 1661.

War in
Hungary
revived.

About the same time the War reviving between the *Germans* and the *Turks*, the Grand Signior took the important Town of *Waradin*. Another Plague happened at *Constantinople* this Year, where twelve or thirteen hundred People died every Day, and Orders were issued to put up their Prayers every Day in the *Turkish* Mosques for the Removal of this Calamity; the Christians also were ordered to put up their Prayers to avert the Vengeance of Heaven; which shews, that the *Turks* are not always governed by their Doctrine of Fate, or irreversible Decrees;

Plague at
Constanti-
nople.

Kuperlee
the Vizier
succeeded
by his Son.

and that they are of Opinion, that the Prayers of Christians may prevail as well as those of *Mahometans*. And now *Kuperlee*, the old Grand Vizier, finding his Health decline apace, prevailed on his Master, the Grand Signior, to appoint his Son to succeed him in the Office of Grand Vizier; to which *Mahomet* consented, this being the first Precedent of the Kind. Never any Vizier before this was known to succeed his Father.

A. D.
1662.
The Grand
Signior
leaves
State Af-
fairs to
the Vizier,
entertains
himself
with rural
Diversi-
ons.

Kuperlee, upon his Death-bed, it is said, gave the following Advice to his Son, the younger *Kuperlee*, viz.
1. That he should give no heed to the Advice of Women.
2. That he should always keep a full Treasury, though it was with the Oppression and Impoverishment of the Subject.
3. To have the Armies in constant Action.

Kuperlee trod in his Father's Steps, equally cruel to all whom he apprehended his Rivals in Power. He had the sole Management of the State, the Emperor scarce ever interposing, being as much devoted to the Chase, and other rural Pleasures, as his Father was to the Ladies. He seems to have taken an Aversion to *Constantinople*, on account of the frequent Riots and Disturbances there, and resided chiefly at *Adrianople*.

Christian
Churches
demolished.

A Fire happening at *Constantinople* some time before, which burnt down a fourth Part of that City, and among the rest several Christian Churches, which the Christians rebuilt, the Grand Vizier commanded them to be demolished, observing, that by the Treaty for the Surrender of *Constantinople*, it was agreed, that there should be no Christian Churches erected on new Foundations. The

Turks,

Turks, it seems, were very much out of Temper with the *Christians* at this Time, on account of the Destruction of their Fleet, consisting of sixty Sail, which was coming from *Alexandria* with Rice, Sugar, Coffee and other Provisions, for the City of *Constantinople*. They ascribed all the Calamities of Plague, Fire, Famine, and ill Success, to the Indulgence they had shewn the *Christians*; they imprisoned and persecuted the *Venetian* Ambassador, therefore, on the Commencement of the War, till they killed him.

They renewed the War in *Hungary* at the same Time, *War with* and took the City of *Newbausel*; and advancing afterwards *Hungary* into *Austria* and *Moravia*, the Emperor, apprehending *revised,* *Vienna* would be invested, removed to *Lints*, a City on the *A. D.* *Danube*, 100 Miles west of *Vienna*. The *Turks* then proceeded to besiege *Novograd*, which surrendered to them; 1663. and thus ended the Campaign on that Side.

To stop the Progress of the *Turks* in *Hungary*, Count *The Bridge* *Serini*, the Imperial General, burnt down the Bridge of *of Essec* *Essec*, situate on the Meadows, at the Confluence of the *burnt.* *Danube* and the *Drave*, being five Miles in Length. This 1664. is a remarkable Pass, which has been more contended for by the *Christians* and *Turks*, than any other during the *Hungarian* War, many thousand Lives having been lost in the Attack or Defence of it.

Count *Serini* was successful in several other Engagements; but not being acceptable to the Emperor, was laid aside, and, retiring to his own Estate, was killed by a wild Boar, while he was hunting.

An Insurrection of the Beys, or Lords of *Egypt*, happening at this Time, they seized the Bassa, the Grand Signior's *An Insur-* Viceroy, and imprisoned him for exacting Money of the *rection in* *Egypt*. People without their Consent, and refused to give the Bassa his Liberty, till good Part of the Money was returned; for here the Grand Signior's Power is limited: He can raise no Money without the Consent of the Lords or States of the Country, though the insisting on their Rights is frequently denominated Rebellion by the *Turks*: And notwithstanding the Grand Signior cannot bring them pulckly to a Trial, he finds Means frequently to take off those in the Opposition by Poison, or Assassination; which they sometimes retaliate on the Bassa.

The War continuing in *Hungary*, the *Germans*, commanded by *Montecuculi*, obtained a Signal Victory over *The Turks* *defeated in* the *Turks* on the Banks of the River *Rab*; in which it is *Hungary.* computed 17,000 *Turks* were killed, with most of their

Peace con-
cluded.

General Officers; which induced the Grand Signior to consent to a Peace with the Emperor on the following Terms, viz. 1. That *Transilvania* remain subject to Prince *Abassi*, a Vassal and Tributary of the Grand Signior. 2. That all Things in *Hungary* continue in the present State; and, 3. That *Waradin* and *Newbausel* should be confirmed to the *Turks*.

A. D.
1665.

Mahomet still continued his favourite rural Sports of Hunting and Hawking in the Fields, about *Adrianople*. He so little indulged the Liberty the Laws and Customs of the Country allow great Men in this Empire, that though he had 1000 Beauties in his Seraglio, he confined himself to one Lady, the rest only serving for State, or as Part of his Equipage.

1666.
The Jews
expect the
Messias.

The Year 1666 is remarkable for the Expectation the *Jews* entertained of a *Messias* to reign upon the Earth, which *Sabbatai Levi*, a Native of *Smyrna*, observing, thought it would be no difficult Matter to persuade the *Jews*, that he was the very *Messias* they expected. The *Jews* were so transported at the Thoughts of having found the *Messias*, and of returning to *Jerusalem*, and becoming superior to all Nations, that they neglected all Manner of Business, discoursed of nothing else, either in *Europe* or *Asia*, but their Re-establishment in the Land of Promise, and making Provision for their Voyage thither.

Sabbatai
Levi, the
Impostor.

The Impostor, *Sabbatai Levi*, who encouraged them in these Whimsies, was learned in the *Hebrew* and *Arabic* Languages, and had studied Divinity and Metaphysics, and travelled through great Part of *Asia* and *Europe*. At *Jerusalem* he pretended to reform the Law; and being joined by *Nathan*, another *Jew*, they pretended that *Nathan* was *Elias*, who was to appear before the coming of Christ; and they had the Assurance to declare, that this *Messias* would appear the next Month at *Constantinople*, depose the Grand Signior, and lead him away in Chains.

Sabbatai wrote a Letter to the *Jews*, declaring that he was the Son of God, the Saviour of *Israel*, and bid them fear nothing; they should have the Dominion over the Nations, and over all Creatures: Then he proceeded in his Voyage to *Constantinople*, and was attended by such Multitudes, that the Grand Vizier fearing he might be dangerous to the State, ordered him to be apprehended, and sent to Prison, where his Disciples gave great Sums to the Keepers to permit them to adore him, and related that several Miracles were done by him.

The

The Grand Signior having heard much of this Impostor, ordered him to be brought to *Adrianople*, and let him know, that he expected a Miracle to confirm the Truth of his Mission; which the Impostor not knowing how to comply with, was ordered to be stripped, and the Archers to shoot at him, the Grand Signior declaring, that if the Arrows did not penetrate his Skin, he would believe he was the Messias; and *Sabbatai*, desiring to be excused from undergoing this Manner of Trial, was told, that as he had been guilty of Sedition, and abusing the People, he deserved the cruellest Death, which nothing could exempt him from, but his turning *Mahometan*. He chose to be circumcised rather than lose his Life, which brought all the *Jews* to their Senses again.

The Prince of *Bossora* (in *Eyraca Arabic*) insisting on his Independency, and refusing to pay Tribute to the Port, raised an Army of 40,000 Men to support his Pretensions; but being defeated by the Forces sent against him, fled into *Persia*: And the Grand Signior sent a Bassa to govern that Principality.

Prince of
Bossora, in
Chaldæa,
defeated,
A. D.
1667.
The Siege
of Candia
renewed.

The Grand Signior being now at Peace with all his Neighbours, except the *Venetians*, was at leisure to employ his Forces in the Reduction of *Candia*; and the Prime Vizier having assembled an Army of 70,000 Men, landed them on that Island, having, at the Beginning of the New Moon, in the Year 1667, ordered public Prayers to be made in all Places of the Empire, for Success of the *Ottoman Arms*, in this Expedition, every *Monday* and *Thursday*: Immediately after which, the capital City of *Candia* was invested on every Side; in which there was a Garison of 8000 veteran Soldiers, besides the Town's Men, commanded by the Marquis of *Villa*, a Native of *Savoy*, a most accomplished General. Many desperate Attacks were made, and as bravely repulsed, frequent Sallies from the Town and Mines sprung, till the Winter approached, and obliged both Parties to desist; however, the *Turks* remained in their Trenches all Winter, and did not quit any of the Ground they had gained. The Grand Signior and the Court expecting every Day to hear of the taking of *Candia*, and finding Winter coming on, were very impatient, and began to entertain hard Thoughts of the Vizier, insomuch, that the Grand Signior wrote to the Vizier, reproaching his Conduct, and expressing his Dissatisfaction; but the Vizier making him sensible of the Strength of the Place, and its being continually supplied with fresh Troops from most of the Christian Princes of *Europe*, the Grand Signior remain-

*The Siege
continued,
A. D.
1668.*

ed satisfied, especially as the Vizier assured him, that he would not rise from before the Town till he had taken it. The next Year, 1668, was spent like the last, in Attacks, Sallies, and blowing up of Mines, the *Turks* gaining Ground every Day, and coming near the Walls : And in this desperate Situation the brave Governor, the Marquis de *Villa* was recalled by the Duke of *Savoy*, for what Reason does not appear : He was succeeded by the Marquis St. *Andrea Montbrun*, a *French* Gentleman, not inferior to his Predecessor in Bravery, or the Art of defending a besieged Town. The *Turks* about the same time recruited their Army in *Candia* with 70,000 Men, pressing the Christian Ships in their Ports to transport them thither ; among which were several of the *English*. Still the City of *Candia* held out till the following Winter, having been reinforced by several *European* Powers, particularly the *French* and the Dukes of *Brunswic* and *Lunenburg*.

*The Grand
Signior
bunts still.*

The Grand Signior, in the mean time, resided at *Larissa*, in *Thessaly*, making War upon all Manner of Game and wild Beasts, employing sometimes 30 or 40,000 People to drive them into Enclosures, where he had the Pleasure of shooting at them.

The Sultan, having now a Son of his own, began to entertain Thoughts of murdering his Brothers, which the Musti endeavoured to dissuade him from, observing, that if his Son should die, there would be none of the *Ottoman* Family left to succeed him ; and the Janizaries having some Intimation of the Grand Signior's Design to take off his Brothers, insisted on their being delivered to their Mother for their Preservation ; and she accordingly took these Princes under her Protection. It was not long, however, before *Mahomet* entertained a Jealousy, that he should be deposed, and that some of his Brothers would be advanced to his Throne in his stead ; and thereupon sent Messengers to *Constantinople* privately, to bring their Heads ; but the Queen-Mother, and the Aga of the Janizaries, who had engaged for their Protection, prevented the Execution ; and when the People were acquainted with the Design, they had recourse to Arms, to the Number of 40,000 ; however, they were soon persuaded to lay down their Arms, and all remained quiet again ; but some of the Chiefs concerned in this Riot were afterwards privately taken off by Command of the Grand Signior.

The *Turks*, in the mean time, continued the Siege of *Candia* all the Winter of 1668 ; and in the Spring of 1669 7000 *French* arrived to reinforce the Garrison, and were
em-

employed soon after their Arrival, in attacking the Enemies Trenches; but being repulsed, they could not be persuaded to remain in the City any longer, the Duke of Noailles, their General, affirming, that he had Orders from the French King to return. The *Turks* no sooner knew that the *French* were retired, but they made a general Assault upon the Town, in which they were, however, repulsed: But the Garison being much diminished, and not able to sustain many more such Assaults, especially as the Enemy had actually made a Lodgment within the Walls already, it was determined to hang out a Flag of Truce; and Hostages being exchanged, the following Terms were agreed on, the 6th of *September*, 1669, viz. That the *Venetians* might embark with Bag and Baggage, and carry off all such Guns, &c. as had been brought into the Town since the Beginning of the Siege; That the Slaves and Prisoners taken on either Side, should be released, which, with some others, were punctually observed; and the *Venetians* returned to the Continent, leaving the *Turks* in Possession of the Island. This Siege, if we compute from the first investing the Place, lasted near twenty-five Years; if we compute from the last Attempt, two Years and a half; There were killed of the *Turks* before this Town 118,000, of the *Venetians* 30,000. The Town was stormed by the *Turks* fifty-six Times: They fought under Ground in the Mines forty-five Times.

A. D.
1669.
7000
French
arrive at
Candia;
but return
home soon
after.

Candia
surrendered.

The *Venetians* made ninety-six Sallies, and they sprung 1173 Mines, and the *Turks* sprung 472.

The *Venetians* spent 50,000 Barrels of Powder, Bombs 48,000, Granades of Brass and Iron 100,000, Granades of Glass 84,000, Cannon Shot 276,000, 18,000,000 of Pounds of Lead.

It is observable, that the *Turks* in this Siege (as they do in every other) forced the Natives to work in the Trenches and Mines, in which no less than 10,000 were destroyed, and many more perished by the Pestilence, which happened soon after the Siege; inasmuch, that when the Grand Vizier left the Island, the Inhabitants did not exceed 22,000, though at the Time the *Turks* invaded it there were 55,000 People in the Island.

The Grand Vizier was so transported with Joy at the Surrender of *Candia*, that he fell to drinking Wine, and kish Soldiers introduced it among the Janizaries, and other *Turkish* Soldiers; who drank to great Excess, and committed such Extravagances, that the Government begun to be apprehensive of an Insurrection; whereupon it was prohibited

The *Turks*
drinking
Wine.

pain of Death, in all Places inhabited by the *Mahometans*; but this Prohibition did not extend to the *Grecian* Islands, or other Provinces of the Empire inhabited by Christians.

Mahomet
murders his
Brother
Orchan.
A. D.
1671.

The Janizaries had talked so freely in their Cups in relation to the Confinement of the Grand Signior's Brothers, that it was thought fit to disperse them, and quarter them in distant Parts of the Empire, remote from *Constantinople*; after which the Grand Signior ventured to take off *Orchan*, the eldest of his surviving Brothers; some say by a Dose of Poison, and others by the Bow-string: Probably this Execution was managed so privately, that very few knew the Manner of it, but certain it is, this Prince was never seen alive after the Year 1671.

1672.
The Cossacks
transfer
their Allegiance to
the Russians.

The *Cossacks* being treated with great Insolence by the *Poles*, revolted to the *Turks*, who beginning to erect Forts in their Country (the *Ukrain*) and reduce it to the Form of a Province, they transferred their Allegiance to the *Russians*, whom they have acknowledged their Sovereigns ever since.

The Turks
take Caminec in
Poland.

The *Turks* invading *Poland* in the Year 1672, took that important frontier Town of *Caminec*, and over-run the Provinces of *Podolia*, *Leopol*, and *Red Russia*, and, by a subsequent Peace, the *Poles* agreed to pay to the Grand Signior a Tribute of 70,000 Dollars annually for those Provinces; and refusing to pay the Tribute at the End of the Year, the *Turks* invaded *Poland* again, but were defeated by the celebrated Prince *Sobieski*, Crown General of *Poland*, who afterwards took the City of *Chotzin*.

1673.
They are
defeated by
Prince
Sobieski.
The Government
of Tripoli
altered.

In the mean time the *Turkish* Bassa of *Tripoli* oppressing the People under his Jurisdiction, and monopolizing all the Prizes taken by the Rovers of that Port, an Insurrection ensued, the Bassa was killed, and the Government entirely altered; for the military Men chose them a Dey or Sovereign out of their own Body, and in all other Respects established a Government like that of *Algiers*. However, they endeavoured to excuse their Conduct to the Grand Signior, made him some rich Presents, and declared that they were ready to admit a Bassa amongst them who might govern with the Advice of the Dey and their chief Officers; which the Grand Signior thought fit to comply with, since the Thing was done, and there was no Remedy.

The Maltese
make
Prize of
the Alexandrian
Fleet.

The Corsairs of *Malta*, *Leghorn*, and other Christian States, meeting with a rich Fleet coming from *Alexandria* to *Constantinople*, with Goods and Merchandise principally designed for the Use of the Court, made Prize of them; which

which was not long after made a Pretence by the Port for entering into a War with the Christians.

The *Turks* invading both *Poland* and *Muscovy*, in the Year 1674, had the good Fortune to retake both *Ghotzim* and *Asoph*.

A. D.
1674.
Chotzim
and *Asoph*
retaken by
the *Turks*.

The Wars between the *Turks* on the one Side, and the *Poles* and *Russians* on the other, continued for several Years with various Success; but at length the *Turks* thought fit to make Peace with those Powers, that they might be at Liberty to renew their War with *Germany*, at a Time when the *French* made a Diversion in their Favour, by attacking *Germany* on the side of the *Rhine*, and Count *Tekeli*, who commanded the *Hungarian* Malcontents, and had lately married the Widow of *Ragotski*, late Prince of *Transilvania*, was ready to join them, on whom the *Turks* had lately conferred the Title of King of *Hungary*: They detached therefore six thousand of their Forces into *Hungary*, by whose Assistance *Tekeli* made himself Master of *Cassovia*, *Eperies*, and several other Towns in *Upper Hungary*, which the *Germans* had possessed themselves of: And in the mean Time the *Turks* assembled one of the most numerous Armies they ever brought into the Field, in order to invade *Germany*.

The *Turks*
commence
a War
with the
Germans.
1682.

The Emperor hereupon made use of every Art to persuade *Tekeli* to abandon the *Turkish* Interest, but such had been the Oppressions and Cruelty exercised on the *Hungarians* many Years by the House of *Austria*, and the *Jesuits*, by whom the Imperial Court was influenced, that the *Hungarians* would hear of no Accommodation: Neither their Religion, or their temporal Rights, could suffer more, they apprehended, under the Dominion of the *Turks*, than they had done under the *Austrians*.

The *Germans* had better Success in their Negotiations with the *Poles*, who concluded an offensive and defensive Alliance with the Empire against the *Turks*.

An Alli-
ance be-
tween the
Germans
and *Poles*.
The *Turks*
take the
Field.

The following Year, 1683, the Grand Signior marched at the Head of his Army to *Belgrade*, where, upon a Muster, he found his Forces amounted to upwards of 200,000 Men: Here the Sultan resided, while *Mustapha* the Grand Vizier advanced with the Army into *Hungary*, where he called a Council of War, and the Siege of *Vienna* being proposed, Count *Tekeli* appeared to be against the Siege, because he foresaw it would unite most of the Princes of *Christendom* in Defence of the Empire; whereas if they established themselves in *Hungary* this Campaign, the *Christian* Princes would not so soon take the Alarm, and they

1683.
The Siege
of *Vienna*
resolved
on.

should be in a better Condition to contend with the *Germans*, when all *Hungary* should be reduced.

The *Bassas* also were generally against besieging *Vienna*, but the Grand Vizier *Mustapha* was determined to attempt it, imagining that the taking the Capital of the *German* Empire would conduce more to his Glory, and contribute more to the enlarging the *Turkish* Dominions, than any Enterprize he could engage in; and the Vizier no sooner declared his Opinion, but the rest of the Generals concurred with him. In order to bring over the rest of the *Hungarians* to their Interest, the *Turks* published a Manifesto, importing, that those who joined them should be protected in their Religion as well as their Rights and Liberties.

The Emperor retires from Vienna to Lints.

The Duke of *Lorrain* who commanded the Imperial Army, being assured that the *Turks* designed to invest the City of *Vienna*, reinforced the other frontier Towns, and retired, not having more than twenty-four thousand Men in his Army, after the Detachments he had made: The Horse, amounting to nine thousand, retired with all imaginable Expedition, and the Foot crossing the *Danube* into the Island of *Schut*, continued their March in Security towards *Vienna*: From whence the Emperor and his Court thought fit to retire to *Lints*, which stands upon the *Danube*, about an hundred Miles west of *Vienna*.

The Trenches opened. A. D. 1683. The Poles join the Germans, raise the Siege, and obtain a signal Victory over the Turks.

The Duke of *Lorrain* left all his Foot in that Capital, of which Count *Staremburg* was Governor, and marched away with the Horse to join the Forces of the *German* Princes, whom he expected were coming to the Relief of *Vienna*: Soon after which the Grand Vizier invested the City, opening the Trenches on the 17th of *July*. The Town was furiously battered, many Assaults given, and Mines sprung, during the Space of two Months; and tho' it was defended by a brave and numerous Garison, it could not have held out much longer, if the *Poles* and *Germans* had not joined on the 31st of *August*, and made Signals that they were coming to their Relief.

On the 12th of *August*, *Sobieski* King of *Poland*, and the Duke of *Lorrain*, with their united Forces, amounting to sixty-five thousand Men, attacked the *Turkish* Army, being still about 120,000 Men, gained a signal Victory, and raised the Siege; but, according to Prince *Cantemir*, the *Turks* killed all their Prisoners, amounting to thirty thousand, before the Battle begun.

The *Turks*, after their Defeat, abandoning their Camp, Cannon, and Baggage, the King of *Poland* took Possession of

of the Grand Vizier's Pavilion that Evening, in which he found an immense Treasure and the richest Moveables.

Two Days after, the Christian Army overtook a considerable Body of *Turks*, which had retired under the Walls of *Barkan*, totally defeated them, and made themselves Masters of the Town: After which they invested *Gran*, (*Strigomium*) which surrendered upon Articles.

The Prime Vizier apprehending his Head must pay for all the ill Success, endeavoured to excuse his Conduct to the Grand Signior, charging the *Bassa* of *Buda* and the *Aga* of the Janizaries with Cowardise and Disobedience to his Orders, and prevailed so far as to get the Grand Signior's Consent to put them to death; but the *Valide* (Queen-Mother) the *Kislar Aga*, and other Courtiers, Friends of the *Bassa* and *Aga* who had been executed, representing Things to the Grand Signior in another Light, caused the Grand Vizier to be strangled, and *Cara Ibrahim*, *Bassa*, was appointed Prime Vizier in his stead.

The Vizier murders the Bassa of Buda, &c.

The Vizier is strangled himself.

A. D. 1684

The *Venetian* Ambassador at *Constantinople* endeavouring to run some Goods on Shore there at this Time, under Pretence they were Part of his Equipage, a Skirmish happened between the Ambassador's Servants and the Custom-House Officers, and the Ambassador was made Prisoner, (though he afterwards made his Escape) which occasioned the renewing the War between the *Venetians* and the Port.

War with Venice revived.

In the mean time the *Germans* laid Siege to the City of *Pest* and took it; they afterwards invested *Buda*, the Capital of *Lower Hungary*, but here they were repulsed; however they defeated two large Detachments of the *Ottoman* Army in *Hungary*.

On the other hand the *Turks* were victorious in *Poland* and in *Moldavia*, they recovered all the Places that had revolted from them in *Moldavia*, and appointed *Constantine Cantemir*, Vayvod or Viceroy of that Province, but as a Pledge of his Fidelity, kept his eldest Son and four of the *Moldavian* Nobility, as Hostages at *Constantinople*.

Turks successful in Poland and Moldavia.

The *Venetians* were very successful against the *Turks* this Year, taking several Places from them, both on the Continent and Islands of the *Archipelago*.

The Year following the *Turks* laid Siege to *Gran*, and fortified their Camp so strongly, that it was not easy to approach it; but the Duke of *Lorrain* by a Stratagem drew them out of their Fortifications, and totally defeated their Army, and in their Flight the Janizaries fell upon the *Spahis*, unhorfed them, and having killed great Numbers, fled away upon their Horses. It is computed that more of the

1685.
Defeated in Hungary.

Spahis

Spahis were killed that Day by the Janizaries than by the Germans.

The Germans took several other Towns in Hungary and Sclavonia from Tekeli and the Turks; and Tekeli's Fidelity to the Port being suspected, he was apprehended, and sent Prisoner to Constantinople; but the Prime Vizier Ibrahim being deposed, and Solymán, Bassa, succeeding him, declared Tekeli innocent, and sent him into Hungary again, to command the Malcontents.

Buda taken.

A. D.
1686.

1st September.

The Year following, on the 7th of June, the Imperialists invested Buda, the strongest Fortrefs in Hungary, and great Numbers of noble Volunteers joining the Christians, from almost every Country in Europe, never was any Town more briskly attacked, or more bravely defended than this. The Grand Vizier several Times attempted to throw Relief into the Place, and some few did get in, but the Turks were generally repulsed; however, the Town held out till their brave Governor was killed, and the Garrison afterwards sustained a general Assault with great Courage; but finding themselves overpowered, hung out a white Flag, on the 22d of August, but rather too late, for some of the Germans having entered the Town first, their Fury could not be restrained, till most of the Garrison were cut to Pieces. There were not more than two thousand that had Quarter given them. This City had been in the Possession of the Turks 145 Years.

Buda being taken, the Grand Vizier retired towards Belgrade; whereupon the Imperialists reduced Segedin, Quinque Ecclesie, and some other Hungarian Towns, and defeated several Bodies of Turks and Tartars.

Venetians recover the Morca, &c. from the Turks.
A. D.
1687.

The Venetians also were very successful this Campaign, taking Coron, Napoli de Romania, Corinth, Athens, and most part of the Morca: These Losses made the Turks very serious; their Clergy called upon them to fast and pray, and forsake their Sins, especially Sodomy, to which they were much addicted.

The Turks defeated by the Germans.

The Soldiery at the same Time grew mutinous, ascribing their ill Success to the Incapacity or Corruption of their Governors; and what encreased the Sedition was another Defeat the Germans, commanded by Prince Lewis of Baden, gave them the next Year, in which Battle eight thousand Janizaries, and five thousand Spahis were killed or taken. The Remainder of these Bodies laying the Blame of their Defeat upon each other, came to Blows; in which Encounters seven or eight hundred were killed.

The

The *Poles* marching into *Moldavia* this Year had several War be- Engagements with the *Tartars*, with various Success, the *Poles* lost more by Sicknefs than the Sword; and to com- Poles and pleat their Misfortunes, the *Tartars* poisoned the Waters, the Tar- by which many thousands of the *Poles* lost their Lives,, and tars. their Army returned home very much diminished.

The Duke of *Lorrain* obtained another Victory. over the Grand Vizier at *Mohats* the first of *August*; whereupon the *Turks* retired to *Belgrade*, and the *Imperialists* subdued *Slavonia* and *Transylvania*; which contributed to the Dis- affection that already appeared in the *Turkish* Army. They took upon them now to elect *Sciavus*, Bassa, their General, and threatening the Life of the Grand Vizier, he fled to *Constantinople*, where he was in no less Danger; the Sultan could not protect him, but was compelled by the Army to send them his Head, with the Heads of the Trea- surer, Secretary, and several other great Officers of State; nor would this satisfy them, they broke out into open Re- Mahomet bellion, deposed the Grand Signior, and set his Brother deposed, *Solyman* upon the Throne; one Pretence for which was, that he had given Orders for the strangling *Solyman* and his Brother *Achmet*, when he heard of the Mutiny of the Sol- diery, as the only Means that could preserve him, there being no other Branches of the *Ottoman* Family left but *Ma- homet* and his Children; and the *Turks* it seems dread nothing so much as the Extinction of this Line.

Mahomet was deposed in *November* 1687, in the fifty- third Year of his Age, and the forty-first of his Reign; and, what is very unusual, was suffered to live five Years afterwards, and died a natural Death in the *Seraglio* at last. He left by different Wives seven Sons, of whom *Mustapha* and *Achmet* came to the Throne, but he was succeeded im- mediately by his Brother *Solyman*.

Solyman II. being informed that his Brother *Mahomet* *Solyman* was deposed, and that he was universally acknowledged Em- II. his Ac- peror, as well by the Soldiery as by the Grand Vizier, cession, Bassas and Ministers of State, was in great Suspence how A. D. he should behave on the Occasion. The Bassa deputed to 1687. attend him with the joyful News he apprehended was the Messenger of Death at first; and he pretended he had no Ambition to mount the Throne, having devoted himself intirely to Religion; but when he was assured of the Truth of the Fact, he suffered himself to be saluted Sultan; but could he have foreseen the Troubles that immediately suc- ceeded his Accession, he would have chosen a private Life in good earnest, rather than such a Crown. The Soldiers Pay being

being in Arrear, and no Money in the Treasury to discharge it, or to satisfy the usual Demand of a Bounty expected by the Janizaries, on a Vacancy of the Throne, the Soldiers broke out into Rebellion, and murdered the Grand Vizier in his Palace, which he defended with abundance of Bravery, killing some hundreds of the Janizaries, before they could force their Way into it; but he was at length overpowered, and died fighting; after which they cut his Body in small Pieces, and threw them into the Street: Then they broke into the Womens Apartment (which the *Turks* are scarce ever known to violate) cut off the Noses, Hands and Feet of the Vizier's Wife and Sister, and dragged them naked through the Streets. After this, they plundered and killed all they suspected to be Friends to the late Vizier, and had plundered the whole City, if the Clergy had not interposed and prevented it: The Riot being appeased, *Coja Ismael* was appointed Prime Vizier, who being as little a Friend to Tumults as his Predecessor, was, with the Concurrence of the Grand Signior, about to apprehend the chief Incendiaries, and put them to Death; of which the Soldiery having Notice, assembled in a rebellious Manner, and threatened to depose the Grand Signior, as well as the Vizier; whereupon *Mustapha*, Basha, advised the *Sultan*, to throw the whole Blame on the Vizier, and declare that he had no Authority from him to attempt any thing of that Nature; and to give a Colour to this, he deposed the Vizier, and banished him to the Isle of *Rhodes*, and *Mustapha*, Basha, was appointed Vizier in his stead. During these Insurrections in the Capital City, there were others in *Asia* and *Europe*, on Pretence of Arrears due to the Spahis, who took upon them to plunder the Country, and pay themselves.

In the mean time, the *Turks* having no considerable Army on the Frontiers, the *Imperialists* took Towns, and extended their Frontiers with very little Opposition. They Took *Agria*, one of the strongest Fortresses in upper *Hungary*; and *Montgats*, which had sustained a Siege of three Years, defended by that Heroine the Lady of Count *Tekeli*; but she was obliged to surrender that Castle, in the Year 1688, and become a Prisoner to the *Imperialists*, who sent her to *Vienna*. The same Year the Duke of *Bavaria*, who commanded the *Imperialists*, made himself Master of *Alba Regalis* and *Belgrade*; and Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* obtained a Victory over the *Turks* in *Bosnia*. The *Venetians* had equal Success in *Dalmatia* and *Greece*; which induced the *Turks* to offer their Enemies very advantageous Terms of Peace; and a Peace had actually been concluded with the Christians,

Christians, if *Lewis XIV.* had not apprehended that the Emperor would grow too powerful, unless a Stop should be put to his Conquests; he persuaded the Grand Signior therefore to continue the War, promising to make such a Diversion on the *Rhine*, that the *Germans* should be obliged to withdraw their Forces from the Frontiers of *Turky*. He went further, and engaged, that if their Arms should prosper, he would divide the Emperor's Dominions with the *Turks*, he would restore *Hungary*, *Transilvania*, and *Sclavonia*, to the Grand Signior, and reserve *Vienna* and *Germany* to himself.

It is very true, when *Vienna* was besieged by the *Turks*, *Lewis XIV.* withdrew his Forces from the *Rhine*, he had no more mind that the Grand Signior should possess *Germany* and *Turky*, and become his next Neighbour, than he had to see the Emperor Master of *Germany* and *Turky*. Either of these Powers, by such an Accession to their Dominions, would have been superior to *France*.

But at this Time the *French King* promising the *Turks* to increase his Army to 400,000 Men, and invade the Empire, all Thoughts of Peace were laid aside; though still the *German Arms* were successful. They reduced *Widin*, *Nissa*, and *Scopia*, and subdued all *Servia*.

The *Turks* imputing their ill Success in some Measure to the ill Conduct of the Prime Vizier *Mustapha*, he was deposed, and *Kioprili*, *Bassa*, made Vizier in his Stead; but the chief Cause of their Misfortunes they ascribed to the Viciousness of the Age, and particularly to their Sodomitical Practices, ordering, that all Boys kept for those leud Purposes should be banished or put to Death: Prayers and Fasting also were enjoined, to avert the Vengeance of Heaven, and for the Success of their Arms, to which, no Doubt, they ascribed their future Successes; however, they did not depend altogether on these; but having raised a numerous Army, entered into an Alliance with *France*, and sent Assistance to the *Hungarian* Malcontents, and then took the Field, with some Assurance of Success. In the Beginning of the Campaign 1689, they recovered *Nissa*, *Widen* and *Semendria*; and before the End of the Summer, took that important City of *Belgrade*, the Capital of *Servia*, the Magazine of Powder unfortunately blowing up, and demolishing great part of the Wall. After this, the Grand Vizier passed the *Danube*, and defeated the *Imperialists* in *Transilvania*, restoring that Principality to *Tekeli*; but Prince *Lewis of Baden*, who commanded the *Germans*, recovered that Province again soon after, and *Tekeli* was compelled to take Refuge in *Turky*,
from

from whence he never after returned: The Grand Vizier however returning to *Constantinople*, was received with great Applause, for the Successes of this Campaign; and the *French* Ambassador celebrated the Victories of the *Turks* at *Constantinople* for three Days, at a very great Expence, shewing how much his Master had contributed to the Successes of the Infidels, by his Invasion and Destruction of the Palatinate of the *Rhine*; but in the midst of these Rejoicings, the Grand Signior *Solyman* died of a Dropsy, in the 53d Year of his Age, and the 4th of his Reign, anno 1691. He was esteemed a pious Prince, but credulous, and of no great Genius.

Achmet's
Accession,
A. D.
1691.

Achmet II. succeeded to the Throne, purely by the Interest of the Grand Vizier, for the People were generally inclined to have set *Mustapha* or *Achmet* the Sons of *Mahomet* upon the Throne, and some were for restoring *Mahomet* himself; but the advancing any of these might have proved dangerous to the Vizier; if *Mahomet* had been restored, he might have expected his Resentment for his being instrumental in the deposing him, and his two Sons were remarkable for their Parts and Learning, and would not suffer him to govern, with that uncontrolled Authority probably he had hitherto exercised; he chose therefore to advance *Achmet* a younger Brother of *Solyman*, one of no great Genius, whom he could easily manage, and the Successes of the Vizier the last Campaign had rendered him so popular, that the People were content at length to submit to his Choice, and *Achmet* was thereupon acknowledged Emperor: This however occasioned a Conspiracy against the Vizier, by the *Kissar* Aga, and the Ministers in the *Seraglio*, who had lost much of their Authority, by the Vizier's taking the sole Management of Affairs into his Hands; and they had prevailed on the weak Sultan to dismiss him from his Post, and would probably have taken his Head, if the Conspiracy had not been discovered by a Mute, a Creature of the Vizier's, who by the Motion of their Lips and their Actions, discovered the Designs of the Conspirators, which the Vizier communicating to the *Janizaries*, and the rest of the Soldiery, who were infinitely fond of their successful General, he turned the Tables upon them, procured some of his Enemies to be banished, and others strangled; after which he assembled the Army, and passed the *Danube*, designing to lay Siege to *Buda*: Whereupon Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* determined to give him Battle, but sending for five Thousand *Germans* to join him; before he engaged, they were intercepted by the Vizier, and all of them

them cut to Pieces, or made Prisoners; and the Prince's Army was so disadvantageously posted, that he could not easily make a Retreat: The Vizier having possessed the Passes and Avenues to the *German* Camp, and cut off their Provisions, the Prince found himself under a Necessity of fighting with an Army much inferior to that of the *Turks*, and had infallibly been defeated, if the Vizier had not been killed in the Heat of the Action. This gave a Turn to the Battle; the Janizaries immediately retired, and the rest of the *Turks* followed their Example; whereupon the Prince obtained a compleat Victory. The *Turks* lost 28,000 Men, with their Cannon, Camp and Baggage: The *Germans* lost three Thousand, besides the five thousand that were cut off before the general Battle. This Victory was obtained near *Salankamen* on the *Danube*, on the 19th Day of *August* 1691, and the *Imperialists* soon after made themselves Masters of *Waradin*; which Successes induced the *Turks* to think of Peace, from which they were diverted however by the *French* Ambassador, who assured the *Turks*, that the *Germans* would be obliged to withdraw their Troops from their Frontiers, having occasion for all of them to oppose the *French* upon the *Rhine*.

The War with the *Venetians* was still carried on by the *Turks* with various Success. After the *Venetians* had made themselves entirely Masters of the *Morea*, they made a Descent on the Island of *Candia*, and laid Siege to the City of *Canea*, but were obliged to raise it by the *Turks*; but met with better Success in *Dalmatia*.

The War still continued between the *Turks* and *Tartars* on one Side, and the *Poles* on the other; and some Overtures of Peace were made between these Powers, the latter end of the Campaign, but nothing concluded; whereupon the Cham of *Tartary* made an Incurfion into *Hungary*, burning and plundering that Country in a dreadful Manner, but was surrounded by the *Germans* and most of his Troops killed or made Prisoners.

The *Venetians*, in the mean time, reduced the Island of *Chios*, and were about making a Descent in the *Lesser Asia*, in order to lay Siege to *Smyrna*, but were diverted from it by the *English*, *French*, and *Dutch* Consuls, who represented, that their Masters would certainly demand Satisfaction for the Damage their Factories would sustain by such a Siege.

In the mean timè Emir *Mahomet*, an *Arabian* Prince, attacked the *Turkish* Pilgrims, and their Convoy, in their March to *Mecca*, and laid Siege to *Mecca* itself, and was with

with Difficulty prevailed on to raise the Siege; so little do the *Arabian* Princes imagine themselves subject or dependent on the Grand Signior, the Caravans of Pilgrims are never safe, unless the *Turks* send an Army with them for their Protection. This Emir appears to have been so powerful, that he defeated all the *Turkish* Forces sent against him.

Sultan *Achmet* having reigned four Years, died in *Janudry* 1695, in the fifty-first Year of his Age. He appears to have been a weak Prince, changing his Ministers almost every Day, upon slight Suggestions of their Disaffection; and no great Success could be expected from such an unsteady Conduct.

Mustapha's Accession,
A. D.
1695-6.

Mustapha II. the eldest surviving Son of *Mahomet* IV. succeeded his Uncle *Achmet* in the Throne, to the general Joy of the People, being a Prince of a mature Age, who wanted neither Sense nor Courage; from whence they conjectured this would prove a happy Reign. The Prime Vizier only privately opposed his Advancement, expecting to be called to a severe Account by a Prince thus qualified: He would rather have seen *Ibrahim*, the Son of *Achmet*, on the Throne, an Infant of three Years of Age, during whose Minority he might have had the sole Direction of Affairs: However, when he found both the Court and the Army agreed to recognize *Mustapha*, he appeared as forward as any of them to pay his Duty to this Prince; and was confirmed in the Office of Prime Vizier, till *Mustapha* found an Opportunity of cutting him off, on pretence of some Maladministration; for he was not ignorant of the Vizier's Attempts to deprive him of the Empire, on the Death of the late Sultan.

His Success
against the
Germans.

Mustapha finding an empty Treasury, and being determined to command the Army in *Hungary* in Person, he laid heavy Fines on all such Bassas and Ministers as had shared the Spoils of the Empire in the late Reign; and this not being sufficient, he imposed a Tax on most of the wealthy Men in his Dominions: After which he assembled an Army of 120,000 Men, anno 1697, passed the *Danube*, and took *Lippa*; and receiving Advice, that General *Veterani* commanded a separate Army of 7 or 8000 *Germans*, he fell upon that Body, and entirely defeated him, returning in Triumph to *Constantinople* amidst the loud Acclamations of the People, who looked upon him as the Restorer of the *Ottoman* Glory.

The *Poles* suffered their Country to be miserably plundered and harassed this Campaign by the *Tartars*, without much

much Opposition: And *Peter*, Czar of *Muscovy*, their Ally, besieged *Asoph* in vain, being obliged to rise from before it. The *Turks* also were successful at Sea this Year, recovering the Island of *Chios* from the *Venetians*, and defeating several of their Squadrons; so happily began the Reign of *Mustapha*, and so might it have continued, if the *French*, who drew them into the War, and prevented their accepting Peace, had not deserted them, made Peace with the *Germans* themselves, without including their Allies the *Turks* in the Treaty, and left them to contend singly with the whole *German Empire* and *Russia*. *and Vene-
tians.
The
French
desert the
Turks.*

The next Year the Elector of *Saxony*, the Imperial General, besieged *Temeswaer*; but upon the Approach of *Mustapha* abandoned that Enterprize. The *Turks*, however, did not seem very confident of Success, but entrenched themselves when they came in Sight of the *Imperialists*; and instead of attacking the *Christians*, remained in their Trenches, until they were attacked by them. The *Germans* entered the *Turkish* Camp, and made a great Slaughter of their Enemies, but were at length repulsed; however, the *Turks* did not think fit to pursue them: And thus ended the Campaign on that Side. But the *Russians* laying Siege to *Asoph* again this Year, made themselves Masters of that important Frontier Town, situate at the Mouth of the River *Don*; whereby they opened a Communication with the *Euxine Sea*, and even with the capital City of *Constantinople*. *Asoph
taken by
the Rus-
sians.*

And now the *French* having made Peace with the Allies, and left the *Germans* at Liberty to march their Forces from the *Rhine* to the Frontiers of *Turky*, *Mustapha's* good Fortune began to desert him; he had to deal with a more powerful Body of *Germans*, than had appeared in *Hungary* for many Years, and commanded by Prince *Eugene* of *Savoy*, one of the greatest Generals of the Age, who fell upon them at *Olach*, anno 1697, while they were at Variance among themselves, killed 30,000 of the *Turks*, among whom were the Prime Vizier, and most of the great Bassas; but the Sultan being at some Distance from the Field of Battle, escaped with his Guards to *Temeswaer*, leaving his Camp, Cannon, Baggage and Provisions to the Victors; so that a great many that had escaped the Sword perished afterwards by Famine. *The Turks
defeated at
Olach.*

This Defeat of the *Turkish* Army induced them to think in earnest of a Peace; and a Treaty was soon after entered into by the Mediation of *Great-Britain* and *Holland*; Lord *Paget* for *Great-Britain*, and Mr. *Collier* for the States General,

Treaty of
Carlo-
witz.

A. D.
1699.

neral, acting the Parts of Mediators; and the *Turks* did not only treat of Peace with the *Germans* at this Time, but with the *Venetians*, the *Poles* and the *Russians*, the principal Articles being as follow: That the Emperor should retain all he had possessed himself of in *Hungary* and *Transilvania*; that the *Venetians* should enjoy the *Morea*, and all they were possessed of in *Dalmatia*; that *Kaminec* and *Podolia* should be restored to *Poland*, and that *Asoph* should be confirmed to the *Russians*: The Peace between *Leopold*, Emperor of *Germany*, and *Mustapha*, the Grand Signior, was signed at *Carlowitz*, on the 26th of *January*, 1699.

The Concessions made by the Grand Signior to the above-said Powers seemed so ignominious and disadvantageous to the *Turks*, that it laid the Foundation of *Mustapha's* Ruin; though some ascribe it chiefly to his Indulgence of the *Mufti*, by whose Advice he was entirely governed, while the *Vizier* and the rest of the Ministers were no more considered than so many Cyphers, which induced them to conspire the Deposition of the Sultan.

An Insur-
rection at
the Port.

It was said publickly, that the *Mufti* farmed out the public Offices, or sold them to the best Bidders: That his own Family had ingrossed the most profitable Posts in the Empire, and that he made no Scruple in issuing his *Fetfa's* for deposing the greatest Ministers, to make room for his own Creatures; that he had alienated the Hearts of the Grand Signior's Subjects by his Oppressions, and made them look upon him as a Tyrant. In *July* following some hundreds of the *Zebidgis* (who have the Care of the Arms) set up a Standard in the *Etmeydan* (a great Square) in *Constantinople*, proclaiming, that every good *Mussulman*, as he valued the ancient Laws and Customs, and his Liberty, should repair thither. They were soon joined by others of the *Soldiery*; but the *Zebidgi Bassa*, who was a Creature of the *Mufti's*, hid himself, lest he should be compelled to appear at the Head of them. The *Topigis*, or *Gunners*, soon after repaired to the Standard of the *Malcontents*; whereupon they marched in a Body towards the *Seraglio*; and meeting with the *Vice Aga* of the *Janizaries*, with a Detachment of those Troops who were going to post themselves in the *Seraglio*, the *Janizaries* all deserted their *Aga*, and came over to them, demanding their Colours of their Commander; but he pretending he had left them at home, a Soldier, at one Blow, cleft his Head with a Sabre, and took the Colours out of his Bosom; and, having fastened them to a Pike-staff, proclaimed, that if any of their Body did not repair to the Standard, they should be

be deemed Infidels: Whereupon all the Janizaries were immediately assembled, and marched with the Zebidgis, to invest the Seraglio; where knocking at the Iron Gate, and using some Threats if it was not opened, the Bostangis or Porters, who were no less disaffected than the rest, soon let them in; whereupon the Caimacan, the Musti's Son, fled, and the Bostangi Bassa, or Captain of the Bostangi, upon Promise of his Life, and the Post he held, consented to come over to them.

The Spahis also joined the Malcontents; for the most general Complaint among the Soldiery was their Want of Pay; and several young Fellows in *Constantinople* having entered themselves in some of these Bodies, they were now encreased into a considerable Army; whereupon they resolved to leave a Garison in the Seraglio, and encamp at the *Etmeydan*, round which Square the Janizaries have their ordinary Quarters. Here they chose one *Achmet*, Bassa, who was then at his Country Seat near the *Bosphorus*, or Strait of the *Black Sea*, for Prime Vizier; and having dragged him from his Retirement against his Will, compelled him to accept of the Command. They proceeded afterwards to nominate a certain Molla, or Doctor, for their Musti, an Aga of the Janizaries, and other Officers of the Army. They constituted also Viziers of the Bench, a new Reis Effendi, or Chancellor, and other Members of the Divan; and published a Manifesto, with their new Musti's Fetfa added to it, summoning the Grand Signior to appear before the *Char Alla* (a Tribunal so sacred, that whoever refuses to obey the Citation, is deemed an Infidel) requiring him to deliver up the old Musti to the People: And this Manifesto they sent to the Court at *Adrianople*.

They received Advice soon after, that the Grand Signior had imprisoned their Deputies, by whom they had sent their Manifesto, and had promised great Rewards to the *Albanians*, and other Troops, to encourage them to defend him against his rebellious Subjects, as he styled the Malcontents: That the Sultan's Musti had published a Fetfa in the City of *Adrianople*; and in the Army, declaring the People of *Constantinople* Conspirators, Infidels and Rebels, divorced from their Wives, and unworthy to bear the Name of Mussulmen, and ought to be extirpated for their Rebellion, exhorting all true Mussulmen to take up Arms for the Emperor, against them: Whereupon the Musti of the Malcontents issued a like Fetfa against the Kyfilbashi, as they styled the Musti, and his Adherents, which is the Term they give the *Persian* Heretics.

On the 8th of *August* the Malcontents held a great Council, wherein they came to a Resolution, that their Emperor, Sultan *Mustapha*, having neglected to appear before the Grand Tribunal three *Fridays* since the Summons issued, had forfeited his Crown by Law, and that they would proceed to depose him, and set another on the Throne; which their Mufti confirmed by his Fetfa; and this Judgment being reduced to Writing, was carried by a Janizary on the Point of a Spear through the City and Army.

A Council being held soon after by the Malcontents, it was proposed to place *Ibrahim*, Cousin to Sultan *Mustapha*, upon the Throne, as most agreeable to the Army; but their Vizier and the Caimacan opposed it, urging, that this would violate the Order of Succession, and give a Discredit to their Cause: Whereupon it was at length agreed to set up Sultan *Achmet*, the only Brother and Heir of the present Emperor.

In the mean while the Troops marched and encamped at *Dabout Pacha*, to the Number of 65,000 Men, where their Artillery was already arrived, and were soon after joined by 7 or 8000 more from *Asia*. All the Gates of *Constantinople* were now shut up, except two, at which strong Guards were placed; and an Oath was administered to the Army of the Malcontents, whereby they engaged not to lay down their Arms till their Grievances were redressed.

The Malcontents continuing their March towards *Adrianople*, the Army of the Royalists amounting to 80,000 Men, commanded by the Kiaca Bey, advanced half a Day's Journey from that City to meet them; and arriving within Cannon Shot of the Enemy, Orders were given for the Attack; but the Army of the Royalists, instead of preparing for the Engagement, deserted over to the Enemy most of them, the Janizaries refusing to fight for that *Kysilbashi* (Heretic) the Mufti, as they called him: Whereupon their General, the Kiaca himself, also declared for the Malcontents; and the Armies immediately united, except a small Body of *Albanians*, who retired to the Emperor's Pavilion, giving him an Account how basely he had been deserted by the rest of the Army. The Sultan hereupon immediately mounted his Horse, and retreated to the Seraglio at *Adrianople*, there to attend his Fate; and his Prime Vizier and the Mufti fled for their Lives.

Sultan
Mustapha
deposed.

The Malcontents then sent their Aga of the Janizaries, the Bostangi Bassa, the Zebidgi Bassa, and the Spahiler Bassa, each with 2000 of their respective Troops to the Seraglio at *Adrianople*, to demand Sultan *Achmet*, and proclaim

claim him Emperor. These Generals arriving before the Gates of the Palace, a Janizary made Proclamation, that Sultan *Achmet* was elected Emperor by the Army and People, requiring him to come out to them, and take the Government upon him. Sultan *Mustapha* hereupon appearing, the Zebidgi Bassa declared to him, that he was no longer Emperor, having forfeited his Crown; and desired his Brother might be brought out to them. Sultan *Mustapha*, without making any Reply, went and fetched his Brother *Achmet* out of the Prison where the Princes of the Blood are kept, and presented him to them, and then withdrew, without the least Murmur or Complaint at the Treatment he had met with from his Subjects.

Sultan *Achmet* being solemnly proclaimed Emperor, and all the great Officers and Generals having paid their Homage to him, Search was made through the City of *Adrianople* for the late Mufti, *Fessalla Effendi*. The unhappy Mufti was at length taken, just as he was about to embark on the *Black Sea*; whereupon he was put into a Peasant's Waggon, and brought back to *Adrianople*; where he was made Bassa of *Sophia*, to prepare him for Execution; for now, it seems, he was looked upon as a Layman, and no longer their supreme Pontif; who, as such, the *Turks* seem to confess, ought not to be subject to any human Judicature: But as their Priests take upon them the Priestly Office without any Consecration, so there needs no other Ceremony to degrade them, or make Laymen of them again, than their holding some secular Employment.

The Mufti was afterwards put to the Rack, to oblige him to confess where his Money and Effects were deposited, which on these Occasions always fall to the Sultan; and then he was delivered into the Hands of the Soldiery, who were most exasperated against him. They set him upon an Ass, with his Face to the Tail, which they obliged him to hold in his Hand; and thus mounted, a poor Jew took the Halter of the Ass in his Hand, and led him through all the principal Streets of the City, the Mob crying before him, *This is the Man who has given pernicious Advice to Emperors, violated the Laws he ought to maintain, and enriched himself at the public Expence: Behold the Kysilbash* (Persian Heretic.) And when they had brought him to the *Beitbazar*, or *Louise-Market* (the Name given to a Place where old Cloaths are sold) meeting with two Greek Priests who had been at a Funeral, and had their Censers still in their Hands, they compelled them to walk behind the Ass; and soon after forcing the old Mufti to dismount, and kneel down in the

Sultan Achmet's Accession.
A. D.
1703.

The late Mufti tortured and murdered.

Middle of the Market, one of the Soldiers severed his Head from his Body.

These Executions being over, the new Emperor set forward for *Constantinople*, and arrived at *Dahout Basbaw* in the Neighbourhood of that City, on the fifteenth of *September*, appointing the Ceremony of his Coronation, or rather Installation, to be the eighteenth of the same Month, in the Mosque of *Yup*, or *Jub*, situate in *Ypte*, one of the Suburbs of *Constantinople*. This Mosque, they tell us, took its Name from some celebrated Captain and Mussulman buried there, generally said to be *Job*: Here they keep the Standard of *Mahomet*, and an old Sabre said to be worn by him. And the girding this Sabre of the Prophet on the Emperor at his Accession, is equivalent to the Ceremony of setting a Crown upon the Prince's Head with us; and this ought to be performed by the Adgi Becktasse, who is always a Descendant from *Job*, according to Tradition.

Achmet
displaces
the Officers
who occasioned this
Revolution.

Achmet, soon after his Accession, displaced the Prime Vizier, the Aga of the Janizaries, and all the great Officers, who had brought about the late Revolution in his Favour; the Reason whereof was said to be, that they assumed a Power of governing the State as they saw fit, and suffered the Emperor to enjoy little more than the Name and Ensigns of Sovereignty.

Greek
Christians
put to
death for
turning
Papists.

The *French* Emissaries and Missionaries appearing very busy about this Time in making Profelytes to the *Roman* Catholic Faith, among the *Greek* Christians in the *Turkish* Empire, in which they met with great Success, that Government, which never approved the Conduct of the *Roman* Priests and Jesuits, in preaching up the Independency of the Church on the Civil Powers, prohibited the *Greek* Christians turning Papists on pain of Death; and actually executed some of them, who had been seduced to change their Religion; which put a Stop to those Conversions.

War with
Russia.

The King of *Sweden*, after his Defeat at *Pultowa* in 1709, retiring to *Bender*, in the *Turkish* Territories, met with a very kind Reception there. He appears to have had such an Influence on the Grand Signior as to prevail on him to declare War against *Moscow* the Year following, the Pretence for which War was, that the Czar's Forces had pursued the King of *Sweden* into the Dominions of *Turky*.

The War being declared, the Czar marched with a Body of 70,000 Men into *Moldavia*, where he was joined by the Vayvod, or Prince of that Country, who had assured the Czar, that the *Moldavians* were well-affected to him; and this induced him to march further into the *Turkish*

Ter-

Territories, than in Prudence he ought to have done, before he had established Magazines, and made such Provision as is usual in marching into an Enemy's Country; and neither the *Walachians* or *Moldavians*, in whom he had great Expectations, joining him as they had promised, he was reduced to very great Streights, losing almost one half of his Army by Famine or Diseases; the rest, being ready to perish for want of Food, and closely pursued by the *Turks*, intrenched themselves on a Spot of Ground almost surrounded by the River *Pruth*. In this Situation they were three several times attacked by the Janizaries, Sabre in Hand, and the *Russians* as often repulsed them, anno 1711; which a little abated the Courage of the *Turks*, and made them wait for their Artillery before they would venture to charge again. The next Day the *Turks* fired upon the *Muscovite* Intrenchments from two hundred Pieces of their Artillery (having no less than six hundred brass Guns in their Train) and the *Muscovites* answered with theirs, which did not consist of more than a hundred Pieces in all, but did more Execution with them, having better Engineers. However, after about an Hour's firing, the *Muscovites* hung out a white Flag, and desired to capitulate; which the *Turks* agreed to; and a Truce was signed that very Day, wherein the Czar obliged himself to surrender *Asoph*, and demolish his Forts towards the Mouth of the *Don* or *Tanais*, and to evacuate *Poland*.

Battle of the Pruth.

A Treaty.

Asoph ceded to the

The *Turks* having entertained the King of *Sweden* at *Bender* a considerable Time, began to be weary of the Expence, and advised him to return home, and upon his Refusal withdrew the Pension or Thaim that had been hitherto allowed him; notwithstanding which he found Means to build him a little Palace at *Bender*, as if he designed to remain there some Years longer; and when the Troops which were sent to convoy him to the Frontiers, desired him to appoint a Time to begin his March, he gave them no Answer, but directed his Minister at *Adrianople*, to demand a thousand Purfes (amounting to 500,000 Dollars) to defray the Expence of his Journey; and the Grand Signior thereupon sent him 1200 Purfes, but ordered the Bassa not to pay the Money until he began his March; however, the King declaring he would set out on a certain Day, the Bassa ventured to let him have the Money, which being paid away to the People to whom he was indebted, he refused to go till he had a fresh Supply; whereupon he was given to understand, if he did not leave *Bender* he would be forced to it. To which he replied, He should

1200
Purfes lent the King of Sweden.

*The King
of Sweden
attacked in
his Palace,*

*returns to
his Domi-
nions.*

*The Turks
take the
Morea
from the
Venetians,
A. D.
1715.*

*The Turks
defeated at
Carlowitz,
1716.*

repel Force by Force, and that he would not begin his March without a thousand Purfes more, and immediately fet his People to work to fortify his Quarters; whereupon the Baffa who had paid him the 1200 Purfes, being fenfible he fhould lofe his Head for letting him have the Money before he began his March, ordered his Forces to attack the King's little Palace, where he had about 1500 Men, that joined him after his Defeat at *Pultowa*. The King defended himfelf very obftinately, killing great Numbers of the *Turks*, and lofing Abundance of his own Men, but being overpowered at length, he was taken Prifoner, and fent to *Demirtafh* near *Adrianople*; where he was told; he might remain as long as he lived if he thought fit, they would fupply him with Neceffaries, but ordered very little Money to be paid him. The Baffa of *Bender* and the Cham of *Tartary* were fufficiently punifhed for the Favour they had fhewn the King of *Sweden*, in letting him have 1200 Purfes; the Baffa was banifhed to a little Ifland, and all his Effects feized; the Cham was depofed and his Brother advanced in his ftead. The King of *Sweden* having remained a Year longer in *Turky*, intimated to that Court, that he was defirous to return to his own Kingdom; whereupon the Grand Signior made him a handfome Prefent, and ordered him to be convoyed to the Frontiers; after which he paffed, *incognito*, to his own Dominions.

The Grand Signior depofed the Hofpodar of *Walachia* about the fame time, for introducing the *Ruffians* into the *Turkifh* Dominions, and commanded the Nobility to elect Prince *Stephen* their Vayvod in his ftead.

The *Turks* being at Peace with moft of the Powers of *Europe*, invaded the *Morea*, anno 1715, pretending the *Venetians* had broken the Articles of Peace, and reduced the whole Country in one Campaign; at which the Emperor of *Germany* being alarmed, declared War againft the Port, anno 1716; and Prince *Eugene* the Imperial General, attacking the *Turkifh* Army confifting of 200,000 Men and upwards, on the 5th of *Auguft* that Year, near *Carlowitz* on the *Danube*, made a dreadful Slaughter of the *Turks*, took their Cannon, Tents, and Baggage; the Grand Vizir and Aga of the Janizaries were killed, with near 100,000 more: And the *Turks* having with another Army invaded *Corfu*, and almoft reduced the whole Ifland, were forced to abandon it again, on News of their Defeat at *Carlowitz*, and before the End of the Campaign Prince *Eugene* took the City of *Temefwaer*.

The

The next Year, 1717, the Imperial General, Prince Eugene of Savoy, laid Siege to *Belgrade*, Capital of *Servia*, defeated at which the *Turks* coming to relieve with an Army of *Belgrade*. 200,000 Men, were defeated, and two Days after the City of *Belgrade* surrendered. A. D. 1717.

This Series of ill Success induced the *Turks* to propose Peace between the Terms of Peace, and a Treaty was set on foot in the Year 1718, by the Mediation of *England* and *Holland*: Where- in it was agreed on the 21st of *July*, That each Party should remain possessed of the Places and Territories they had reduced during the War; whereby the Emperor was confirmed Sovereign of the greatest Part of the Province of *Servia*, but the *Venetians* lost that fine Province of the *Morea*. 1718.

The *Turks* being at Peace with the *Christians*, turned their Arms against the *Persians* (in the Year 1722,) who were then engaged in Civil Wars among themselves, and took from them *Hamadan*, *Tauris*, and several other frontier Towns, exercising very great Cruelties on the Inhabitants of the rich and populous Town of *Tauris*; but *Kouli Kan*, who usurped the Throne of *Persia*, gaining several Victories over the *Turks*, afterwards recovered all the Places they had taken from the *Persians*. 1722.

The ill Success of the *Turks*, both in *Europe* and *Asia*, was fatal to Sultan *Achmet* the Grand Signior; he was at his Palace of *Scutari*, on the *Asian* Side of the *Bosphorus*, on the 17th of *September* 1730, when one of the *Janizaries*, named *Patrona*, set up a Standard or Colours at *Constantinople*, inviting all true *Musfulmen* to resort to it, and great Numbers of *Janizaries*, and other *Malcontents*, immediately assembled. The Court on the *Asian* Side receiving Advice of this Tumult, returned to *Constantinople*, and might have suppressed the Insurrection that Evening, if they had acted with any Resolution, but the next Day the Numbers of the Rebels were so encreased, that they appeared very formidable, and on the 19th they came to the Gate of the *Seraglio*, and demanded the Heads of the Grand *Vizier*, his *Kaia* or Lieutenant, and of the Captain *Bassa*, which the Grand Signior gave them; and not contented with this, they required the Grand Signior to resign the Throne to his Nephew *Mahomet*, whom they chose their Emperor. Whereupon he sent for *Mahomet* from the Apartment where he was confined, and wishing his Nephew a happy Reign, retired to the Apartment he had quitted, and on the 25th Sultan *Mahomet* was girt with the Imperial Sword.

Mahomet

Mahomet's Accession,
A. D.

1730.
War with
Russia,
1736.

Mahomet on his Accession made Peace with *Persia*, and determined to attack the *Russians*; whereupon the *Tartars* were ordered to invade and plunder the *Russian* Territories, which the Czarina *Anne* looking upon as a Declaration of War, raised two Armies, one commanded by General *Munich*, who took the Lines and Fortresses of *Precop*, which defend the Isthmus of *Crim Tartary*, and afterwards reduced *Bachiserai* the Capital of *Crim*, plundering that Peninsula from one End to the other. In the mean time General *Lasci*, who commanded the other *Russian* Army, took the City of *Asoph* at the Mouth of the *Don*, of which he kept the Possession; but Count *Munich*, after he had plundered the Country and demolished the Lines of *Precop*, returned into *Russia* again.

and the
Emperor.

The Emperor of *Germany* the next Year assembled an Army, which was commanded by Count *Seckendorf*, who having passed the *Danube*, took *Nissa* and several other Places; but before the End of the Campaign the *Turks* recovered them again.

The *Russian* Generals had better Success, Count *Munich* took *Oczacow* at the Mouth of the *Nieper*, but the Imperialists were almost driven out of *Servia*, and in the next Campaign the *Turks* took *Orsova* and several other Places from the *Germans*; and having defeated the *Christians* at *Crotzka*, though they made a good Retreat, they found themselves in no Condition to make Head against the *Turks* in the Field, and therefore threw their Foot into the City of *Belgrade*, apprehending it would have been immediately besieged; and though the *Turks* were not prepared to undertake the Siege this Year, they invested it in the beginning of the next, viz. in 1739, which occasioned a Treaty to be set on foot between the Emperor and the Port, under the treacherous Mediation of the *French*, who influenced the Imperial Plenipotentiary so far, that he agreed to deliver up *Belgrade* to the *Turks*, after the Fortifications should be demolished, and that the *Danube* and the *Sava* should be the Boundaries between *Christendom* and *Turky* on the South, but that the *Bannat of Temeswaer* should be confirmed to the Emperor; that the River *Alauta* and the *Iron-gate Mountains* should be the Boundary on the East, and the River *Unna* on the West, agreeable to the Treaty of *Carlowitz*.

Belgrade
besieged,
1739.

Treaty of
Belgrade.

Treaty
with
Russia.

Russia not being consulted in this Treaty, was left to contend singly with all the Power of *Turky*, and by a Treaty between those Powers soon after, the *Russians* were obliged to demolish *Asoph*, and part with all their Forts on the *Palus*

Palus Meotis and the *Euxine Sea* : As to *Oczacow*, the *Russians* had blown up the Fortifications of that Place during the War, it being at too great a Distance from their Capital to be defended : *Chotzim* also, which the *Russians* had taken in this War, was restored to the *Turks*.

OTTOMAN KINGS and EMPERORS.

1. **O**TTOMAN or *Osman*, the Son of *Ethrogul*, the first *Turkish* Sultan of this Line, added to his small Territory the greatest Part of *Phrygia*, *Bythinia*, and some Part of *Pontus*, and was succeeded by his Son
A. D. 1300.
2. *Orchanes*, who took the City of *Prusa*, and made it his Residence ; he first invaded *Europe*, where he possessed himself of *Galipoli*.
1328.
3. *Amurat* his Son reduced the *Thracian Chersonese*, the strong City of *Adrianople*, with the Countries of *Servia*, and *Bulgaria*. He was killed by a Common Soldier in the Fields of *Cassova*.
1350.
4. *Bajazet*, his Son, made himself Master of a great Part of *Thrace*, *Macedon*, and *Achaia*. He was taken Prisoner by *Tamerlane*, and brained himself in an Iron Cage, in which the Conqueror used to carry him.
1373.
5. *Solyman*, the eldest Son of *Bajazet* succeeded to the *Turkish* Provinces in *Europe* ; but passing with an Army into *Asia*, for the Recovery of those Provinces usurped by *Mahomet* his youngest Brother ; he was forced to return to *Europe*, to make Head against *Musa*, by whom he was defeated and killed.
1400.
6. *Mahomet*, the youngest Son of *Bajazet*, having defeated and murdered all his Brothers, remained sole Sovereign of *Turky*.
1404.
7. *Amurat* II. his Son, took from the *Constantinopolitan* Empire *Achaia*, *Theffaly*, and *Epirus*.
1416.
8. *Mahomet* II. his Son, surnamed *the Great*, and first stiled Emperor of the *Turks*, conquered the two Empires of *Constantinople* and *Trabezond*, twelve Kingdoms and two hundred Cities.
1450.
9. *Bajazet* II. his Son, subdued the *Caramanian* Kingdom and Part of *Armenia*, and drove the *Venetians* from the *Morea*, and their Part of *Dalmatia*.
1481.
10. *Selimus*, having poisoned his Father, subdued the *Mamelukes* of *Egypt*, bringing it together with *Palestine*, *Syria*, and *Arabia*, under the Yoke of the *Turks*.
1512.
11. *Solyman* II. surnamed *The Magnificent*, subdued *Rhodes*, *Belgrade*, *Buda*, with a great Part of *Hungary*, *Babylon*, *Affyria*, and *Mesopotamia*.
1519.
12. *Se-*

- A. D. 1567. 12. *Selimus II.* An idle and effeminate Emperor; by his Generals took from the *Venetians* the Isle of *Cyprus*; and from the *Moors*, the Kingdoms of *Tunis* and *Algiers*.
1575. 13. *Amurat III.* took from the disagreeing *Persians Armenia, Media*, and the City of *Tauris*, and the Fort *Guarino* from the *Hungarians*.
1595. 14. *Mahomet III.* took *Agria* in *Hungary*.
1603. 15. *Achmet* added nothing to his Empire.
1618. 16. *Mustapha*, Brother to *Achmet* succeeded, which is a Novelty never before heard of in this Kingdom.
1618. 17. *Osman*, or *Ottoman II.* succeeded his Uncle *Mustapha*; and being unsuccessful in his War against *Poland*, was by the *Janizaries* killed in a Tumult.
1623. 18. *Morat*, or *Amurat* the IVth, Brother of *Osman*, of the Age of 13 Years, succeeded. He recovered *Babylon* from the *Persians*.
1640. 19. *Ibrahim*, the Brother of *Morat*, preserved by the Sultanness his Mother in his Brother's Life, succeeded.
1648. 20. *Mahomet IV.* Son of *Ibrahim*.
1687. 21. *Solyman III.* Brother of *Mahomet* the IVth, ascended this Throne by the Means of a Tumult in the Army, November the 8th, 1687. This Prince was engaged in a War with the Emperor of *Germany*, and sent an Army of 100,000 Men to besiege *Vienna*, where he lost all his Tents, Cannon, and Amunition. *Buda* was taken, after a second Siege, and a great Part of *Hungary* with it; he lost to the *Venetians* the greatest Part of the *Morea*.
1691. 22. *Achmet II.* succeeded his Brother, being set up by the *French* Faction at *Constantinople*.
1695. 23. *Mustapha*, Son of *Mahomet IV.* succeeded *Achmet* his Uncle; and being deposed,
1703. *Achmet* his Brother was advanced to the Throne, who being deposed,
1730. *Mahomet V.* the Son of *Mustapha II.* succeeded him, and is now upon the Throne.

INDIA within GANGES.

The Name. **T**HE Name of *India* is very ancient. In the Histories of *Ninus* and *Semiramis*, the *Affyrian* Monarchs who first invaded this Country, it has this Name: *Alexander* also gives it the same Name; but whether it gave or received the Name from the River *Indus*, or was called *India* from the *Hindowns*, who anciently inhabited some of the northern Pro-

Provinces, is not very material; but this Name seems to have been given to it by Foreigners, and not by the Natives, for the eastern Nations usually denominate their Country from the Family upon the Throne, as this is called *Mogulstan*, or the Empire of the *Great Mogul*. These Princes deriving their Pedigree from *Tamerlane*, the Chief of that Tribe of *Tartars* called *Moguls*, so the *Turks* call their Country the *Ottoman Empire*, from a Prince of that Family esteemed the Founder of it: Nor do the *Chinese* know any such Name as *Cbina*, but alter the Name of their Country as often as a new Family ascends the Throne.

India Proper, or *Mogulstan*, is bounded by *Usbeck Tartary* and *Tibet* on the North; by another Part of *Tibet*, *Acham*, *Ava*, and the Bay of *Bengal* East, by the *Indian Ocean* South, and by the same Ocean and *Persia* West, situate between sixty-six and ninety-two Degrees East Longitude; and between seven and forty North Latitude; 2000 Miles long from North to South, and 1500 broad, from East to West.

The chief Mountains are those of *Caucasus*, which divide *Mount* it from *Usbeck Tartary* on the North. Those of *Naugra-tains*, which divide it from *Tibet* on the North East, and those of *Baligate*, which run from North to South, through the Middle of *India*. The chief Rivers are, first, the *Indus*, *Rivers*. 2d, the *Attock*, olim *Hydaspes*, 3d, *Gemena*, 4th, *Ganges*, 5th, *Guenga*, 6th, *Cristena*.

India was probably peopled very early, being only divided *First Inhab-* by *Persia* from *Babylonia*, from whence all the Nations of *bitants*. the Earth were planted. The next People that arrived here *Ethiopi-* were the *Ethiopians*, whose Posterity still possess all the in- *ans*. land Country of the hither Peninsula of *India*: There is not a Man of another Complexion to be found in that Part of the Country; they were probably invited hither by the fine Spices which the *Indian Islands* produce, particularly the Cinamon, which grows only in the Island of *Ceylon*, which Island is divided from the hither Peninsula by a very narrow Channel: They met also with the Nutmegs, Mace, and Cloves in other *Indian Islands*; these and other rich Merchandize of *India* they transported to their native Country of *Ethiopia*, to *Arabia*, *Egypt*, and *Phenicia*; from whence they were carried to all the Nations of *Europe* and *Africa*.

The *Arabian Princes* next sent Colonies to *India*, and *Arabians* imported these Spices into their Country; and fixing themselves on the Coast of *India*, drove the *Ethiopians* or *Blacks* up into the Mountains, in the Middle of the Country, and mono-

monopolized the Spice Trade infomuch, that when the *Portuguese* arrived here, about the Year 1500, they found all the Coast possessed by the *Arabian* Princes, as the Kings of *Patan*, *Guzurat*, *Golconda*, *Bisnagar*, *Decan*, &c. to whom the *Blacks* or *Ethiopians* of the flat Country were subject, but those that had possessed the Mountains and inaccessible Parts of the Country, retained their Liberties, and were governed by their respective Princes, stiled *Rajas*, as they are at this Day, the Great Mogul having not been able to subdue them, tho' he conquered all the *Arabian* Princes near the Coast.

The Portuguese.

The *Portuguese* succeeded the *Arabians* in their Settlements on the Coast of *India*, and brought home the fine Spices from thence, which formerly used to be brought to *Egypt* and *Turky*, and from thence dispersed all over *Europe*.

The *Portuguese* had the sole Trade to *India*, for upwards of an hundred Years, when the *English* and *Dutch* put in for a Share of it, about the Year 1600.

The Dutch.

The *Dutch*, within twenty Years afterwards, drove the *Portuguese*, from most of their Settlements in *India*, and monopolized the fine Spices, expelling the *English*, as well as the *Portuguese* from those Islands, the Traffic with these being of more Value than all the rest of the *Indian* Trade.

The first VOYAGES to the EAST INDIES.

A. D. 1497. *VASCA de Gama*, the *Portuguese* Admiral first passed the *Cape of Good Hope*, on the 20th of *November* 1497, and on the 19th of *May* 1498 arrived at *Calicut*, on the *Malabar* Coast of *India*.

1501. The *Portuguese* settled a Factory at *Cochin*, on the *Malabar* Coast, anno 1501.

1511. *Albuquerque*, General of the *Portuguese*, besieged and took the City of *Goa*, anno 1511, and the same Year took *Malacca*; soon after which the *Portuguese* settled Factories at the *Moluccas* and *Banda* Islands.

1521. *Magellan* sailed westward in the Service of the King of *Spain*, and passing the Straits of *Magellan*, arrived at the *Philippines* in the *East Indies*, anno 1521, where being killed, his People settled a Factory at the *Moluccas*, and returned home by the *Cape of Good Hope*, this being the first Ship that surrounded the Globe.

1577. *Drake* set sail from *Plymouth* the 13th of *December* 1577, and passing the Straits of *Magellan*, arrived at the *Moluccas* in *Novem-*

November 1579, when the King of Ternate put himself under the Protection of the *English*. Drake, having surrounded the Globe, arrived in *England* the 3d November 1580, by the Way of the *Cape of Good Hope*.

The first Voyage the *English* made to *India* by the *Cape of Good Hope* was in the Year 1591, Captain *Lancaster* Commander. A. D. 1591. *English*.

The first Voyage the *Dutch* made to *India* was in the the Year 1595, arriving at *Bantam* in the Isle of *Java*, in June 1596. 1595-*Dutch*.

A second unfortunate Voyage was made by the *English*, anno 1596. 1596. *English*.

Oliver Noort a *Dutchman* sailed through the *Straits of Magellan*, and surrounded the Globe, anno 1598. 1598. *Dutch*.

The *English East India Company* were incorporated in the 43d of *Elizabeth*, 1600, Alderman *Smith* the first Governor. *Lancaster* being made Commander of a Squadron of four Ships had the Queen's Commission, sailed out of the *Thames* the 13th of *February*, 1600, arrived at the *Cape* the 22d of *April*, 1601, and at *Achen* in *Sumatra* the 5th of *June*, 1602, where he loaded *Pepper* and *Cloves*, and then visited *Priaman* and *Bantam* in *Java*, where he settled a *Factory*, and returned to *England* the 11th of *September* 1603. 1600. *English*.

In the Year 1601 the *Dutch* sent out a strong Fleet, and beat the *Portuguese* out of some of their Settlements in the *Spice Islands*, and on the Continent of *India*. 1601. *Dutch*.

Captain *Middleton*, with four Ships, sailed out of the River *Thames* the 25th of *March*, 1604, arrived at *Bantam* the 20th of *December* following, traded from thence with the *Molucca* and *Banda Islands* for *Spices*; in the first of which he was opposed by the *Dutch*, who informed the *Indians*, that the *English* were a despicable People, and the King of *Holland* a powerful Prince. 1604. *English*.

Captain *Keyling* arrived at *Banda* in 1608, and settled Articles of Commerce with the Natives. 1608. *English*.

The *Dutch* opposed the *English*, and attacked the *Banda-nese*, storming their Towns, and taking Possession of them. 1608. *Dutch*.

They commanded the *English* to abandon these Seas, of which they usurped the Sovereignty.

The *Dutch* massacred the Natives of the *Spice Islands*, and took away the *Spices* from the *English*. *Dutch*.

The Natives of *Banda* (the *Nutmeg Islands*) desired the Protection of the *English*, and acknowledged King *James* their Sovereign, and ceded several of their Islands to *England*. *Banda*.

The

Dutch.

The *Dutch* notwithstanding took the *English* Ships, and expelled them from Banda, by the express Orders of their State in time of Peace.

Dutch.

The *Dutch* boasted they had a better Interest at the Court of England than the *English* East India Company.

English

and Dutch

The *Dutch* and *English* came to a Treaty, and agreed to share the Trade of Spice between them, the 7th July 1619.

1619.

The Treaty was ratified by King James and the States, they each of them settled Factories on the Spice Islands, and in Amboyna.

1621.

Dutch.

The next Year, 1621, the *Dutch* invaded the Spice Islands of Lantor and Poleron, then possessed by the *English*, massacred the Chiefs of the Natives, made Slaves of the rest, demolished the Forts and Factories of the *English*, murdered some of their Servants, and made the rest Prisoners.

Amboyna

1622.

In the Year 1622 the *Dutch*, under Pretence of a Plot against their Factors, tortured and massacred most of the *English* at Amboyna, and expelled the rest from the Nutmeg and Clove Islands, not fearing the Resentment of the *English*, (after the cautionary Towns were delivered up, anno 1616) and they have kept Possession of them ever since, but the *English* have not by any Treaty parted with their Right to those Islands.

Present Inhabitants.

The Natives of the *Hither India* are at present a Mixture of *Moors*, or *Mahometans*, and *Pagans*: The Emperor is a *Mahometan*, but not a tenth Part of his Subjects of that Persuasion. In the inland mountainous Part of the Country there is scarce a *Mahometan* to be found; but that Chain of Hills which runs through *India*, from North to South, is possessed by the *Rajas* or *Pagan* Princes, many of whom yet maintain their Independency; and those whom the Mogul has reduced, he still suffers to be governed by their own Laws, paying only an annual Tribute, and obliging them to march into the Field, when he requires their Service at the Head of their own Troops. The *Moors* are composed of *Tartars*, *Persians*, and *Arabs*, and almost every *Mahometan* Nation, who behave themselves with great Insolence towards the *Pagan Indians* under their Power, as those in the open Country, and on the Sea Coasts for most part are; and the *Christians*, who are not a small Number, are treated with great Contempt by the haughty Mussulmen, notwithstanding they are forced to make use of them for Engineers and other Services; the *Pagans* look upon themselves to be defiled by the Touch of a *Christian* or *Turk*. The *Pagans* are however polite

The

60 420
P.O.

ASSA

3

30

Man
EM

A R

A

V

A

can

of

20

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.

polite ingenious People, peaceable, modest, and inoffensive in their Behaviour, and extremely tender and compassionate, even to Animals, so benevolent to those of their own Tribes, that we never see a Beggar among them. They are such dexterous Mechanics, that they will imitate any Pattern at first Sight. The fine Chints and painted Callicoes, whose Colours and Shades surprize us, are drawn by the common People.

The Complexions of most of the Pagan *Indians*, who *Complexi-* are the original Inhabitants, are black as Jet, others of them *on* tawny; but all of them have fine Features, good Shapes, and long black Hair, and black Eyes. The *Moors* which come from other Countries, or are born in the North of *India*, are not of near so dark a Complexion as the Pagan Inhabitants, but the Men however, who are exposed to the Weather, are tawny enough. The *Banian* and *Bramin Food*. Tribes among the Pagans eat nothing which has or may have Life; and none of them will eat the Flesh of Oxen, these Animals being the Objects of their Worship. The *Moors* abstain from the Flesh of Hogs on a very different Account, namely, because they look upon them to be most polluted of all other Animals. The *Europeans* import from *Merchan-* *India*, Silks, Muslins, and Callicoes painted and stained, *dise*. Pepper, Diamonds, and other precious Stones, Salt-petre, Opium, and many physical Drugs, which are purchased by the *English* with Treasure, but by the *Dutch* with Spices and other Merchandise, which they exchange for the Produce of this Country, and have this farther Advantage of other *European* Nations, that they deal with the *Indians* almost upon their own Terms, paying no higher Customs than they think fit; and when the Mogul has disputed the Matter with them, they have blocked up his Ports, till they have reduced him to a Compliance.

Notwithstanding the Extent of the Sea Coast of *India*, *No Ships of* the Natives do not build many Ships, having no Mariners *Force*. to man them, at least none that would make a Defence against the least *Arabian* Pirate, if they should be attacked: Their Merchants therefore, who drive a very considerable Trade to *Persia* and the *Red Sea*, choose to load their Effects on board *English* or *Dutch* Bottoms, the Freight whereof is one considerable Branch of the Company's Profit; for they seldom dispatch a Ship from *Persia* to *Surat*, but she is as deep laden as she can swim; and with the Treasure and Precious Stones on board, may be worth between two and three hundred thousand Pounds.

Produce.

The Soil produces Wheat and Earley, but Rice is most cultivated and eaten through *India*, the annual Rains being of great Use to them in this kind of Husbandry; Fruit they have in abundance, as Coco-Nuts, Mangoes, Pine-Apples, Guavas, Limes, Lemons and Oranges: As to their Mulberries, they take care of these Plants, more for the Sake of their Leaves, with which they feed their Silk Worms, than for the Fruit: No Plant is of that general Use as the Coco, serving for Food, Building, Cloathing, and many other Conveniencies. The most beneficial Plant after this is the Cotton, of which all the fine Callicoës are made, which come from thence. Their most useful Animals are Camels, Elephants, Oxen, and Buffaloes; their Breed of Horses are very small, and therefore their Troops are supplied with them from *Persia* and *Tartary*: Serpents and Scorpions, and other venomous Insects, abound here; and the Gnats and Bugs are so troublesome, that there is no sleeping for them. Their Spiders and Toads grow to such a Magnitude, that a Man would hazard his Credit to describe their Dimensions. The Locusts, another Insect, frequently destroy the Fruits of the Earth, leaving no green Herbs where they happen to light; and Aliigators, which I take to be a Species of Crocodiles, infest the Mouth of the *Ganges*, and other Streams. The *Ganges* annually overflows all the Country within an hundred Miles of the Sea, and renders it as fruitful as the *Nile* does *Egypt*.

Constitution.

The Mogul is an absolute Monarch, restrained by no written Laws; and as his Ancestors first gained the Country by Conquest, so he maintains himself by a standing Force, and for the greatest Part of the Year lives in the Field in his Camp, having Bodies of Troops in several Parts of his Dominions, to keep the Country in Awe.

European Settlements, their Condition.

The *Persians*, since *Sha Abbas*, have scarce ever molested his Frontiers, until the Invasion of *Kouli Kan*; and there is no other Prince in that Part of the World considerable enough to give him any Disturbance. He permits the *Europeans* to build Forts upon the Coast, for the Security of their Trade; but then his Troops visit them sometimes, and demand a Present by way of Tribute, or Acknowledgment of his Sovereignty. He permits them however to be governed by their own Laws, and to exercise their Jurisdiction over those who live within their Settlements. They have also their Mints and Coin, both Gold and Silver, which he may very well connive at, when they bring such immense Treasures into his Dominions, for which they take the Product and Manufactures of this Country in Return.

turn. The principal Forts the *English* have on the East English Coast of *India* are *Fort St. George*, in the Latitude of *Forts.* 13 North, and *Fort St. David* to the Southward of it: They have also *Fort William*, in the Mouth of the *Ganges*, and several more on the Coasts of *Chormandel* and *Malabor*; but the greatest *English* Settlement in *India* is at the Island of *Bombay*, thirty or forty Leagues to the Southward of *Surat*. The President of the *English* Factory at *Surat* is usually Governor of *Bombay*, and Commander in Chief of their Forts and Factories on that Coast, and lives in great Splendor there. *Swally Hole*, a little Bay, three or four Leagues to the Northward of *Surat*, is the Place where most of the Merchandise is laden and unladen. There are scarce *Harbours.* any good Harbours in *India*, though they have a Sea Coast of 2000 Miles Extent. The Mouth of the River *Ganges* seems to be the Place of the greatest Security for Ships. The Commanders of Ships, therefore, take Care never to *Seasons.* be upon the Coast of *India* in the Time of the Monsoons, or the tempestuous Seasons of the Year, which happen about the Vernal and Autumnal Equinoxes. There is very little Danger in lying in an open Road on the Coast of *India*, during the fair Season, which they know when to expect, as certainly as we do Summer or Winter; and have this Advantage, that their Winds are constant and periodical, and never rise to a Storm, but on the shifting of the Monsoons or Rains. The Mogul and his Subjects, as has been ob- *Religions.* served, are all *Mahometans*; but the original Inhabitants, who are much the most numerous, are *Pagans*, divided in- to as many Sects as there are Tribes or Professions amongst them; and of those the *Bramins* and *Banians* adhere so strictly to the Doctrine of Transmigration, that they eat the Flesh of no Animal whatever, and pay a kind of divine Worship to their favourite Heifer. They build Hospitals also for aged or impotent Cattle, and charitably feed the very Insects and Vermin of the Country, imagining that they may be animated by the Souls of their Ancestors, or some near Relations. The Penances these People inflict on themselves are almost incredible, vowing to stand or lye in some painful Posture all their Lives. They allow a Plurality of Wives and Concubines, but never marry out of their own Tribe or Trade; and the Women being entirely in the Power of the Men, give them all imaginable Respect. When the Husband died the surviving Wife anciently burnt herself on his Funeral Pile; but the *Mahometans* have abolished this Custom wherever they have the Dominion. The *Indians*, however, still continue to burn their Dead, and

consume vast Quantities of sweet Wood, and Aromatick Drugs in the Fire, which makes their Funerals very chargeable.

Tamerlane's
Conquests,
A. D.

1400.

Mirafsha's
Accession to
the Throne,
1405.

The great *Tamerlane*, King of the *Uzbek Tartars*, laid the Foundation of this Empire about the Year 1400; but of all the vast Conquests he made besides, his Successors retained very little.

To *Mirafsha*, his third Son, he assigned the North East Part of *Persia*, and his new Conquests in *Indostan*. *Mirafsha* did not fix the Seat of his Empire in *India*, but chose *Herat*, in *Persia*, for his Residence; and once a Year he generally came down with a considerable Force, to demand the Tribute imposed by his Father on the *Indian Princes*. *Mirafsha* died in the Year 1451, having reigned forty six Years, to whom succeeded his Son

Abouchaid his
Accession.

Babar
his Accession,
1493.

Abouchaid, who, after an unfortunate Reign of twenty-eight Years, left his Dominions to his Son *Sec-Omar*, who was a very peaceful Prince, and resided generally at *Samarcand*, in *Uzbek Tartary*: He was killed by a Fall from his Terras, in the Year 1493, having reigned twenty-four Years, and was succeeded by his Son *Babar*; who being expelled from *Samarcand*, retired into *India*, and afterwards made a Conquest of the Kingdom of *Patana*; or at least drove the Inhabitants up into the Mountains, about the Year 1519, where they yet remain, some of them tributary, and others in a State of Hostility with the *Moguls*; but *Babar*, upon his Victory over the *Patanes*, made *Delly* the Seat of the Empire. *Babar* having conquered the *Patanes*, the *Tartars* resorted to him in Crowds from the North, and particularly from *Samarcand*, in hopes of making their Fortunes under him; and now it was, that the *Indians* first begun to call all *Tartars* indifferently *Moguls*. The *Persians* came over to him in Troops also, in hopes of sharing the Spoils of his new Conquests; and by their Assistance this Prince established himself in his new acquired Dominions. *Babar* died in full Peace in the Year 1530, having reigned about thirty Years in *India*, and left his Dominions to his Son *Amayum*, or *Homayum*. *Amayum* was deposed by *Chira*, the Captain of his Guards, and fled into *Persia*; but the Usurper being killed, he was restored to his Throne about eleven Years afterwards, having erected a magnificent Tomb for himself, after the Manner of the *Mahometans*; and walking over the Scaffolding, and giving Directions to the Workmen, he unfortunately fell down, and was so violently bruised by the Fall, that he never spake afterwards,

Amayum
his Accession,
1530.

Amayum

Amayum died in the Year 1552, and was succeeded by his Son *Akebar*, or *Akbar*, whom all our Historians agree wanted no Accomplishments to adorn a Throne. He had, they tell us, a most penetrating Judgment, an extensive Knowledge, an intrepid Soul; and at the same Time was generous, tender and compassionate. He soon perceived that the *Moguls* or *Tartars* bore no Proportion to the *Patanes* and *Indians* under his Government, and therefore invited the neighbouring *Usbees* and *Persians* to serve under him: He preferred them to the principal Posts, and gave them Wives, that they might in Time be a Balance for that Part of his Subjects whom Nature and Interest inclined to be disaffected to his Government; and the greater Part of those who are called *Moguls* at this Day are a Mixture of white People of several Nations, professing the *Mahometan* Religion; but it being found, that in a short Time the Northern People degenerated into Softness, like the original Natives of the Country, new Supplies of *Persians* and *Tartars* were encouraged to transplant themselves; and these usually fill the greatest Posts both in the Civil and Military Government. *Akebar*, having taken all prudent Measures to render his Government secure at home, began to think of extending his Dominions towards the Sea Coasts; that he might come in for a Share of the Trade and Riches that the Maritime Places enjoyed: And the first Enterprize of this Nature which he undertook, was against the Kingdom of *Guzurat*, which extends from the River *Tapte*, upon which the Town of *Surat* stands, to the Mouth of the River *Indus*. This Part of *India*, at that Time, enjoyed a most flourishing Trade; the *Portuguese* in particular, who had established several Colonies in this Part of the Country, imported immense Treasures every Year from *Europe*, in exchange for the Produce and Manufactures of *India*.

*The Mogul
conquers
Guzurat.*

The Prince who then reigned in *Guzurat* was Sultan *Babadar*, a *Mahometan*; for about the same Time the *Patanes* transported themselves to *India*, another Colony of *Arabians* settled themselves in *Guzurat*; and taking an Advantage of the Weakness of the *Indian* Princes, drove the Natives up into the Mountains, and took Possession of the Sea Coasts, and all the principal Places of Trade, and assumed sovereign Power, as has been intimated already. Sultan *Babadar* had maintained a long War with the *Portuguese*, who daily encroached upon his Territories, and made themselves Masters of *Diu*, a Town which lies upon an Arm of the Sea, almost opposite to *Surat*; but both Sultan *Babadar* and the *Portuguese* being alarmed at the Ap-

Decan
subdued by
the Mogul,

and some
of the
Rajas.

proach of the Mogul, united their Forces against him. It was with some Difficulty, it is said, that *Akebar* prevailed on his Troops to march against the *Portuguese*: They had been represented at *Delly* as something more than human; and those vast floating Machines armed with Artillery, with which they had heard they fought upon the Water, they were apprehensive might be made use of at Land, or at least something of the like Nature. They dreaded the Encounter, therefore, to such a Degree, that they were upon the Point of turning their Backs, and quitting the Enterprize, till *Akebar*, who had fully informed himself of the Numbers, and Strength of the Enemy, and their Manner of engaging, convinced his Troops how much inferior this little *Guzurat* Prince and the *Portuguese* were to the Forces he brought with him; and putting himself at the Head of his Troops, in one brisk Charge he routed both the *Guzurats* and *Portuguese*. Sultan *Bahadar* fled, but his Children were taken Prisoners, and put to Death by the Conqueror; and the whole Kingdom immediately submitted to his Power, except those Towns the *Portuguese* were possessed of; which, being fortified after the modern Way, bid Defiance to his Forces; and indeed a very slight Fortification will at this Day be thought impregnable by the *Indians*. *Akebar* finding *Guzurat* so easy a Conquest, bent his Arms towards *Decan*, which lies to the Southward of it. This was divided into several little Sovereignities. These Princes, though at other Times Enemies, united their Forces against *Akebar*, and gave him Battle, but were defeated by him with little Loss. *Akebar* having spent some Time in erecting Cities and Palaces began to think of extending the Bounds of his Dominions still farther; and *Rama*, one of the most powerful of the *Indian* Rajas (said to be descended from *Porus*) and whose Dominions lay to the Eastward of *Guzurat*, was the next Prince who felt the Force of his Arms. The Raja, though supported by several *Indian* Princes, his Neighbours, was not able to make head against the Mogul in the open Field; and therefore shut himself up in the City of *Chitor*, a Place then looked upon to be impregnable. Historians, who relate the Siege of this Place, make it a second *Troy*, on almost every Account. The Love of *Padmani*, the Raja's Wife, they make the principal Motive of *Akebar's* undertaking the Attack of this Place. The Duration of this Siege some of them also will have to equal that of *Troy*; and like that, they tell us, it was surprised by Stratagem at last. All that I can collect of Certainty, is that *Chitor* held out about two Years, that the Raja was killed in the Siege; and

and the whole Country thereupon submitted to the Conqueror.

Akbar, after he had subdued this Province, employed himself some time in cultivating the Arts of Peace, in the enlarging the City of *Agra*, and beautifying his Palaces; and among other great Works, he planted the Road from *Agra* to *Lahor*, and made it one continued Walk of shady Trees, though it be not less than 450 *English* Miles from one City to the other. This still remains a Monument of this Emperor's Grandeur, and is an inconceivable Refreshment to Travellers in so hot a Climate. *The Grand Walk.*

Akbar also encouraged all Manner of *European* Artists to come and fix at *Agra* from *Goa*, and other *Portuguese* Settlements; such as Goldsmiths, Lapidaries, Physicians, Surgeons, &c. and sent for some of the *Portuguese* Missionaries to instruct him in the Christian Religion; but whether out of Curiosity, or because he understood they were versed in the Mathematics; or, lastly, as the Missionaries themselves apprehended, because he had Thoughts of embracing the Christian Religion, is not very evident. The Fathers tell us, they found little Difficulty in convincing him of the Weakness of the Alcoran, and how much the Scriptures were to be preferred to it; and that his Majesty himself observed, that the Christians had propagated their Doctrine by spilling their own Blood, while the *Mahometans* had advanced theirs, by shedding the Blood of others: But upon the Fathers pressing him to declare for *Jesus* or *Mahomet*, he told them, That so important a Change must be brought about by God; and that he should never cease imploring his Light and Assistance.

The Emperor, it is certain, wanted the Missionaries to instruct his Children in the learned Languages, and to promote Arts and Sciences in his Court; and therefore was cautious of saying any thing shocking upon these Occasions; and indeed paid them such Honours as he refused to Ambassadors, and even to some crowned Heads, suffering them to sit in his Presence, after the *European* Manner; and that he might converse with the Fathers more familiarly, he learned the *Portuguese* Language. His Majesty acknowledged, that the Miracles of our Saviour seemed to be confirmed by the Alcoran; that the Morality of the Gospel, and the Manner of establishing it by the Sufferings of its Votaries, sufficiently evinced, that *Jesus Christ* was a true Prophet sent from God: But then the Mysteries of the Trinity, and the Incarnation, were insurmountable Difficulties. To which the Missionaries answered, That if he

believed the Miracles, and that he was a true Prophet, he must acknowledge the Truth of what he had revealed. The Emperor replied, What, must I become a *Christian*, then, and change the Religion of my Fathers! How dangerous is this to a Sovereign? How difficult for him who has been bred up in the Ease and Liberty of the Alcoran?

Akebar, it is said, afterwards formed a Design of setting up a new Religion of his own contriving. He proposed to introduce a Medley of all Religions; the Baptism of the *Christians*, the Circumcision of the *Mahometans*, and the Idolatry of the *Indians*; and thus he hoped to comprehend all his Subjects, and unite them in one uniform Way of Worship; but he always proposed to retain a Plurality of Wives, as most agreeable to his own and the Peoples Inclinations. The Imperial City of *Labor*, which lies to the North of *India*, was pitched upon as the properest Place to make the Experiment, and sound the Inclinations of his Subjects; but the Emperor did not think fit to venture on so great a Change, till he had first assembled a formidable Army. The *Mahometan* Mosques were commanded to be shut up, and some of them turned into Stables. He instituted a new Set of Forms and Ceremonies, to which he required an exact Conformity. *Akebar* himself adored the Sun three Times a-day; at his rising, in the Meridian, and at his setting: Then he appointed some set Hours for the Worship of *Jesus* and the blessed Virgin, and wore an *Agnus Dei*, the Picture of the Virgin *Mary*, and some Relics that had been presented him by the Missionaries about his Neck. As to the *Mahometan* Religion, he continued their Circumcision, and ran over the Praises of God on a kind of Bead-roll, after the Manner of those People. On the Feast of the Assumption of the blessed Virgin, he caused her Image to be placed on a magnificent Throne; and the Mogul, with his Children and Courtiers, prostrated themselves before it. He also instituted a Feast in honour of the Sun, and caused an Altar to be raised in form of a Throne, in the Midst of a spacious Plain, that all his Subjects might adore it.

Those that give us an Account of the Death of this Prince relate, that *Akebar* having a gold Box made with three Partitions, in one of which he carried his Betel Leaves, in another Cordial Pills, and in the third his Poisons, mistaking the one for the other, took the fatal Pills he had prepared for an Enemy; and notwithstanding all the Assistance he received, both from his own and the *Portuguese* Phy-

Physicians, no Remedy could be found to relieve him ; and he died a *Mahometan* at last.

This Prince is famed for his Justice and Impartiality. He was an unwearied Hearer of Causes, which he seldom omitted twice a-day ; and was so cautious of spilling Blood, that he gave Orders no Man should be put to Death, but by his express Command repeated three several Days. They endeavour to excuse the Art of poisoning he introduced, by saying he only practised it against the secret Enemies of the State, and such as he apprehended to be too big to be brought to public Justice. His Temperance was such, that as he seldom violated the Law of *Mahomet*, by drinking Wine, so he never eat Flesh, but contented himself with Rice and Sweet-meats, and sometimes a Spoon Diet. He gave all Encouragement to Foreigners, but especially to Merchants and Mechanics. He had a mighty Thirst for Knowledge, and endeavoured to penetrate into every Science and every Religion, and inform himself of the Grounds the several People he conversed with had for their respective Opinions. And it was to this Curiosity chiefly, that the Fathers were indebted for the kind Reception they met with in his Court. The vast Additions this Prince made to the Empire, the Arts he introduced, the opening a Way to the Sea Coasts, the Trade and Commerce which *Akebar* first established in his Dominions ; the beautiful Cities and Palaces he built, and other noble Works which yet remain, are evident Marks of his Grandeur.

Cha Selim, or, as we pronounce it, *Shaw Selim* (i. e. *Jehan* The Peaceful King) succeeded to the Throne of his Father *Guire*, his *Akebar*, in the Year 1605 ; and upon his Accession took upon him the Name of *Jehan Guire*, or Sovereign of the World. A. D. 1605.

He was no more a Bigot to his Religion than his Father ; but instead of that Temperance and abstemious Way of living which *Akebar* was famous for, he indulged in all Manner of Excess : And some imagined he was inclined to the *Christian* Religion, because of the Liberties he took in drinking Wine, and eating, without Distinction, all Manner of Meats ; which the *Imans* or *Mahometan* Doctors were at first perpetually representing to be inconsistent with the Profession of *Mahometism* : He enquired, therefore, what Religion allowed its Votaries to eat and drink without Scruple, all that came before them ; and being informed it was the *Christian*, Come then, says he, let us immediately alter our Habits, and change our Turbans into Hats ; for what Religion can, there be in eating, or forbearing to eat, this

this or that kind of Food? Upon this the Moulas were struck with dreadful Apprehensions of a Change of Religion, but some of the wisest of them soon discovered, that it was not Religion, but an unconquerable Appetite after such Food and Liquors as their Law prohibited, which occasioned this Declaration in Favour of *Christianity*. To keep the Emperor firm to their Religion therefore, they acquainted his Majesty, that they had held a Consultation on this Occasion, and unanimously agreed, That the Prohibition of the Alcoran against Wine, &c. did not extend to sovereign Princes, but that they might enjoy their full Liberty in eating and drinking whatever they saw fit notwithstanding; which was so obliging a Solution in the Behalf of a voluptuous Prince, that we hear of no Attempts afterwards towards a Change during the Remainder of his Reign.

The Mogul drinks with the Europeans all Night. The Emperor being now loosed from all Restraints, and encouraged in his Debauches by the very Clergy themselves, ordered the Palace Gates to be always open to the *Franks* or *Europeans* of what Nation soever, and frequently drank with them till Morning, even in the Time of the *Mahometan* Lent, which the Missionaries still interpreted to proceed from his Inclination to *Christianity*.

This Emperor, *Sba Selim*, or *John Guire*, as he was afterwards called, removed his Imperial Seat from *Agra* to *Lahor*, which lies four or five hundred Miles to the North, in a more temperate Climate; and the fine Walk of Trees from one City to the other, which was begun by *Akebar*, was finished by this Prince. He made also large Additions to the City of *Lahor*, and built him an elegant convenient Palace, but not near so magnificent as that of *Agra*. Here it was that the Emperor engaged in an Amour, which occasioned him infinite Troubles. He was walking on his

His unfortunate Amour. Terras, under which a fine River runs, when he saw a Barge rowing under him, wherein was a fine Lady of a surprizing Beauty, sitting under a Canopy: The Emperor let the Barge pass by, but sent immediately to enquire after her Name, and where her Residence was. The Messengers informed him that the Lady's Name was *Nour-Mahal*, and that she was married to an Officer who commanded 900 Men in his Majesty's Service; whereupon the Emperor ordered rich Presents to be made her, and that she should be acquainted how much he was smitten with her Beauty. But the Lady vowed inviolable Fidelity to her Husband, and would not hear any Proposals to his Dishonour. His Majesty not being able to prevail with her to alter

alter her Resolution, wrote to her Husband to attend a certain General, and at the same time sent to the General to put him to death as soon as he saw him; which was executed accordingly, but not so secretly but *Nour-Mahal* heard of it, and would not be put off with Accounts the Emperor ordered to be divulged, that he was killed by Accident.

When his Majesty therefore renewed his Addresses, and acquainted her there was now no Difficulty in the Way, and that he desired no more than the nicest Virtue might comply with, to take her among the Number of his Wives, she broke out into the bitterest Invectives, and reproached him with his Treachery and Cruelty: But the Time of her Widowhood being expired, and having had Leisure to vent her Grief, and reflect on the advantageous Offers which were made her, his Majesty found her more complying; and upon Condition that she should be the first Queen, that her Father should be Prime Minister, and her Relations preferred to the greatest Posts, she was contented to yield to the Embraces of her Husband's Murderer. The Emperor solemnized his Marriage on the Arrival of his new Queen in his Palace, by a Festival which lasted eight Days; and instead of the Name of *Nour-Mahal*, which she had before, he gave her that of *Nour-Jaham*, or, *The Light of the World*.

As soon as she came into the Haram (the Women's Apartment) like a true Woman she took Care to rid herself of her Rivals; no less than five Queens, the most in the Emperor's Favour, died within a Year, by Poison, as it was supposed. And such was her Power with the Emperor, that she made a sober Man of him. He was content to part even with his Bottle, for a Time, to oblige her; at least she prevailed with him to stint himself to nine Glasses at a Sitting, and if ever he exceeded these Bounds, she knew how to punish him by a more than ordinary Reservedness. Her next Ambition was to unite her Blood with that of the Emperor's, and marry her only Daughter, which she had by her former Husband, to the Heir apparent of the Crown; for she had no Children by the Emperor. His Majesty had four Sons by several Wives; the eldest was born in the Life of his Grandfather *Akbar*, and was stiled Sultan *Cosrou*; the second, Sultan *Perois*; the third, Sultan *Chorrom*; and the fourth, Sultan *Scheriar*. It was to Sultan *Cosrou* that *Nour-Jaham* intended to have married her Daughter, but this Prince was prejudiced against her

her already, on Account of the Influence she had over his Father: And another Obstacle was, his having married a Daughter of one of the great Rajas, of whom he was passionately fond; whereupon he slighted the Proposal. The Sultaneſs afterwards offered her Daughter to *Scheriar* the youngest Son, Sultan *Chorrom* being already married to her Niece the Daughter of *Asph*, Cham, her Brother. *Scheriar* was pleased with the Match, as the most likely Means to advance him to the Throne after the Death of his Father; and the Marriage was no sooner celebrated, but the three elder Brothers were appointed to distant Governments; Sultan *Chorrom* was sent to *Deoan*, Sultan *Pervis* to *Bengal*, and Sultan *Cofrou*, the eldest, was designed for *Guzurat*; but instead of going to that Command, he assembled a Body of Troops, to secure the Succession to the Crown, which he apprehended to be his Right, even at that Instant: For he was bred up in a Belief that his Grandfather *Akebar* had appointed him his immediate Successor, and though he was content his Father should enjoy the Crown before him, he could not bear to see his youngest Brother the Favourite at Court, and with his Mother-in-Law the Sultaneſs, taking such Steps as must infallibly exclude him.

The Emperor had at this Time two great Ministers, to whom he committed all Affairs of State; the one *Asph*, Cham, Brother to the Sultaneſs, and the other *Mabomet*, Cham, a great Genius, and incapable of Corruption, as it is said. These Ministers had espoused different Parties; *Asph*, Cham, as may naturally be supposed, was in his Sister's the Sultaneſs's Interest, and *Mabomet* in that of Sultan *Cofrou*'s. The Sultaneſs, we find, prevailed so far, that *Cofrou* was forced to have Recourse to Arms, and she laid an Ambuscade to seize on his Friend *Mabomet* and dispatch him as he went out of the Palace; but *Mabomet* escaped her Hands, and assembling a small Party of Soldiers, of whom he was General, surrounded the Emperor's Apartment, and compelled his Majesty to mount his Elephant, and seating himself by his Side, under the same Canopy, he held a naked Dagger in his Hand, letting the Sultaneſs know, that if any Attempt was made to stop his Passage, the Emperor must not expect to survive it. And thus he brought the Emperor to his own House, where he had a Body of Troops under Arms sufficient to protect himself from the Practices of *Nour-Jaham*, and his Enemy *Asph*, Cham.

It was expected now that *Jehan Guire* would have been deposed, and the Crown placed upon the Head of Sultan
Cofrou;

Cofrou; but *Mahomet* soon restored the Emperor to his Liberty, assuring his Majesty, that what he had done was only to preserve his own Life, and, to demonstrate his Loyalty, he would immediately march against Sultan *Cofrou*, if he refused to lay down his Arms and return to his Duty. *Cofrou* reasonably apprehending that if ever he should fall into the Power of *Nour-Jaham*, it would be of fatal Consequence to him, refused to quit the Field; and engaging *Mahomet*, was defeated, and brought Prisoner to Court, and afterwards shut up with his Wives and Children in the Castle of *Guallore*.

While the Prince remained in this Captivity, *Nour-Jaham* made him an Offer, not only of his Liberty, but to assure his Succession to the Crown if he would marry her Daughter, whom she proposed to divorce from his younger Brother *Scheriar*, as being an unactive Prince, and never likely to maintain himself upon the Throne if he should happen to be placed upon it. But such was Sultan *Cofrou's* Contempt or Prejudice to *Nour-Jaham's* Family, or, as others say, such was his Passion for one of his Wives, that he refused to comply with *Nour-Jaham* even in these wretched Circumstances. *Asaph*, Cham, Brother to the Sultaneſs, also encouraged the unfortunate *Cofrou* to persist in his Resolution, having an Interest to manage distinct from that of his Sister's: For Sultan *Cborram* the third Son of the Emperor, as has been observed, had married his Daughter; and if Sultan *Cofrou* and *Nour-Jaham* should be reconciled, his Son-in-Law could never hope to succeed. But to make all sure, lest Sultan *Cofrou*, induced by the Harſhips he suffered, or the Hopes of a Crown, might at length be prevailed on to comply with the Sultaneſs, he procured the Emperor to send for Sultan *Cborram* to Court, where they agreed together to procure Sultan *Cofrou* to be privately murdered in Prison. It was first attempted by Poison, but the Prince suspected the Design, and would eat nothing but what was dressed by his beloved Wife; whereupon they resolved to take the shortest Way, and ordered the Captain of the Fortress to strangle him, which was executed without the Emperor's Knowledge. However, a Fact of this Nature could not be transacted so privately but it was at length discovered; and though the Murderers were Persons of that Consequence, that the Emperor could not punish it in the manner it deserved, yet he from thenceforward determined to make his Grandson *Bolaqui*, the Son of Sultan *Cofrou*, his Successor, who appeared to be a Prince

Prince of very great Expectations, and then about seventeen Years of Age.

This Prince therefore was brought to Court and treated as the presumptive Heir of the Crown, while Sultan *Chorrem* was commanded to retire to his Government of *Deccan*. Here he spent his Time in making Alliances with the neighbouring Rajas, and by Presents and Offers of Preferment, brought over most of the best Officers in the Empire to his Party; while the old Emperor spent his Time in the Amusements of the Seraglio, or over a Bottle with his Friends; for either the Sultaneſs now indulged him in it, or ſhe had not that Influence over him as when her Charms were in their Bloom.

But this Emperor was not ſo entirely devoted to Wine or Women, as to loſe the Reliſh of a rural Life: He frequently retired in the Summer into the Kingdom of *Cachemire*, the moſt northern Part of his Dominions, which is looked upon in *India* as a terreſtrial Paradise, being exceeding temperate and healthful, and abounding with all things that can render Life deſirable. Here the Emperor built him an elegant Palace, laid out delightful Gardens, made Canals and Cascades, and embellished it with a thouſand Beauties. The Sultaneſs took a particular Delight in ſtocking the Canals with tame Fiſh, and many Years after there were taken Fiſh with Gold Rings, which this Princeſs had ſaſtened to ſome of her Favourites.

It was in this charming Retirement the Emperor was enjoying himſelf with his beloved *Nour-Mahal*, when News was brought that the Great *Cha Abbas*, King of *Persia*, threatened to invade *Indoſtan*, unleſs *Candahor* was delivered up to him, according as *Amayam*, Grandfather to the preſent Mogul, had ſtipulated. Orders were ſent hereupon to *Siam*, *Cham*, Viceroy of *Multan*, to march towards the Frontiers, and ſtop the Progreſs of the *Persians*. But this General being unprovided of Ammunition, and almoſt every Thing elſe to take the Field, was forced to be a Witneſs of the taking of *Candahor*, after it had held out a Siege of fix Months. And what diſtracted the Emperor more, was, his Son Sultan *Chorrem's* raiſing a Rebellion in the Heart of the Empire.

Candahor
taken by
the *Persians*.

A Civil
War.

The Emperor, reſiding principally at the City of *Lahor*, had ordered the Treſure of the Empire to be removed thither from *Agra*, of which *Aſaph*, *Cham*, who was to command the Convoy, ſent immediate Notice to his Son-in-Law, Sultan *Chorrem*, and informed him where he might beſt

best intercept it on the Road. *Chorrom* immediately assembled an Army of 60,000 Men, and marched towards *Agra*, which the Eunuch who commanded the Treasure having Intelligence of, refused to deliver it to *Asaph*, Cham, though he brought the Emperor's express Orders for it; and the Eunuch immediately dispatched a Courier to Court to advise his Majesty what imminent Hazard he would run if he removed the Treasure at this Juncture. But Sultan *Chorrom* had proceeded so far in the Attempt, that his Design was sufficiently known: He resolved therefore to continue his March to *Agra*, and endeavour to seize the Treasure in the Fortrefs where it was repositied. But the Eunuch so well defended his Charge, that *Chorrom* was beaten off with Loss: However, to make himself Satisfaction for his Disappointment, he plundered the Palaces of the Omrahs, and retired towards *Decan*.

The Emperor in the mean time assembled his Forces, and marched with all Expedition towards *Agra*, where he found his Son had committed great Ravages, though he had been disappointed in his principal Design. He pursued the Rebel in Person, and was joined by his Son Sultan *Pervis*, from *Bengal*; but *Abdul*, Cham, one of the Imperial Generals, deserting over to Sultan *Chorrom*, prevented his Father's taking his full Revenge upon him. However the Emperor gained the Victory, and *Chorrom* was compelled to retire into the Mountains. The young Prince *Bolaqui* afterwards laid Siege to *Amadabat*, the Capital of *Guzarat*, and having taken it by Storm, plundered Sultan *Chorrom's* Palace, broke in Pieces his golden Throne, and distributed the precious Stones with which it was adorned among his Officers. *Abdul*, Cham, hereupon assembled the broken Remains of *Chorrom's* Troops, and ventured to engage the young *Bolaqui*, but was again defeated, and with great Difficulty escaped into *Surat*; from whence he afterwards found means to join Sultan *Chorrom* at *Brampour*. Here they assembled a considerable Body of Troops, but being most of them undisciplined new raised Men, they were dispersed upon the Approach of Sultan *Pervis*, and *Mahomet*, Cham, with the Imperial Army.

In the mean time the *Ussic Tartars* invaded the Province of *Cabulistan*, ravaging the Country after their usual manner. This drew the Emperor and great Part of his Forces northward, and gave Sultan *Chorrom* an Opportunity to take the Field again. He fell into the rich Country of *Bengal*, and having plundered the open Towns, was retiring with his Booty, when Sultan *Pervis*, Governor of that

that Province, with the Imperial General *Mahomet*, Chian, fell upon his Army and entirely defeated it; Sultan *Chorrom* escaping only with three thousand Men.

*An Inter-
regnum,
A. D.
1627.*

*Several
Competi-
tors for the
Empire.*

Jehan Guire, the old Emperor, dying in 1627, there were three Competitors for his Throne, (*viz.*) *Scheriar*, who had married the Daughter of the Sultaneſs, who was by her Intereſt proclaimed in the Palace; the Army adhered to Prince *Bolaqui*, Grandſon of *Jehan Guire*, who being recognized by the City of *Agra*, for ſome Time enjoyed the Imperial Title. The Sultaneſs and her Son-in-Law *Scheriar* were delivered up to him, whom he confined in Priſon, and put out the Eyes of the latter. The two old Miniſters, *Aſaph*, Cham, and *Mahomet*, Cham, notwithstanding favoured Sultan *Chorrom*; but the Treafure and Forces of the Empire being in the Power of *Bolaqui*, they did not yet think it a proper Time to declare themſelves. *Bolaqui* reſolving to ſound his Uncle's Intentions, ſent to demand a Tribute and Homage for the Kingdom of *Deccan*, and the other Dominions he held of the Empire. The Omrah, who was diſpatched to Sultan *Chorrom* on this Occaſion, was acquainted that he was in ſo ill a State of Health, that he could not poſſibly tranſact any Buſineſs; ſtill the Omrah perſiſted to ſee him, which with ſome Difficulty he was at length permitted to do, and found the Sultan in a very weak and languiſhing Condition, as he apprehended, and vomiting Blood in ſuch Quantities, that he did not think it poſſible he could live many Days. The Omrah thereupon immediately diſpatched a Courier to *Agra* with the News, which he knew would be very acceptable to the Court. But this Illneſs, it ſeems, was all counterfeit, and the Blood he ſeemed to vomit was only the Blood of a Kid he held in his Mouth: However the Deſign was ſtill carried on, Sultan *Chorrom* diſappeared, and it was not only given out that he was dead, but his whole Court went into Mourning for him. The crafty *Mahomet* alſo prevailed with the Omrah who came from *Bolaqui*, to write to his Maſter to obtain Leave for the burying the Sultan in the Royal Sepulchre at *Agra*, which was readily granted; and upon the Return of the Courier a pompous Funeral Proceſſion was begun, ſuitable to the Quality of ſo great a Prince. *Mahomet*, Cham, at the Head of a thouſand Officers of the Deceafed, attended the Hearſe, and Sultan *Chorrom* himſelf followed in Diſguiſe; ſeveral Bodies of the *Rajaputes*, Allies of Sultan *Chorrom*, ſell in with the Proceſſion upon the Road, under Pretence of paying their laſt Devours to the Deceafed. *Aſaph*, Cham, who

who had not declared himself, but remained of *Bolagui's* Council in *Agra*, treacherously advised the young Emperor to meet his Uncle's Corpse as it drew near *Agra*; who thereupon marched out with an ordinary Guard, and such an Equipage as was suitable to the Occasion. He was surprised to see so numerous a Body of Troops attending the Hearse, and suspecting he was betrayed, turned short on a sudden, and made his Escape, never attempting to recover *Agra*; and indeed he did not stop till he found himself in the *Persian* Dominions. He looked upon the Defection to be universal, and very well knew, that the Consequence of falling into his Enemies Hands was Death, or the Loss of his Eyes at least.

In the mean time Sultan *Chorrom* threw off his Disguise, and at the Head of his Troops made his Entry into the City of *Agra*, which opened her Gates to receive him. He was immediately proclaimed Emperor, and took upon him the Title of *Cha Jehan*, or *King of the World*. The unfortunate Sultan *Scheriar* had before lost his Eyes, but his Brother not satisfied with that, ordered him to be shut up with his two Sons in an Apartment of the Palace, and the Doors to be walled up, where it is supposed they all died for want of Food, being never heard of since.

Cha Jehan having an insuperable Aversion to the *Christians*, or rather to the *Portuguese*, upon account of their refusing to assist him in his Wars against his Father, determined to extirpate them out of his Dominions: Nor were they now so formidable an Enemy in the *Indies* as they had been heretofore, being every Day beaten at Sea by other *European* Nations, in Sight of the Coasts, and many of their Settlements taken from them by the *Dutch*. His first Enterprize therefore, after his Accession, was against the *Portuguese* Fort of *Hugley*, not far from the Mouth of the *Ganges*, which he commanded *Cassam*, Cham, to besiege in Form. That General, when he first appeared before the Place, only made a Demand of a certain Sum of Money, upon the Payment whereof he promised to retire with his Troops; but he had no sooner possessed himself of the Treasure than he ordered the Trenches to be opened, and played from his Batteries upon the Fort with such Fury, that the *Portuguese* soon surrendered at Discretion, and were all made Prisoners of War: The Garison consisted of six or seven hundred Men, who were most of them transplanted to *Agra*, and compelled to turn *Mahometans*, except some few, whom the Missionaries assure us died Martyrs to their Religion.

Cha Jehan's Accession,
A.D. 1628.
The Dutch take the Portuguese Settlements.

Cha Jehan removed the Imperial Seat to *Delly*, where he built the most magnificent Palace in *India*; and here he proposed to spend the Remainder of his Life in Ease and Pleasure: He had, according to the Maxims of the Eastern Policy, cut off or banished all that could make any Pretensions to the Throne, and seemed now to indulge himself beyond any of his luxurious Predecessors.

Plays, Music, and Dancing, the Fights of Elephants, Tygers, &c. had each their Hours assigned for them; and as he was bred in Arms, he took a particular Pleasure in seeing the bloody Combats of the Gladiators. Hunting was another favourite Sport; but he indulged his Passion for the Fair beyond any of them. The hundreds and thousands of his Slaves in the Haram, how young and beautiful soever, he despised; the Wives of the greatest Omrahs only he thought worthy his Pursuit; which unaccountable Passion laid the Foundation of those Misfortunes he afterwards experienced in the Decline of Life.

So mean and contemptible did this vicious Prince appear in the Eyes of his Subjects in a few Years, that they lost all Respect for his Person; and the great Rajas, or tributary Princes, refused any longer to obey his Orders. These used to mount the Guard by Turns, with several thousands of their Rajaputes, and pitch their Tents before the Gates of the Palace; the Raja *Amerfin* having neglected his Turn, was reprimanded by the Vizier Cham, principal Secretary of State, in the Presence of the Mogul. The Raja thereupon drew his Crice, and stabbed the Secretary to the Heart; he was himself indeed stabbed in a thousand Places afterwards, but the Rajaputes, to revenge their Prince's Death, destroyed several thousand People in the Town of *Delly*, and particularly all they met with who belonged to the Palace; nor was the Government now in a Condition to take Satisfaction of that People; which some other Rajas observing, threw off their Allegiance also, and set up for an Independency.

Cha Jehan, as he grew in Years, from a profuse voluptuous Prince, became the greatest Miser that ever sat upon a Throne; to his Generals and Governors of Provinces, 'tis said, he allowed no other Subsistence than what they acquired by that unlimited Power he gave them, of fleecing the People under their Command; and when any of them by this Means were grown immoderately rich, he found some Misconduct in their Administration, and emptied their Bags into his own Treasury. He had two large Vaults under his Palace; in one of which he hoarded up his Gold,

Gold, and the other his Silver, having them cast in such large Ingots, that they were not easily removed. In these Vaults he spent great part of the Day, feeding his Eyes with that immense Wealth, the like whereof was not to be found in any Kingdom of the World. In the mean Time, his Sons had no Allowance any more than the rest of his Officers, except what they could extort from the People in the distant Governments to which they were sent, chiefly to avoid the Expences they occasioned at Court.

This Emperor had four Sons and two Daughters, *viz.* Sultan *Dara*, or *Darius*, his eldest Son; Sultan *Sujah*, sometimes styled *Cba Chuia*, i. e. *The Prudent Prince*, was the second Son; *Aurengzebe*, or, *the Ornament of the Throne*, the third; and *Morad Back*, or *Perfect Desire*, was the fourth. *Begom Sabeb*, which signifies *Princess of the Blood*, or, *the Royal Princess*, was the eldest Daughter; and *Roxanara Begum*, which signifies *the Illustrious Princess*, or, *the Light of Princesses*, was the second Daughter.

The Emperor designing his eldest Son *Dara* for his Successor, kept him always near his Person: He was a Prince of bright Parts, which had been improved by a generous Education. The *European* Missionaries, to whom he gave great Encouragement, had instructed him in Philosophy, Mathematics, and other Sciences: He entertained also *European* Engineers, and ingenious Mechanics in his Service; and few Princes ever made a greater Progress in whatever he applied himself to: The only Fault we find him charged with, is the having too high a Sense of his own Merit; and in Consequence of that, looking with too much Contempt on those who were of his Ministry, and whose Province it was to assist him with their Advice or Interest; his openly countenancing *Christianity*, or the Disciples of that Religion, though it is not to be numbered among his Faults by us, occasioned also a general Prejudice against him among the *Mahometan* Omrahs; and contributed as much as any one thing to his missing the Crown.

Dara, however, being vested with almost sovereign Authority by his Father, and being allowed to sit on a Sopha, or Chair of State, but very little lower than the Emperor's, even in his Presence, which never was allowed to any of the *Mogul* Princes before, was outwardly adored and courted by all the World; and excepting the Revenues of the Empire, there was not any Mark of Royalty which *Cba Jehan* did not confer upon this Favourite Son; which was answered by suitable Returns of Gratitude and Filial Obedience. *Aurengzebe* seemed so mortified a Prince, and

so entirely devoted to Religion, as to despise all worldly Grandeur. The due Administration of Justice in his Province of *Decan*, and his Devotions, took up the greatest Part of his Time; what he had to spare, was spent in erecting Temples, or charitable Foundations, or in heavenly Conversation with the Faquirs, who are an Order of begging Friars among the *Mahometans*; though there is one memorable Story related of him, which one would have thought should have lost his Credit with them.

He ordered all the Faquirs which were to be found in the Province to be assembled on a certain Day, declaring, that he designed to distribute his Charity amongst them, and desired the Consolation of eating a Meal of Rice and Herbs with those holy Men: Accordingly a Multitude of this Order were assembled, and a frugal Entertainment provided for them, such as their Institution required.

After Dinner *Aurengzebe* let them know, that he had ordered every one of them a new Suit of Clothes, and desired them to put off their Rags, which he was uneasy to see so many of the Votaries of their holy Prophet compelled to wear, through the Uncharitableness of the People among whom they dwelt.

The Brethren hereupon were struck with the utmost Consternation, and would have excused their accepting the Offer by their Vows of Poverty; but the Viceroy, who was well acquainted with the Gold and precious Stones those Rags concealed, would not be denied: And after he had put the Friars into a more decent Dress, he ordered the Treasure to be separated from the Trumpery; whereby he made himself Master of an immense Sum, which 'tis said was one of the best Funds he had to support him afterwards in the War against his Father and Brothers; but notwithstanding *Aurengzebe* had pillaged the Saints in this Manner, he still continued to transact all his Concerns with an Air of Sanctity; Religion was the pretended Inducement to every Undertaking: His Zeal for the Orthodox Faith it was that put him upon the Conquest of *Golconda*. This King, it seems, was a Heretic of the *Persian* Sect, and therefore did not deserve to reign. A true Believer only could be entitled to the rich Diamond Mines of this Country; not that we can suppose the mortified *Aurengzebe* had an Eye upon these for his own private Advantage, but it must be to the general Prejudice of Religion, to let such Treasures remain in the Possession of a Heretic Prince: But whatever was the true Motive to this Enterprize against the King of *Golconda*, *Aurengzebe* now found a very favourable Opportunity of invading his Dominions. The

The Emperor *Cha Jehan* being taken dangerously ill, it was reported in *Delly*, and even in the remotest Provinces of the Empire, that he was dead: Whereupon the three youngest Sultans his Sons began to make Preparations in their respective Provinces to push for the Empire. Sultan *Sujah*, *Another* or *Chua*, Viceroy of *Bengal*, was the first that appeared in *Civil War* Arms, bending his March towards *Delly*, with an Army of forty thousand Horse: When he first set forward, 'tis said he laid his Hand on his Cymetar, crying out, *Now for a Throne or a Tomb*. He gave out upon the March, that Sultan *Dara* had poisoned the Emperor, and that he was going to revenge his Father's Death; but *Cha Jehan* recovering from his Indisposition, wrote his Son Word with his own Hand, that he was now perfectly in Health, and that his Brother *Dara* had not at all contributed to his late Illness; and therefore he would do well to return to his Government of *Bengal*, and repair the Oversight his Excess of Zeal had induced him to commit, by a more exact Obedience for the future. But Sultan *Sujah* receiving other Letters from his Friends at the same Time, assuring him, that it was not likely his Father would recover; and that his Fortune depended on his appearing immediately before *Delly*, the Sultan thought fit to continue his March. *Cha Jehan* hereupon removed his Court to *Agra*, being a Place of much greater Strength. *Dara* followed his Father's Court, but detached his Son *Salyman Chacu*, and with him Raja *Jacotfing*, and *Dalil*, Cham, two experienced Generals, and a gallant Army, to oppose Sultan *Sujah*, whose Forces being much inferior in all Respects, were easily defeated; and the Sultan himself, with some Difficulty escaped to *Bengal*. In the mean time, the Mogul's two youngest Sons had assembled their Troops, in order to dispute the Crown with *Dara*. *Aurengzabe* indeed practised his usual Arts of Diffimulation, pretending he had no Manner of Thoughts of setting up himself; and wrote to his Brother *Morad Back*, Viceroy of *Guxarat*, to acquaint him, that all his Ambition was to see the Worship of God, and the Law of his holy Prophet, established in its primitive Purity; that he was sorry to observe, that their Brother *Dara* was become a Profelyte to Christianity; and Sultan *Sujah* followed the *Persian* Heresy; but he should endeavour, by the Help of God, and his holy Prophet, to prevent either the Apostate, or the Heretic's mounting the Throne of their Father: And since *Morad* alone retained a true Zeal for the Alcoran, he would assist him with all his Power and Interest to oppose them

them both, desiring no other Return for his Services, but that he might spend the Remainder of his Life near the Tomb of *Mahomet*, in Acts of Mortification and Devotion, Sultan *Morad* was infinitely pleased with his Brother's pious Intentions; and invited him to come and join his Forces with him, that they might march in a Body to *Delly*. *Aurengzebe* hereupon, with his Friend *Mirza Mula*, set forwards towards *Delly*, with an Army of Veteran Troops, who had served in the Wars of *Visapour* and *Golconda*, well provided with all Necessaries, and a prodigious Bank of Money, which he had been heaping up for several Years. When the Armies came in Sight, *Aurengzebe* dismounted, and ran to meet his Brother, prostrating himself before him as his Sovereign. *Morad* immediately took his Brother up, and embraced him, and the highest Professions of mutual Friendship passed between them: *Morad* was prevailed upon, by this Master of Diffimulation, to take upon him the Imperial Stile and State, and his Brother was pleased to receive those Orders from him which he first advised. So soon as Sultan *Dara* understood the two Brothers were joined, he dispatched a Trumpet with a Letter from the Emperor, to each of them, assuring them that he was in Health, and that they should retire and disband their Troops, on Pain of his Resentment. *Morad*, it is said, was shocked to find his Father was alive, and was inclined to obey his Orders; but *Aurengzebe* shewing him that it was too late to repent, and that there was now no Medium between Death and Conquest; and that if ever the Armies separated, they were infallibly ruined; that though their Father might be yet alive, he was superannuated, and incapable of regal Carts; and in Effect, that the prophane *Dara* had already possessed himself of the sovereign Power, and would infallibly extirpate their holy Religion, if he was not timely prevented; by these specious Reasons he prevailed upon the honest *Morad* to continue his March,

Dara was not idle in the mean time, but ordered his Generals *Jacantsing* and *Cassam*, Cham, to take a Pass upon the River *Ugen*, which might have been maintained against all the Forces of the two Brothers; But *Cassam*, Cham, one of those whom *Dara* had formerly disoblged, being in the Interest of *Aurengzebe*, withdrew upon the Approach of his Army, and left the Raja *Jacantsing* to fight it out by himself; whereupon the two Brothers gained an easy Victory, making themselves Masters of all the Enemies Artillery and Baggage; and so did the Partisans of *Aurengzebe* manage this Matter, that all the Glory of the Victory was ascribed to him

him; which gave a great Disgust to the Ministers and Generals of *Morad's* Army, knowing that their Master's Troops had born all the Burden of the Day, while *Aurengzebe* seemed to reserve his own Forces for another Occasion. They begun now to be convinced of the ambitious Designs of that Dissembler, and had, it is said, without their Master's Knowledge, formed a Design to cut him off, next time he came to *Morad's* Quarters; which *Aurengzebe*, who had his Spies in every Place, had some Intelligence of, and came no more to his Brother's Tent as usual, but sent his Son *Mahomed* to pay his Compliments, without discovering that he was apprised of the Conspiracy against him.

While the two Brothers continued their March, the Malcontents at Court came over to them every Day; and many of those who stayed behind remained there but for an Opportunity of giving Intelligence to the Enemy. *Cha Sultan* *Jehan* finding himself betrayed on every Side, and reflecting on his former Conduct, it is said, in Respect to the Omrahs, thought this universal Defection might proceed from a particular Prejudice to his own Person, he made a Cession of the Crown, and devolved all his Authority on his Son *Dara*, who thereupon immediately raised a prodigious Army, and marched to meet the Enemy, upon the 14th of May 1656.

*Dara appointed
Emperor by
his Father,
A. D.
1656.*

Dara continued his March for four Days, till he came to the River *Chambal*, where he intrenched himself, and determined to wait the Motions of the two Brothers; for here his Army could be supplied with all Provisions from *Agra*, and the Enemy he knew could not possibly subsist long in that barren Country, which lay to the Southward, especially at this Season of the Year, when the Heats are intollerable.

Aurengzebe observing the Disposition of the Imperial Army, and that all the Avenues to *Dara's* Camp were fortified with Intrenchments and Batteries of Cannon, concluded it was impossible to force the Enemy in that Post: On the other hand, he was sensible, that the least Delay would infallibly be their Ruin; *Dara* would be joined in a little Time by his victorious Son, who was returning from the Pursuit of Sultan *Sajah*; and their own Troops would be disheartened, and disperse, if their first Heat was a little cooled, as is usual in all Insurrections, where Rebels meet with unforeseen Difficulties. In this Distress the Raja *Campet*, a confirmed Enemy to the Court, offered the two Brothers a Passage through his Country, which lay about thirty Miles higher up the River, where it was probable

they

they would meet with no Opposition; for the Raja's Territories being woody and mountainous, and the Raja himself a General in the Imperial Army, *Dara* looked upon himself as secure on that Side, when, to his Surprise, Intelligence was brought him, that a Body of the Enemy had actually passed the River, and was preparing to attack his Rear. *Dara* immediately dispatched the treacherous *Calil*, Cham, to oppose them; but he having a Correspondence with *Aurengzebe*, suffered his whole Army to pass the River, and form themselves in order of Battle, without giving them any Disturbance; so that now both Armies came to a Battle on equal Terms; which was fought with very great Bravery on that Side where *Dara* himself commanded; but the other Generals not doing their Duty, and some of them with their whole Bodies going over to the Enemy, the two Brothers at length obtained an entire Victory. *Dara* retired with a small Body of Troops which remained faithful to him to *Agra*; where he staid but a few Hours to refresh himself, and continued his March to *Delly*; but the Governor having heard of the Loss of the Battle, refused him Admittance; whereupon he was compelled to retire to *Labor*.

Cha Jehan
the Empe-
ror taken
Prisoner
by his Son.

In the mean time *Aurengzebe* and *Morad* advanced with their victorious Army to the Gates of *Agra*, and invested the Place, which was betrayed to them in a few Days; and the old Emperor *Cha Jehan* made Prisoner. The two Brothers possessed themselves of his prodigious Treasures, which they found abundantly sufficient to reward their Adherents, and support their Usurpation; and having refreshed their Troops, and put the Government into such Hands as they could depend on, they left a Garison in *Agra*, and continued their March towards *Delly*, *Morad* being treated by *Aurengzebe* and the whole Army as their Emperor. They were encamped in the fertile Plains of *Matura*, where stands a noble Mosque or Temple, erected by some of the Mogul Emperors. *Aurengzebe* proposed this as a proper Place for the Inauguration of his Brother; whereupon great Preparations were made to perform the Solemnity on the 15th of *June*, 1656.

The Evening before, *Aurengzebe* pretending some Indisposition, which prevented his Attendance at the Court of the new Emperor, invited his Majesty to his new Quarters, to regulate some Matters in relation to the intended Procession, and to consult the Astrologers upon the lucky Moment for his Inauguration. *Morad*, it is said, was so blinded by his Ambition, or naturally brave and undesigning
in

in his Temper, and not easily induced to suspect others, would not listen to the Representations of his Ministers against his putting himself into the Power of his Brother ; but attended only by an ordinary Guard, and some few Officers of his Army, came to *Aurengzebe's* Tent, according to the Invitation made him ; where he was received in a Manner suitable to the Imperial Dignity, and with such artful Tenderneſs, and ſeeming Affection by his crafty Brother, as perfectly diſſipated all Suspicion of Treachery.

A noble Entertainment was ſoon after ſerved up, and Wine brought in, which was the firſt Time *Aurengzebe* had ſuffered Wine to be drunk at his Table. The royal Brothers eat together, while the Officers which came with *Morad* were entertained in a diſtant Tent ; and only that Prince's Eunuch, *Cha Abbas*, remained with his Maſter.

Morad indulged himſelf in drinking Wine after his uſual Cuſtom, while that Saint *Aurengzebe* would touch nothing but Water ; at length the new Emperor fell aſleep, and was removed into a Pavilion prepared for him, attended only by his faithful Eunuch, who laid himſelf down at his Maſter's Feet. Towards Morning *Aurengzebe* attended by half a Dozen of his Guards, came into the Tent where *Morad* was ſleeping, and ordering his Brother and the Eunuch to be bound, before they were well awake ; they were ſhut up in ſeveral Litters, and the one ſent under a Guard to *Delly*, and the other to *Agra* : And all this was ſo well concerted, that neither Camp had notice of it, except thoſe that were in the Secret. The Muſic played on, and the Servants attended round the Pavilion of *Aurengzebe* till Morning, as if the two Brothers were ſtill rejoicing there ; and it was given out, that the Emperor *Morad* would proceed from his Brother's Tent to his intended Inauguration ; and Orders were given out, that none ſhould appear armed at the Solemnity, except the Guards appointed on this Occaſion.

Moſt of the Soldiers of both Armies were now aſſembled in the Plain abovementioned, expecting the Approach of the Emperor *Morad* ; when a Body of Troops, the moſt devoted to *Aurengzebe*, ſurrounded the Place, and poſſeſſed all the Avenues to the Camp ; and the mortified *Aurengzebe*, to the Surprize of all that were not in the Deſign, ſoon after appeared in his royal Robes, and placed himſelf upon the Throne erected for his Brother ; whereupon his Partifans, as they were inſtructed, cried out, Long live the Emperor *Aurengzebe*, which was echoed from one Side of the Plain to the other ; and the Bulk of both Armies, influenced by their Hopes or Fears, joined in the general Acclamation.

Au-

Aurengzebe's
Acceſſion,
A. D.
1656.

Aurengzebe having new modelled both Armies according to his Heart's Desire, prepared to pursue *Dara* into the Kingdom of *Labor*, who had assembled a new Army there of 30,000 Men. But *Aurengzebe*, who ever effected his greatest Designs by raising Misunderstandings among his Enemies, rather than by downright Force, found Means to create such Jealousies among *Dara's* Officers, that his Troops dispersed upon the Approach of *Aurengzebe's* Army; and *Dara* fled with a very small Retinue, transporting himself along the *Indus*, into the Province of *Guzurat*, in hopes of escaping afterwards into *Persia*.

The new Emperor hereupon turned his Forces against Sultan *Sujah* or *Chua*, the second of *Cha Jehan's* Sons, who understanding that *Aurengzebe* was marched Northward, had left his Government of *Bengal* a second Time, and advanced towards *Agra*; but *Aurengzebe* returning with a surprising Celerity, prevented that Capital from falling into his Hands: However, Sultan *Sujah* had posted his Troops so advantageously, that he was not to be forced in his Camp; and kept a Communication open with several Towns, from whence he was well supplied with Provisions, while his Enemies wanted all Necessaries, and even Water, which they were forced to bring to their Camp upon the Backs of Camels from the *Ganges*, twenty Miles distance from them. In this Distress *Aurengzebe* ordered it to be given out, that he would decamp the next Morning; and accordingly the Tents were struck, and the Troops actually in Motion; which Sultan *Sujah* observing, prepared to fall upon their Rear. The Troops of *Aurengzebe* were ordered to give way upon the first Charge, till they had drawn the advanced Guards of Sultan *Sujah* some Distance from their Camp, and then to make a Stand; which Orders were punctually executed; and Sultan *Sujah* observing his Men were overpowered, detached still other Troops to support them; and the Enemy doing the like on the other Side, it came at length to a general Battle. The Generals mounted on their respective Elephants, advanced with the Bodies under their immediate Commands to engage each other: And the Battle was fought with great Obstinacy, till *Aurengzebe* artfully drew his Enemy into a Field, where he had ordered Pits to be made the Night before, and covered over with Turf; so that they lay unperceived. Here the brave Sultan *Sujah* was advancing to engage his Brother, and personally decide the Fortune of the Day, when his Elephant flounced into one of these Pits prepared for him; from whence the

the Sultan found it impossible to disengage himself suddenly ; whereupon the Army not seeing their General, imagined he was killed, and thought of nothing but making their Retreat. Sultan *Sujah* afterwards mounted a Horse that was brought him, and endeavoured to rally his flying Troops ; but it was too late ; the Rout was total ; a Panic Fear had seized his Forces, and they could never be brought to make a Stand again ; and *Sujah* with great Difficulty made his Escape into the Province of *Bengal*. Here he recruited his shattered Troops ; and having posted himself in an advantageous Camp, waited the Approach of the Enemy. Here he received Advice that *Mahomet*, the eldest Son of *Aurengzebe* was in Disgrace, and invited him to come over to his Party ; which Negotiation was so well managed, that he did not only desert his Father's Court himself, but brought over with him several of his best Officers.

The politic *Aurengzebe* nevertheless found Means to create a Jealousy between the Uncle and the Nephew ; and at the same time gave his Son all imaginable Encouragement to return to his Duty ; and by these Means he prevailed with the young Prince to quit the Service of Sultan *Sujah* : But the Father had no sooner got him into his Power, but he clapped him up in the Castle of *Guallior*, that he might have no Opportunity of playing the same Game that he himself had done against his Father *Cha Jehan*.

And now *Aurengzebe* having no Enemy able to keep the Field against him and his Father, as well as his Brother *Morad*, his Prisoner, he made his triumphant Entry into the City of *Delly*, and caused Money to be coined with this Inscription, *I the King Aurengzebe, Conqueror of the World, have caused this Money to be coined bright as the Sun itself.*

Sultan *Dara* still found Means to draw together another Army in *Guzerat*. His Title to the Crown, and that Tenderness the People generally entertain for the Unfortunate, with the detested Hypocrisy of his Brother *Aurengzebe*, procured him a considerable Party in the Empire ; but the Generals of the new Emperor were so vigilant, that they soon put a Stop to his Levies, and dispersed the Troops he had raised. Such was the Consternation of *Dara's* Troops upon the Approach of the Enemy, that this unfortunate Prince was again abandoned by all his Adherents, except 2000 Horse : Accompanied with these in the Midst of Summer without Tents, or any Accommodations, he was compelled to traverse a vast sandy Desert, in order, if possible, to get into the City of *Amadabat*, which was in the Possession of his Troops : But when he had, with incredible Fatigue, marched

marched within a few Miles of that City, and given the Governor Notice of his Approach. *Aurengzebe* had so prevailed with the Commander by Threats or Promises, that he would not suffer *Dara* to enter the Gates.

The Sultan now despairing to restore his Affairs, determined to fly for Refuge into *Persia*, to which he was the rather induced, because *Gium*, Cham, the Commander of a Fort upon the Frontiers, was his Friend, and might favour his Retreat. This Man had received the highest Favours from the Sultan ; and particularly once he saved his Life, when the Emperor *Cha Jehan* had commanded him to be trod to death by Elephants for some Misdemeanor he had committed. This Traitor received the Sultan with the greatest Professions of Gratitude, but immediately gave Intelligence to the General who commanded the Forces of *Aurengzebe* on that Side, that he had *Dara* in his Power, and would deliver him up. The Sultan suspected the Treachery, and was meditating how he might make his Escape from thence, when a Detachment of *Aurengzebe's* Forces surrounded the Place, and carried *Dara* Prisoner with them to *Bakar* ; which was besieged by his Brother's Troops, being the only Fortrefs which still held out for *Dara*. They compelled the unfortunate Sultan to send Orders to the Governor to surrender the Fortrefs ; who obeyed, on condition he might be at Liberty to retire into the Kingdom of *Cachemire*. However, the captive Prince was brought to *Delly*, and set in an open Chair on the Back of an Elephant, with his Feet chained, and his youngest Children about him, which moved the Compassion of the People. His Brother *Aurengzebe* would not see his Face, but ordered him to be secured in a Castle without the Town ; and having assembled a Council of the principal Omrahs, he proposed it as a Matter indifferent to him, whether it were most advisable to condemn *Dara* to perpetual Imprisonment, or deprive him of his Life ; by which Means he did not doubt but he should discover which of them were in *Dara's* Interest, determining with himself not to spare one of them : But these Gentlemen were all so wise as to save their Lives by voting away their Master's, except one who had been his declared Enemy ; which it is said gave *Aurengzebe* such an Opinion of the Man, that he afterwards took him into the Number of his Friends. *Dara* in the mean time remained in Prison, in hourly Expectation of his Fate. When the Executioner approached, he cried out, *Mahomet* has given me Death, but the Son of God will restore me to Life.

Which

Which Words were hardly spoken, it is said, when the Executioner flung him on the Ground, and strangled him.

Sultan *Sujah*, the second Son of *Cha Jehan*, still remained in *Bengal*: But upon the Approach of *Aurengzebe's* Army, finding himself in no Condition to oppose so great a Force, he proposed to retire to the Kingdom of *Arracan*, which lies to the South-East of *Bengal*, but separated from it by unpassable Mountains and Forests. The *Portuguese*, who were then possessed of *Chatigan*, a Port near the Mouth of the River *Ganges*, took upon them to transport the Sultan, with his Treasure and Family thither; but it is said, they sunk the Vessel in which the Money and Jewels were, and afterwards converted them to their own Use. However that be, the Sultan *Sujah* arrived safe at *Arracan*, though it might have been as happy for him, if he had perished at Sea with his Treasure; for he had not been long in that Prince's Court, before there happened some Misunderstanding between him and the Prince he fled to for Refuge, and not only himself, but his Wives and Children, were all cut in Pieces in the Year 1658. Thus miserably died the second Son of *Cha Jehan*, who first begun the Rebellion against their Father. *Aurengzebe* did not yet think himself secure upon the Throne till his Brother *Morad* was taken off. He was murdered, therefore, by one Means or other, in order to secure the Possession of the Throne to *Aurengzebe*. His Father he permitted to enjoy all the Pleasures which were to be found within the Walls of the Palace. It would be of no Service to *Aurengzebe* to deprive a feeble old Man of his Life; and his Name he thought might be of Use to him, if any other Pretenders should oppose his Usurpation. And now several foreign Princes sent their Ambassadors, and congratulated the Accession of *Aurengzebe*: But the great *Cha Abbas*, Sophi of *Persia*, still reproached him with his Usurpation and repeated Murders, and the Imprisonment of his Father. And when *Aurengzebe* some time after dispatched an Envoy to *Persia*, to negotiate some particular Affair, the Sophi shewed he detested that Hypocrisy and Perfidiousness, by which he had raised himself to the Throne, and resenting his styling himself King of the World, ordered the Envoy's Beard to be pulled off, and the Presents he brought to be burnt. And had not Fortune, always propitious to this Usurper, taken off the great *Cha Abbas*, when he was upon the Point of invading the Mogul's Dominions, and the People in general ready for a Revolt, he would have found some Difficulty in maintaining himself upon the Throne.

In

In this Reign certain Pirates had fortified themselves at *Chatigan* and other Places, on the Mouths of the *Ganges*, and in the Kingdom of *Arracan*, which lies contiguous to *Bengal*. These Pirates consisted of *Europeans*, or *Franks* of all Nations, but chiefly of *Portuguese*; who frequently made Slaves of the Mogul's Subjects, burnt and plundered the Frontier Towns, and rendered both the Seas and Shores very unsafe. Against these *Aurengzebe* sent another of his Generals, who suppressed the Pirates, and brought that Part of *India* under as peaceable and regular a Government as any other Part of the Empire.

Sevagi
plunders
Surat,
A. D.
1664.

Raja *Sevagi*, a little *Indian* Prince, formed a Project in this Reign of surprising *Surat*, a Port of the greatest Trade in the Mogul's Dominions. To cover his Design, he marched with the greatest Part of his Forces the direct contrary Way; and while *Aurengzebe's* Generals were preparing to oppose him, he disguised himself in the Habit of a Faquir, and travelled to *Surat* on Foot, in order to view the Avenues to that City; and finding it a Place not capable of making any great Defence, at his Return to the Camp, he took with him no more than four thousand Men, with whom he marched with the utmost Secrecy and Expedition, insomuch that the Governor had no Notice of his Approach, till he came within Sight of the Town, and then thought fit to retire into the Castle with the Garison and the Effects of the greatest Value. The Inhabitants also forsook their Houses and fled into the Country, so that *Sevagi* had the plundering of one of the richest Towns in the World four Days together, without any manner of Opposition, except what he met with from the *English* and *Dutch* Factories; who having Time to erect a Battery or two of great Guns before their Houses, saved all their Effects: Nor was he prepared to attack the Castle, and therefore thought fit to march off with the Plunder he had got, which was computed to amount, only in Gold, Silver, and Jewels, to the Value of three Millions Sterling at least; for in the House of one *Banian* Merchant, it is said, he found twenty-two Pound Weight of strung Pearl, besides a great Quantity of others unpierced. Except the *English* and *Dutch* Settlements, none escaped his Ravages; unless it was a Convent of Capuchins, on whom he had Compassion on the Application of Father *Ambrose* their Superior. This Enterprize of *Sevagi's* was undertaken in *January* 1664, and though *Aurengzebe* was piqued to the Heart to see a little *Pagan* Prince contemn, and plunder his

his best Towns at Pleasure, he was not then, it seems, in a Condition to call him to an Account, and therefore thought fit to stifle his Resentment. Nay, he extolled the surprising of *Surat* as one of the greatest Actions that ever was performed; insinuating into the Rajas who attended the Court, that he was ambitious of seeing so great a Hero; desiring they would use their Interest to invite him into his Service, and gave them his Word he would protect him from all Violence. *Sevagi* hereupon ventured himself and his Son in the Mogul's Camp, where they were received at first with all imaginable Caresses; but after some Months, *Sevagi* observing a more than ordinary Coldness in the Mogul's Behaviour to him, and having some Intimation that there was a Design to dispatch him, he made his Escape with his Son into *Visiapour*, where he and his Descendants maintained a long War with *Aurengzebe*.

The Emperor *Cha Jehan* died in the Year 1666, at which *Cha Jehan's* his Son *Aurengzebe* either was, or pretended to be, exceedingly afflicted, and by way of Compensation for all the Crimes he had been guilty of to obtain the Crown, enjoined himself a perpetual Penance; whether out of pure Bigotry or Policy, this Prince laboured for nothing more than the Reputation of being a strict Observer of the *Mahometan* Law, and a Lover of Justice; nor was there any Part of his Time which he did not assign to some useful Purpose. This Prince is a remarkable Instance of what vast Advantage an abstemious regular Course of Life is towards the procuring Health and long Life, and rendering a Prince always fit for the most important and intricate Affairs: For this Emperor, notwithstanding he was an unwearied Hearer of Causes, and constantly directed the Affairs of so vast an Empire, and conquered several large Kingdoms, lived without contracting any Distemper; and neither his Judgment nor Memory were at all impaired when he was ninety Years of Age.

Great part of this Prince's Life being spent in the Conquest of the Kingdoms of *Decan*, *Visiapour*, *Golkonda*, and other Territories which lie towards *Cape Comorin*, he usually lived in the Field. When he decamped at any Time, no less than one hundred and twenty Elephants, one thousand four hundred Camels, and four hundred Carts, were employed in carrying the royal Tents, Baggage, and Furniture; and those were always sent away the Night before; the Emperor and every Omrah in the Army having a double Suit of Tents and Field Equipage, so that when they came

came to their Ground the Camp was always ready pitched, and Provisions of all Kinds to be had as soon as the March was over.

Golconda *Aurengzebe*, after a long and bloody War, having compelled the Kings of *Visiapour* and *Golconda* to become tributary to him, in the Years 1685 and 1686, deprived them even of that Appearance of Sovereignty he had left them, and brought them Prisoners to his Camp, and their Kingdoms being made Provinces of the Empire, have ever since been governed by a Nabob or Viceroy of the Mogul's.

and Visiapour conquered,
A. D.
1685.

These Conquests gave *Aurengzebe* the Sovereignty of most of the other petty States in the South of the Peninsula, as far as *Cape Comorin*, for these were Subjects or tributary to one or other of these Kings before the Great Mogul subdued them. There are, indeed, some Rajas or Pagan Princes in the Mountains, who still govern their own People, but these seldom think fit to attack the Mogul, and are very well satisfied if he well let them remain at quiet in their little Principalities. Some of them also are his Allies, and assisted him in the Conquest of *Visiapour* and *Golconda*; and these are suffered to retain their ancient Jurisdiction. However, it may properly enough be said, that the Empire of the Great Mogul has now no other Boundaries than the Ocean towards the South, for the Sea Coasts are generally in his Power: Nor is there any Raja in being able to meet him in the Field, though some few of them may skulk in inaccessible Mountains, and boast to this Day that they have not yet submitted to his Arms.

Aurengzebe, some Time before his Death, released his second Son *Cba Alem* out of Prison, and gave him the Government of the Province of *Indostan*; to his Son *Azem Dara* he gave the Government of *Decan*; and to his youngest Son, *Chan Bux*, the Government of *Visiapour*, *Golconda*, and *Bisnagar* or *Carnate*. *Aurengzebe* lying dangerously ill in his Camp near *Amadanagar*, his three surviving Sons (for *Akbar* was dead in *Persia*) began to draw Forces together in their respective Provinces to push for the Crown. The Great *Aurengzebe* died on the 4th of *March* 1708. Some of the Friends of *Cba Alem* desired his Majesty, a little before his Death, to declare that Prince his Successor. He answered, He had made him King of *Indostan*, but it belonged to God alone to secure his Reign.

Prince *Azem Dara* arrived in the Camp the next Day, the 5th of *March*, and immediately went to the Royal Tents, where the Chief Vizier, the Great Officers of the Court,

Court, and all the Generals attended him. Some Days after he seated himself upon the Throne at the *Sabet*, or fortunate Minute, predicted by the Astrologers, and caused himself to be proclaimed King by the Name of *Mahomet Azem Cha*.

Cha Alem, the second Son, marched towards *Delly*, drawing together Troops from all Parts, particularly *Rajaputes*, *Patans*, and other Nations, who are esteemed better Soldiers than the rest of the *Indians*. He was received at *Delly*, and seated himself on a magnificent Throne, which his Grandfather *Cha Jehan* had caused to be made. *Chan Bux* was preparing likewise for War, when he received a Letter from *Cha Alem*, in which he assured him, that he would carry himself as a Father towards him in the Possession of what *Aurengzebe* left him. Upon these Assurances, Prince *Chan Bux* caused himself to be crowned King of *Visiapour*, and immediately sent his Son with 18,000 Horse to take Possession of the Kingdom of *Golconda*, which the Governor *Roustan Dely Chan* yielded into his Hands, with a Sum of Roupies to the Value of 1,250,000 Crowns, of the Revenue of that Country.

In the mean while *Azem Dara* marched against *Cha Alem* with 150,000 Men, all veteran Troops: In the Month of *April* he arrived at *Aurengabad*, where he halted eight Days, and then pursued his March; leaving behind him his Women and Baggage, and the Chief Vizier, because of his Age. *Cha Alem* would have marched to meet him, but the Princes of the *Rajaputes* and his Generals represented to him, that nothing was of more Importance than the Preservation of his Person; and that he might place at the Head of his Army the Princes *Hassameddin* and *Mashoudi*, his Sons, who on several Occasions had given Proofs of their Valour and Conduct; whereupon he staid at *Agra*, and committed the Management of the War to them. These Princes gained a decisive Victory over *Azem Dara*, who finding himself in Danger of being made Prisoner, killed himself with his own Hands.

Cha Alem their Father afterwards assumed the Name of *Cha Alem Badour Cha*, and having defeated and killed his Brother *sole Emper Chan Bux*, reigned for the future without a Rival, sole Emperor of *Indid*.

The present Mogul is a Grandson of *Cha Alem*, and is the same whom *Kouli Kan* made Prisoner, and who ceded all the *Indian* Provinces on the west Side of the River *Indus* to the Crown of *Persia*, *Kouli Kan* having first plundered the capital City of *Delly*, and most of the great Men and Merchants

chants in that Empire; after which he gave the *Mogul* his Liberty (as related in the History of *Persia*) and retired over the *Indus* with the Spoils of that rich Country, with which 'tis said he loaded above a thousand Camels.

INDIA *beyond* GANGES.

Situation. **I**NDIA *beyond Ganges* is situate between 92 and 110 Degrees of East Longitude, and between the Equator and 30 Degrees of North Latitude; bounded by *Tartary* and Part of *China*, North; by another Part of *China* and *Chinesian* Seas, East; by the same Seas and Straits of *Malacca*, South; and by the Bay of *Bengal* and the hither *India*, West; being 2000 Miles long and 1000 broad.

SUBDIVISIONS.

ACHAM or ASEM,	MALACCA,
AVA,	TONQUIN,
ARRACAN,	COCHIN CHINA,
PEGU,	CAMBODIA,
LAOS,	CHIAMPA.
SIAM,	

Siam. *Siam*, the most considerable of these Countries, comprehends, 1st, *Siam* proper, 2dly, *Malacca*, 3dly, *Cambodia*, and 4thly, *Laos*; and is situate between 96 and 104 Degrees of East Longitude, and between 1 and 25 Degrees of North Latitude, 1500 Miles long, and 300 broad; bounded by *Pegu* and *Acham*, North; by *Tonquin* and *Cochin China*, East; by the *Indian* Ocean and the Streights of *Malacca*, South; and by the Bay of *Bengal*, *Ava* and *Pegu*, West. A Ridge of Mountains running through the Country from North to South; the chief River that of *Menan*.

Mountains,
Rivers.

Elephants abound here. The King, among the rest of his Titles, styles himself Lord of the white Elephant, and is said to have the greatest Number of these monstrous Animals in his Service of any Prince in the World: He shews his Esteem for them by the Richness of their Harness, and the Attendants he assigns to every one. This Extravagance is carried so far, that some of them eat out of Gold Plate, and have the most honourable Titles bestowed on them. The Natives of *Siam* build their Houses by the Rivers Sides, and, to preserve themselves from the annual Inundation, set them upon high wooden Pillars. The Government is tyrannical, and the People Slaves to their Princes; who do not only demand

Constitution.

mand the Service of half their Subjects every Year, but engross the whole Trade of the Country to themselves, whereby they have in a great measure ruined it. As the Emperors of *China* value themselves on their Goodness, these Princes expect the Adoration of their People for their Wisdom and Policy: As to their Power, their Courage, and Virtue, they do not relish the Flattery of their Subjects on those Heads. The *Siamese* are a polite ingenious People, *Genius:* but haughty towards them who seem to fear them, and servile and submissive to those who treat them imperiously. *Siam* produces Rice, Cotton, Sugar Canes and other Canes, *Produce:* Saltpetre, Skins, Furs, dying Woods, odoriferous Gums and Drugs, Cocos, Plantains, Mangoes, Oranges, Lemons, and all manner of tropical Fruits. As to the Trade of *Traffic.* *Malacca*, and the *Malayan* or Southern Coast of *Siam*, the *Dutch* ingross it all, by their Garisons or Shipping, terrifying the Natives, and preventing their dealing with any other People but themselves; so that great part of the Trade which the *English* have here, and in some other Parts of *India*, is at Second-hand from the *Dutch*, or only their Leavings.

The Religion of the *Siamese* is *Paganism*, and, like some *Religion:* of their Neighbours, they believe every Thing in Nature informed by a rational Soul: Fire, Water, Woods, Mountains and Buildings, are all actuated, they hold, by some Spirit or Genius; and the Doctrine of Transmigration they have in common with other Eastern Nations. They have *Wars:* no other Enemy to fear by Land but the People of *Pegu*, who frequently make Incursions into their Country, which the *Siamese* do not fail to return. But the *Dutch*, whom they are in no Condition to resist, block up their Ports by Sea, and compel them to trade with them upon their own Terms. And indeed, all the Trade of this Country, which is worth the being concerned in, is entirely in the Hands of the *Dutch*: They must deal with the *Hollanders*, or their Goods must rot upon their Hands.

The Kingdom of *Pegu* lies on the East Side of the Bay *Pegu.* of *Bengal*, bounded by the Kingdom of *Ava* on the North; *Situation:* by the Mountains which separate it from *Laos* on the East; by the Kingdom of *Siam*, and the Bay of *Bengal* on the South; and by another Part of the Bay of *Bengal* on the West.

This Country is flooded when the Sun is vertical, and the *Annual* Mud and Slime which the Waters leave behind renders the *Rains.* flat Country exceeding fruitful. The higher Grounds are *Soil.* parched up as soon as the Rains are over, and will not bear

any Court where the Water cannot be turned into them from their capacious Cisterns, Wells, or Reservoirs.

Produce.

The tropical Fruits flourish here, namely, Plantains, Bananoes, Goyvas, Durions, Mangoes, Tamarinds, Annanas, or Pine Apples, Coco-Nuts, Pepper, Sugar-Canes, Pomgranates, Oranges, Lemons, &c. Some Wheat they have, but more Rice, which always grows in Water, and is the principal Food of the Natives. Their Hills are covered with Timber; their Bamboe is of the greatest Use next to the Coco-Tree.

Animals.

Their Animals are Oxen, Buffaloes, and all manner of wild Beasts; but no Place abounds more in Elephants than this and the adjacent Countries.

The *English* at Fort *St. George* import from hence Furs, Skins, some dying Woods, Rubies, Sapphires, and other precious Stones.

The King is an absolute Monarch as most of the Princes of the East are.

These Countries Part of China anciently.

These Countries comprehended under the Denomination of *India beyond Ganges* were anciently Provinces of *China*, which have rendered themselves independent of that Kingdom of late Years, as the Princes of *Germany* have rendered themselves independent of the Emperor. The antient History of this Country therefore will be comprehended in that of *China*.

Cochin China. Situation.

Cochin-China is situate between 104 and 109 Degrees of East Longitude, and between 10 and 17 Degrees of North Latitude; bounded by the Kingdom of *Tonquin*, on the North; by the *Indian Ocean*, on the East and South; and by the Kingdom of *Cambodia*, on the West; being upwards of 400 Miles in length, and 150 broad. This was formerly a Province of *China*, and afterwards under the same Sovereign as *Tonquin*, till the Governor of the Province set up for himself, and at length became independent. This Country, like *Tonquin*, is annually overflowed, and the Soil enriched thereby, like that of *Egypt*. Silk and Lignum-Aloes are imported into *Europe* from hence. *Polo-Condore*, where the *English East-India Company* lately had a Settlement, is in the Dominions of this Prince, who barbarously murdered the Company's Servants, and seized their Effects, taking Advantage of the Surprize they were in on their Houses being set on Fire by some *Indian Soldiers*, retained in the Company's Service. In this Country and *Tonquin* the greatest Strength of their Armies consists in the Number of their Elephants; there being as large a Breed of them in the north Part of *Tonquin*.

Soil and Produce.

quin and in *Siam*, which borders on this Kingdom, as in any Part of the World, and the stoutest of the Males are trained up to War. *Cochin-China* and *Tonquin* are engaged in perpetual Wars with each other, but have no other Enemy to fear.

In these Countries, comprehended in *India beyond Ganges*, the Natives are of a Copper Colour or Olive Complexion. There are no Blacks among them, though they lie nearer the Equinoctial than the People of *India within Ganges*, where most of the Natives are black. They have very thin Beards, which may be occasioned by their pulling up the Hairs by the Roots with Tweezers: They take a great deal of Pains to make their Teeth black, or of a very dark Colour, white Teeth are only for Dogs in their Opinion.

The Kingdoms of *Asbam* and *Ava*, which are situate on the North of this Division of *India*, are very little known to the Europeans. *Arracan*, Capital of a small Kingdom, is situate on the Bay of *Bengal*, at the Mouth of a River of the same Name; East Longitude 93, Latitude 20, 30. To this City the Europeans traffic, bringing from thence the same Articles as from *Pegu*.

Tonquin is situate between 101 and 108 Degrees of East Longitude, and between 17 and 26 Degrees of North Latitude, being about 500 Miles long, and 400 broad, and is bounded by the Province of *Tunam* in *China*, on the North; by the Province of *Canton* and the Bay of *Tonquin*, on the East; by *Cochin-China*, on the South; and by the Kingdom of *Laos*, on the West.

Tonquin was anciently a Province of *China*, and the Religion and Manners of the People are still much the same. This Country is annually overflowed by the River *Domea*, as *Egypt* is by the *Nile*, which renders it equally fruitful; and this is the Case of all Countries which lie within the Tropics, where any great Rivers have their Course through them. The Rains fall in these Latitudes when the Sun is vertical, and lay all the flat Country under Water, and cause the Rivers to overflow their Banks; which if the Ancients had been acquainted with, they need not have puzzled themselves so much about the Rising of the *Nile*. Their principal Manufactures are Silk and lacquered Wares, which the Europeans take off their Hands. Their Government is more despotic than that of *China*, and indeed they seem at present to be under a military Power, for the General of the Crown has usurped the Administration, and allows his Prince no more than the Title and State of King, suffering

none to be about him but those of his own placing. And thus it has been for some Generations, the General's Descendants assuming no higher a Title than that of General, and the Posterity of the Prince still retaining the Title of King, without any Share in the Power.

Women under no Restraint.

The People of these Countries are so far from being jealous of their Women, that they compliment foreign Merchants with the Enjoyment of their Wives and Daughters, as Part of their Entertainment. The *Dutch* have female Factors here, a kind of temporary Wives, who, having made their Fortunes by Traffic, are Matches for the greatest Men in the Country.

The HISTORY of CHINA.

Situation. CHINA, including *Chinesian Tartary*, is situate between 95 and 135 Degrees of East Longitude, and between 21 and 55 Degrees of North Latitude, being bounded by *Russian Tartary* on the North, by the *Pacific Ocean* on the East and South, and by *Tenquin*, *Tibet*, and the Territories of *Russia*, on the West, from which it is separated by the River *Argun*, being about 2000 Miles in Length from North to South, and 1500 in Breadth from East to West.

Name.

Some derive the Name of *China*, or *Cina*, from *Cin*, who was one of their Emperors: And though the People of *India*, and from them the *Europeans*, continue to call it by this Name, yet it is observable, that every new Family, on their mounting the Throne, give their own Name to the Empire; and by that Name it is always called by their Subjects. *Navarette* says it was called *Chin* by the People of *India*, from the great Produce of Silk, that Word signifying Silk in their Language. But however the Name is derived, it is generally agreed, that this is the same Country that anciently went by the Name of *Cathai*.

Climate.

The Northern Provinces have usually a very severe Winter of about four Months, viz. from the Beginning of *November* to the Beginning of *March*, when the Rivers and Canals are generally frozen hard enough to bear. In the Southern Provinces they see no Frost or Snow, but, as in other Countries which lie within or near the Tropics, they have usually stormy Weather and Rains about the Equinox, particularly in Autumn: And this is all the Winter they know

know; the rest of the Year they enjoy a clear Sky, and an almost uninterrupted Serenity.

The principal Rivers of *China* are *Kiam*, or the *Blue River*, *River*, and the *Hoambo*, or *Yellow River*.

The River *Kiam* is said to be unfathomable in some *Kiam* Places. The Navigation of this River, when it is swelled by Torrents from the Mountains, is exceeding dangerous, the Stream being very rapid.

The *Croceus*, sometimes called the *Hoambo*, or *Yellow River*, carries with it at all Times a yellow Sort of Slime; or Mud; from whence it receives its Name; and many other Rivers in the rainy Seasons seem rather Torrents of Mud than Rivers. The Waters of *China*, in general, are not fit to drink till they have been boiled; which *Le Compte* imagines to be the principal Reason of their drinking them hot, and infusing Tea, or some other Herbs in them, to make them wholesome, as well as palatable.

The *Yamour* rises in *Russian Tartary*, and running from *Yamour*, West to East falls into the Bay of *Corea*, and was the Boundary between *Chinese* and *Russian Tartary*.

The River *Argun* rises in a Lake of *Mongul Tartary*, and *Argun*, runs from South to North, discharging itself into the River *Yamour*, and is the Western Boundary between *Chinese* and *Russian Tartary*.

The River *Ta* rises in the Province of *Quecheu*, and running South-East passes by the City of *Canton*, discharging itself into the Sea against the Island of *Macao*.

Through every Province of *China* there is one grand Canal, which serves as a high Road, the Banks whereof are lined with great Square Stones of coarse Marble, upon which the People who draw the Vessels walk; from this great Canal are cut several smaller, which are again branched out into Rivulets, that generally end at some Town or Village. Over these Canals are stately Bridges of three, five, or some times seven Arches, the middle Arch so high, that Vessels may go through without taking down their Masts. Upon their Rivers or Canals they manage large Vessels, as big as Ships, by a few Hands, with great Dexterity: Of these Vessels there are not less than 10,000 in the Southern Provinces, equipped for the Emperor's Service; and notwithstanding the sailing upon their Rivers and Canals is generally exceeding pleasant, there are several rapid Torrents, on which they sail with the utmost Hazard.

There are almost as many People live upon the Water as upon the Land. Wherever there is a Town upon the Shore, there is another of Boats upon the Water. These

Vessels are made as commodious as Houses ; and there are many born, and live and die in them ; and they keep Hogs, Poultry, Dogs, and other domestic Animals on board, as if they were on Shore.

Besides these Vessels there are a prodigious Number of Floats of Timber, perpetually going up and down in the Rivers and Canals, which carry whole Villages of People upon them. These Floats are some of them a Mile in Length ; they rise two or three Feet above the Water, upon which the People build little wooden Huts or Cabins, at equal Distances, where they live till they have disposed of the Timber on which they are built.

Provinces. *Cbina* may be divided into sixteen Provinces, seven Northern, and nine Southern Provinces. The first is *Leao-tung*, which lies beyond the great Wall, situate between the thirty-ninth and forty-second Degree of Latitude ; the capital City whereof is *Xinyam*.

Pekin. 2. *Pekin*, or *Peking*, where is the Seat of the Empire, extends from thirty-six to forty-one Degrees of Latitude ; the capital City whereof is *Pekin*.

Xanfi. 3. The Province of *Xanfi* is bounded on the East by *Pekin*, by the great Wall on the North, by the Province of *Honan* on the South, and by the River *Hoang*, or *Hoambo*, on the West, which divides it from *Xenfi* ; the capital City is *Tayven*.

Xenfi. 4. *Xenfi* is bounded by the great Wall, and by *Fartary*, on the West and North, by *Suchuen* on the South, and *Xanfi* on the East ; the capital City whereof is *Sigan*.

Honan. 5. The Province of *Honan* is bounded by *Xanfi* and *Pekin* on the North, *Xenfi* on the West, and *Nankin* on the East, and lies between the Latitude of thirty-three and thirty-seven ; the Capital whereof is *Schaifung*, or *Caifum*.

Nankin. 6. The Province of *Nankin*, which is bounded on the North and West by *Xantum* and *Honan*, on the East by the Sea, and on the South by *Huquam* and *Chekiam*, and extends from thirty to thirty-six Degrees of North Latitude : The River *Kiam*, the greatest River in *Cbina*, runs through it ; the capital City is *Nankin* on *Kiamnin*.

Xantum. 7. *Xantum*, bounded on the North and East by the Sea, by *Pekin* on the West, and *Nankin* on the South ; the chief City whereof is *Cinan*.

Chekiam. 8. The Province of *Chekiam*, bounded on the North by *Nankin*, on the East by the Sea, by the Province of *Kiamfi* on the West, and *Fukien* on the South ; and extends from twenty-seven to thirty-one Degrees of North-Latitude ; the capital City whereof is *Hamcheu*.

9. The Province of *Kiamfi* is bounded by *Chekiam* and *Kiamfi*. *Fokien* on the East, *Huquam* on the West, *Nankin* on the North, and *Quantum* on the South; and extends from twenty-six to thirty-one Degrees of Latitude; the chief City whereof is *Nancham*.

10. The Province of *Huquam*, bounded by *Kiamfi* on the East, *Honan* on the North, *Quamfi* on the South; the capital City whereof is *Vucham*, or *Viechang*.

11. The Province of *Suchuen* is bounded on the East by *Suchuen*. *Huquam*, on the West by the Mountains of *India*, on the North by *Xenfi*, and on the South by *Queycheu*; the capital City whereof is *Chingtu*.

12. The Province of *Queycheu* is bounded on the North *Quey*-by *Suchuen*, on the East by *Quamfi*, and by *Yunan* on the West and South; the capital City whereof is *Queyang*.

13. The Province of *Yunan* is bounded on the East by *Yunan*. *Queycheu* and *Quamfi*, on the West by *India*, and on the South by *Tonquin*; the capital City is *Yunan*.

14. The Province of *Quamfi* is bounded by *Yunan* on the West, by *Queycheu* on the North, and *Tonquin* and *Cochin China* on the South; the capital City whereof is *Quelin*.

15. The Province of *Quantum*, or *Canton*, is bounded by *Quamfi* on the West, *Huquam* and *Kiamfi* on the North, *Fokien* on the East, and the Ocean on the South; the capital City whereof is *Canton*.

16. The Province of *Fokien* is bounded on the West by *Fokien*. *Kiamfi*, on the South by *Quantum*, on the North by *Chekiam*, and on the East by the Ocean; the capital City whereof is *Focheu*.

Corea is a Peninsula, or, as some say, an Island, being bounded on the West by the Province of *Leaotung*, and by the Gulph of *Nankin*, on the East and South by the Sea of *China*, and on the North by *Niuch*, a Province of *Tartary*, and lies between the Latitude of thirty-six and forty-two; the chief City whereof is *Kimki*.

In the sixteen Provinces of *China* abovementioned, there are 155 capital Cities, 1312 of the second Rank, 2357 fortified Towns, and 10,128,789 Families.

According to the Poll-Book there are upwards of 58,000,000 of People in the Kingdom of *China*; which is easily known, because every Master of a Family is obliged, under a severe Penalty, to hang over his Door a little Board, giving a particular Account of all the Souls in his House; and there is an Officer over every ten Houses, who examines the Truth of those Accounts, and makes his Report to a superior Magistrate.

The

The Wall. The great Wall which separates *China* from *Tartary*, begins in the Province of *Kensu*, which lies on the North-West of *China*, about thirty-eight Degrees of Latitude, and is carried on over Mountains and Valleys; first towards the North East to the Latitude of forty-two, and then South-Easterly to the Latitude of thirty-nine, and terminates at the *Kang-sea*, between the Provinces of *Pekin* and *Leatung*. The whole Course of it, with all the Windings, is about 1500 Miles: It is almost all built with Brick, and such well tempered Mortar, that it has now stood above 1800 Years: It is generally agreed to be about five Yards thick, and ten in Height.

Form of the Cities. The Cities and Towns of *China* are all built in one Form, as near as the Ground will permit; that is, square. Two great Streets, which cross one another in the Middle of the Town, divide it into four Quarters; and from the Centre the four principal Gates may be seen at once.

Pekin described. The capital City of *Pekin* is situate in 111 Degrees of East-Longitude, and forty Degrees of North-Latitude, and was anciently exactly square, being four Leagues about; but when the *Tartars* expelled the *Chinese* out of this City, they permitted them to build a new one adjoining to it, which, with the old one, now makes an irregular Figure, considerably longer than it is broad; so that *Pekin* is indeed two Cities joined in one. The principal Streets in *Pekin* are 120 Feet broad, and a League in Length. They have no Signs, but the Name of every Tradesman is written in large Letters over his Door.

The Walls of this City are fifty Cubits high, and are so thick that several may ride a-breast upon them. Every Gate of the Town has a Fortrefs, or Redoubt, built before it of equal Height with the Gate.

Emperor's Palace. The Emperor's Palace stands in the Middle of the *Tartar* City, and is an oblong Square, about two Miles in Length, and one in Breadth, and includes not only the Emperor's House and Gardens, but the Apartments of his Officers, and a great Number of Artificers. Every ten Houses has

Govern-ment of the City. an Officer, like our Constable, who presides over the other nine, and informs the Magistrate, if any Thing extraordinary happens. If any Robbery be committed in the Night, the Neighbourhood are obliged to make it good; and in every Family the Master is answerable for his Children and Servants. In all Parts of the City there are Men

Chairs. and Chairs to be hired, as in *London*, and Horses; but no Coaches are used in this Part of the World.

Their

Their Houses, and even the Palaces of the principal *Building* *Mandarins*, are built upon the Surface of the Ground, and *and Fur-* supported by wooden Pillars, without any Foundation. *niture.* They build but one Story high, but they take up a great Extent of Ground, having several open square Courts within their Walls. They have such a Regard to their Privacy, that no Windows are made towards the Street, or to look towards their Neighbours. They have no Looking-glasses, Hangings, or fine Chairs; and their Beds, which are one of the principal Ornaments, are hardly ever seen by Strangers, who are not permitted to go farther than the first great Hall. The Furniture of the best Houses consists only of Cabinets, Tables, varnished Skreens, China-ware, Pictures, and Pieces of white Taffaty; upon which are written, in large Characters, some Sentences of Morality: Nor do you see any Chimneys in their Rooms, but they have Stoves or Charcoal to warm them in cold Weather.

Without the Gates of every Town there are usually two magnificent Towers erected; and near each Tower is a Temple of Idols, and another dedicated to the Genius, or Guardian Angel of the Place.

There are two Towers without the Gates of *Nankin*, one *Tower of* of them called the Porcelane Tower, of an octangular *Fi-Nankin,* gure, contains nine Stories, and is two hundred Feet high, faced with China-ware, or Porcelane on the Outside.

The principal and almost only Port to which the *Eu-Canton* *ropeans* trade is *Canton*, the Capital of *Quamtung*, the most *City.* Southern Province of *China*: It lies under, or very near, the Tropic of *Cancer*, about fifty Miles from the Mouth of the River *Ta*, and is the best Harbour in *China*.

The *Chinese* have generally broad Faces, black Hair, little *Persons of* dark Eyes, short Noses, and thin Beards, which they wear *the Chi-* long, on the Bottom of their Chin and upper Lip; but pull *use.* the Hair off their Cheeks by the Roots, with Tweezers, and till they arrive to thirty Years of Age hardly any Beard appears. The Learned suffer the Nails of their left Hand to grow two or three Inches longer than their Fingers, to distinguish them from Mechanics.

The Women who are kept up, and not exposed to the Sun, are fair enough; and, except that they have little Eyes and short Noses, may vie with our *European* Beauties. Their excessive Modesty adds much to their other Charms; *Habits.* they dress usually in their Hair, and wear as the Men do a long Vest of Sattin, red, blue, or green. The elder Women generally chuse black or purple; they have over this

a loose Gown, with wide Sleeves, so long, that they would reach the Ground, if they were not held up: But what is most remarkable, is their little Feet. in which their principal Beauty is thought to lie: as soon as a Girl is born, her Feet are bound up so hard, that they cannot grow, which makes them walk a little awkwardly. The Foot of a grown Woman being not bigger than a Child's of three Years old. The Men wear no Hats, but a Cap which does not come so low as their Ears: They carry a Fan in their Hands, to screen them from the Sun. The *Tartars* obliged them to shave their Heads except one Lock behind. The Men also wear a kind of Silk Boots, quilted with Cotton an Inch thick, and Slippers.

Food.

The *Chinese* do not only eat all kinds of Flesh, Fish, or Fowl, as the *Europeans* do, but Horse-Flesh is in great Esteem among them: Nor are Dogs, Cats, Snakes, Frogs, or scarce any Sort of Vermin refused; but Rice, Roots, Pulse and Garden-stuff, are the common Food; Broth and Soups they have also made, either of Flesh or Fish, which they mix with their Rice: They eat their Flesh boiled, fried and broiled; and it is cut in little square Pieces like Dice, before it comes to Table: They use neither Cloth, Napkins, Knives, Spoons nor Forks, but two little Chop Sticks of Ebony, or other Wood, sometimes tipped with Silver at the Ends, with which they take up their Meat very dexterously; and for their Rice and Broth, they hold the Cup to their Mouths, and lade it in with their little Sticks. They use high Chairs and Tables, contrary to all the People of the East besides, who sit cross-legged upon the Floor. Every Person almost has a little lacquered Table to himself at an Entertainment, on which is set his Meat and Rice in little *China* Dishes, and sometimes Plate is used.

Liquor.

Tea is their principal Liquor; Wine they have none, though the Country abounds with fine Grapes; neither do they brew Beer of Barley, but have strong Liquors, which they make of Rice or Wheat. They generally eat their Meat cold, though they drink their Liquors hot; and so much Ceremony is used at their Entertainments, that it very much lessens the Pleasure of eating and drinking. When a Mouthful of Meat is taken, or a Cup of Liquor drank, it occasions a hundred Grimaces. There stands also a Person to beat Time, that every one may handle his little Sticks, and carry their Meat to their Mouths at once.

Ceremonious.

The *Chinese* are so far from putting off their Caps when they salute one another, that it is reckoned very indecent to appear before their Betters bareheaded: And upon this Account,

count, in Conformity to the Custom of that Country, the Pope dispenses with the Missionaries appearing bareheaded in the *Christian Churches in China*.

Gaming, though prohibited by the *Chinese Laws*, is *Gaming*. much practised; there are Instances of those who have followed it so immoderately, that they have played away their Estates, Wives and Children; any of which they will sometimes hazard upon a Card, or a single Cast of a Die.

The principal Manufacture in this Kingdom is that of Silk, *Manufactures*. which is esteemed by all Nations the finest in the World. That which the Natives account the best, is wrought in the Province of *Nanking of Chekiang Silk*.

The Sort that is most common amongst them, is called *Touanze*; it is like our Sattin; and either plain or wrought with Flowers, Birds, Trees and Houses. These Figures are not raised, but made only by the different Colours and Shades. The principal Figure in their Silks is the Dragon.

Besides Gold-Tissue, and several other Sorts of Silk, they also make Plush, Velvet, Crape, Druggets, Serges, and Tammys; but though Wool is very plentiful, especially in the Provinces of *Xansi* and *Xensi*, which abound in Sheep, they make no Cloth; they have a very great Value for *English Cloth*, which is sold dearer there than the richest Silks. They have a great deal of Cotton, Linen, and another Sort, made of a Plant called Co.

China is remarkable for a Sort of white Wax, not made *Wax*. by Bees, but gathered from Trees, which they have in such abundance, that it serves the whole Empire. It is found chiefly in the Provinces of *Huquam* and *Xantum*: It is produced by an Insect not bigger than a Flea, which has a Sting so sharp, that it pierces the Bark, and even the Body of the Trees.

The Porcelane, or *China Ware*, is another considerable *China* Manufacture in this Country; it is made of a very stiff *Ware*. Clay, or rather soft white Stone, found in the Quarries of the Province of *Quamsi*, the Pieces whereof being washed and separated from the other Earth wherewith it is mixed, are beaten to a very fine Powder, which they make into a Paste, and knead and beat, that the Water may the better incorporate with it. They use a particular Water, which is not to be found in the same Part of the Country the Earth is. It is impregnated with a peculiar Sort of Salt, which purifies and refines the Clay more than any other. When the Paste is sufficiently kneaded, they form their Vessels, and expose them to the Sun Morning and Evening; but take them in when the Sun is too hot, or it will warp them.

them. Thus they dry the Vessels by Degrees, and paint them as they find the Earth proper to receive it. They also wash over the Cups with a Sort of Lye or Varnish, made of the same Matter the Porcelane is composed of, which gives them a particular Lustre; after this they bake them in a Furnace.

There are three different Sorts of *China* Ware, distinguished by the different Colours; the first is yellow, and tho' this is coarser than either of the other, yet it being the Imperial Colour, is always used in the Emperor's Court, and is not allowed to other People. The second Sort is grey, with abundance of small irregular Lines in it, crossing one another; these are the most beautiful, but very rarely brought to *Europe*. The last and most common Sort is white, painted with Flowers, Trees, and Birds of a pure blue, which our Merchants principally buy up.

That fine Varnish, with which the *Chinese* wash both their Earthen and wooden Ware, is not a Composition, but a Gum which distills from a Tree, as Rosin does; It looks a little like Pitch in the Mass, and must be mixed with more or less Oil, when it is used, according to the Work it is intended for.

Paper.

Their Paper in *China* is made of the inward Bark of the Bamboe, or large hollow knotted Cane, which they beat, and make their Sheets ten or twelve Feet long: It is mighty thin and smooth, and washed over with a Sort of Varnish, to prevent the Ink's sinking.

Trade.

The *Chinese* heretofore would have no Trade with foreign Nations, but now admit all People into their Ports; they carry their Merchandise also themselves to *India*, *Japan*, the *Philippines*, *Java*, and other Islands in the *Indian* Seas, but were never known to make a Voyage to any distant Country.

Husbandry.

China, like other Countries of a large Extent, consists of Hills and Valleys; but both the one and the other are made as plain and level as possible, and laid out in Plots like Gardens. Their Hills they cut into Terraces, or little Artificial Plains, from the Bottom to the Top, that the Water which they convey through Channels from one Field to another may be equally distributed.

Fruits.

They have most of the Fruits that are known in *Europe*, as Apples, Pears, Peaches, Apricots, Figs, Grapes, Walnuts, and Chestnuts. They have also Pomegranates, Melons, Oranges and Olives, but make no Oil of the last. They have also Fruits which do not grow in *Europe*.

Of

Of all their Trees, their Tallow Tree is the most remarkable; the Fruit is enclosed in a Rind divided into three Segments, which open when it is ripe, and discover three white Kernels, as big as a small Nut. What this Tree is most valued for is the Kernel, which has all the Qualities of Tallow, both in Smell, Colour, and Consistency; and they make their Candles of it; but the Wick being made of a small dry Stick instead of Cotton, they do not burn so clear as ours, and create an offensive Smell.

Tea or Tcha is a Plant peculiar to this Country; it usually grows at the Foot of some Mountain, and the best upon a stony Soil; the Root resembles that of a Peach Tree, and its Flower that of white wild Roses. It is accounted a Shrub, and grows about as high as a Rose Tree generally.

It is planted upon little Hills, each Plant about three Foot Distance from another, and does not commonly grow wild. The three Sorts of Tea commonly brought to Europe, are all from the same Plant, and only the Season of the Year when it is gathered, and the Soil make the Difference.

Sugar Canes grow in great abundance in this Country; they are found chiefly in marshy Grounds, and have Leaves like Reeds. The Drugs called *China* Root and Rhubarb are also the Product of this Country, and Coco-Nut Trees are very common, but there is no Plant which the *Chinese* seem to value more than that which they call Ginseng. This, it is said, has the Virtues of every other Simple, and is one Ingredient in almost all their Prescriptions to Men of Quality, but is too dear for the common People. The *Chinese* give it abundance of pompous Names, as the Spirituous Simple, the pure Spirit of Earth, and the Plant that dispenses Immortality, &c.

In the Western Provinces of *China* there is an odoriferous Stag or Deer, which produces Musk.

Fish abound in their Rivers and Canals; and besides Nets and other Engines which are used in *Europe* to catch them, they breed up large Fowls like Herons, which are as much under the Fisherman's Command, as our Dogs and Hawks are under the Huntsman's; they keep them perched on the Sides of their Boats; and when they give a Sign, every Bird takes its Flight to look for the Prey, and will divide themselves the whole Breadth of a River or Lake. There are all those Kinds of Fish in their Waters which are met with in *Europe*, and many more, particularly one which is called the Gold and Silver Fish, which is wonderful beautiful, and kept by the Quality in large Basons in their Gardens: They are about the Length and Bigness of one's Finger;

Finger; the Male of a fine red, from the Head to the Middle of his Body; the rest, with the Tail, is of such a bright and glittering Gold Colour, that no real Gilding can come near it. Mines they have of Gold and Silver, but those of Gold are never suffered to be opened. The Gold which they have in such Plenty, is said to need no refining, and is washed down by Torrents from the Mountains in rainy Seasons.

Astronomy. Astronomy they have long and diligently applied themselves to, and made above four hundred Observations, as well of Eclipses and Comets, as Conjunctions: However, in this they were not exact, but have regulated many Things since the Jesuits came amongst them, and suffered them to reform their Calendar. In Physic they have made but a mean Progress, being ignorant of Natural Philosophy, Physics, and Anatomy, but pretend to mighty Skill in Pulses, and will pronounce what Distemper the Patient is afflicted with, how long it will last, and whether it be like to prove fatal, after they have duely considered the Pulse. They are not always to be relied on; but their Skill in this Particular is wonderful, though they can much easier resolve what the Distemper is, than assign a Remedy for it. They have no Apothecaries, but every Physician prepares his own Medicines: They seldom purge, nor do they ever let Blood, or give a Clyster. The Root Ginseng, which has been mentioned among their Plants, is esteemed one of their best Cordials; and the Root called Pao China is an excellent Sudorific, and purges the Humours and corrupted Blood. Every Man is permitted to practise Physic in China.

Imitate well. The Chinese imitate the Inventions of the Europeans very well, and now make Glafs, Watches, Pistols, Granades, or Shells for Bombs; and had Gun-Powder, Printing, and the Use of the Compass long before us.

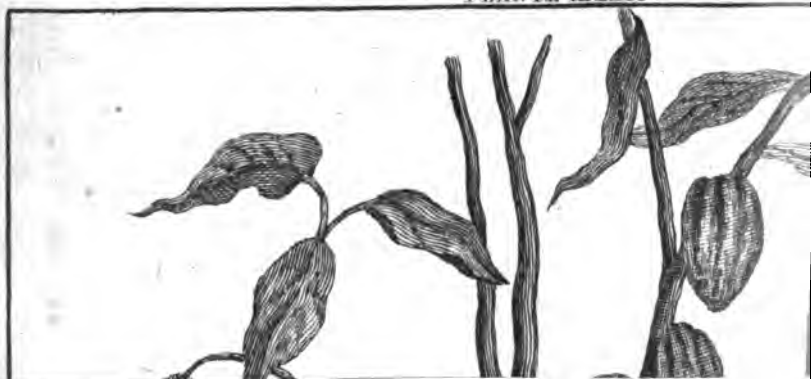
Dials. There were no Clocks or Watches in China, till the Europeans carried them thither, but they had Sun-Dials, which were divided into four Parts, each Part containing twenty-four Subdivisions, which added to the four larger Divisions, made the whole Circle consist of an hundred Parts. Before the Jesuits taught them, they were never able to compose an exact Calendar; their Tables of Eclipses were so uncorrect that they could scarce foretel about what Time an Eclipse of the Sun would happen.

Characteri. The Chinese have no Alphabet, each Character is a Syllable, or entire Word, and may rather be called a Figure than a Letter. The Art of putting Letters together to form Words is a perfect Mystery to them; anciently they used only


THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.

PLANTE KAKAO.



AO.



Hieroglyphics, and rather painted than wrote: A ☉ signified the Sun, and a ☾ the Moon, a Com- of Trees a Forest, &c. The *Chinese* write from Top *Writing*. Bottom, and begin their Letters from the Right to the left, contrary to us; and the last Page of a Book with us is first with them.

Printing, such as it is, has been long practised in *China*; *Printing*. They engrave the Words upon Boards, and do not collect and rubricate the Letters as in *Europe*, where with a small Number of Letters, great Volumes are composed. The Author of a Book in *China* first gets it fairly transcribed, then the engraver glews each Leaf upon a smooth Board, and cuts through the written Paper; so that the Character perfectly resembles the Original Copy; nor is there any Difference between the Print and written Hand. The Boards which compose a Book of an ordinary Size printed in this Manner will fill a large Room.

There is no such thing as hereditary Nobility, or any *No Nobility*. Neither Distinction of Quality, but what the Office a Man executes gives him; so that, except the Descendants of *Confucius*, the whole Kingdom is divided into Magistracy and Commonality. There are no base Tenures, their Lands are properly their Freeholds, having no superior Lord but the Emperór, and he can, by his own Authority, tax all the Lands both of Priests and People as he pleases. There being no Nobility, the whole Nation apply themselves to Trade or Husbandry, and have no idle Hands among them, or Drones that live entirely upon the Labour of others.

That their Histories may be well and impartially written, *Histories*. a certain Number of learned Men are chosen, whose Province it is, with all possible Exactness, to register the Transactions of their Times, and daily to observe the Words and Actions of their Princes. These Historians, without conferring Notes with one another, daily set down such Facts as occur to them, with their Remarks upon them on Paper, which is thrown into an Office set apart for that Purpose. This Office is never opened during the Life of the Prince, or while any of that House are upon the Throne; but when the Crown goes to another Family, the Doors of the Office are opened, and all these Memoirs collected together; and after they have been examined and compared, they compose the Histories of their Emperors, recommending them for Examples, if they have acted prudently; or exposing their ill Conduct, if it deserve Censure.

As to their Chronology, they pretend it is 40,000 Years since the Foundation of their Empire; but at the same time

it is acknowledged, that all their Histories and Records were destroyed by one of their Emperors, about 2000 Years ago: So that their ancient History is no more than pure Tradition at last.

Constitution.

The Government of *China* is monarchical, and has continued so upwards of 4000 Years. The Crown of *China* is said to be hereditary by some; but it is agreed by all, that the Emperor has a Power of altering the Succession, and declaring any one of his Subjects his Successor, though he have no Relation to the Royal Family. This Emperor, like other eastern Monarchs, is surrounded with Women and Eunuchs; none approach the inward Apartments of his Palace but these. Every Viceroy, Governor and Magistrate, is obliged to transmit to Court an Account of his own Administration; and if he endeavours to hide or palliate his Miscarriages, he is severely punished; but it is plain this is very seldom done, for the same Writers assure us, there is no Place under the Sun where there is more Bribery and Corruption in the Magistracy and Courts of Justice than in *China*, insomuch, that he that bribes highest is morally sure of carrying his Point. The Ministers and Presidents of the supreme Courts at *Pekin* extort great Sums from the Viceroys and Governors of Provinces. These again squeeze the Mandarins under their Government, who by Consequence fleece their inferior Officers. Whoever refuses to comply with their Extortions, runs a great Hazard of being ruined. There seems to be a general Connivance at these Practices through the Kingdom, though the Laws prohibit them.

The *Chinese* are a Nation of exquisite Hypocrites; and while they carry a fair outside, are guilty of all Manner of Fraud, Vice and Extortion. They boast the Equity of their Laws, but stick at no Violation of them; nothing is more strictly required by their Laws, than Submission and Obedience to Parents and Magistrates. An Account of every Man's Family, Estate, and Substance, with the Taxes due to the Crown, is taken every Year, and enrolled, a Transcript of which is hung up at the Door of each House, and the Master is obliged to carry in the Emperor's Duties to the Mandarins of the Towns of the third Rank, without being called upon, on pain of Imprisonment and the Bastinado, till it is done; so that all the Charges of Collectors and Receivers is saved.

There are Magazines of Rice and other Provisions laid up in Store-houses at *Pekin* for three Years, to supply the Necessities

cessities of any Part of the Empire, which may be distressed by Famine, or any other Calamity.

The *Chinese* have always worshiped one supreme God, *Religion.* the King of Heaven and Earth, or rather that eternal Mind, which they imagine animates both Heaven and Earth. Though there are several inferior Deities they worship, as the first Inventors of Arts, Mountains, Rivers, &c. yet they never sacrificed to Vice, or worshiped such impure Deities as the *Egyptians*, *Grecians* and *Romans* did.

There are three Sects in *China* at this Day; first the Followers of *Li Laokun*, who lived, as they say, above 500 Years before Christ: He taught, that God was corporeal, and had many subordinate Deities under his Government: His Disciples study Magic, and pretend to make that Drink which will give Men Immortality.

The second is the Sect of the Learned, who are the Disciples of the so much celebrated *Confucius*, who left many admirable Precepts of Morality, and instructed the People in Philosophy. He speaks of God, as a most pure and perfect Principle, the Fountain and Essence of all Beings; he has Temples and Images erected to him, and is worshipped with the profoundest Adoration.

There is a third Sect, much more numerous than either of the former, who worship the Idol *Fo*, whom they stile *The only God of the World*. This Idol was imported from *India*, about thirty-two Years after the Death of our Saviour: His Priests, the Bonzes, teach several moral Precepts; and that there is a State of Rewards and Punishments after this Life. They also inculcate into their Followers, that it is not lawful to kill any living Creature, or to drink Wine.

These Priests do not only assign their Disciples what kind of Bodies they please, after Death, but pretend to know the very individual Person or Creature any Man's Soul goes into after Death.

They have an Image of Immortality, which they worship in the Form of a monstrous fat Man sitting cross-legged, with a huge prominent Belly. There is another called *The Idol of Pleasure*, about twenty Foot high; and between these in their Temples is another large Image, thirty Foot high, gilded over, with a Crown upon his Head, and richly dressed; this they call *the Great King-Kang*, to whom they pay a mighty Adoration. Lesser Images are innumerable, they may be found in their Houses, Streets, and Ships, as well as their Temples. No Man is without his

Jos, or Household-God; but they sometimes use him as scurvily as the *Portuguese* do St. *Anthony*, for if they have prayed to him a great while, and find no Effect of their Prayers, they reproach the wooden Deity with his Neglect of them; and drag him through all the Kennels in the Streets; and if they happen in the mean time to obtain what they asked, they carry him to his Place again, fall down and adore him, and excuse the ignominious Usage they have been guilty of towards him; they new paint and wash and gild the Block, that it may be more propitious for the future.

Tartar
Deity:

The Emperor, being a *Tartar*, follows the Idolatry of his Nation, which does not differ much from that of the *Chinese*, except it be that they worship a living Man, whom they stile the *Grand Lama*, and give him the Name of *Eternal Father*; all the eastern *Tartars* have the greatest Veneration for him; he is shewn in a Room of his Palace, illuminated with Lamps, sitting cross-legged, on a Cushion raised above the Floor, dressed in the richest Robes, and all that approach him fall prostrate on the Ground, and humbly kiss his Feet. That he may be thought immortal, his Priests chuse out one of their Number as like him as possible, who succeeds him when he dies, and none of his Votaries doubt of his living for ever.

Since the *Tartar* has governed *China*, the Priests of this *Great Lama*, who after their Master are called *Lamas*, serve as Chaplains to the *Tartar* Nobility, who live at *Pekin*. The Emperor, for Reasons of State, shews both the *Lamas* and *Bonzes* a particular Respect, the Jesuits observe; but they insinuate, that he is no Slave to their Religion; that he sees through the Folly of it, and laughs at their extravagant Legends in private.

Mahome-
tans.

There are some thousands of *Mahometan* Families in *China*, that Religion having been tolerated there these five or six hundred Years; but how Mr. *Collier* came to affirm, that the Emperor was a *Mahometan*, unless he imagined so because some of the *Tartars*, who are dependent on *Turkey*, are such, I cannot conceive: No Author having suggested any such thing that I can meet with, of the *Eastern Tartars*.

Temples.

This Country abounds with Idol Temples, which stand without the City Gates, or in solitary Places, where Travellers are accommodated by the Religious, with Lodging and Provisions: By every Temple generally stands a Tower built in Memory of some Saint or Hero. These Places are filled with Images, and Lamps that burn Night and Day.

The

The poorest Man must purchase his Wife, and no Fortune is given with her. However, next to being barren, the greatest Scandal is to bring Females into the World; and if a Woman happens to have three or four Girls successively without a Boy, she will expose, or strangle them with her own Hands; and whenever the Parents happen to be poor or unfortunate, they look upon it to be an Act of Piety to deprive them of a miserable Being which they are not likely to support with Comfort.

The Jesuits have indulged the *Chinese* in their Superstition in many Instances; however they rigorously insist on their putting away all their Wives and Concubines but one, as a necessary Qualification to their being initiated in the Christian Religion: Which is such a Difficulty as cannot be easily surmounted; for, in the first Place, not only the Laws and Customs of the Country are expressly against the turning off a Wife, unless for some Misdemeanour, and the Relations of the Woman would demand Justice upon such an Occasion: It would also be very had to separate the Children from their several Mothers.

Most Men marry by that Time they are Twenty; an old Batchelor is looked upon with the greatest Contempt; besides, the *Chinese* esteem themselves very unfortunate, if they have no Children to mourn at their Graves. There is therefore scarce a single Man to be found amongst them; and the Women being exceeding fruitful, it is no wonder the Country is so populous, especially since few of them travel into distant Countries; and there is very seldom either War or Pestilence to take them off. There is one Difficulty remains to be spoke to, and that is, since every Man marries, and the Rich have ten or a Dozen Wives a piece, where can there be found Women enough for them, if the Numbers of Males and Females that are born are pretty near equal, as it is generally held they are? To which it may be answered, That the Poor, who make up the Bulk of a Nation, have but one Wife a-piece; and, in the next Place, as the Men live single till Twenty, and the Women are marriageable at Twelve, all the Females between Twelve and Twenty are Supernumeraries, and may serve to fill the Seraglios of the Great. They make it a Rule never to marry one of the same Name; but Degrees of Kindred are not much considered, especially on the Mother's Side.

Notwithstanding most Women are kept up with that Strictness that they are not suffered to converse with their nearest Relations, or to appear in any public Places; yet there

there are some Husbands that will give their Wives full Liberty to entertain their Gallants, and there are Women who get it inserted as a Condition in their Marriage-Articles, to have this Liberty allowed them, whereupon their Lovers resort to their Apartments with the same Freedom that the Husband himself does ; but the *Chinese* in general so abhor the Practice, that the Children of such Women are disabled to hold any Place or Preferment in the State ; and so sacred is the Womens Apartment, that even the Husband's Father is never permitted to enter it : And if the Father would punish his Son for any Offence, as he may do even after Marriage, if the Son gets into the Wives Lodgings he is as safe as in a Sanctuary.

Funerals.

People of Condition cause their Tombs to be built and their Coffins provided in their Life-time ; and there are few Families of any Note but have their particular Burying-Places, whither they are brought if they die at never so great a Distance from home.

The Common-People have a Burying-Place without the City, where they are buried promiscuously. No Persons are ever buried within the Walls of the City, nor is a dead Corpse ever suffered to be brought into a Town if a Person dies in the Country.

Mountains, and solitary Places far from Towns, are generally chosen by the Great Men to build their Sepulchres in ; and some of them are little inferior to Palaces. If the Sepulchre is erected in a Plain, they raise a vast Heap of Earth over it, which they carry almost to the height of a Mountain.

The Tomb is a large arched Vault, as big as an ordinary House, and covered with Plaister of *Paris*, so that no Wet can penetrate it. The Deceased being interred according to the Custom of the Country, an Altar is erected, on which Lights are placed : The Friends and Relations, at certain Seasons, prostrate themselves before it with their Faces to the Ground, pouring out Wine, offering Meats and burning Incense, with the Pictures of Men and Animals on gilt Paper, which they apprehend are converted into the Things they represent, and that they will be of Service to the Deceased in the other State.

Every *Chinese* keeps in his House a Table, whereon is written the Names of his Father, Grandfather, and Great Grandfather, before which they frequently burn Incense and prostrate themselves ; and when the Father of a Family dies, the Great Grandfather is taken away, and the Deceased added to make up the Number,

Great

Great Men also, whose Circumstances will allow it, erect Temples to the Memory of their Ancestors; where a yearly Sacrifice is offered. The Emperor sacrifices to seven of his Ancestors, the tributary Kings to five, and a Mandarin to three.

The Time of mourning for a Father is three Years; the first Year both Men and Women wear a kind of coarse white Sackcloth, patched and torn, girt about with a Cord and a coarse linen Night-cap; the second Year their Clothes are something better Linen, and their Caps of the usual sort, but of a different Colour, and the Cord is left off; the third Year they may wear Silk, but it must be white. The Wife also mourns three Years for the Death of a Husband, and it is reckoned scandalous for her to marry again. But the Husband doth not mourn above one Year for a Wife, and as long for a Brother.

The Merchants Gains arise from the Goods imported from China, and not by what are carried thither. There is no trusting the *Chinese*; if the Merchant does not view his Goods thoroughly, and see there are no Defects in them, and be very careful of their Weights and Measures, 'tis odds but he is cheated, it is so difficult to discover all their Tricks, that Mr. *Lockyer* advises the weighing every Thing in *English* Scales after them. Those that have trusted to their Package have been no less deceived in this than their Weights; they have found Chests, Boxes and Canisters, so exactly imitated and marked, that they have not doubted their being their own, when others with damaged Goods, or something of little Value, has been packed up in the room of them. *Traffic of the Europeans. Frauds of the Chinese.*

Goods imported from China; are, first, Tea; Green Goods im-only is drunk in *India*, *Persia*, and the Eastern Nations: *ported from thence.* Bohea is not valued by them. Besides Tea, our Merchants also bring from China Quick-silver, Vermillion, China-Root, Rhubarb, Raw and Wrought Silk, Copper in Bars like Sticks of Sealing-Wax, Camphire, Sugarcandy, Fans, Pictures, Lacquered-Ware, Porcelane or China-Ware, Soy, Borax, Lapis-Lazuli, Galingal and Tutanaque, which is a sort of coarse Tin, and several other kind of Merchandizes are purchased there as cheap as in the Countries that produce them. And though the Exportation of Gold be prohibited, the Magistrates themselves under-hand sell it to our Merchants, and they gain above 58 per Cent. Profit.

Goods usually exported from Europe to China are Bul-Goods ex-lion, Cloth, Cloth-Rash, Perpetuanos and Camblets of Scar-ported. let, Black, Blue, Sad and Violet Colours, which are of

late so lightly set by, that to bear the Duties and bring the Prime Cost, is as much as can reasonably be hoped for, Lead turns to the best Account; besides which, Mr. *Lectyer* says, he knows of nothing that is worth while to concern the Ship's Stock in. A private Trader may carry Coral in Branches, clear Amber-Beads, Flint-Ware thin and according to their Musters for Samshoe Cups and Bottles; ordinary Horse-Pistols with gilt Barrels, Sword-Blades of about 14*s.* per Dozen; Spectacles set in Horn of about 8*s.* 6*d.* per Dozen; Clocks and Watches of a good Appearance, but of a small Price; and any new Toy that has not been carried thither before, which if he can get ashore without paying the Duties, he may make a better Voyage than with all Silver, otherwise the Charge and Trouble will be more than the Profits.

Every thing almost is sold by Weight in *China*, as Eggs, Fruit, Fowls, and even Liquids; and it is said they will cram their Poultry with Stones and Gravel to encrease their Weight. If they excel the *Europeans* in any thing, it is in the Mystery of cheating and imposing on those they deal with. A young Gentleman who had made this Voyage relates, that having bought a Parcel of Hogs of them for the Ship's Company, they all died; and he did not doubt but they were killed by something their Owners had given them before they came on board; for he observed the very Men they bought them of taking the dead Hogs up into their Boats when they were thrown over-board, and no doubt would make as good a Market of them the second time, as if they had been killed by the Butcher; for they never scruple exchanging a live Hog for a dead one, if the dead Beast be but a little larger than the live one.

Chinese
Tartary
described.

That Part of *Tartary* which is subject to this Empire, extends from the Frontiers of *Siberia* to the Eastern Ocean; and from the Latitude of 42 to 55 North. This Country was anciently divided into several little Kingdoms and Principalities; most of these Princes still retain the Title of King, but are really no more than Vassals to the Emperor of *China*.

The Western *Tartars* live in Tents, and remove from Place to Place for Conveniency of Pasture; their Herds of Cattle, and what they get in Hunting, being their principal Subsistence. The Eastern *Tartars* live in Towns, but they are neither so numerous nor so regular and beautiful as the Towns of *China*; many of them lie in Ruins, and are perfectly deserted for warmer Seats and a more fruitful Country: For upon the Conquest of *China*, their Emperor invited

invited all the little *Tartar* Clans to join him, and transplant their Families to *Peking*, in order to establish himself and secure his Conquests; and from that Day to this, all Men of any Spirit, who are not destitute of Ambition, have resorted to the Court of *China*, where they have almost a Certainty of meeting with Preferment, and consequently their native Country is abandoned and left in a more wretched Condition than before their unfortunate Union with *China*. They had the Honour indeed of being Conquerors, and setting a Prince of their Nation upon the Throne; but are, notwithstanding, become a Province to the Kingdom they conquered: They are governed by a military Force, and Garisons placed in all their strong Towns; the Manners and Customs of the *Chinese* also prevail more and more among the *Tartars* every Day: However, the *Tartars* that remain in their own Country, and do not attend the Court, must be allowed to differ from the *Chinese* in many Respects; they are neither so effeminate nor luxurious as their more southern Neighbours, nor do they apply themselves to Traffic near so much; hunting, Horsemanship, and other manly Exercises, take up great Part of their Time. They would be ashamed to be seen in Chairs or Litters, like the soft *Chinese*, but esteem it much more glorious to be found at the Head of a Troop of Horse. Like other northern Countries, they allow their Women all innocent Liberties, and both Sexes converse together with Freedom.

Tartary has a great many barren Desarts and uncultivated Fields; Wheat and other Grain they have indeed, but Flesh is what they most admire, and especially what is taken in Hunting: The Emperors of the *Tartar* Race are so fond of this Sport still, that they go every Year into *Tartary* to hunt. This Country abounds in good Horses, and furnishes the Emperor with many Thousands of them every Year: They encourage the Breed, not only for Service but for Food, being great Lovers of that sort of Flesh, as they are also of Mares Milk. The famous Plant Ginseng grows chiefly in this Country; a Body of ten thousand *Tartars* are employed every Year in the gathering it for the Emperor, and are allowed to sell great Quantities of it after the Emperor is supplied: This Country also abounds in rich Furs.

Arts and Sciences the *Tartars* are not famous for, nor do we hear much of their Laws; the Will of their Prince seems to be the only Measure of their Obedience; nor have they any Books or Histories among them which give any
Light

Light into their Original. They seem no otherwise to differ from the *Chinese*, in Religion, than in the Names of their Idols, except that their great *Lama* is a living Man; upon whose Death they find another, as like him as they can, to set up in his Room, and give him the Title of *The Eternal Father*. As to their Funerals, the *Tartar* Nations burn their Dead, and do not bury them as the *Chinese* do; and the beloved Wife formerly burnt herself with her Husband's Corpse; but the late Emperors have abolished that Practice.

First Inhabitants.

China was probably first peopled from *India*, which lies contiguous to it on the West, if we believe that the whole Earth was planted by the Posterity of *Noah*, *India* lying in the direct Road to *China* from *Mesopotamia*, where the Posterity of *Noah* resided before the Confusion of Languages.

They have a Tradition in *China* indeed, and some of their Histories pretend to shew, that their Country was peopled 100,000 Years before our Account of the Creation; but this appears not to be credited by their celebrated Philosopher *Confucius*, or any of the learned *Chinese*. Others look upon *Fo Hi* as the Founder of their Empire, who lived, they imagine, about 3000 Years before Christ; and a third Set of their Doctors affirm, that the Emperor *Yao* was the Founder of this Empire about 2000 Years before Christ. *Heylin*, and other *European* Writers, who endeavour to shew from which of the three Sons of *Noah* (born before the Flood) every Nation is descended, appear to be very much at a Loss for the Original of the *Chinese* Nation. Some imagine it was peopled by the Sons of *Noah* born after the Flood, and that they settled in *China* before the Dispersion of the People at *Babel*, it being the most populous Nation on the Face of the Earth, and consequently they apprehend must have been of a longer Duration than any other. That it is not so ancient, however, as some of the *Chinese* Doctors affirm, is evident, in that they assign the respective Times, when Husbandry, Architecture, Clothing, and every Science almost was introduced amongst them, by several of their Emperors; all of whom lived, as they admit, within these 4000 Years. It is not to be conceived, if the World was 100,000 Years old, but that some of these Inventions and Improvements must have appeared long before the Times they have assigned.

It is conjectured by some, that their *Fo Hi*, whom they make their first Prince, was no other than *Noah*, the Time assigned for his Reign being much about the Time assigned for

for the Flood ; since when they reckon there has been a Succession of twenty-two Dynasties, or Families, and about 240 Emperors ; of whom *Haylin*, and other Writers, have furnished us with Lists, and the Length of their respective Reigns ; but I shall content myself with enumerating those who have been remarkable for their Virtues or Vices, or for introducing Arts, and making some notable Improvement.

Fo Hi was called *The Son of Heaven*, intimating, that he *Fo Hi I.* was inspired, and authorised by Heaven, to instruct and govern Mankind. Thus it was also in *Peru* ; their first Inca, or Sovereign was supposed to come from Heaven. And thus almost every other Legislator among the Ancients pretended to derive his Authority from Heaven, to give the greater Weight to his Precepts.

This Prince first taught them to cloath themselves, to tame domestic Animals, and to distinguish the Sexes by their Habits ; and he first taught them Characters and Music ; and having reigned 115 Years, was succeeded by

Chin-nong, who first taught them to sow five Sorts of Grain, and to make the necessary Implements of Husbandry, and wrote Books of Physic. He taught them also to make Salt of the Sea-water.

Hoang-ti, the third Emperor, first ordered the History of his Kingdom to be wrote. He discovered the Pole Star, and ordered a Sphere to be made : He also taught them Figures, and regulated Weights and Measures, and found out the Art of Dying. The Invention of Wheel-carriages, and of Boats also, are ascribed to him, as well as the breeding of Silk-worms, and the spinning and weaving of Silk.

Chao-hao, the fourth Emperor, divided the Country into Provinces, and constituted Governors, Judges, and Civil Officers : He had five Sons, but appointed his Nephew *Tchuen*, Grandson of *Hoang-ti*, his Successor, for his extraordinary Merit.

Tchuen-hio, the fifth Emperor, annexed the Priesthood to the Crown, and made a Law, that none but the Emperor should offer Sacrifices, or those he deputed. This Emperor applied himself to the Improvement of Astronomy, and regulated their Calendar.

Tico, or *Cao-sin*, gave his People the Liberty of marrying as many Wives as they pleased, had four himself, and left his Empire to his youngest Son.

Tchi, who proving a Tyrant, the tributary Princes deposed him, and advanced his Brother *Yao* to the Throne.

taught them to cloath themselves.

Chin-nong taught them Husbandry.

Hoang-ti taught them Writing, Accounts, &c.

Chao-ho instituted Civil Government.

Tchuen-hio the Emperor chief Priest.

Tico, or Cao-sin.

Plurality of Wives. Tchi.

Yao

Yao, or Yau, held to be the first Legislator. *Yao*, according to some, was the first, but generally held to be the best of their Emperors, and the first Legislator of this Nation; he never employed his Authority, but for the Good of his Subjects, and was a Pattern to all future Sovereigns. The highest Encomium that can be given an Emperor of *China* is, that he is equal to *Yao*. He was frugal in his Meals, and content with the coarsest Food; affected no State or Ornament in his Dress or Furniture, was remarkable for his Piety and Modesty. He delighted in Astronomy, and appointed *Hi* and *Ho*, two skilful Mathematicians, to observe the Course of the heavenly Bodies; regulated the twelve Lunar Months, and re-established the Intercalary Months, which returned seven Times in nineteen Years; and his Empress improved the Silk Manufacture.

He caused the Bogs and Marshes to be drained, and appointed an Officer to take care of the Waters; to confine their Rivers within their Bounds, and cut Canals in proper Places; and cut the Mountains into level Plains and Squares, making them fit for Tillage. He refused to leave the Empire to his Son, who was a vicious Prince, but associated with him *Chun*, one of his Ministers, who had been bred a Husbandman, and was remarkable for his Virtue and Probity; and gave him two of his Daughters in Marriage. He lived twenty-eight Years after he associated *Chun* in the Empire with him; and when he came to die, exhorted *Chun* to govern like a Father, and to remember that he was made for the People, and not the People for him. He died in the 118th Year of his Age; and though he had nine Children, he left *Chun* sole Sovereign of the Empire.

Chun before Christ 2277. *Chun, or Shun*, succeeded *Yao* 2277 Years before Christ, and is reckoned among the Legislators of *China*. He was a Protector and Encourager of learned Men: He visited the Provinces once a Year, and enquired into the Administration of his Viceroys and Governors: He applied himself diligently to the Improvement of Agriculture, prohibited the Magistrates to discourage the Husbandman, by oppressing him with Taxes; and among the rest of his Ordinances, gave every Man Liberty to write and publish whatever he thought blameable in the Emperor's Conduct: He associated *Yu* with him in the Empire, on account of his Merit, though he had several Sons; and having reigned seventeen Years jointly with him, he died in the 111th Year of his Age.

Yu before Christ 2217. *Yu, or Ta-yu*, signifying *Yu the Great*, became sole Sovereign of the Empire, 2217 Years before Christ. The Beginning

ginning of his Reign was disturbed by an Insurrection, which was raised by one of the Sons of the late Emperor *Chun*, who looked upon himself rightful Heir to his Father, as he had committed no Crime so as to deserve to be disinherited: But he was not supported by the Nobility, and was compelled to remain Subject to the Emperor *Yu*.

This Emperor divided his Dominions into nine Provinces, ordering a Map to be made of each; and made great Improvements in Husbandry: He admitted all Men to his Presence, and heard their Complaints; and encouraged his Subjects to admonish him when his Conduct was not approved: He used to say a Monarch has every thing to fear, when he gives himself up to Pleasure; and that he ought never to be idle. *Chinese* Wine being invented in this Reign (which is nothing else but Spirits drawn from Rice, or other Ingredients) he banished the Inventor, and forbid the making of it under severe Penalties, foreseeing that this *The Em-* Liquor would prove very destructive to his Subjects; but *pire be-* it was after his Death drunk as much as ever. In this *comes he-* Reign the Empire became hereditary, for *Yu* was succeeded *reditary.* by his Son

Tiki, esteemed also one of the best of their Princes: His *Tiki.* Reign was disturbed by the Rebellion of the tributary Princes, who endeavoured to render themselves independent, but were reduced, and obliged to submit to the Emperor.

Tai-kang, his Son, succeeded him, who abandoning him- *Tai-kang.* self to his Pleasures, was deposed, and his younger Brother

Tchong Kang advanced to the Throne, who did not, *Tchong Kang.* however, assume the Title of Emperor while his Brother lived. In this Reign there was a remarkable Eclipse of the Sun, in the Constellation *Tang*; which *Hi* and *Ho*, Presidents of the Astronomers, not having foretold, were put to death.

Kie, a vicious Prince, being deposed, *Tching-tang*, one *Kie.* of the tributary Princes, was advanced to the Throne in his stead; and began a new Race of Emperors.

Tching-tang was acknowledged Emperor by all the Pro- *Tching-tang.* vinces; and gave the Name of *Tchang* to the Imperial Family, that reigned afterwards for 644 Years. He abrogated the oppressive Laws of his Predecessor, and reduced the soldiery under a strict Discipline, who had been used to plunder and oppress the People; and on the Cups and Vessels used in his Palace, ordered Maxims of Morality to be engraved, to remind himself and his Ministers of their Duty. In this Reign happened a Drought, which lasted seven Years,

Years, and occasioned a grievous Famine. His Son dying in his Life-time, he was succeeded by his Grandson *Tai Kia*.

Tai Kia. *Tai Kia* proving a very vicious Prince, his Prime Minister locked him up in his Father's Tomb three Years; and then replacing him upon the Throne, he made an excellent Governor. (These Tombs of the Royal Family in *China* are magnificent Palaces; so that this Prince underwent no other Hardships than the being restrained from those vicious Pursuits which would probably have been fatal to himself and his People.) And this Prince, it is said, was so sensible of the Service his Minister had done him, that he ever after respected him as his Father.

Tai Vou. *Tai Vou*, the seventh Emperor of this Family, made a Law, that in every Town a certain Number of old People should be maintained out of the public Treasury; which Custom is still retained.

Tchong-ting. *Tchong-ting* was obliged to remove from the Province of *Xenfi* by the overflowing of the River *Hoambo*, and resided afterwards at *Pekin*. After the Decease of this Prince a Civil War ensued among his Brothers, who were Competitors for their Father's Throne.

Nankeng before Christ 1437. *Nankeng* was elected Emperor, though the late Emperor *Tchong-ting* left a Son behind him; which occasioned another Civil War; but *Nankeng* maintained himself upon the Throne.

Yang Kia, the Son of *Tchong-ting*, the late Emperor, however, succeeded *Nankeng*.

Pouan-keng. *Pouan-keng*, who changed the Name of the Royal Family from *Chang* to *Yng*, ascended the Throne in prejudice to his Nephew, the right Heir. He reduced the tributary Princes under his Obedience, who had assumed an Independency; and it is said he preferred none but Men of Merit, who were qualified for the Offices he conferred on them; having no Sons, he was succeeded by his Brother *Siao-sin*.

Von-ting. *Von-ting*, who succeeded *Siao*, shut himself up in the Tomb, or Palace, erected for his Father's Interment, three Years, leaving the Administration of the Government, in the mean time, to his Prime Minister; for, according to the Laws of *China*, every Man is obliged to mourn three Years on the Death of a Father; and no Officer, or Minister of State, can exercise any Office till the Expiration of the three Years; though, I believe, none of the late Emperors have thought themselves obliged by this Precept.

Lin-sin, a most debauched Prince, gave Orders to his Ministers, not to disturb him in his Pleasures, by acquainting him with Affairs of State.

Vou-ye also was a very wicked Prince; and being struck *Vou-ye* dead with a Flash of Lightning, his Death delivered his *before* Subjects from the Oppression and Tyranny of his Reign, *Christ* which was very short. 1197.

Tcheou, a most cruel Tyrant, married an Empress as *Tcheou*. cruel as himself, who was perpetually inventing Instruments of Torture; and among others she erected a Brazen Pillar, which being heated hot, she compelled the unhappy Wretches, who were the Objects of her Fury, to embrace it, till their Flesh was burnt from the Bone.

The People at length, enraged with the repeated Instances of Cruelty, exercised both by the Emperor and Empress, deposed the Emperor, and advanced *Vou Vang* to the Throne, who began another Race of Monarchs, which continued 813 Years.

Vou Vang, elected Emperor purely for his Merit, answered *Vou Vang*. the People's Expectations, governed them with the Tenderness of a Father, and was indefatigable in his Application to Affairs of State to the Day of his Death: He divided the Empire into fifteen Provinces, in every one of which he constituted a Viceroy.

Tching Vang, his Son, in whose Reign, it is said, an Instrument was found that would point due North, by which *Vang*. Travellers were directed in their Journeys over extensive *The Sea* Desarts; and that this Instrument was called *Tchinan*, the *man's Com-* same Name the *Chinese* call the Seamen's Compass at this *pasi*. Day.

Tchao Vang: This Prince had such a Passion for hunt- *Tchao* ing, that he was perpetually attended with an Army of *Vang*. Dogs and Huntsmen. He neglected the Administration of the Government entirely; spoiled the Country, treading down and destroying the Corn wherever he came; which occasioned a Conspiracy against him, whereby he lost his Life: He used to cross a River in his Return from his Sports; and the Conspirators provided a Boat, which was so contrived as to fall to Pieces when it came into the Middle of the Stream, in which he was drowned. In this *The Doc-* Reign the Sect of the *Bonzes* first appeared, who held Trans- *trine of* migration, *viz.* That the Souls of Men remove into other *Transmi-* Animals at their Death. *gration.*

Mo Vang invaded *Tartary*; but the *Tartars* retiring be- *Mo Vang*. fore him into their Desarts, he lost great Part of his Army without fighting.

Yang was so excessively modest, that he could not an- *Yang*. swer the great Men or Ambassadors when they addressed him,

him, nor could he bear to receive the Homage of the Vassal Princes.

Yeo Vang, *Yeo Vang* was killed in his Wars against the Tartar who afterwards invaded *China*, but were repulsed.

Christ 777- *Ping Vang* lost the Dominion of several Provinces, the Governors rendering themselves independent, and assuming the Title of Sovereign; and about this Time the celebrated *Confucius* began his History.

Ping Vang. *Ting Vang.* In this Reign *Lau Riun* was born, who was the Founder of that Sect, who believe that the Soul dwells with the Body, and that the Happiness of Men consists in Pleasures that can only be enjoyed in this Life.

They make him also the Author of a Sect that pretends to have found out a Way to Immortality, without dying by drinking a certain Liquor; and when they see Men after they have drank it, they say some Ingredient was wanting, or it was not rightly mixed. They acknowledge God however, who gives Life and Motion to all Beings.

Kien Vang, before Christ 597- *Kien Vang.* This Reign produced two Philosophers, *Yang* and *Me. Yang* held, that all Men ought to be loved and regarded alike, Strangers as well as Relations. *A* was of Opinion, that a Man ought to take Care of himself only, and not concern himself what became of others.

Ling Vang. In the Reign of *Ling Vang* *Confucius* was born; and, in the Reign of *King Vang* he married, at nineteen Years of Age, but divorced his Wife soon after, that he might attend his Studies, and became the most learned Man in the Empire.

King Vang II. In the next Reign, *Confucius* was made Prime Minister but finding his Advice not regarded by the Court, he retired, and led a private Life. He wrote the History of the Civil Wars of the Vassal Princes, which lasted two hundred Years, and died in the forty-first Year of this Reign. The Works of this Philosopher are of such Authority, that the Chinese appeal to them in all Disputes: His Posterity are still in being, and indulged in the greatest Privileges.

Yuen Vang, before Christ 477- *Yuen Vang* reduced most of the Vassal Princes that had assumed an Independency, and proscribed one of them who refused to submit.

The next two Kings reigned each of them some few Months, and were murdered.

Guei lie Vang. In the Reign of *Guei lie Vang* most of the Vassal Princes revolted, and were engaged in Civil Wars amongst themselves, which lasted near 300 Years, their Emperors having very little Authority over them during this Period.

Chi Hoang Ti sent a Colony to *Japan*, the Commander *Chi Ho-* whereof assumed the Sovereignty of those Islands: He also *ang Ti*, be- invaded the *Tartars*, and obliged them to remove further *fore Chrift* North; after which he built the great Wall between *China* ^{237.} and *Tartary*, as a Barrier against their Incursions. (This *The Great Wall built,* Wall is still remaining almost entire, being 1500 Miles long).

This Prince caused all the Works of *Confucius*, and the *All the Histories* of his Predecessors, to be burnt, and indeed all other Books, except those that treated of Architecture, Agri- *before this Reign de-* culture and Physic; from whence it is evident, the Histo- *stroyed.* ries of all the Reigns before this must depend purely on Tradition. It was capital to have any other Books found in the Hands of any of his Subjects.

This Prince constituted his eldest Son Emperor, and gave the Instrument into the Hands of his younger Son to convey to him; but he suppressed the Instrument, and having engaged the Prime Minister in his Interest, ascended the Throne himself, and caused his eldest Brother to be murdered; but was murdered himself, before he had reigned two Years.

Lion Pang then usurped the Throne, an obscure Person, *Cao T'fou* who was first a private Soldier, and afterwards a notorious Robber; but being rendered famous for his Valour and Stratagems, was invited into the Service of one of the Vassal Princes, by whose Assistance he subdued the last Emperor, an indolent voluptuous Prince, and succeeded him, taking the Name of *Cao T'fou*.

Vou Ti encouraged Husbandry, and the Silk Manufacture, and gave Leave to the Learned to produce and read such Books as had escaped the Fire, in the Reign of *Chi Hoang Ti*. Until this Reign every thing was wrote on Palm-Leaves, or *Paper first* the Bark of Trees, with an Iron Stile, but now Paper was *used to* made of the Bambo, and *China Ink* was used to write *write on.* with. This Prince had great Faith in the immortal Liquor. *Immortal*

Vou Ti made a Law, that upon the Death of any of the *Liquor.* Vassal Princes, their Dominions should be divided equally among their legitimate Children; and if they died without Issue, their Territories should fall to the Crown; by which he proposed to lessen the Power of those Princes. This Emperor, like the former, thought he had found the Secret of making the immortal Liquor, and having a Glas of it on the Table, his Minister, while his Back was turned, drank it off; whereupon the Emperor finding it gone, threatened to kill the Minister; to which he replied, *If this*

Liquor will make me immortal, you cannot kill me; and if it will not, your Majesty will see you are imposed upon.

Years before Christ, This Emperor obtained several Victories over the *Tartars*, and subdued the Kingdoms of *Pegu, Cambodia, Siam, and Bengal*; and after a long Reign appointed *Tchao*, a Son he had by a Concubine, his Heir, though he had several legitimate Children.

117.
Siam,
Pegu, &c.
conquered.
Suen Ti.
The Laws
reduced to
a moderate
Size.

In the Reign of *Suen Ti* the Laws were become so voluminous and intricate, and gave so much Room for Quirks and Evasions, that it was difficult to determine the clearest Cases, or to put an End to a Law-Suit; whereupon he ordered their Law Books to be revised, and reduced to a moderate Compass.

Hiao.
Christ

Hiao Ngai Ti the *Chinese* Emperor died the same Year Christ was born.

born.
The Eclipse
at his
Death, in
the Reign
of Quang
Von Ti.
Ming Ti.

In the Reign of *Quang Vou Ti*, according to the *Chinese* Annals, there happened a total Eclipse of the Sun, before the Time it was foretold, which some imagine was the same which happened at the Death of Christ.

This Prince established an Academy of Sciences in his Palace for the young Nobility; and taking Notice of a Prophecy ascribed to *Confucius*, *That the holy one should appear in the West*, he sent Ambassadors to *India* in Search of him, but meeting with some Bonzes or Priests of the Idol *Fo*, they brought them to *China*, and these first taught the Doctrine of Transmigration there.

Ho Ti.
Eunuchs
first introduced.

The Emperor *Ho Ti* is the first that introduced Eunuchs into his Palace.

Ngan Ti,
A. D.

The Emperor *Ngan Ti* coming to the Crown in his Minority, his Mother was Regent; and looking upon the Empire to be too extensive, she reduced it within narrower Limits, releasing the Homage due to the Empire from the most distant Princes, when it is supposed *Pegu, Siam, Tonquin, and Cochin China, &c.* became independent Kingdoms.

124.
The Bounds
of the Em-
pire re-
duced.

Ling Ti,
A. D.

The *Barbarians*, (as the *Chinese* call all Foreigners) invaded the Empire in the Reign of *Ling Ti*, but were repulsed. (These must be *Tartars*, no other Country being contiguous to *China*).

184.
Mo Ti.

The several Princes and Governors of Provinces assumed an Independency in the Reign of *Mo Ti*, and in several other Reigns; and being engaged in Wars with one another, when any of them proved very successful, they frequently usurped the Imperial Throne, and began a new Race of Kings.

Vou Ti

You Ti they relate was murdered by his Empress in his Sleep. for having called her *Old Woman*, when she was but thirty Years of Age.

Lieou You having been a Cobler, and afterwards a common Soldier, was advanced to the Post of General; whereupon he murdered the Emperor *Kaong Ti*, and usurped his Throne, and began a new Race of Kings; he took upon him the Name of *Kaoutson You Ti*, and made *Nanking* the Seat of his Government, being the Place of his Nativity. Notwithstanding his mean Original, he is said to have had a noble majestic Mien, to be a Prince of great Courage, exceeding temperate in his Diet, to affect a plain modest Dress, and remarkably frugal: But *Ghina* seems to have been divided into two Empires at this Time, the one North, and the other South. This Prince possessed the Southern Provinces.

Ven Ti, the third Son of the late Emperor, observing, that the constituting the Governors of Provinces for Life, or a great Number of Years, gave them an Opportunity of rendering themselves independent, enacted, that no Governors or Officers should remain in their Posts above six Years; he endeavoured to recover the northern Provinces, and was very successful at first; but being jealous, that his General *Tan Tao Tsi* was conspiring to dethrone him, he put him to Death; after which, he lost all the northern Provinces he had subdued, and was murdered by his eldest Son.

His second Son *You Ti* revenged his Father's Death, by the Murder of his Brother, and ascended the Throne: The succeeding Emperors of this Family were cruel barbarous Princes; the last of them was murdered by *Kao Ti*, who began a new Race of Kings.

It is reported of the Emperor *Kao Ti*, that being dressed in a rich Habit, covered with Jewels, he ordered them to be beat to Powder, observing that they only promoted Luxury.

His Son *You Ti* reduced the Term of a Mandarin's Government to three Years, and revived an ancient Law, which prohibited Intermarriages between Families of the same Name.

The Doctrine, that all Events were the Effects of Chance, was propagated in this Reign; and that after this Life, Men would be in the same State with Beasts.

The Emperor *Siao Yuen* espoused the Sect of the Bonzes, *Siao Yuen*, who hold the Doctrine of Transmigration to such a Degree, that he would not suffer any Animal to be killed, even for Sacrifice, but ordered ground Corn to be offered in Sacrifice instead of Beasts: Nor would he suffer a Criminal to be put

to Death: Which occasioning abundance of Murders and Robberies, his Ministers applied to him to repeal this Order, as it tended to the Ruin of the honestest and best Part of his Subjects; but he refused, and shut himself up in one of the Temples of the Bonzes, till his Ministers brought him from thence to his Palace by Force: Still he devoted himself to religious Exercises, and conversed only with Priests; which one of the Vassal Princes taking Advantage of, usurped his Throne, and shutting him up in a Prison without Food, starved him to Death.

A. D. *Ven Ti* caused a Drum to be beat in his Palace, to give

544. Notice of every Hour in the Night, a Custom still retained
Ven Ti. *China* having been divided into two Empires, by the
The Hours distinguished. River *Kiam*, for 300 Years, was united again by *Kiou Tson*
Ven Ti, who began a new Race of Emperors.

Kiou Tson *Tai Tsong* was remarkable for his Temperance and Frugality, and dismissing his Concubines from his Palace, and restoring the Sciences. In his Reign the Christian Missionaries first visited *China*, and obtained Liberty to erect a Christian Temple there.

Ven Ti unites all the Provinces.
Tai
Tsong.
Kaio
Tsong.
A. D.
664. The Emperor *Kaio Tsong* took a young Girl to his Bed, whom he complimented with the Administration of the Government, and gave her the Title of *Queen of Heaven*; she cut off the Hands and Feet of several of his Concubines she apprehended might be her Rivals, but imagined she was perpetually haunted by their Apparitions afterwards. The Missionaries relate, that this Emperor countenanced the Christian Religion: On his Death his Mistress *Vouchi* usurped the Throne, and sent away her Sons to distant Governments; and to establish herself, cut off several of the greatest Families that were likely to oppose her Tyranny, and raised a Persecution against the Christians. After her Death she was succeeded by her Son.

Before the Reign of *Hieuentsong*, it was usual to burn rich Gold and Silver Stuffs and Silks, and even Silver Ingots at the Funerals of great Men; but this Prince ordered they should burn only Paper, resembling those Things.

TeTsong. In the Reign of *Te Tsong* the *Tartars* invaded *China*,
A. D. but were repulsed. It is related, that he professed himself
784. a Christian, and sent rich Presents to one of the Christian Churches, on the Day of our Saviour's Nativity, which was recorded on a Stone Monument.

King
Tsong. In the Reign of *King Tsong* the Eunuchs became so powerful, that they set up and deposed the Emperors at Pleasure, for several Reigns afterwards.

The

The Emperor *You Tsong* revived a Law, which obliges *You* all Mandarins and Governors to give an Account of their *Tsong.* Conduct every five Years; and if they endeavour to conceal or palliate their Faults, they never fail to be deprived of their Offices.

This Emperor gave great Encouragement to the Sect that *Suen* pretended to make the immortal Liquor; but accepting a *Tsong.* Draught of it, was soon after devoured by Worms, which bred in his Body.

The Emperor *Tchao Tsong* extirpated the Eunuchs, who *Tchao* had, for many Years, influenced Matters of State, and *Tsong.* taken upon them to depose and advance Emperors at Pleasure. This Prince was murdered by his Prime Minister, who usurped the Throne, and began a new Race of Kings; but the Provinces assumed an Independency, and Civil Wars succeeded.

The Art of Printing was invented in the Reign of *Ming Tsong.* *Ming* *Tsong.*

It is related of the Emperor *Gin Tsong*, and of several *Gin* other Emperors, that when any Calamity happened, such *Tsong.* as Plague or Famine, they ascribed it to their own Misconduct; and therefore desired their Subjects to inform them *The Piety* if they saw any Misconduct in them, and had Recourse to *of this* Fasting and Prayers, to avert the Wrath of Heaven. *Prince,* *and many*

In this Reign the *Tartars* demanding the Restitution of *more.* ten Towns in the Province of *Pekin*, which they formerly possessed, the Emperor rather than enter into a War with them, engaged to pay them 100,000 Taels, and 300,000 Pieces of Silk, and even consented to denominate the Sum a Tribute.

The *Tartars* afterwards made themselves Masters of all *A. D.* the Northern Provinces of *China*, of which they continued *1144.* in Possession many Years.

In the Reign of *Tou Tsong* *Mark Paul a Venetian* travelled *Tou* to *China* by Land, and published the History of his Travels, *Tsong.* which were looked upon as a Romance at that Time; but great part of them have been found to be true, since the Way to *China* by the Way of the *Cape of good Hope* has been found out.

The Western *Tartars* made an entire Conquest of the *Touan* South of *China*; and *Touan Tsong* the Emperor, with his *Tsong.* Court, endeavouring to make their Escape by Sea, were overtaken by the *Tartars*: Whereupon the Emperor and Empress, with their Children and great Officers, threw themselves into the Sea, and perished. After which,

Chi Tſou
a Tartar
Prince,
Emperor
of China.

Chi Tſou, Chief of the *Western Tartars*, ascended the Throne of *China*; he made no Alterations in the Laws and Customs of *China*, but gained the Affection of his new Subjects, by his equitable Administration, and the Protection he gave them, inſomuch, that the *Chineſe* gave this Reign the Title of *The Wiſe Government*. He fixed the Imperial Seat at *Pekin*, ſuppoſed to be the *Cambalu* of *Mark Paul* the *Venetian*, which it is conjectured he miſtook for *Ham Palu*, the real Name *Ham* ſignifying King, and *Palu* a Palace or Royal Seat. The Emperor ordered, that all the Governors and Magiſtrates ſhould continue in their Poſts and Employments, that would ſubmit to his Dominion; but ſome of the *Chineſe* Mandarins choſe to die, rather than acknowledge him their Sovereign.

The Emperor invaded *Japan*, having 100,000 Soldiers on board his Fleet, with which he intended to have made a Deſcent upon thoſe Iſlands, but both Ships and Men were caſt away, very few returning to *China*.

This Emperor it was that cauſed the grand Canal to be cut from *Canton* almoſt to *Pekin*, near a thouſand Miles in length, and a Multitude of other leſſer Canals which fall into it, that Merchandiſe might be transported from one Part of the Empire to another by Water, without running the Hazard of the Sea; which contributed mightily to flouriſhing State of this Kingdom: Some of the Veſſels on the great Canal are of two hundred Tuns Burden, and nine or ten thouſand of theſe were annually employed to bring up the Tribute, or rather Taxes, of the ſeveral Provinces, which were then paid in Kind, ſuch as Corn, Fruits, Manufactures, &c. He was ſucceeded by his Grandſon *Tching Tſong*, who is remembered with Gratitude by the *Chineſe*, for delivering them from the Oppreſſions of ſome of their Governors, and treating his Subjects with Humanity.

Tching
Tſon.

TaiTing,
A. D.
1324.

In the Reign of *Tai Ting*, *China* was afflicted with various Calamities, Earthquakes, Inundations, Droughts, and Conflagrations; which gave the Emperor an Opportunity of ſhewing his Affection for his People, as he did by the Relief and Succours he ſent them.

Chun Ti.

The laſt Emperor of this *Tartarian* Race was *Chun Ti*; who devoting himſelf to Pleaſure, and leaving the Adminiſtration to his Prime Miniſter, gave his Enemies an Opportunity to dethrone him, but nothing contributed more to his Miſfortune than the attempting a Change of Religion, by introducing the *Tartarian* Superſtition and countenancing their Lamas or Priests: This united moſt of the

the *Chinese* against him, who being led by *Tchou*, one of the Bonzes, or *Chinesian* Priests, defeated the Emperor's Forces, and obliged him to fly into *Tartary*, and then ascended the Throne.

Tchou at his Accession assumed the Name of *Tai Tjou*: *Tai Tjou*. He decreed, that Eunuchs should have no Employments, Civil or Military; that no Person should become a Bonze or Bonzes [a Priest or Priests] under the Age of Forty.

That the twenty-seven Months assigned for the Time of mourning for a Father or Mother, should be reduced to 1384. twenty-seven Days.

In the Reign of *Yng Tjong* the *Tartars* invaded *China*, *Yng* defeated the Emperor's Army and made him Prisoner, *Tjong*. whereupon his Son, an Infant of two Years of Age, was proclaimed Emperor, but his Uncle King *Ti* the Protector *An Invasion of the* usurped the Throne: His Brother *Yng Tjong* was afterwards *Tartars,* ransomed, and restored in the Life-time of King *Ti*. The 1444. two next Reigns were disturbed by the Incursions of the *Tartars* and Insurrections in several Provinces, occasioned by a Famine.

In the Reign of *Chi Tjong*, two young Maids finding Chi their Father intended to prostitute them to relieve his Necessities, they drowned themselves to escape the Disgrace; *Tjong*. which this Emperor being acquainted with, he caused a fine Monument to be erected to their Memory, with this Inscription, *To the two illustrious Virgins*. During this Reign the *Portuguese* Missionaries resorted to *China*, and being well versed in the Mathematics, were preferred to Posts of Honour and great Places at the *Chinese* Court. *St. Francis Xavier the* *Xavier*, whom the Catholics stile, *The Apostle of the Indies*, *Missionary* died here in the Year of our Lord 1552. *died here,*

The King of *Japan*, who was a Vassal of *China*, revolted in this Reign, and his Forces made several Descents on the Coast of *China*, but were repulsed with great Loss. 1552.

The Laws of *China*, which prohibit all Persons having *Mo* Governments or Offices in their native Province, were suspended in the Reign of the Emperor *Mo Tjong*; and in this *Tjong*. Reign the first Jesuit, named *Michael Rager*, came to *China*, *A Jesuit* and soon after *Matthew Ricci*, the *Romish* Missionary, who *Missionary* resided here twenty-seven Years. 1583.

In the Reign of *Chin Tjong* the *Japanese* invaded *Corea*, but the *Chinese* coming to the Assistance of that Vassal Prince, the *Japanese* were defeated and obliged to return home.

Matthew Riccius, the *Romish* Missionary, was introduced to this Emperor in the Year 1601, and presented him with the Picture of our Saviour, and another of the Blessed Vir-

gin, which the Emperor placed among the Ornaments of his Palace. This Missionary was allowed to make Converts, and established several Communities of Christians, and died in the Court of *China*, anno 1610; the Emperor assigning a large Piece of Ground to erect a Tomb in it for the Missionary; but in some of the Provinces it appears, that the Christians underwent a severe Persecution in this Reign.

About this time the several *Tartar* Kingdoms being united under the King of *Niuche*, invaded *China*, not with an Intention to plunder it, as formerly, but to make a Conquest of it; the Pretence for which was, that the *Chinese* Merchants defrauded the *Tartars* in their Commerce, and Application having been made to the Court of *China*, they could meet with no Redress.

The Tartars invade China.

A Rebellion happened at the same Time.

The Emperor kills himself.

Lycungz usurped the Throne.

The *Tartars* advancing with their Army into the Province of *Pekin*, several Battles were fought between the *Chinese* and them with various Success, but a Famine happening in some of the Provinces, and occasioning an Insurrection in *China*, *Lycungz*, one of the Chiefs of the Malcontents, assembled a vast Multitude of People, and laid Siege to the capital City of *Pekin*, which was betrayed to him by the Eunuchs of the Court; whereupon the Emperor, and most of his Family, chose to die by their own Hands, rather than be made Prisoners by the Rebels: Upon which *Lycungz* caused himself to be proclaimed Emperor, and then marched against *Usanguy* the Imperial General; who having received Advice of the Usurpation of *Lycungz*, had clapped up a Peace with the *Tartars*, and entered into an Alliance with them against the Usurper, and uniting their Forces, were preparing to give him Battle: Whereupon *Lycungz* retired to *Pekin*, and having plundered that City, marched into the Province of *Xensi*, whither he was pursued by *Usanguy*, and *Xunchi*, the *Tartar* King, in the mean while took Possession of *Pekin*, and, in the Absence of *Usanguy*, caused himself to be declared Emperor of *China*; which *Usanguy* resenting at his Return, the *Tartar* offered to establish him in the Sovereignty of some of the best Provinces of the Empire, if he would consent to his having the Dominion of the rest; and *Usanguy* not finding himself in a Condition to expel the *Tartars* at that Time, seemed to consent to it, but waited for a more favourable Opportunity to restore the Family of the late Emperor; which however he never met with. *Xunchi* or *Tsonje*, the *Tartar*, established himself upon the Throne, and begun a new Race of Emperors, in the Year 1644. One of the Stratagems he used to induce the *Chinese* to submit, was the

Xunchi the Tartar declared Emperor, 1644.

the obliging them to cut off their Hair and alter their Habit *The Chi-*
to the *Tartar* Fashion, that it might not appear how in- *nese com-*
considerable a People the *Tartars* were in comparifon of the *pelled to*
Chinese; and that the *Chinese* might be lefs fenfible of the *cut off*
Change, he employed the Natives, and gave them Com- *their Hair,*
mands, both Civil and Military, and by this Means made *and alter*
them acceffary to the fubduing their own Country. He *their Ha-*
also remitted part of their Taxes, and fuffered them to be *bits.*
governed by their own Laws; fo that, excepting the Al-
teration in their Habits, the *Tartars* may be laid to be fub-
ject to the Laws of *China*, rather than to have impofed
Laws upon them; and the Country of *Tartary* is now in
Reality fubject to *China*; for *China* is the Seat of the Em-
pire; there are the fupreme Courts of Juftice; there all
the Wealth of the United Kingdoms centers; there Ho-
nours and Degrees are conferred, and confequently thither
People of Condition will refort. The petty *Tartar* Kings
are Vaffals of *China*, and their Towns garifoned by *Chinese*
Troops.

Xunchi, the Conqueror of *China*, and firft Emperor of *Chunchi's*
this Family, died foon after he came to the Crown, and *Acceffion.*
appointed his Son *Chunchi*, an Infant of fix Years of Age,
his Succelfor, conftituting his Uncle *Amavam* Regent, who
reduced the remote Provinces, which ftill held out. *Chunchi*
having reigned feventeen Years, appointed his Son *Canghi*, *Canghi's*
who was about eight Years of Age at his Father's Death, to *Acceffion.*
fucceed him. He proved an excellent Prince, had fuperior
Talents to any of his Minifters, and entrusted none of
them abfolutely with the Adminiftration of the Government,
but made them accountable to him for all their Tranfact-
ions: And in his Courts of Juftice he made one half of
the Judges *Tartars*, and the other *Chinese*, that they might
be a Check to one another. In the Treaty of Peace he *Treaty*
made with the *Ruffians*, he extended his Empire beyond the *with the*
River *Yamour*, the ancient Northern Boundary, to fifty-five *Ruffians.*
Degrees of North Latitude. This Emperor dying in the *Yong*
Year 1722, left the Empire to *Yong Tching*, his fourth Son. *Tching's*
The Miffionaries admire his Adminiftration in every other *Acceffion,*
Instance, but his Perfecution of the Chriftians. They re- *1722.*
late, that he obliged the Kingdoms of *Tonquin*, *Cochin-Chi-*
na, *Siam*, and the reft of the Countries comprehended in
the further Peninfula of *India*, to become tributary to him;
and that he fometimes appoints and confirms their Kings. *The State*

The Chriftian Religion made a great Progreff in *China* *of the*
about forty Years ago. The Jefuits relate they had 200 *Chriftian*
Churches and Chapels there; but falling out with the Mif- *Religion in*
fionaries *China.*

sionaries of other Orders, and endeavouring to ruin each other, they were all in general banished the Kingdom ; to which nothing contributed more than their preaching up the Pope's Supremacy, affirming that he was superior to all temporal Powers, which is a Doctrine the Princes of that Part of the World do not relish.

And it was an odd Sort of Christianity that was professed in *China* when it flourished most. The Jesuits suffered their Profelytes to continue worshipping *Confucius*, and their Parents and Ancestors, at the same time they worshipped the Popish Saints and Images ; for the great Men in *China* do not only worship the Images of their Fathers, Grandfathers, &c. but build Temples to their Honour. I shall conclude the History of *China* with some Account of *Confucius*, to whom they pay divine Honours at present.

Confu-
cius, some
Account of
him.

Confucius was born in the Province of *Canton*, then a separate Kingdom, 551 Years before Christ. When he was fifteen Years of Age he applied himself to Study, and married at nineteen, and had a Son by his Wife, but divorced her, that he might attend his Studies. The Doctrines of this Philosopher tended, say the *Chinese*, to restore human Nature to its pristine Lustre, to that Beauty it first received from Heaven, which had been sullied by Ignorance, and the Contagion of Vice. The Means he proposed to attain it, was to obey the Lord of Heaven ; to honour and fear him ; to love our Neighbours as ourselves ; to conquer irregular Inclinations ; never to take our Passions for the Rule of our Conduct ; to submit to Reason ; to listen to it in all Things ; to do nothing, to say nothing, to think of nothing contrary to it. As his Actions never belied his Maxims, and as by his Gravity, Modesty, Mildness, Frugality, Contempt of earthly Enjoyments, and a continual Watchfulness over his Actions, he was in his own Person a Pattern of the Precepts which he taught in his Writings and Discourses, Kings vied with each other in doing him good Offices, and procuring his Presence in their Dominions, the good Works he did in one Country making him earnestly desired by another.

This Philosopher, after the Death of the Prince *Tcheou*, his grand Patron, became all of a sudden, through the Envy of the Courtiers, the Subject of their Raillery and Satires, under which unworthy Treatment he lost nothing of his usual Tranquillity.

But what was most to be admired was the Constancy and Steadiness which he discovered, when his Life was in imminent Danger, through the Brutality of a great Officer in the Army,
called

called *Huan Ti*. This Mandarin hated the Philosopher, though he had never given him any Offence, and even threatened his Life ; but *Confucius* beheld the Sabre lifted up, ready to strike him dead, without discovering any Sign of Fear.

An unparalleled Modesty likewise set off the Virtues of this *Chinese* Philosopher : He was never heard to praise himself, and could hardly bear the Applause of others, but rather reproached himself for the little Care he took in watching over his own Actions, and his Negligence in the Practice of Virtue. When any one admired his Doctrine, and the Principles of Morality which he taught, far from assuming the Honour to himself, he ingenuously acknowledged, that this Doctrine was not his own, but was much more ancient, and had been taken from those wise Legislators *Yao* and *Chun*, who lived 1500 Years before him.

The seventh Day before his Death, turning himself towards his Disciples, The Kings, said he, refuse to follow my Maxims, and since I am no longer useful on the Earth, it is necessary that I should leave it. After these Words he fell into a Lethargy, which continued seven Days, at the End of which he expired.

The *Chinese* built his Sepulchre near the City *Kiou fou*, on the Banks of the River *Su*, in the same Place where he was accustomed to assemble his Disciples, which has been since inclosed with Walls, and looks like a small City. He was lamented by all the Empire, especially by his Disciples, who went into Mourning, and bewailed his Loss as though he had been their Father. He is looked upon at this Day as the great Master and Doctor of the Empire, whose Precepts, they tell us, ought to be every where obeyed ; but the *Chinese* are as defective in their Practice as our nominal Christians.

The HISTORY of ASIATIC TARTARY.

THE ancient *Scythia*, afterwards denominated *Tartary*, *Ancient* comprehended all the North of *Europe* and *Asia*, ex-*Scythia*. tending from the *Atlantic* to the *Pacific Ocean*. That Part of *Scythia* and *Tartary* which lies in *Asia* extends from the Rivers *Don* and *Oby* to the *Pacific Ocean*, and from forty to seventy-two Degrees of North Latitude ; and if we include *Thibet*, we may carry it ten Degrees further South. *It Name.* is said to have been called *Scythia* from *Schyten*, which signified to shoot, in their Language, the *Scythians* being excellent Marksmen. The credulous *Herodotus* indeed relates, that

that *Hercules*, as he travelled through *Scythia*, met with a Monster, half Woman and half Serpent, on whom he got three Sons, one of which he named *Scythia*; and from him this Country obtained its Name, a Story sufficient to spoil the Credit of this *Prince of Historians*, as he is called by some, though we may meet with a hundred such in that Writer. As to the Name of *Tartar*, or *Tattar*, this it received from a River of that Name, which run through the Country, it is said; but where that River is to be found they do not inform us.

By whom
peopled.

The next weighty Point in which the Learned take up much Time, is to discover by which of the Grandsons of *Noah* *Scythia* was planted, which many of them have attempted; but, after all their Labour, give us little Satisfaction. If we grant them that the whole World was peopled by the Sons of *Noah*, it is sufficient. It is not very material to know by which of them every Country was planted, nor the exact Time when. It is conjectured by some, that *Scythia*, or *Tartary*, was planted as soon as any, even before *Noah's* Family descended into the Plains of *Shinar*, or *Mesopotamia*. They presume that some of the Family might march Northward from *Mount Arrarat*, and plant that Country contiguous to it, which was Part of the ancient *Scythia*. It is not probable, they observe, that those Northern Countries should have been so crowded with People, as to over-run and subdue their Southern Neighbours from time to time, if they were not peopled very early.

The Northern
People subdue
their Southern
Neighbours.

It is a Fact not to be denied, that the Northern People, extending from the *Atlantic* to the *Pacific Ocean*, have subdued every one of those Nations that lay to the South of them in that vast Tract of Country, which some have ascribed to their Numbers, presuming, that People have multiplied faster in these cold Regions than in the more temperate Climates; but I believe it will be found, that Animals, as well as Plants, thrive and encrease as fast in temperate Countries, and probably faster, than in the Extremities either of North or South; and there may be other Reasons given for their Invasion of their Southern Neighbours, than their Multitudes; as, first, their Country's not being so extensive as those in the temperate Climes; the Circumference of the Globe in sixty Degrees of Latitude, not being half so much as the Circumference about the Middle of the Globe, consequently if the People in sixty Degrees multiply only as fast as they do nearer the Equator, they must be much more crowded, and less able to subsist, should it be admitted, that the Soil was equally fruitful: But it is well

well known, that the Lands in those Northern Countries do not produce near so much Food as in the more temperate Climates. It is no Wonder, therefore, that the Northern Nations being more confined, and wanting the Corn and Fruits of the South should fall down upon their Southern Neighbours, and endeavour to possess their Seats, especially as the Climate, as well as the Soil, is much more desirable than theirs. And as the Northern People are bred up to Arms from their Cradles, without which they could not take the Game that is Part of their Food, and that Labour and Hardship are familiar to them, this must render them superior in Power to the Southern People, who lead indolent and luxurious Lives, when they come to contend with them in the Field.

One Reason that the *Scythians* formerly, and the *Tartars*, *The wandering* their Descendants, lived in Tents, and rambled from Place to Place, was, that the Soil producing little Corn, they depended chiefly on their Flocks and Herds of Cattle, which they drove before them to Places where they could meet with Pasture; and when they had eaten up the Forage in one Country, were under a Necessity of removing to another. The same Reason obliged the *Arabians*, and other People that inhabited the parched Deserts of *Arabia* and *Africa*, to live in Tents, and remove to such Places from time to time, as could furnish them with Pasture and Water for their Flocks. It is in fruitful and plentiful Countries chiefly where great Towns were first built, and the People lived in fixed Habitations. Many of the Northern Countries indeed have been found more fruitful than the first Planters expected; and upon being cultivated, have afforded Food sufficient to subsist the Natives. In consequence whereof, some of those Countries where the ancient Inhabitants used to graze their Cattle, and hunt for their Food, there are now fruitful Fields, and the People that used to live in Tents, and ramble from Place to Place, have built Towns, and live in fixed Habitations; such are the Countries of *Poland* and *Russia*, which were anciently Parts of *Scythia* and *Tartary* (in which *Sarmatia* was comprehended). *Lives of the Scythians and Tartars.*

As to the ancient Government in these Countries, nothing is more evident, than that the People of *Tartary* were, till very lately, divided into a Multitude of Clans or Tribes. Every Family almost had its Kan, Han, or supreme Governor, which commanded a certain Number of Tents: And these frequently united under one Chief, in their Excursions towards the South, and the Person under whom they

they marched, might, during the Expedition, obtain the Name of the great Cham or Han; but when the Expedition was over, every Tribe was governed by their respective Chiefs again. This was the Case of the great *Tamerlane*, who united almost all the *Tartar* Tribes, and with them made a Conquest of almost all the South of *Asia*, even of *China*, *India*, *Persia*, *Arabia*, and the *Lesser Asia*, and even of Part of *Africa*, of which he retained scarce any thing: He left his Sons only the Dominion of *Usser Tartary*, his native Country, and the Northern Provinces of *Persia* and the *Hither India*, in which he fixed one of his Sons, giving it the Name of *Mogulstan*, or the Empire of the Great Mogul, of which Tribe *Tamerlane* was. The Wars of those *Tartarian* Princes who invaded *China*, will be found in the History of that Empire, as the Wars of *Tamerlane*, and the other *Asiatic Tartars*, will be seen in the Histories of *India*, *Persia*, or *Turky*, and therefore need not be repeated here.

Situation.

Asiatic Tartary is situate between 45 and 135 Degrees of East Longitude, and between 30 and 72 Degrees of North Latitude, being in Length 3000 Miles, and 2000 in Breadth, bounded by the *Frozen Ocean* on the North; by the *Pacific Ocean* on the East; by *China*, *India*, *Persia*, and the *Caspian Sea* South; and by *European Russia* on the West.

Mountains.

The chief Mountains are those of *Caucasus*, in *Circassia*; and the Mountains of *Stolz* in the North.

Seas.

Their Seas are the *Frozen Ocean*, the *Pacific Ocean*, and the *Caspian Sea*.

Rivers.

The Rivers are, 1. *Volga*, which, rising in *European Russia*, runs South-East, a Course of 2000 Miles through *Europe* and *Asia*, and discharges itself into the *Caspian Sea*, below *Astracan*. 2. The *Oby*, formed by the *Tobol* and *Irtis*, which rising in the South of *Tartary*, runs North, and, dividing *Europe* from *Asia*, falls into the *Frozen Ocean*, opposite to *Nova Zembla*. 3. The *Genesá*, or *Jenska*, which rises in *Kalmuc Tartary*, runs North, and falls into the *Frozen Ocean*. 4. The *Lena*, which lies further East, and, running parallel to the *Genesá*, falls into the same Ocean. 5. The River *Argun*, which divides the *Russian* and *Chinese* Empires, and discharges itself into the River *Yamour*.

Air.

The Air in the North of *Tartary* is excessive cold, the Earth being covered with Snow nine Months in the Year. The Southern Provinces lie in a temperate Climate, and would produce all Manner of Corn and Vegetables almost, if there were Hands to cultivate the Soil; but those that inhabit it lead a rambling vagrant Life, driving great Herds of Cattle

Cattle before them to such Parts of the Country where they *Cattle.*
can meet with the best Pasture, and seldom remain long enough
in a Place to reap a Crop of Corn, if they should plough
and sow the Lands where they pitch their Camps.

The Divisions of *Asiatic Tartary* are, 1. *Chinese Tartary.* 2. *Siberia.* 3. *Thibet.* 4. *Mangul.* 5. *Uzbek Tartary.* 6. *Calmuc Tartary.* 7. *Bratskoi Tartary.* 8. *Circassia.* 9. *Astracan;* and, 10. *Nova Zembla and Lapland.*
The chief Towns whereof are,

1. *Tobolski.* 2. *Tomoskoi.* 3. *Mangasia.* 4. *Koban.* Towns.
5. *Bochara.* 6. *Samarkand.*

The *Tartars* of *Astracan* and *Uzbek Tartary*, who live in *Trade.*
fixed Dwellings, and cultivate the adjacent Country, have
a brisk foreign Trade. In *Siberia* there are Mines of Silver, *Mines.*
Iron, and Copper; and the *Swedish* Prisoners, and other
Exiles, have set up several Manufactures in this Country.

The North Part of *Russian Tartary* is inhabited by the
Samoieds and *Ostiacs*, who are of a short Squat Make;
their Women have very small Feet; their Complexion
tawney, like those in hot Climates; it being observable,
that extreme Heat and extreme Cold, in this, and many
other Instances, have the same Effects: They have long
little Eyes, high Cheek-bones, broad flattish Faces, and, *Manufac-*
in general, not very agreeable Countenances. Both Men *tures.*
and Women wear their Hair hanging at the full Length; *Persons of*
and there is little Difference in this Respect between *the Samo-*
them, except that the Women sometimes braid their *ieds.*
Hair, and tie little bright Pieces of Copper, and Slips of *Habits.*
red Cloth at the Ends of it. The Men have scarce any
Beards, which makes it still more difficult to distinguish
them from Women. They wear Fur Caps, with Wastecoats
and Breeches of the same, and Buskins almost white.
They wear Coats of Rain-Deer Skins over their Wastecoats,
and in the Winter Time have an upper Coat of one
Piece of Fur, which covers all, and serves even for Cap
and Gloves, so that nothing can be seen but Part of the
Face; and they have Boots, which come up to their
Knees.

Their Houses are built with Poles, and the Branches of
Trees, and covered with Bark; they are almost in the
Form of a Bee-Hive, and have a Hole in the Top to let
out the Smoak; for the whole House is but one Room, with
a Hearth in the Middle, round which they sit, or lie upon
Rain Deer Skins, their only Furniture, except the Horse-
Flesh, and other Carrion, which hangs round the Hut.
They

Food.

They eat the Flesh of Horses, Oxen, Deer, Sheep, and Fish indifferently, but think it has the best Goust, when it begins to be a little touched; and prefer the Intrails of an Animal to any other Part of it, using neither Bread, Rice, or Salt at their Meals.

Travelin Sleds.

The *Samoieds* travel in Sleds, drawn by a Pair of Rain Deer, or Dogs: The Sleds are about eight Foot long, and three or four broad, and turn up before like Scates: The Driver sits cross-legged, with a Staff in his Hand, with which he pushes and drives the Rain Deer. They cross the frozen Rivers, Ice and Snow in these Sleds; and the Deer run with greater Swiftnes than a Horse; they never sweat, but when they are weary put out their Tongues and pant like Dogs: They are much like Stags, but stronger, and have shorter Legs; their Colour is pretty near white, and some of them grey, with a flat Hoof.

The *Samoieds* hunt Sea Dogs, which in *March* and *April*, couple upon the Ice. Here the *Samoieds* watch them, being dressed more like Brutes than Men. They venture upon the Ice sometimes half a League from the Shore, with a large Hook and Line in their Hands, creeping upon their Bellies; and when they come within Distance, throw their Hooks, and the Sea-Dog attempting to get away, most commonly fastens himself upon it. They take Rain Deer also sometimes by clothing themselves with the Skin of that Beast, and creeping among the tame Deer till they are within Reach of the Wild, and then kill them with their Darts.

Religion.

They believe there is a Heaven and a God, whom they stiled *Heyha*. They are convinced nothing could be greater and more powerful than God; and that all things depend on him; that we had one common Father, and that good Men go to *Paradise*; but notwithstanding this, they worship the Sun, Moon, and Planets, together with several Kinds of Beasts and Birds, from whom they hope to receive some Benefits. Images they also worship in human Shape, but so very ill carved and dressed, that it is difficult to discover what they represent. They have Priests among them, who pretend to the Magic Art, and to foretell future Events: These they consult upon all Occasions, as whether they shall recover of a Fit of Sickness, what Success they shall have in their Hunting, Fishing, &c.

The *Ostiacs* inhabit the very same Country, but generally the *Samoieds* are deemed those People who inhabit that Part of *Muscovite Tartary* which lies towards the West, in and next to *Europe*, and the *Ostiacs* the North East Part of
Musco-

**THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY**

**ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.**



N. 110.

N. 110. Sculp

Vol. 12, 30, 11, 12.

Moscovite Tartary, nearest to the *Chinese Tartary*: They extend along the River *Irtis*, to the Place where it falls into the *Oby*: From thence you will find them extending themselves to the northward along the Banks of the *Oby* and *Jenesa*, till they fall into the *Guba*, or *Gulph of Mangasea*, and from the *Guba* to the *Straits of Waigats*, inhabiting on the Banks of the many Rivers which fall into the *Oby* and *Jenesa*.

On the North Side of the *Straits of Waigats*, and the *Nova-Gulph of Mangasea*, lies *Nova Zembla*, or *The New Land*, *Zembla*, which the *Dutch* call *The Island of Waigats*. Hither the *Ostiacs* and *Samoieds* frequently venture to go over high Rocks of Ice to hunt Elks and Rain Deer, carefully observing the Wind, which they guess at the Alteration of by certain Signs; for if the North Wind sets in, there is no enduring the open Country; if they cannot escape to some Cave, and shelter themselves till it is over, they certainly perish. From whence we may very well conclude, there are no constant Inhabitants there, though some pretend to have seen them. The Water that flows from the Mouth of the *Oby*, in the *Gulph of Mangasea*, immediately congeals, making Mountains of Ice, which it is thought never melts, either Winter or Summer, though sometimes the Winds rushing through the *Straits of Waigats*, breaks the Ice, and puts that Sea in Motion. The Wind blowing for the most part from *Nova Zembla* makes the Air in the Country of the *Ostiacs* so excessive cold, that in the Latitude of 60 there are no Manner of Fruit Trees, nor will the Land bear any Grain whatever; and yet in some other Parts of *Moscovy*, and in *Sweden*, in the same Latitude, the Country is tolerably fruitful: The Reason of which Difference is supposed to be, because the Sea lies nearer those Parts of *Sweden* and *Moscovy*, from whence the Winds blow much warmer than from *Nova Zembla*, where they come over a vast Tract of frozen Land, which lies so far North, that no Ships have ever yet gone beyond it; and may extend even to the Pole itself, for aught we can discover.

The *Ostiacs* employ themselves in Hunting, Fishing, *Ostiacs*, handling the Bow, and killing Deer and wild Beasts. In *their Em-* Summer they take and dry Fish, which serve them in the *ployment.* Winter; and when that Season comes on, they go into the Woods, with their Bows, Dogs, and Nets, killing Sables, Foxes, and Ermins, Bears, Elks and Rain Deer, Martins, &c. and of these Skins the Empress has a certain Share, by Way of Duty; the rest are sold to the *Russian* Governors at

a stated Price, and sometimes they are permitted to dispose of them to private Persons.

Food.

Their Diet is chiefly Fish, Venison, Wild-Fowl and Roots; for they have neither Rice nor Bread. Their Drink is for the most part fair Water, and sometimes the Blood of a Rain Deer, or any other Beast they take; and it is said, they can dispense with a Draught of Train-Oil.

Houses.

Tobacco they are immoderately fond of. In Winter they set up their Huts in Woods and Forests, where there are the greatest Plenty of wild Beasts and Game: They dig deep in the Ground, to secure themselves from the Cold, laying a Roof of Bark or Rushes over their Huts, which are covered with Snow in the hard Seasons. In the Summer they build above Ground, on the Banks of Rivers, for the Convenience of Fishing, and make no Difficulty in forsaking their Habitations, and removing from Place to Place, the Materials of their Houses consisting of little more than some green Poles, and the Bark of Trees, with the Skins of wild Beasts for their Furniture.

Religion.

Their Religion is much the same as that of the *Samoeds*: They have little brazen Images, tolerably well cast, which it is supposed they had from their Neighbours the *Chinese*, and represent Men and Animals: The rest are as ill made as the Images of the *Samoeds*, every Man being his own Carver; they place them on the Tops of Hills or in Groves, and in the pleasantest Places their Country affords. They have no particular Sort of Men to exercise the priestly Office, but any one, when he grows into Years, may devote himself to that Service, and the Masters and Heads of Families frequently perform that Office.

In their Sacrifices they present the Beast before the Idol; and having bound it, the Priest puts up the Petitions of those who brought the Offering; then he lets fly an Arrow at it, and the People assist in the killing of the Sacrifice; after which it is drawn three times round the Idol, and the Blood being received in a consecrated Vessel, their Houses are sprinkled with it: They afterwards dress the Flesh and eat it, rejoicing and singing their Country Songs, which are some of them loose enough.

To the South-east of *Tabolski*, along the River *Irtis*, live some Hords of *Mahometan Tartars*, wealthy in Cattle, having vast Flocks and Herds, though there be not much Money among them. They live chiefly upon dried Fish, Venison, and Barley-Meal, which they make into a Pasty, and eat in much the same Manner as the *Indians* do their Rice: They drink Mares Milk, as most of the *Tartars* do, and sometimes

times Tea, but mix it with Flower and Butter. At great Entertainments they usually dress a young Horse, which is their most delicious Food. Their Drink, called *Braga*, they make of Oat-meal and Spirits distilled from Mares Milk, with which they often get drunk, and behave themselves very brutishly. Their Habit resembles that of the ancient *Russians*, and the Women wear Rings in their Nostrils. They pay a Tribute to *Moscow* of Sables, Fox-Skins, and other Furs, but have notwithstanding Princes of their own.

To the Eastward of this Country, in the Road to *China*, Eastern
Tartars. there are Plenty of Fish, Corn and other Provisions; and they have a particular kind of Furs, which the *Russians* call *Telansky Bialky*, as white as Snow, and larger than any other. The neighbouring Mountains also yield Lead, Iron and Copper; and the *Swedish* Prisoners in this Part of the Country relate, that Gold Dust has been found in several Places; ancient Tombs also have lately been discovered, in which they find Images of Gold and Silver, Rings and Coin; from whence it is conjectured, that this Country was anciently inhabited by another kind of People than it is at present. There are also some Chrystal Rocks here, and Stones found, not unlike our *Bristol* Stones in Brightness and Hardness.

Beyond the River *Jensaiska*, in the Road to *China*, live Other
Tartar
Tribes in
Siberia. the *Camsky Tartars*, in Huts covered with Bark, like some of those already described: They are *Pagans*, and their Food is Fish and Venison; which they eat raw as well as dressed, and Roots serve them instead of Bread. More easterly lie the *Bratsky Tartars*, a more substantial People, where a private Man is frequently Master of four or five hundred Horses, and a proportionable Number of other Cattle. They live chiefly on Venison, but value Horse-flesh much more. They drink Mares Milk, and distil a strong Spirit from it, as they do in most Parts of *Siberia* and *Tartary*. They purchase their Wives as in some other Parts of *Siberia*, with their Cattle, and give often 100 Horses or Oxen for a Virgin they admire, and fifteen or twenty Camels, besides Sheep. The Natives are very hospitable, and will sometimes present Travellers with Sheep as they pass through their Country, reserving only the Guts and Entrails to themselves, which they look upon to be the most delicious Eating. They are *Pagans*, and worship an Idol made up of the Skins of Beasts, which they hang up in their Huts. As for Temples I hear of none in *Siberia* but what the *Russians* have lately built.

Both Men and Women are of a very tawny Complexion, but better dressed than most of their Neighbours. The Women particularly wear long plated Gowns, and the Virgins distinguish themselves, by adorning their Hair with Braids, and other glittering Toys.

The Government of *Russia* monopolize almost all *Siberian* Commodities, under which Denomination are comprehended not only such Things as are of the Produce of *Siberia*, but whatever comes through that Country from *China*. The Produce of *Siberia* is principally the Skins of Foxes, Sables, Hyenas, Ermins, Lynxes, and other Furs. *Chinese* Gold and Silks, and the Teeth of a Beast called *Maman*, not unlike Elephants Teeth, being also denominated *Siberian* Commodities, Search is made for these at all the Passes on the Road. The Vayvods and Governors of Towns, upon the least Suspicion, will take to pieces the very Sledge and Carriages, to prevent any Passengers carrying off any Gold Dust.

The Jurisdiction of the Governor of *Siberia* extends from the River *Oby* to the Frontiers of *China*; and he appoints all the Governors of Towns and Provinces beyond the Rivers *Janisa* and *Lena*, with whom he keeps a constant Correspondence, and is early advised of every Occurrence in that large Tract of Ground, by Means of the Sledges which travel at a greater Rate than any Horse possibly can, and are drawn sometimes by two or four Deer, or Dogs, and sometimes by Men with their wooden Scates.

Swedish
Prisoners
in Siberia.

After the Battle of *Pultoway*, Anno 1709, about 10,000 *Swedish* Prisoners, including Officers, were sent into *Siberia*. There were no less than 800 Officers Prisoners in the City of *Tobolsky*. The common Soldiers, it seems, received Remittances from *Sweden* twice, during their Captivity, which amounted to no more than three Crowns a Head; and the Officers received nothing, but were however, very well used at first, till some of them, who had leave to be absent on their Parole, did not return; and others, who had entered themselves in the *Russian* Service, took an Opportunity to make their Escape. After this they began to be more strictly guarded, and were separated and dispersed into remote Parts; and those who were Security for the Return of their Comrades were close confined. The *Swedish* Officers having no Means left for their Subsistence, were obliged to apply themselves to all Manner of Mechanic Arts to get their Bread: And it is surprising to see how many Ways these unfortunate Gentlemen took to support themselves, and to what a Degree of Perfection they arrived

rived in their respective Employments. There were amongst them Painters, Gold and Silver Smiths, Card-makers, Turners, Shoe-makers, and Taylors; and scarce any Trades, except Puke-makers and Hatters, were wanting. Some of them made Gold and Silver Tissue and Brocade; others applied themselves to Music; and some of them who had fallen into a Way of Traffic, had Liberty to travel about the Country, the Passes being so well guarded, that there was scarce any Possibility of their escaping to *Europe*. Some of them who could not attain to Handicraft Trades, were forced upon the laborious Employment of cutting down Wood; and there were others who condescended to become Chair-Bottomers.

Those who had any Learning set up public Schools, and taught not only the Children of the *Russians*, but those of their Fellow-Prisoners, many of whom either had their Wives with them, or married *Russian* Women; for the great Towns of *Siberia* are inhabited chiefly by Colonies of *Russians*, whom the Czar transplanted thither for the Security of his Dominions on that Side.

The *Swedish* Officers, in their Schools and Academies, taught *Latin*, *High-Dutch*, *French*, Morality, Mathematics, and several manly Exercises; and some of these Schools were grown into that Reputation, that, it is said, the Citizens of *Moscow* sent their Children into *Siberia* for Education.

The *Circassian* Tartars generally acknowledge themselves Circassian dependant on the Crown of *Russia*, though there are Instances where they have not shewn the Submission of Subjects; which is not so much to be wondered at, since they live so remote from the Seat of the Government, and are ever rambling from one Place to another.

Those *Circassians* who lie next to *Persia* and *Turky* may be reckoned under the Dominion of one or other of those Crowns. But nothing is more common than to put themselves sometimes under the Protection of one Prince, and sometimes under another. I do not find any considerable Town in this Country, except *Terki*, which is inhabited chiefly by *Russians*; for the whole Nation of *Circassians* live in Tents or Huts, according to the Season of the Year, removing from one Place to another, like their Neighbours of *Astracan*; nor does the Country produce any thing valuable enough to induce Foreigners to build or settle amongst them.

Though *Circassia* produces very little Grain of any Sort, they have large Herds of Cattle, which they drive before

them like the other *Tartar* Nations, and stay no longer in any Place than they can find Pasture for them.

*Persons of
of the Cir-
cassians.*

The *Circassians*, both Men and Women, are of an easy Shape and well proportioned; their Complexions good; their Features just, according to the Notions we entertain of Beauty; their Hair and Eyes generally black; and not a Cripple, or a crooked Person, scarce to be found amongst them. The Women wear no other Head-dress than a Silk or Stuff Cap in the House, their Hair hanging down in two Tresses behind them; but are veiled when they go abroad. The general Food of the *Circassians* is Mutton, Beef, Poultry, Wild-fowl, and Venison; all which they have in great Plenty; but a Piece of a young Colt is preferred before any of these. Their Bread is made into thin Cakes, either of Barley-meal, or Millet, which they bake on the Hearth. They are extremely hospitable, and will not suffer a Traveller to pay any thing for the Entertainment of himself, his Servant, or Horses; but will contend frequently who shall have the Honour of treating him. As for the Natives, when they are upon a Journey, they carry no Provisions with them, but are as free in every House they come at, as in their own: So that if any People may be said to have all Things in common, they are the *Circassians*. Their usual Drink is Water, or Mare's Milk, like the other *Tartars*; and they all smoke Tobacco, Men and Women, young and old; and, as far as I can perceive, a Stock of Tobacco is the most useful Thing a Man can carry with him through any Part of *Tartary*; for though they are great Lovers of it, they have little or none of their own Growth. They sit cross-legged, and have a Carpet, or Piece of *Russia* Leather, spread before them, and little wooden Tables at their Meals; but neither Linen or Plates.

The *Tartars* observe no regular Hours for eating, drinking, or sleeping, but do the one or the other as they have an Inclination, or Opportunity; and sometimes when they are making Incursions, it is said they will go four or five Days without eating or sleeping, having no Time for either sometimes, when they are carrying off a Booty. They no sooner arrive in their own Country, but they indulge themselves both in eating and sleeping; and after such a Fatigue will sleep two Days together, without waking once; and seldom make use of any other Bedding than Sheep's Skins, to lay under and over them.

*Young
Slaves
purchased*

The greatest Traffic of the Country seems to be in young Slaves, which they take in their Incursions; and they make no Manner of Scruple of selling their own Children into
Turky

Turky and *Persia*, especially their Daughters, who will part in Circassia. frequently entertained with Relations of the Preferment of those who have been sold before them to Princes and Bassas, and of some who have arrived to the Honour of Sultanas, in the Harams of the Grand Signior, and the King of *Persia*. Every Girl, as in a Lottery, hopes for a Prize; and their Imaginations are so taken up with the Thoughts of fine Cloaths, Jewels, or Equipage, and a luxurious Life, that they leave their Father's House with Joy; and their Mothers are no less pleased with the Expectation of their Daughters Advancement. But as their Beauty and Innocence are the Foundation of all these great Expectations, a particular Care is taken to preserve both. The Small Pox, that great Enemy to the Fair, is therefore usually given their Children at four or five Years of Age, either by Inoculation, or otherwise, after they have duly prepared them for it; and by these Means they have it so favourably, it is said, that it does not at all affect their Charms. The Merchants who buy these young Creatures, are as careful to preserve their Virginity as their Mothers, knowing what a Value their *Mahometan* Chapmen set upon a Maiden-head.

Inoculation.

The *Calmuc Tartars* are of a low Stature, thick and short, and not very agreeable Countenances. In Mr. *Mottray's* Description of the *Nogaians* and *Calmuc Tartars*, he says, that they have flat square Faces, little Eyes, sunk far into their Heads, and such short Noses, that one would think at a little Distance they had none at all. Their Beards grow straggling and thin, that one may almost count the Hairs; which are so stiff and long, that they might be taken for those of a Horse or Goat; and they grow frequently in the Middle of their Cheeks, where other People have none. There are a vast Number of Hords, or Tribes, of them, which rove from Place to Place during the fair Season, not less than 8 or 10,000 of them frequently in a Body, who drive large Flocks and Herds before them. They begin their March usually in the Spring, when the Grass is come up; and as they make but easy Journeys, leave scarce any Herbage behind them in the Country they pass through. In the latter End of the Year, when there is a second Crop of Grass, they usually return the same Way they came, and remain in a more substantial Kind of Huts, or Houses, during the Winter Season, than they inhabited in the Summer; they have Chimneys in them, and Copperns fixed for

the dressing of their Provision; but the People and their Cattle frequently lye in the same Room.

They eat indifferently of all Kinds of Meat almost, except Hogs Flesh; Barley Meal and Roots supply the Place of Bread for the most part; but I find they eat Rice in some Parts of the Country; and besides Water, which is their common Drink, they have Tea, and Spirits extracted from Mares Milk. They hunt Sables, Martens, Ermins, and other Beasts, which afford Furs during the Winter; and in these they pay a Tribute to the *Moscovite*. There are some Tribes of *Mahometans* in the Western Part of *Calmuc Tartary*; but they are for the most part *Pagans*, and have their ill-carved Idols, which they worship like the *Ostiacs*.

Every Hord hath its separate Cham, or Prince; but there is one who seems to have a Superiority over the rest, pretending to be descended from the great *Tamerlane*; but this Prince, however, pays a Tribute to the *Moscovites*, who seem to look upon the *Calmucs*, that border upon *Siberia*, as their Vassals.

The *Calmucs*, in the Reign of the late Czar, traded to *Astracan*, and to *Tobolsky*, the Capital of *Siberia*, with Tea and *China* Goods, bringing with them also great Quantities of very fine Salt, which their Country afforded, receiving *Russia* Leather and Iron-ware in Exchange, and some Money. But the Czar commanded one of his Generals to march into the Country of the *Calmucs*, and take Possession of their Salt-Works, and build a Fort there; which the *Calmucs* so highly resented, that they have forborne to go to the Fair of *Tobolsky* ever since: They also choaked up the Mouth of the River *Duria*, which falls into the *Caspian Sea*, whither the *Moscovites* used to come in Search of Gold. As this River was likely to prove very advantagious to the *Moscovites*, as well upon account of the Gold Dust, which was found in its Sands, as also for settling a Trade with the *Ufbec Tartars* and *India*, the Czar had built two Forts at the Mouth of it, without any Disturbance at first from the *Tartars*; but his Forces marching further into the Country, through the great Step, or Desert, where they were dispersed in Search of Provisions, they were surrounded, and all cut in Pieces, with their General *Bekewits*, a Native of *Circassia*, who commanded them, and the two Forts were afterwards surpris'd and demolished.

Ufbec
Tartars.

The *Tartars* of *Ufbec*, like their Neighbours, are at this Day divided into several Hords, or Tribes, who have their respective Princes. When they were united under one
So-



THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.

Sovereign, they were the most potent of all the *Tartar Nations*; they were much dreaded by *Persia* and *India*; into which Kingdoms they made frequent Incurfions; but as their Tribes were not very numerous, they contented themselves with plundering and ravaging the Country, and did not pretend to make Conquests. The principal Chams, or Sovereigns, of these People value themselves upon their being descended from *Tamerlane*, as the Great Mogul also does. As to the Persons of the *Ussacs*, their Complexions are said to be better, and their Features much more engaging than the *Calmuks*. Their Religion is *Mahometanism*, and in general they differ very little from the People of *Cassimere*, and other Northern Provinces of *India*. It is from this Country, and *Persia*, that the Mogul is supplied with his best Soldiers, who rise by Degrees to the highest Employments in the Courts of *India*: And it is from hence that *India* is furnished with the most serviceable Horses, Camels, and other Cattle.

The *Mongolian Tartars*, and those of *Thibet*, have so little to distinguish them from those of *Ussac*, except their Religion, which is *Pagan*, very little different from that of *China*, that it is perfectly unnecessary to say much of them. The *Moguls* have *Moscovite* and *Chinese Tartary* on the North. The great Step, or Desert, which separates them from *China* on the East; *Thibet* on the South, and *Calmuks Tartary* towards the West. *Thibet* is bounded by the *Calmuks* and *Mongalia* towards the North; by *China* towards the East, by *India* on the South, and *Ussac Tartary* on the West. These People, as they border upon *China*, imitate the *Chinese* in their Customs and Manners; and, as far as I can learn, their Religion is the same with the *Mongolians*. They are governed by their respective Chams or Princes, and are perpetually in Motion with their Flocks and Herds, having scarce any Towns in their Country.

The

The HISTORY of the ORIENTAL ISLANDS.

The first Voyages of the Europeans to India and the Oriental Islands.

The Arabians, &c. first traded hither.

EUROPE has, for three thousand Years, and upwards, been supplied with the fine Spices from the *Oriental Islands*, which were many of them anciently under the Dominion of the *Chinese*. The *Persians*, *Arabians*, *Ethiopians* and *Egyptians* used to bring them up the Gulphs of *Persia*, and the *Red Sea* by Water, and then by Caravans or Camels carry them to the Ports on the *Levant*; and from hence the *Phenicians*, and after them the *Venetians*, *Genese*, *Catalans*, &c. dispersed them all over *Europe*.

The *Moors*, or *Mahometans*, of *Arabia*, and the neighbouring Countries, in order to ingross this Trade to themselves, sent numerous Colonies to *India*, and the *Oriental Islands*, drove the first Inhabitants up into the Mountains and inaccessible Places, planting themselves upon the Sea-Coasts, and in time became strong enough to subdue the Natives, compelling them to submit to their Government. Under the Dominion of these *Arabians*, *Moors*, &c. were most of the *Oriental Islands*, when the *Portuguese* first discovered a Passage to *India*, by the *Cape of Good Hope*: Nor was it without infinite Labour and Patience that the Discovery was made; the greatest Inducements to which Enterprize, were the Hopes of becoming Masters of the Spices, and other rich Treasures of the East.

The Portuguese discover the Coast of Africa.

It was about the Year 1418, that Prince *Henry*, third Son of *John* King of *Portugal*, first sent out Ships for discovering the Western Coast of *Africa*; and until the Year 1486, did the *Portuguese* continue to prosecute their Discoveries to the Southward, when King *John* II. sent out *Bartholomew Diaz*, who discovered the most Southern Promontory of *Afric*, by the Admiral named *Cabo Tormentoso*, from the tempestuous Weather he met with there; but King *John* named it *Cabo de bon Esperanza* (*The Cape of Good Hope*) having great Hopes now of discovering a Way to the *East Indies* by Sea.

In the Year 1487 King *John* II. dispatched *Pedro Covillon* by Land to *India*, who went first to *Alexandria*, from thence to *Cairo*, and so to *Aden*, where he took Shipping in the *Arabian Fleet*, and arrived at *Calicut*, on the Western

Western Side of *India* ; he afterwards sailed back with the *Arabs* to *Sofala*, on the Coast of *Africa*, in 20 Degrees South Latitude, and sent the King of *Portugal* a Map of that Coast, but did not live to return to *Portugal*.

Don Emanuel King of *Portugal* sent *Vasco di Gama* in the Year 1497, with three Ships, to trace out a Way to the *East Indies* ; but his Men mutinying at the Hazard of the Undertaking, when they were at Sea, it was with great Difficulty that he persuaded them to pass the *Cape of Good Hope* ; which he did, on the 20th of *November* 1497. He afterwards sailed to the Northward, till he arrived at *Mosambique*, in the Latitude of 15, where he found seven Sail of Ships, manned by *Arabians* ; who treated them very friendly at first, imagining they had been of the same Faith, and of the same or some neighbouring Country with themselves, it never entering into their Thoughts, that the *Europeans* had found a Way round *Africa* into their Seas. It was observable, that these *Moors* had the Mariners Compass, with Sea Charts and Quadrants, which were not known to the *Europeans*, till about the Time that *Columbus* ventured on that Voyage to *America* ; and it is thought by some, that we were first let into these Improvements by the Eastern Nations.—The *Arabians* no sooner understood, that *Gama* and his Men were *Christians*, but they did them all manner of ill Offices, foreseeing, that if the *Europeans* should proceed to *India*, it would in time be the Ruin of their Trade.

From *Mosambique*, *de Gama* sailed for *Melinda*, in the Latitude of two Degrees South, where he arrived on *Easter Day* 1498 ; here he found some *Christians* of *India*, from whom he met with a kind Reception, and procured a Pilot to sail with him to *India*.

On the 19th of *May* 1498 he made the high Mountains near *Calicut*, and the same Day arrived within two Miles of the Town ; the next Day he sent a Person on Shore, to acquaint the King of *Calicut* with his Arrival ; at which the King at first was overjoyed, imagining he should find a considerable Increase of his Customs, which are his principal Revenue, by the Arrival of another People in his Ports ; but the *Moors* and the *Arabians* justly apprehending the Loss of their *Indian* Trade, if these Strangers were entertained by that Prince, represented them as Pirates, or Spies at least, who came to discover his Weakness ; and by bribing the principal Men about the Court, they set the King so much against the *Portuguese*, that he ordered some of *Gama's* Men to be seized and detained ashore ; whereupon *Gama*, to procure

They double the
Cape of
Good
Hope,
A. D.
1497.

The Por-
tuguese
arrive in
India ;

Opposed by
the Arabs.

procure Satisfaction, made Prize of one of the Ships in the Road; in which he took several Persons; but finding no Probability of establishing a Trade here at that Time, he set Sail for *Portugal* again; where he arrived in the Year 1499, bringing with him one *Monzaidra* a Merchant of *Tunis*, whom he found at *Calicut*; from whom the *Portuguese* learned many material Articles concerning the *Indian* Trade.

King *Emanuel* soon after fitted out another Fleet, consisting of thirteen Sail, and fifteen hundred Soldiers, under the Command of *Peter Alvarez Caprailis*, who sailed from *Lisbon* the 8th of *March* 1500, and arrived at *Calicut* the 22d of *August* following. *Caprailis* was at first well received by the King of *Calicut*; but the *Moorish* Faction again prevailing against the *Portuguese*, the People of the Country set upon them in the House the King had assigned for their Factory, and killed above fifty of them; to revenge which, *Caprailis* attacked a Fleet of *Moorish* Ships, and killed six hundred of their Men, making Slaves of the rest, and seizing all their Merchandize; after which he sailed to *Cochin*, 170 Miles to the Southward, where he established a Factory, and returned to *Lisbon* the last of *July* 1502.

A Factory
settled at
Cochin,
A. D.
1502.

The King of *Portugal*, before the Return of *Caprailis*, had fitted out three other Ships for *India*, which were followed soon after by *Vasco di Gama* a second Time, with ten Ships: *Soderius* also was sent out, with a Squadron of fifteen Frigates to attack the *Moors*, and make himself Master of the *Indian* Seas, which was easily effected; the *Moors* having few Ships of Force, nor indeed needing any till now, having no Enemy to encounter, till the *Portuguese* found the Way to them by the *Cape of Good Hope*.

Goa and
Malacca
taken.

The *Portuguese* proceeded to endeavour the settling a Trade at *Malacca*, but the Natives, incited by the *Moors*, proved treacherous, surprising forty of their Men on Shore, and attacking their Ships in the Road, but were beaten off with Loss. The famous *Albuquerque*, not long after, laid Siege to the City of *Goa*, and took it, and afterwards took *Malacca*, the King *Mancudias* being killed in defending it; whereupon several *Indian* Princes desired an Alliance with the *Portuguese*, finding they were in no Condition to oppose them; and *Antonius Ambreus* was sent out in search of the Spice Islands. The two Kings of *Ternate* and *Tydore*, the most potent Princes of the *Moluccas*, courted their Friendship, and were ready to refer their Differences to them, having long been engaged in Wars; and with one or the other of these Princes, most of the Islands in these Seas were confederated. The *Portuguese* taking Advantage of the Differences

ferences between these Princes, found no great Difficulty in settling their Factories, and building Forts there, both Princes being ready to grant them every thing they proposed, in hopes of their Alliance. Thus the Portuguese established themselves in the Spice Islands, being the first Europeans that ever arrived there; upon the Merit of which, they looked upon themselves to be solely entitled to this Trade, to the Exclusion of all other Nations, especially having the Pope's Bull, as well as an Agreement with the Spaniards, to back their Pretensions: Accordingly they styled themselves *Lords of the Navigation, Conquest, and Commerce of Ethiopia, Arabia, Persia, and India*; and built them Forts and Cities at convenient Distances, along the *African, Arabian, Persian, and Indian Coasts*, and particularly in the *Spice Islands*.

The Spaniards observing what a vast Advantage the Portuguese made by their Commerce with the *Spice Islands*, employed Magellan to discover a Way to those Islands by the West; whereupon he passed the Straits from him called *Magellan*, and sailing through the *South Sea, or Pacific Ocean*, he arrived at the Islands of *Ladrone* the 6th of March 1520. He afterwards made the *Philippines*, where he was unfortunately killed, but his Ships arrived at *Ternate*, the chief of the *Molucca Islands*, on the 8th of November 1521, being about ten Years after the Arrival of the Portuguese here. The King of *Tylore* suffered the Spaniards to settle a Factory in his Country, and they left one of their Ships behind them, either to be refitted, or to attend the Business of the Factory: And as all Discoveries Westward were to belong to the Spaniards, they looked upon themselves to be entitled at least to a Share of the Trade of these Islands.

However, the Portuguese, without any Ceremony, made Prize of the Spanish Ship that was left there soon after, and ruined their Factory. They also erected Forts at *Ambayna*, and *Banda*, in order to bridle the Natives, and secure the *Spice Trade* to themselves.

These Proceedings gave great Offence to the Spaniards; The however, after they had contested this Matter with the Portuguese for seven or eight Years, the Emperor Charles V. having great Occasion for a Sum of Money, mortgaged all his Interest in the *Spice Trade* to the Portuguese, in the Year 1529, for 350,000 Ducats, which were never repaid by Spain.

The next European Nation which visited the *Spice Islands* was the English. Sir Francis Drake, set sail from *Plymouth* on the 13th of December 1577, with five Ships, and

Magellan discovers a Way to the Spice Islands by the West for the Spaniards, A. D. 1521.

purchase the Spaniards Interest.

and 164 Men, among whom were several Gentlemen of Quality.

Drake's
Voyage to
the Spice
Islands.

A. D.

1579.

Drake having touched at *St. Julian* in *South America*, sailed from thence on the 17th of *July*, and on the 20th came to the *Straits of Magellan*, through which he passed, and the 6th of *September* entered the *Pacific Ocean*, or *South Sea*, and arrived at the *Molucca Islands* in the *East Indies*, the 14th of *November* 1579. The next Day he sent a Present to the King of *Ternate*, acquainting him, that he was come to trade with his People; which Message appeared very acceptable to his *Ternatian* Majesty, who very much desired to be taken under the Protection of the Queen of *England*, being weary of the insolent Behaviour of the *Portuguese*, who pretended to debar his Subjects from trading with any other Nation but themselves; and as a Testimony of his Subjection to the Queen, gave the Admiral his Signet. (This Island of *Ternate* is the chief of the *Moluccas*, and there were at that time above seventy other Islands under the Dominion of this Prince.) After this Cession, no *European* Nation could make a better Title to the *Moluccas* than the *English*. The Admiral having had several Conferences with the King and the chief Men of the Country, concerning their Wars with the *Portuguese*, promised to protect them; and having taken in a good Quantity of Cloves, set sail for *England*, where he arrived the 3d of *November* 1580, having been out almost three Years.

The Eng-
lish and
East India
Company
incorporat-
ed,
1600.

The *English East India Company* being incorporated 43 *Elizabeth* 1600, equipped four Ships, giving the Command of them to Captain *Lancaster*, who sailed from *England* the 22d of *April* 1601, and arriving at *Achen* in *Sumatra* on the 5th of *June* 1602, purchased a Quantity of Cloves, Cinnamon and Pepper, and from thence sailed to *Bantam* in the Isle of *Java*, where he settled a Factory, and dispatched a Vessel to the *Spice Islands* of *Molucca* and *Banda*, to settle a Trade there; after which he set sail for *England*, where he arrived on the 11th of *September* 1603.

On the 25th of *March* 1604, the Company sent four Ships more, commanded by Captain *Henry Middleton*, to *India*, who arriving at *Amboyna*, the *Dutch*, who arrived there two Years before, would not suffer the Inhabitants to trade with the *English*; whereupon the Admiral sent the *Ascension* to *Banda*, to take in a Freight of Nutmegs and Mace there; and she took in her Lading without any Molestation. The Admiral, in the *Dragon*, then sailed to the *Moluccas*, where he found the Kings of *Ternate* and *Tydore* still engaged in War, most of the other Islands in those Seas

Seas taking part with the one or the other. The Dutch also sent Forces to the Assistance of the King of Ternate, as the Portuguese did to the Assistance of the King of Tydore.

The King of Ternate seeming inclined to trade with the English, the Hollanders threatened to desert him, and join his mortal Enemy the King of Tydore, declaring, *That the English were Thieves and Robbers, and that the King of Holland was stronger by Sea than all the Princes of Christendom together.* To which the Admiral replied, *That the Hollanders lyed, as he was ready to make appear against any one that should dare to affirm any thing of this Nature before him; and at the same time acquainted the Ternatians, that the Dutch had been utterly ruined by the King of Spain, and used as Slaves and Traitors, if the Queen of England had not taken Pity of them, and prevented it.*

The Influence of the Dutch at the Spice Islands.

Admiral Middleton having taken in great Part of his Lading of Cloves at Tydore, set sail for Bantam, and from thence with the *Ascension* to England; where he arrived the 6th of May, 1606, bringing with him the following Letter directed to King James I. from the King of Tydore.

The King of Tydore's Letter to the King of England.

THIS Writing of the King of Tydore to the King of England, is to let your Highness understand that the King of Holland hath sent into these Parts a Fleet of Ships to join with our ancient Enemy the King of Ternate; and they, jointly together, have over-run and spoiled Part of our Country, and are determined to destroy both us and our Subjects: Now understanding by the Bearer hereof, Captain Henry Middleton, that your Highness is in Friendship with the King of Spain, we desire your Majesty, that you would take Pity of us, that we may not be destroyed by the Kings of Holland and Ternate, to whom we have offered no Wrong; but they by forcible Means seek to bereave us of our Kingdom; and as great Kings upon the Earth are ordained by God, to succour all those who are wrongfully oppressed, I apply to your Majesty for Succour against my Enemies, not doubting but to find Relief at your Majesty's Hands; and if your Majesty shall send hither, I humbly intreat, that it may be Captain Henry Middleton, or his Brother, with whom I am well acquainted. God enlarge your Kingdom, bless you and all your Councils.

TYDORE.

In

*The Dutch
massacre
the Ban-
danese,
and inter-
rupt the
Trade of
the Eng-
lish.*

In the Year 1607 the *East India Company* sent two Ships to *India*, commanded by Captain *Keelyng*, who arrived at *Banda* in *February* 1608, and settled Articles of Trade with the *Bandanese*, erected a Factory there, and was loading his Ships with Mace and Nutmegs, when the *Dutch* landing 1200 Men, killed great Numbers of the *Bandanese*, and interrupted the Trade of the *English*. The Islands of *Poolway* and *Poolaroon*, notwithstanding, agreed with Captain *Keelyng*, by a Writing under their Hands, to deal with the *English* only, for all their Mace and Nutmegs, declaring that the *Dutch* should not have a Handful: They would die before they would have any thing to do with the *Dutch*. Soon after the *Oran Cayas* of *Nero*, another of the *Banda* Islands, drew the *Dutch* Admiral and his Council into an Ambuscade, and cut them to Pieces: And had not Captain *Keelyng* preserved several other *Dutch* Merchants from the Fury of the People, they had undergone the same Fate; for which he had at first the Thanks of their Vice-Admiral. But notwithstanding this Service, the Vice-Admiral, in a Day or two, endeavoured to put a Restraint upon the *English* Trade again, and sent to search their Boats as they went ashore, on Pretence they might carry Ammunition and Provision to the *Bandanese*. On the first of *July* the *Dutch* stormed the Town of *Labatata*, and took it; and the sixteenth burnt several Vessels belonging to the *Oran Cayas* of *Banda*; the eighteenth they commanded Captain *Keelyng* to be gone out of the Road, out of the Reach of their Guns, which they had mounted on their new Fort of *Nassau*. And afterwards, according to their wonted Insolence, they sent Captain *Keelyng* a positive Order to be gone.

To all this Bluster Captain *Keelyng* coolly answered, That unless he was commanded by some other Authority than by their Orders, he should stay in the Road till he had taken in all his Lading, which would be about twenty-five Days; and having loaded his Ships, he returned to *England* in *May* 1610.

Captain *Saris* being afterwards sent by the *East India Company* to the *Banda* Islands, the *Dutch* threatend to murder the *Bandanese*, if they sold him any Nutmegs, and seized several Boats that were bringing Spices on board him, pretending that the *Spice Islands* were theirs by right of Conquest. The Natives, however, continued to trade with the *English*, and desired their Protection against the *Dutch*.

*The States
in the*

The *Oran Caya's*, or States of the Islands of *Poolway*, *Poolaroon*, and several more of the *Banda* Islands, proceeded
to

to make a formal Cession of their Countries to the King of Spice Islands *England*, in Consideration of his Protection against the *Dutch*; which Instrument was dated in November 1616. *make a Cession of their Country to the English,*
 Soon after this the *Dutch* attacked the *English* Ships at *Banda*, and took one of them: But the rest of the *English* Captains landing some Guns, defended themselves and the Natives for some time against the *Dutch*: Another of the *English* Ships falling into the Hands of the *Dutch*, it is not to be conceived with what Cruelty and Insolence they treated their Prisoners, declaring that the *English* were Slaves and Vassals to the *Dutch* in *Europe*. And when the *Dutch* were told they must be answerable for committing these Hostilities in time of Peace, they reply'd, They could make as good Friends in the Court of *England* as the *English* *East India* Company; that they did not matter paying for a Ship or two; a little Gold well applied would heal all: Nor did they value the Expence, so as they could destroy the *English* Trade at *Banda*. This is the Account Mr. *Spurway*, and other Factors, gave in their Letters to the *East India* Company, adding, that they hoped they would so prize the Blood of their Servants, who had been maimed, wounded, imprisoned, and murdered by the *Dutch*; that they would procure Satisfaction to be made, that the *Dutch* might be deterred from acting the same Villanies over again. Nor were these Outrages committed by private Men; their Generals and Admirals declared they had a Commission from the States to make Prize of all Ships that approached the *Banda* Shores without their Leave. *The Dutch take the English Ships in Time of Peace.*

Captain *Courthope's* Journal informs us, that he had not only the whole Forces of the *Dutch* and other Hardships to contend with; but the Complaints and Importunities of the *English* Sailors now perishing in the *Dutch* Prisons, and begging him to make Peace with their Tormentors on any Terms, that they might be released from their Dungeons: Whereupon the Captain often sent a Flag of Truce to the *Dutch*, to represent the cruel and unmanly Treatment of their Prisoners, and sent them Rice and Oranges, and such little Refreshments as he could spare, assuring them, that if any thing less than the betraying the Interests of his King and Country had been required of him, he would infallibly have complied with them; but that he was himself ready to suffer, and to hazard every thing rather than abandon a People who had put themselves under his Majesty's Protection, and to whom he had engaged himself in the solemnest Manner.

But it was no small Mortification to the Captain and his Garison, after they had manifested so much Courage and Resolution for two Years and upwards, in Defence of their little Fort, on which depended the whole *Banda Trade*, to hear, as they did about the 20th of *March*, 1619, that Sir *Thomas Dale*, who commanded the *English Fleet in India*, was dead; and the Commanders not agreeing among themselves afterwards, the Fleet had been dispersed to several Parts of *India*; by which Conduct seven Ships had fallen into the Hands of the *Dutch*; so that there was now little Hopes of Relief for a considerable Time; and Mr. *Courthope* began to look upon their Case as desperate; as appears by a Letter he sent to the *English* President at *Bantam*; wherein he tells him he must have surrendered before this for Want of Food, if a *Portugal* Frigate had not accidentally come by, and furnished them with Rice. He presses him therefore for further Supplies, and adds, God grant me well out of this Country, for the People have spent their Gold and Estates; and many of them have lost their Lives and Liberties in Expectation of *English* Succours: *Can every other Nation*, says he, *sail into these Seas, and are the English only afraid to venture hither?* You bid me rub out another Year, we have rubbed off the Skin already, I pray look to it, &c.

Captain
Cour-
thope
killed by
the Dutch.

But though the Captain seemed forsaken by the Factory at *Bantam*, he was resolved not to desert his Post: On the contrary, he got some Country Vessels to go over to *Macassar*, and fetch in Rice: He also repaired and strengthened his Fortifications, and put such a Face upon the Matter, that the *Dutch* durst never attack him in his Fort, though they often threatened it: But it seems Mr. *Courthope* going over to another Island to regulate some Abuses there, was met by two *Dutch* Vessels on the 26th of *October*, whom he fought bravely, till he was shot in the Breast; after which he sat down a little, and then threw himself over board, rather than fall into their Hands; possibly he hoped to have swam to shore as five or six of the *Bandanese* actually did, and escaped; but Mr. *Courthope* was never heard of more.

And here possibly some of our Countrymen may bewail the Hero; but who could wish a more glorious Fate! Rather let us make it Matter of Triumph, that our Nation bred to brave a Man; such an Example of Courage and Constancy as few Ages have produced. He was a Gentleman of a considerable Family, who might have lived at Ease, and made a Figure in the polite World, and yet chose to expose himself to the extremest Want and Danger
in

in the remotest Parts of the Earth, to stop the Encroachments of the ungrateful *Dutch*, who, like a Torrent, were then breaking in upon our Navigation and Commerce. O, Courthope! *thy Name shall be recorded in the Rolls of Fame among Great Britain's greatest Sons; whom neither private Interest, or an elegant Retirement, to which thy Friends invited thee, could ever induce thee to give up thy Country's Cause, or abandon those who had confided in thy Promises of British Aid.*

This was the Crisis, when, if the *British* Nation had exerted itself in Behalf of her Trade and Empire at Sea, the *Dutch* had never been in a Capacity of insulting her Coasts. The Spices, as is well observed, is the Basis of their Trade, as it might have been of ours; and are of more Value to them than the Mines of *Potosi* to the *Spaniards*; and in Fact they do not only bring into their Country *Spanish* Silver without the Trouble of working it, but every other valuable Merchandise the World affords.

The *Dutch*, however, at length came to a Treaty with the *English*; whereby it was agreed, that the two Nations should share the Spice Trade between them; and each of them thereupon settled Factories in the several Islands; *The Treaty* which was no sooner done, but the *Dutch* pretended the *English* and *English* Factors at *Ambogna* were in a Plot to dispossess *Crucity of* them of their Share, and thereupon made the *English* Factors Prisoners; and having put them to the Torture afterwards, murdered them, and took Possession of their Effects; *the Dutch at Ambogna.* and have never suffered the *English* to enter these Seas, or have any Traffic with the *Spice Islands* ever since.

But it may be demanded to what End should the *Dutch* be guilty of all this Barbarity? Could they not have seized on the *English* Factories and Effects, without killing their Factors? Or, if they thought it necessary to murder them, could they not have done it in a less cruel, or less public Manner? To which it may be answered, That there is no Doubt to be made of their superior Strength; they were possessed of all the Castles and strong Places in those Islands, and they were all garisoned by their own national Troops, except some few *Indian* Mercenaries. The *English* dwelt in ordinary Houses, which could make no Defence, and were dispersed in several Parts of the Island, two or three in a Place, for the Convenience of their Trade, not having a Military Man amongst them, and unprovided both of Ammunition and Arms; so that there could have been no Manner of Difficulty in seizing and securing their Persons, till the Council of Defence at *Java* had been acquainted with the pretended Conspiracy; and there was no Colour

for the *Dutch* Factors at *Amböyna* to assume an Authority of judging the *English*.

Therefore the true and only Reason that can be assigned for their torturing our Countrymen in that inhuman and unheard of Manner must be to deter the *English*, and all other Nations, from venturing any more into these Seas; and that all the Earth might hear and fear to oppose the Usurpations of the High and Mighty *Hollanders*.

Japan.

Situation.

Traffic only
with Chi-
na and the
Dutch.

Forces.

Revenues.

Religion.

First In-
habitants.

Japan consists of some Hundreds of Islands in the *Pacific Ocean*, about 150 Miles to the Eastward of *China*, situate between 130 and 144 Degrees of East Longitude, and between 30 and 40 Degrees of North Latitude: The chief Islands whereof are, 1. *Japan Proper*, or *Nippon*. 2. *Tonsa*. 3. *Bongo*. 4. *Disnia*. Chief Towns *Jeddo*, *Meaco*, *Saccqi Tonsa Bongo*, and the *Dutch Town*. Produces Tea, Gold Dust, Copper, and Cotton. Their Manufactures are Arms, Cabinets, and other lacquered Ware, Pagods, and other Images.

They traffic only with *China* and the *Dutch*; all other Christians were expelled this Country a hundred Years ago. The *Portuguese* had the sole Trade for upwards of a hundred Years, when the *English* and *Dutch* put in for a Share of it; but the *Portuguese* being charged with a Conspiracy against the Government, they and their numerous Christian Proselytes were massacred or banished, and the *Dutch* only suffered to trade there, on a Pretence they were as great Enemies to Christianity as the *Japanese* themselves. However, the *Dutch* are shut up in the Island of *Disnia*, and the Guns, Sails and Helms of their Ships secured when they arrive.

The Sovereign of *Nippon* is stiled Emperor by the *Europeans*, and has upwards of fifty vassal Kings under him.

His Forces are said to be 20,000 Horse, and 100,000 Foot: But they have no Ships of Force. His Revenues are immense, Gold being more plentiful here than in any other Country. They are *Pagans*, and their Idolatry differs little from that of the *Chinese*.

It is generally held that these Islands were peopled from *China*; but from their burning their Dead, sitting on the Ground, and shaving their Heads (the last of which the *Chinese* never did till lately, and then by Compulsion) it is much more probable that this People are descended from the Eastern *Tartars*, from whose Country they are not further distant than they are from *China*, those *Tartars* having ever used these Customs. It is said indeed, that the *Japanese* were banished *China* about 600 Years ago for their Rebe-

lion

lion ; and that thereupon they changed all their Customs to express their Abhorrence of the Nation which expelled them : But this appears to be a Mistake ; for the *Japanese* have several Customs among them which are used in *China* ; as mourning in white, eating with Chop Sticks, &c. and we cannot suppose they should retain these, and voluntarily part with their Hair, in which it is agreed the *Chinese* ever placed their greatest Pride ; nor is it easy to imagine that a People who had always been used to sit in Chairs, should condemn themselves to sit cross-legged upon the Ground, only out of Pique to the Prince who banished them.

Marriages are solemnized in their Temples by the Bonzes, *Marria-*
or Priests, before some of their Images. The Bridegroom *ges.*
and Bride have each of them a lighted Torch in their Hands, while the Bonze repeats the Contract ; after which their Friends wish them Happiness, and make Presents to the Bride, who throws all her childish Toys into the Fire. Then they sacrifice Oxen, &c. to their Idol ; after which they return home with great Solemnity to the Bridegroom's House, which is richly furnished and prepared on these Occasions ; and the Rejoicing lasts several Days. The Men are permitted to have as many Concubines as they can keep, and have an absolute Power over their Women, to kill or divorce them as they see fit ; but receive no Portion with their Wives or Concubines. Adultery is punished with Death ; and they allow Houses for lewd Women, in order to prevent it. It is reckoned no Crime to procure Abortion, or for poor People, or those who are unmarried, to destroy their female Children ; but the Males are taken care of by the Government, and bred up in the Service of their Country, where their Parents are not able to provide for them. They wash their new-born Infants in cold Water, and never swaddle them up in Blankets, as in *Europe* ; and as they grow up, they commit their Education to the Care of the Bonzes, or Priests. In *Japan* they burn their dead Bodies *They burn*
as in *India*. On the Day appointed for the Funeral, a *their Dead.*
large square Pile of Wood is erected without the Town ; and the Friends and Relations of the Deceased being assembled, the Women first move forward, clothed in white, which is the Colour of Mourning here as well as in *China*. The Women of any Quality are carried in *Palanquins* or Litters of Cedar. After these follow the Men richly dressed, then come the Bonzes clothed also in Linen, one of them with a lighted Torch, singing with his Brethren all the Way they march ; some carry Brass Basons, which they beat upon, and others, Baskets of Flowers, which they strew in the

Way, signifying, that the Soul is gone to Paradise. Several Banners with the Names of their Idols, and Lanthorns full of Lights, are carried before the Corpse, which is set upright on a Sort of a Couch, clothed in white, and his Hands joined together in a praying Posture, and is followed by his Children, the eldest carrying a Torch to light the Fire: Having three Times surrounded the Funeral Pile, about which are placed Tables with Meat and Drink upon them, the chief Bonze begins a Hymn, and having waved a lighted Torch three Times about his Head, signifying that the Soul is without Beginning or End, he flings the Torch away, which the Children of the Deceased taking up, kindle the Funeral Pile, throwing on Oil and costly sweet Woods, till the Corpse is burnt to Ashes: After which, the Children offer Incense, and adore their Father, as being become one of the heavenly Inhabitants. The next Day they return to the Place, and put up the Ashes and Bones into a gilded Urn, which is hung up in the House for some Time, and afterwards interred with much Solemnity; and every seventh Day, seventh Month, and seventh Year, the Children offer Incense, and pay their Devotion to their deceased Parent.

Difnia
Island,
where the
Dutch
Factors re-
sides.

The Island of *Difnia* is not more than two Miles in Circumference, and no Dutchman can stir out of it, or come into the Town of *Nanguasague* (to which it is joined with a Bridge) without hazarding his being cut to pieces by the Guards, who are appointed to watch their Motions: Nor are the *Dutch* so much as suffered to have a lighted Candle in their Houses in the Night-time. If the Centinels perceive the least Noise, they blow a Horn, and the Governor immediately sends a Party to learn the Reason of it, which does not return till the Occasion is discovered, and then the Authors are severely threatned, if not punished. In this slavish Condition the *Dutch* remain eight Months in the Year.

Land of
Jesso.

North of *Japan* lies the Land, or Island, of *Jesso*, or *Yesso*, extending from the Latitude of 40 North to the *American* Continent, as some have conjectured. Whether it doth not join to the North Part of *Japan*, which is but little known to the *Japanese* themselves, is not yet determined; but the *Dutch* make it at least two Degrees between the North Coast of *Japan* and the Land of *Jesso*. The Inhabitants of *Jesso*, as of all Countries upon the first Discovery, are represented very unlike the rest of their Species; they are perfectly wild, it is said, and their Bodies all over hairy; and that they live more like Brutes than Men. They cloath themselves with the Skins of wild Beasts (which if they

they had Coats of natural Hair, one would think was needless) and are very much dreaded by the *Japanese*: They have their Women in common, like the ancient *Britons*, and are great Lovers of Wine: They adore the Heavens, but have no sacred Rites, it is said. But the Account Captain *Saris* gives us of these People is very different from this; he says, a *Japanese*, who had been twice at *Jesso*, told him, that it lies about ten Leagues North-West of *Japan*, and that the People were fair and civilized; that the South part understood Commerce, of which the inland Country was ignorant; that those of *Jesso* were of the same Stature with the *Japanese*, from whom they had their Cloathing, and Rice, and made Payments in Silver and Gold Dust; that at their chief Town of *Matzima*, the King of *Japan* has a Governor and Garrison, and receives a Tribute in Silver, Feathers, and fine Furs; and that the People of *Jesso* frequently come over to the North Part of *Japan* to trade, in Vessels sewed together with Cordage, without any Iron Work about them. Some conjecture that *Jesso* is contiguous to *America*; and indeed nothing has more perplexed the Curious and Inquisitive, than the peopling of *America*; some have held, that the first Inhabitants were driven thither by Tempest and Strefs of Weather; but though we carry the Supposition farther, and suppose also that there were Women as well as Men on board such Vessels, how shall we account for the Cattle and other Animals which were found in that Part of the World: It must be a Vessel as well inhabited as *Noah's Ark*, that should carry some of every Species to that Continent; and we must imagine too, that there was Provision laid in for them suitable to the Length of the Voyage, or they must have perished in the Transportation.

To obviate all these Difficulties, others held, that *Asia* and *America* were contiguous, and that there is a Passage from the one to the other by Land, though we have not yet been so lucky to discover it; and that if it should be admitted they are at this Day separated by wide Seas, yet they may have been disjoined, as *England* is supposed to have been from *France*, or *Sicily* from *Naples*, by Earthquakes, or raging Seas: Neither are we now under a Necessity of having Recourse to Earthquakes, or any other such extraordinary Ruptures, since the Land of *Jesso* has been discovered; for not only from the Resemblance of the People to those of *North America*; but from the Situation of *Jesso*, it is very natural to conclude, it runs as far as *America*, no Adventurers having been able yet to discover a Passage between the two Continents, if there be one. But still it is objected, if there was really a Communication between

Whether
America
was peo-
pled from
Jesso.

Asia and *America* by this Country of *Jesso*, or any other Land, then we should have found the same Beasts, Fowls, and other Animals in both; whereas it is evident, that we have several Sorts which *America* wants, and they have many that we never saw here. It is also observed, that there are several Animals, both in *Asia* and *America*, that will not live in so cold a Climate, as the North of *Jesso* must be, if it joins to *America*; and consequently those Animals could never pass that Way. If it be said, that when the Earth was first replenished with living Creatures, there were Animals created suitable to every Climate, this will not be a sufficient Answer to the Objection; for, according to holy Writ, all living Creatures were destroyed, but those that were with *Noah* in the Ark; and from these alone must the World be replenished again, or there must have been a new Creation.

But further, if all Parts of the World had a Communication with one another by Land, how came it to pass, that there was no such thing as a black Man to be found in all *America*. In so long a Tract of Time, it is very reasonable to suppose some of that Complexion would have straggled thither, as well as the White, if they could have found a Passage. We yet know very little of that Land of *Jesso*, only that the People are neither so deformed nor barbarous as the first Discoverers made them: They are not hairy like the Brutes, nor to be dreaded as the wild Beasts, but converse and trade with the *Japanese*, as all other Nations do; but it is a Misfortune, that our Adventurers seldom think their Relations acceptable, unless they present us with a new Race of Monsters at their coming home. I shall here add some Observations of the *Dutch*, concerning this Land of *Jesso*, and Island of *Japan*, from whence we shall be the better able to conjecture, whether the Land of *Jesso* be contiguous to *America*; but whether it be or not, thus much seems agreed, that *Tartary*, or *Jesso*, run so far North, that no Ships have been yet able to sail beyond them; and there is Reason to believe no Ships ever will, the Difficulties being invincible. The *Dutch* Relation is extracted from the Philosophical Transactions, and is as follows, viz.

The *East India* Company of the *United Netherlands*, about the Year 1652, omitted neither Study nor Care to find out a Passage through the North-eastern Sea, for those that were to return into *Europe* from the *East Indies*. There was then much Discourse of the *Gulph of Anian*, by which a Passage was said to be open into the *Tartarian* Sea; and something

Something they understood from the People of *Papau* and the *Portuguese* of the Country of *Jesso*, which lay above *Japan*; but not resting satisfied with the bare Relation, in the Years 52 and 53, they sent out some dextrous Persons to discover those Coasts, who passing beyond *Japan*, in the 50th Degree of North Latitude, arrived upon the Coast of *Jesso*, where they fell into a narrow Sea, yet broad and convenient enough to lead into the northern Ocean. The opposite Shores they called *Het Compaigne Land*; and an Island seated in the Middle of the Gulph they called *Het Staten Eyland*.

Whether this Land of *Jesso* be annexed to *Japan* or not, the Inhabitants of both Countries doubt, because vast and inaccessible Mountains interpose, which hinder the Communication, neither doth it as yet clearly appear, whether this Land of *Jesso* is a Part of *Tartary*, or whether by an Arm of the Sea divided from it. The *Chinese* affirm, that *Tartary* runs 300 Leagues Eastward beyond their famous Wall; so that if we follow these, the Countries of *Jesso* and *Japan* may seem to be annexed to *Tartary*: But these of *Jesso* say, that there runs an Arm of the Sea betwixt them and *Tartary*; which Opinion may seem to receive some Confirmation from what those *Hollanders* affirm, who were shipwrecked some Years since, upon *Corea*, a *Peninsula* of *China*; they say, they saw there a Whale, upon whose Back stuck an Harping Iron of *Gascony*; and the Credit of this Assertion not being questioned by any, it is most probable to be conjectured, that this Whale passed from *Spitzberg* through the nearest Arm of the Sea, rather than through the more remote. Be it how it will, we may hence safely conclude, that the Sea which lies beyond *Japan* and *Spitzberg* is passable, and that through more, perhaps, than one Arm or Channel by which they communicate.

But to go on, after the Experiments made by the Governors of the *East India Company*, in the Years 52 and 53 they resolved to proceed no further upon the Discovery, as well because the Emperor of *Japan* interdicted the Navigation of Foreigners into *Jesso*, in regard, as they say, of the vast Tribute which he raised annually upon the Silver Mines there; as because they think it will not conduce to their Advantage, to have this compendious Way of Navigation discovered; and therefore they have thought fit to prohibit all further Search into the Navigation to *Jesso*, and the Countries adjacent; upon which very Reason they have also endeavoured to conceal their *Austral* Plantations.

Now,

Now, concerning that Tract or Space which lieth betwixt *Spitzberg*, *Nova Zembla*, and the *Straits of Jesso*, we have no Reason, for aught I see, to entertain any Doubt; because many of the *Moscovite* Itineraries assure us, that the Coast of *Tartary* runs not Northward from *Nova Zembla*, but trends very much towards the East. So that the Head Land of *Nova Zembla* is far the most Northern Part of all *Tartary*. This may likewise be collected out of the Histories and Maps of *China*, which affirm, that those who pass from the Wall of *China* Northward, may, in the Space of fourteen Days, reach the Sea: And the Coast of *Tartary*, which lies beyond the *Samoieds*, sufficiently testifieth the Neighbourhood of the Sea; forasmuch as the further any Man advanceth towards the East, the *Moscovites* have there observed large and navigable Rivers.

No Passage
to China
by the
North
Coast.

But we find in the same *Philosophical Transactions*, a Paragraph which seems to contradict the abovementioned Conjectures. It is an Extract of a Letter sent from Mr. *Witsen*, viz.

"I formerly thought *Nova Zembla* had been a Continent, but I have since been better informed, and retracted that Error. And whereas the late Mr. *Vossius* would needs persuade himself, as well as he did others, that there was a Passage to *Japan* by the North, and that the *Tartarian* Countries behind *Nova Zembla* did decline immediately towards the South; I did always oppose it, and think I can even demonstrate the Impossibility thereof; so that what we wrote, to encourage Mariners to that Attempt, was even directing them to the Point of Death, as it afterwards ensued."

So that if it should be admitted, that the Continents of *Asia* and *America* are separated by the Ocean, yet we may now rest satisfied, that the Difficulties to be met with in a North-East Passage to *Japan* are not to be surmounted, and possibly will never be attempted again by Sea; but the *Russians* assure us they have lately found a Way into the *Chinese* Seas, by the Mouths of some of their Rivers which fall into the frozen Ocean.

Philippines. Situation, the Name.

The *Philippines* are situate in the *Chinese* Sea, between 114 and 131 East Longitude, and between 5 and 19 North Latitude, and are very numerous. They were called by the *Spaniards*, *The Philippine Islands*, in Honour of *Philip II.* King of *Spain*, in whose Reign the first *European* Colony was planted there.

Manila Island.

The largest is *Luconia*, or *Manila*, which extends from 13 Degrees 30 Minutes to 19 Degrees North Latitude, and is generally resembled to a bended Arm; it is in Length 160 Leagues; but unequal in Breadth, being in some Places

20, in some 30, and in others 40 over: The City of *Manila* lies in 14 Degrees 40 Minutes North Latitude, upon a Point of Land made by a River, which issues from the Lake of *Babia*, and falls into the Sea, at the Town of *Cavite*, where there is a spacious Harbour, but of difficult Entrance, because of the Rocks and Shallows that lye at the Mouth of the Bay. The City is about two Miles in Circumference, surrounded with a good Wall and Ditch, and fortified with Bastions and Outworks; besides which, there is a Fort, which stands on the Point of Land between the Sea and the River, and commands the Entrance of the River. The Cathedral is large, but not well adorned. It has in all twelve Chapels and Altars, besides the high Altar. The Roof is supported by twelve Pillars: There are also several Convents and religious Houses, Churches, Chapels, and Hospitals well endowed in *Manila*.

The Streets are wide and handsome, having Piazzas running all along the Front of their Houses; but the frequent Earthquakes have spoiled the Regularity of the City, several fine Houses and Palaces having been overturned by them; for which Reason they now build very slightly with Wood, above the first Floor.

The Air of the *Philippine Islands* is hot and moist, but the Heat is not so violent as in some other Countries of a more Southern Latitude, which proceeds not only from the many Lakes and Rivers which water the Country, but from the great Rains which fall annually and overflow the Lowlands; The Sea-breezes also refresh the Air most part of the Year, and render the Heats very tolerable; but the Moisture and Dampness occasioned by the Rains, and the great Dews which fall even in fair Weather, make the Country very unhealthful to *European* Constitutions, though the Natives here live to as great an Age as in any other Part of the World. In the Months of *June*, *July*, and *August*, and Part of *September*, the West and South Winds blow, bringing with them such Rains, that the Meadows are all overflowed; and they are forced to go from one Place to another in Boats; and during this Time, there are frequent Storms and Tempests, with Thunder and Lightning: From *October* to the Middle of *December* the North Wind prevails; and from that time till *May*, the East and South-East Winds blow, which are the driest, as well as the coolest and most healthful. These Islands are subject to great Earthquakes.

There are five different Nations, or People, in this Island. 1. The Blacks, who inhabit the Woods and Mountains, and most inaccessible Places. 2. The Posterity of the *Chinese*, who once possessed a great Part of the Sea Coasts. 3. The *Malay-*

Malayans, Moors, and Mahometans, who came from Malacca, Sumatra, Borneo, Macassar, and the neighbouring Islands. 4. The Spaniards, Portuguese, and other European People. And, 5. The Mustees, or mixed Breed, which are a Compound of all these. The Blacks probably came from the Continent of India within Ganges, having long Hair, and good Features as these Indians have. The Arabians probably arrived here next, and drove the Blacks up into the Mountains, which they inhabit at present.

One of the Tawny Nations, which inhabit these Islands, like our ancient Britons and Picts, paint and stain their Bodies; from whence they have obtained the Name of *Pintados*. It seems they prick and wound the Flesh, making such Figures as they see fit, and then rub the Part over with a certain Powder, which gives it the Colour.

The Inhabitants of the Mountains live chiefly on Roots and Fruit, and the Flesh of wild Beasts, which they take in Hunting, or on Vermin, not applying themselves at all to sowing Rice, or any other Kind of Grain.

Traffic.

Manila lies so equally between the rich Kingdoms of the East and West, that it has been esteemed the best Situation for Trade in the World, especially when the *Molucca* Islands were under the same Government; then the *Spaniards* might be said to have the best Share of the *East*, as well as the *West Indies*: Hither Silver was brought from *New Spain* and *Peru*, Diamonds, and other precious Stones from *Golconda*, Cinnamon from *Ceylon*, Pepper from *Sumatra* and *Java*, Cloves from the *Moluccas*, Nutmegs from *Banda*, Silks from *Bengal*, Camphire from *Borneo*, Benjamin and Ivory from *Cambodia*, Silks and China-ware from *China*; and formerly there came every Year from *Japan* two or three Ships freighted with Amber, Silks, Cabinets, and other varnished Ware in Exchange for Hides, Wax, and the Fruits of the Country: And two Vessels sail yearly to *Acapulco* in *New Spain*, loaded with the Riches of the East, and return freighted with Silver, making four hundred *per Cent*. Profit.

Produce of the Soil.

nor is there a Soil in the World that produces greater Plenty of all Things necessary for Life, as appears by the Multitude of Inhabitants that are to be found in the Mountains, who are subsisted only by the Fruits of the Earth, and the Venison they take. Nor can any Country appear more beautiful, there is a perpetual Verdure, Buds, Blossoms and Fruit are found upon the Trees all the Year round, as well on the Mountains, as in Gardens that are cultivated.

These

These Islands abound in Pearls, Ambergrease, Cotton and Civet, and are rich in Gold; vast Quantities of Gold are washed down from the Hills by the Rains, and found mixed with the Sand of their Rivers. There are also Mines of other Metals, and excellent Load-stone found here.

Here is the Bird called *Tavan*, a black Sea Fowl, something less than a Hen, and has a long Neck; it lays its Eggs in the Sand by the Sea-side, forty or fifty in a Trench, and then covers them, and they are hatched by the Heat of the Sand: They have also the Bird *Saligan*, which builds her Nest on the Sides of Rocks, as the Swallows do against a Wall; and these are the delicious Bird-Nests, a Kind of Jelly so much esteemed in *Europe*.

The most profitable Trees are their Palm-trees, wherein the Estates of the great Men of these Islands chiefly consist; and among these they reckon forty several Kinds, the principal whereof is the Sago Tree. The Cacao Tree, which has been brought hither from *New Spain*, increases so, that they have no Occasion to import it from *America*. There are Abundance of odoriferous Herbs and Flowers, which grow there naturally without any Labour; nor do the Natives endeavour to cultivate or improve them any more than the *Spaniards*; so that the Gardens are not so fine as in *Europe*. As for Medicinal Herbs no Country abounds with them more than the *Philippines*.

These Islands being hot and moist, produce Abundance of venomous Creatures, as the Soil does poisonous Herbs and Flowers, which do not only kill those that touch or taste them; but so infect the Air, that many People die in the Time of their blossoming: On the contrary, these Islands are well furnished with Antidotes, particularly the Bezoar Stone, which is found in the Belly of a Creature much like a Deer; and the Root Dilao, (which is like Ginger) and heals Wounds made by any venomous Creature, being bruised and boiled with Oil of Cocos.

The Tree Camandag is so venomous, that Fish eating the Leaves which fall into the Sea, die; as do the Persons who eat the poisoned Fish. The Liquor which flows from the Trunk of the Tree serves these People to poison the Points of their Darts, which they blow through a Trunk.

The Makay Bukay, which signifies the Giver of Life, is a Kind of Ivy, which twines about any Tree, and grows to the Thickness of a Man's Finger; it has long Shoots like Vine Branches, of which the *Indians* make Bracelets, and esteem them a Preservative against Poison. There are many other Trees and Plants of extraordinary Virtue in these Islands;

Islands ; of which *George Carroll*, a *German Apothecary* to the College of *Jesuits* at *Manila*, has given a Description in two Volumes in Folio.

The Orange, Lemon, and several other Trees, bear twice a Year: If they plant a Sprig, within a Year it becomes a Tree, and bears Fruit ; and therefore, without any Hyperbole, says our Author, I may affirm, that I never saw such a verdant Soil, nor Woods full of such old and thick Trees, nor Trees that yield more Sustenance for Man in any Part of the World.

Mechanics.

The *Chinese* seem to be the only Mechanics amongst them : In that Suburb where they live, in *Manila*, are found all Sorts of Workmen and Trades, while the *Spaniards* and *Indians* seldom apply themselves to any Business, but when Necessity compels them.

Ecclesiastics.

There is an Archbishop at *Manila* appointed by the King, who determines all Appeals from his Suffragan Bishops ; but there lies an Appeal from him to the Pope's Delegate, who resides in one of the *Philippine* Islands. The Archbishop has 6000 Pieces of Eight *per Annum* from the Crown, and the Bishops of *Sibu*, *Comerines*, and *Caguyan* 5000 ; besides these there resides at *Manila* a titular Bishop, or Coadjutor, who assists in the first vacant Church, that there may be no Intermision in the Cure of Souls during six Years, before a new Prelate can come. As for the Inquisition there is a Commissary appointed by the Court of Inquisition at *Mexico*.

Religion of the Natives.

The Descendants of the ancient Inhabitants worship one supreme Being. They worship also Beasts and Birds, like the *Egyptians* ; and the Sun and Moon like the *Assyrians* ; and indeed there is not a Rock, Stone, Promontory, or River, but what they sacrifice to ; or any old Tree to which they do not pay divine Honours ; inasmuch, that it is looked upon as a Kind of Sacrilege to cut them down on any Account whatsoever. This Superstition still prevails so far amongst the most civilized of the People, that no Arguments will prevail with them to cut down a certain great old Tree called Balette, whose Leaves are like those of a Chestnut Tree, and its Bark good for Wounds ; or some ancient tall Canes, vainly believing the Souls of their Ancestors dwell in them, and that the cutting of those Trees or Canes would put them to Pain ; which Part of their Superstition being so exactly agreeable to that of some of their Neighbours on the Continent, shews from whence they are derived. They worship also their Fathers, Grandfathers, and Great Grandfathers, like the *Chinese*, which is not

not at all to be wondered at, when that Nation so long possessed great Part of the Country.

They purchase their Wives, and the Marriage is celebrated by a Priestess; They are both obliged to eat out of one Dish, signifying that they are to run the same Fortune, and partake of the same Joys and Sorrows; and having sacrificed some Beasts, afterwards an Entertainment is made as usual in other Countries. They always marry in their own Tribe, or Cast, and the nearest of their Kindred, excepting the first Degree. Divorces are allowed on either Side; but Polygamy is not allowed among some of them, unless they have no Children, and then the Man may take his Slave to his Bed; but some other of the *Indian Nations* allow two or more Wives; and the Children born of the first have a double Portion.

When a Person of Condition dies, not only his Relations, but Strangers are hired to come and mourn, and in their Country Songs lament the Departure of the Deceased. The Body being washed and perfumed with Benjamin and other sweet Gums, and wrapped up in Silk according to its Quality, it is put into a Coffin made of one piece of precious Wood, so close, as to keep out all Air; and then being placed upon a Table in the House, with Lattices before it, the Cloaths and Arms of the Deceased are laid in a Chest by the Coffin; and if it be a Woman, the Utensils necessary for her Work, and all Sorts of Meat are set before the Corpse: After some Time, the Body is interred in the Burying Place of the Family, and a Feast is made for the People invited to the Funeral; but the Widow and Children keep fast for some Time, abstaining both from Fish and Flesh, and living only on Rice and Herbs. Some of these Nations mourn in Black, and others in White, shaving their Heads and Eyebrows on those Occasions; and formerly, when a great Man died, the Neighbourhood were obliged to keep Silence for several Days: Sacrifices are also offered to them who die in Defence of their Country.

The largest Island next to that of *Manila* is *Mindanao*, *Minda-nao* being sixty Leagues in Length, and forty or fifty over: The South-West Part of it lies in six Degrees of North Latitude; the North-East Part of it is in eight Degrees North Latitude.

This Island is not all subject to one Prince; neither is the Religion or Language the same in every Part of it: Most of the People indeed are *Mahometans*, and subject to the Sultan, of *Mindanao*, who governs arbitrarily, and not by any written Laws. These are properly *Mindanayans*,
and

and inhabit near the Sea Coast, and have the greatest Commerce with Strangers.

**Minda-
nao City.**

The capital City of *Mindanao* lies on the South Side of it, in the Latitude of six Degrees North, and stands on the Banks of a small River, about two Miles from the Sea. The Houses, like those of *Siam*, are built on Posts, between fourteen and twenty Foot above the Ground, and have but one Floor, which is divided into several Rooms, and a Ladder to go up to them. They build in this Manner for the same Reason the *Siamese* do, namely, because their Towns are generally in the flat Country, by the River-sides, which annually overflow their Banks to a very great Height. The City is about a Mile in Length, but of no great Breadth, and built on the winding Banks of a River, on the right Hand going up it; and there are some Houses upon the opposite Shore.

Natives.

The *Mindanayans* have tawny Complexions, and wear their Nails to a great Length, especially that of the Left Thumb, which they never cut, but scrape and nourish it with great Industry. The Women are allowed to converse with Foreigners, and entertain them at their Houses, but no further Familiarities; and there is a Custom, when any Foreigners arrive at *Mindanao*, for the Men to come on board, and enquire if any of the Ship's Company will have a Comerade or a Pagally. By a Comerade is meant a Male Friend, and by a Pagally a Female Friend. Every Stranger is almost under a Necessity of contracting such an Acquaintance; and when he comes on shore, he is welcomed to his Comerade's or Pagally's House, where he eats, drinks and sleeps; but for this his Host expects to be paid.

They hunt wild Cows and Buffaloes, as they do Deer, or any other Venison, of which they have great Plenty, and frequently take their Women with them to the Sport. Their Manner of Hunting is first to inclose a Piece of Ground with a strong Fence, and then drive the Game into it, having no Dogs, and not much understanding the Use of Firelocks.

**Navy,
Traffic.**

They have very serviceable Ships and Vessels, both for Trade and Pleasure; and have some Ships of War: They trade chiefly to *Manila*, whither they transport Gold and Bees-wax, and bring back Callicoes, Muslins and *China* Silks: They maintain a Trade also with the Island of *Borneo*. The *Dutch* come hither in Sloops from *Ternate* and *Tydore*, and purchase Rice, Bees-wax and Tobacco; the last grows more plentifully in this Island than any other Island of *India*, except *Manila*, and is an excellent Sort; but the People have not

not the Art of managing it to Advantage as the *Spaniards* do at *Manila*. The Rate of the *Mindanao* Gold is fourteen *Spanish* Dollars the *English* Ounce, and eighteen Dollars the *Mindanao* Ounce; these *Spanish* Dollars are the current Coin in all these Islands.

One of their usual Punishments is to strip the Criminal, *Punish-*
bind him Hand and Foot, and tie him to a Post, and expose *ments.*
his Face to the Sun from Morning to Night, when the Musketoos or Gnats almost cover his Body, and sting him unmercifully, and he is perfectly blistered by the Sun's scorching Heat; sometimes they lay him flat on his Back on the hot Sands, while he is almost devoured by the Musketoos.

The Seas and Rivers about this Island are so infested *A Worm*
with Worms, that they will destroy a Ship in a very short *destroys the*
Time; and therefore the Natives, whenever they come from *Ship.*
Sea, immediately hale up their Ships upon dry Land, as they do their Canoes and Barges; and never suffer them to lie long in the Water.

The *Mindanayans* are very apprehensive, that the *Dutch*, who have reduced several of the neighbouring Islands to a State of Slavery, will in Time invade them, or put a Restraint upon their Trade at least; and therefore would be very glad if the *English* would settle a Factory there, and defend them from their Encroachments. They cannot but observe, as well as all other Nations of the East, that the *English* have never attempted to enslave or oppress any People amongst whom they have settled or traded, while the *Spaniards*, *Portuguese* and *Dutch*, in their Turns, have claimed the Property of every Country or Island wherever they set their Foot on Shore, although they were at the same Time governed by Princes of their own; there is hardly a considerable Island in *India*, but the *Dutch*, by Force or Fraud, have usurped the Dominion of some Part of it, and deposed the lawful Princes upon various Pretences; and wherever they could not pick a Quarrel, have fallen upon them while they were in full Peace, and usurped the Government. Several Eastern Nations are so sensible of these Practices, that they will not trade with the *Dutch* upon any Account, or suffer them to come into their Dominions; and it is observable of the *Dutch*, that though no People complained more of Oppression in *Europe*, and made it even a Pretence for Rebellion, and casting off their Allegiance to their lawful Sovereign, that they in a very short Time became the greatest Tyrants and Oppressors that were ever known in the East, or perhaps in any Part of the World. And it is certain, the *Dutch* dread nothing more at this Day, than that the

English should accept of the Offer of the *Mindanayans*, and other Eastern People, to settle amongst them, and renew their Claim to *Amboyna*, and other Spice Islands they were so treacherously deprived of.

This Country, towards the Middle of it, is woody and mountainous, but has several pleasant Valleys, and the Staple or vegetable Earth is generally a deep black Mould, and very fruitful; and though the Hills are some of them stony, yet they produce tall Timber, and in some of them there are Mines of Gold. The Valleys are watered with fine Rivers and Brooks, and cloathed with a great Variety of Trees and Plants, which are green, and flourish all the Year.

One of these Trees is called by the Natives *The Libby*, but by the *Europeans* the Sago Tree. These Trees grow wild in large Woods, five or six Miles in Length, by the River Sides: Of the Pith of these Trees they make Sago, which the Natives eat instead of Bread, four or five Months in the Year.

Dampier relates, that there are Clove Trees at *Mindanao*; and that he himself saw a Ship-load of Cloves there, and was assured by the People of the Island, that if the *English* would settle a Factory at *Mindanao*, they might have a Ship loaded with Cloves every Year. There are some Nutmeg Trees also upon this Island, he informs us, which produce a fair large Fruit; but he says the Natives will not cultivate either the Cloves or the Nutmeg Plants, lest the *Dutch* should endeavour to bring them under their Tyranny, as they have the neighbouring *Spice Islands*. The same Writer says, that they have Snakes which come into their Houses, and that one of them wound himself about a Man's Neck when he was asleep, and went away without hurting him.

Ladrone
Islands.

These Islands are about twelve in Number, and are situate in 140 Degrees of East Longitude, and between 12 and 24 Degrees of North Latitude, about 1500 Miles East of *China*. They had neither Rice nor any other Grain, but a Fruit as big as a large Cannon-Ball, which yielded a soft Pulp like Bread. They had also Coco's, Mango's, and other Tropical Fruits. *Guam* the Chief of those Islands lies in 12 Degrees of North Latitude. There is no landing on it to Windward, on account of the great Surf. They are remarkable for their swift sailing Vessels, which run 24 Miles an Hour. One of them failed to *Manila* in the *Philippines*, being 1200 Miles, in four Days.

Guam.

The Island of *Guam* is forty Miles long and twelve broad. The *Spaniards* have a little Fort here, with a Garison of about thirty Men. Most Ships touch here, in their Voyages from *Mexi-*

to the *East Indies*. A little to the Northward of it is the *Tinian*. Island of *Tinian*, where Admiral *Anson* touched in his Voyage round the World.

The *Moluccas* are five Islands, viz. 1st, *Bachian*. 2d, *Ma-Moluchian*. 3d, *Ternate*. 4th, *Motyr*. 5th, *Tydor*, situate in the *cas. Indian Ocean*, East Longitude 125, and between 1 South and 2 Degrees North Latitude, the largest scarce 30 Miles round; produce neither Corn nor Grass, but Sago serves them for Bread. Cloves are the chief Produce of these Islands, which grow upon a Tree resembling the Bay in Clusters. The *Dutch* have eradicated most of the Cloves here, and planted them in *Amboyna*, where they have strong Forts and Garisons for their Protection.

Banda Islands are situate in East Longitude 128, South Latitude 4, the largest scarce twenty Miles long. The *Mace Islands* and Nutmegs are peculiar to these Islands. The *Dutch* expelled the *English* from these Islands about the Year 1620. Here are most of the Tropical Fruits, but scarce any Corn.

The *Dutch* keep the *Bandanese* entirely dependant on them for their Provision.

In *Gilolo*, *Ceram*, *Macassar*, *Borneo*, and the rest of the *Oriental Islands*, are no Spices but Pepper.

The Island of *Amboyna* is situate in the *Indian Ocean*, East Longitude 126, South Latitude 3, about 70 Miles in Circumference, near the *Spice Islands*, where the *English* and *Dutch* had Colonies, in the Reign of King *James I*. But the *Dutch* tortured, murdered, and expelled the *English* from hence, as well as from *Banda*, under Pretence the *English* were in a Plot against them; and have monopolized the fine Spices ever since, banishing and enslaving the Natives. The *Dutch* have since rooted up the Cloves in the *Moluccas*, and planted them in *Amboyna*, where they have several Towns and Fortresses, with numerous Garisons to defend their Possessions.

Gilolo is an Island in the *Indian Sea*, situate between 125 and 128 Degrees East Longitude, and between 1 Degree South, and 2 Degrees North Latitude, having the *Philippine Islands* on the North, and the Islands of *Ceram* and *Amboyna* South. This produces none of the fine Spices; but the *Dutch* have Forts upon it, to prevent all Access to the *Spice Islands*.

Ceram is situate in the *Indian Ocean*, between 126 and 129 Degrees of East Longitude, and in 3 Degrees of South Latitude, having *Gilolo* and the *Molucca Islands* on the North, and *Amboyna* and the *Banda Islands* South. This the *Dutch* also have fortified, to prevent all Approaches to the *Spice Islands*.

Celebes, or Macassar. *Celebes, or Macassar*, is an Island situate in the *Indian Ocean*, between 116 and 124 Degrees of East Longitude, and between 2 Degrees North and 6 Degrees South Latitude, being 500 Miles long, and 200 broad, having *Borneo* on the West, and the *Spice Islands* of *Molucca* and *Banda* on the East: It produces Rice, Pepper, Bamboes, Canes, Sugar, Plantains, Mango's, Coco's, Oranges and other Tropical Fruits, Ebony, Dying Woods, Copper and Opium. It was formerly divided into many Principalities, the eldest Brother succeeding, and not the Son. The *Portuguese* sent Colonies hither *anno* 1500, and were expelled by the *Dutch* in 1610, who are now Sovereigns of the Island. Their Weapons are Spears, and poisoned Darts and Arrows.

Ceylon. *Ceylon* is situate between 79 and 82 Degrees of East Longitude, and between 6 and 10 Degrees of North Latitude, being 250 Miles long, and 200 broad, of an oval Form, and separated from *Cape Comarin* in the *Hither India* by a narrow Strait. It is a mountainous woody Country in the Middle, but flat and level towards the South.

Rivers. There are several Rivers which fall down from the Mountains, and water the Country, but generally so rapid and full of Rocks, that none of them are navigable; the largest is that of *Mavillagonga*, which has its Source in the Hill called *Adam's Mount*, and running North East, by the Cities of *Candy* and *Allatneur*, falls into the Ocean at *Trincmale*.

Seasons. The Monsoons and Seasons are the same here as on the neighbouring Continent, and the Rains begin to fall much sooner on the Western Coast than on the Eastern, as they do sooner on the *Malabar* Side than on the Coast of *German-del*, which probably proceeds from the same Reason, the Island being divided by very high Mountains; the Northern Part of the Island is subject to great Droughts for several Years together, which is the more sensible Affliction, because they have scarce any Springs or Rivers in that Part of the Island, but must be supplied with great Difficulty with Water, as well as Food from the South. This often renders *Jassnapaten*, and the adjacent Country, sickly, but the rest of the Country is esteemed very healthful.

Mountain of Adam's Peak. On the South Side of *Conde Uda* stands that famous Mountain, called by the Natives *Hamalel*, and by the Europeans *Adam's Peak*; it is shaped like a Sugar Loaf, and on the Top has a little plain flat Rock, with a Print upon it like a Man's Foot, but near two Foot long: This the Natives come in Pilgrimage to, and climb up, with great Difficulty once a Year, and worship the Impression.

The

The Natives are well shaped, of a middle Stature, their Hair long and black, their Features just, their Complexion dark, but not so black as the *Malabars*, and their Eyes black, like all other *Indians*; notwithstanding they usually sit on the Floor, as well when they eat as at other Times; they have a Stool or two in their Houses, which they set Strangers on, for whom they have a particular Respect, but they are not suffered to have Chairs with Backs to lean against. This it seems is prohibited by their Superiors, as too great an Indulgence to the Vulgar.

*Persons of
the Na-
tives.*

The *Ethiopians*, *Egyptians*, *Arabs*, and *Persians*, anciently traded hither. The *Portuguese* found the *Arabians* and other *Moors* here at their Arrival in those Parts, who opposed their settling any Factories in *Ceylon*, having long enjoyed that profitable Trade of transporting Cinnamon to *Europe*. The *Portuguese*, like their Predecessors the *Moors*, endeavoured to engross this Trade to themselves, that they might set their own Price upon this Spice; and in all their Treaties with the King of *Ceylon*, insisted, that no Cinnamon should be sold from them; and had they not behaved themselves with intolerable Insolence and Cruelty, they might have enjoyed that Trade to this Day; but the King not being able to endure their Encroachments, called in the *Dutch* to his Assistance, who having expelled the *Portuguese*, and seized their Forts, dispossessed also the King their Ally of all the Cinnamon Country, and made the Natives Beggars, driving them and their Prince up into the Mountains, and seem nevertheless to wonder, that he now and then disturbs them in the Enjoyment of what they have thus notoriously robbed him of: It is true, he falls upon their Men, when they are gathering in the Cinnamon, and makes them Prisoners, even the Ambassadors they send to him; refusing to have any Commerce or Treaty with the *Dutch*, till they make him Restitution; which they are so far from doing, that they streighten him more and more every Day; and some say, have lately made him tributary to them.

*Colonies of
Ethiopi-
ans,
Arabs,
&c.*

The Cinnamon Tree is as common as any other in the Woods on the South West Part of the Island near *Columbo*, but there are few or none to be found towards the North Part; however, the *Dutch* have secured all the Bays and Mouths of the Rivers round the Island, to prevent other Nations settling here, or having any Commerce with the Natives. This Tree is of the middle Size, not very large, and has a Leaf in Thickness, Shape and Colour, like the Lawrel; the Leaves, when they first sprout, are as red as Scarlet, and rubbed between the Fingers, smell like a Clove;

*Tree de-
scribed.*

it bears a Fruit in *September* like an Acorn, but neither the Taste nor Smell of it is like the Bark. This Tree, according to some, has three Barks, but two all People agree in, and that it is the second which they strip from Trees of a middling Growth, that is the best Cinnamon; neither the Trees that are very young, or those that are old, are proper for peeling: Having stripped off the outside Bark, they cut the next round the Tree in several Places with a Pruning-Knife, then they cut it long-ways in little Slips; and having peeled them off, lay them in the Sun to dry, and they roll up together as we see them brought over. The Body of the Tree under the Bark is perfectly white, and serves them for building, and all manner of Uses, but has not that delicious Taste or Smell which the Bark has.

History.

The History of this Island (recorded in their Language) contains rather fabulous Accounts of their Gods and ancient Heroes removed to Heaven, whom they now make the Objects of their Worship, than affords any real Instruction. These Records are kept by their Priests or Bramins, in a Language unknown to the Vulgar, and they are acquainted with no more of it than what is communicated to them in Songs and Ballads, which, like the *Indians* on the Continent, they are always repeating.

The *Portuguese* discovered this Island about the Year 1505, under the Conduct of *Laurence Dalmeida*; but it was twelve Years afterwards that they began to settle a Trade and Factories here. About the Year 1520 they erected a Fort near *Columbo*, at which the King was alarmed, and immediately laid Siege to it; but the *Portuguese* having got such Footing, that it was very difficult to remove them, a Treaty was entered into between the King of *Ceylon* and the *Portuguese*; whereby that King was to deliver them a Quantity of Cinnamon yearly at a certain Price; and there was so good a Correspondence between the two Nations for some Time, that an Ambassador was sent to *Portugal* in the Year 1540, and a very strict Alliance entered into, inasmuch that several of their Princes became Christians, and put themselves under the Protection of the *Portuguese*; but they behaving themselves very cruelly and insolently to the Natives, and the *Dutch* General *Spilbergen* arriving on the Coast about the Year 1602, the *Ceylonefe* entered into a Treaty with the *Dutch*. However, *Sebald de Weert*, the *Dutch* Admiral, who was sent to the Assistance of the King of *Ceylon* against the *Portuguese*, in the Year 1603, behaving himself very brutishly, and using that Prince more like
a Slave

a Slave than a Sovereign, the *Ceylonefe* were so enraged at it, that they cut the *Dutchman* in Pieces ; which put an End to all Treaties for that Time.

The *Dutch* finding their Mistake, that the *Ceylonefe* would not be treated in that insolent Manner *de Weert* had used them, very submissive Letters were sent in the Name of Prince *Maurice* and the States, to propose an Alliance with the King of *Ceylon* in the Year 1609.

In the Year 1613 an Alliance offensive and defensive was concluded between the King and the *Dutch* ; whereby that Prince agreed to dispose of his Cinnamon, Pearls, and precious Stones, to no other *European* Nation but them, but that there should be an open and free Trade for all *Indian* Nations. Permission also was given to the *Dutch* to erect a Fort at *Catiarum*, or *Trinquemale*, on the North East Part of the Island ; but the *Portuguese* soon beat the *Dutch* out of their Fort, and maintained their Possession and their Trade in *Ceylon* till the Year 1636, when the *Dutch* were again invited into the Island. The *Portuguese* Fleet before *Goa* being defeated by the *Hollanders* in the Year 1638, the *Dutch* sent a Reinforcement to the Assistance of their Ally the King of *Ceylon* ; whereupon the *Portuguese* marched to the capital City of *Cande*, from whence the King retiring, they burnt and plundered the City, but were intercepted in their Retreat by the King's Forces, and most of their Army cut to Pieces. From this Time their Interest in the Island declined apace ; for the same Year the *Dutch* and the *Cinglaffes* sat down before *Battecalao*, which stands about the Middle of the East Side of the Island, and took it from the *Portuguese* ; then the *Dutch* renewed their Alliance with the King of *Ceylon*, who was so much in haste to extirpate the *Portuguese*, that he engaged to bear the whole Charges of the War, if the *Dutch* are to be credited, and the *Dutch* were to monopolize the Trade of the Island, without paying any Duties to his Majesty ; and, pursuant to this Agreement, the King immediately delivered a vast Quantity of Cinnamon into the Hands of the *Hollanders*, in Part of the Charges the *Dutch* had been at. Soon after the *Portuguese* Town of *Point de Galle*, their most Southern Settlement in *Ceylon*, was taken by the *Dutch* ; in the Year 1655 the Town of *Caleture*, about a Day's Sail North West of *Point de Galle*, was taken by the *Dutch*. The same Year the *Dutch* and the *Cinglaffes*, with their united Forces, laid Siege to *Columbo*, on the South West Part of the Island, being the Capital of all the *Portuguese* Settlements. This

Place the *Portuguese* defended very well for a whole Year, under the Disadvantage of a Famine, and the Want of many Necessaries: However, the City of *Columbo* at length surrendered upon Articles the 11th of May 1656, and the *Dutch* took Possession of it with their Troops, excluding the King from any Share in their Conquests, though they had expressly stipulated to deliver *Columbo* into his Hands.

The Pretence the *Dutch* made for not delivering up *Columbo* to the King was, That General *Hulst*, with whom that Agreement was made, (and who was killed in the Siege) had not a sufficient Authority to make such an Agreement; and that they must have an express Order from the States General, before they could deliver it to the King; and this was their constant Practice in the *Indies*; they would permit their Generals and Ambassadors to those Princes to stipulate any thing, in order to bring them into their Measures; and when their Ends were accomplished, pretend that their Commanders had not full Power to treat; and by this Artifice, getting those Princes to unite their Forces with them, and to let them into the Possession of their strongest Fortresses, they at length became Masters of them, and of their Country: These treacherous Practices and notorious Breach of Faith in the *Hollanders*, justly made that Prince their avowed Enemy; he thereupon made Peace with the *Portuguese*, invited them into his Service, and frequently sallied out of the Woods, and cut off the Cinnamon Gatherers, and distressed them to that Degree, that they found themselves under a Necessity of courting his Friendship again; accordingly they sent him rich Presents, with a Multitude of Excuses for their past Conduct. They sent also several Ambassadors to him who were sometimes guilty of the most abject Flatteries; and at other Times would make use of Threats; But he was not to be moved by either; but detained most of their Ambassadors Prisoners, and would have no Correspondence with so faithless a Generation, whom he observed never regarded any Treaties longer than their Interest compelled them.

The
French
endeavour
to settle in
Ceylon.

The *French* observing what great Advantages the *Dutch* made of the Cinnamon Trade, and finding there was no good Understanding between the King of *Ceylon* and them, fitted out a Fleet of fourteen Sail of large Ships under the Command of Captain *de la Hay*, on board of which they sent an Ambassador to settle a Treaty of Commerce between the two Nations; and about the Year 1673 the Fleet arrived at the Port of *Cottiar*, or *Trinquemale*, on the North East Part of the Island.

The

The Ambassador looking upon himself as the Representative of his great Master *Lewis XIV.* and expecting to be treated with the same Honours Ambassadors are in *Europe*, committed so many Errors, that he perfectly defeated the Design of his Embassy, and of Friends made them his Enemies, and his Nation as much hated as the *Dutch* themselves. And first, he rode up from *Cottiar* on Horseback, which, it seems, is a Privilege the King never allows any Man; when he came within some few Miles of the Court, Orders met him to remain where he was till a House was prepared in the City for his Entertainment: Some time after Notice was given that it was ready; and several Noblemen were sent to assist in bringing the Present that was intended for the King, and to attend the Ambassador to his House; Whereupon he entered the City on Horseback, which the Noblemen endeavoured to dissuade him from, assuring him, that this was never allowed to any Person; however, he did not regard them, but rode on by the Palace Gate; which gave his Majesty great Offence, it being looked on as the highest Insult on an Eastern Prince, to pass by the Gates of his Palace, without expressing a profound Reverence on such an Occasion: However, no Notice was taken of the Matter, at that Time; but the Ambassador went forwards to his House without Interruption, and was nobly entertained, with Provisions sent him from the King's Palace three times a Day.

The Time being appointed for his Audience, several of the Nobility and great Officers came to wait on him to Court in the Evening, whither he went by Torch-Light: He waited it seems near two Hours in the Palace, without being admitted to the King's Presence; which he took as such an Affront, that he resolved to return to his House, and not to wait any longer for his Majesty's coming out, notwithstanding all the Representations which were made by the King's Officers to the contrary: Whereupon some Elephants were placed at the Gates to prevent him, but he laid his Hand on his Sword, and let them know he was determined to make his Way by them: The Elephants thereupon were removed, and he was suffered to return to his House. The King no sooner heard of this, but he ordered the Ambassador and all his Retinue to be laid in Irons, and severely beaten; and though he soon after ordered the rest to be released, the Ambassador himself remained in Chains six Weeks. They were afterwards suffered to live every one in his own House, and took up some one Employment,
and

and some another ; but whether they were ever released from their Captivity, I could never learn.

Government and Customs.

The King is absolute, being restrained by no Laws or Customs from doing whatever he sees fit. The Lands are all holden of him by one Tenure or other ; some to serve him in his Wars, others by their Labours, and the rest yield certain Quantities of their Manufactures, Grain, Cattle, or Fruits. There are many Villages where the King reserves the whole Product of the Soil to himself, allowing the Husbandmen a bare Subsistence, and these Towns are frequently bestowed upon his Courtiers or Officers, who enjoy them as long as they retain their Posts. The rest of the Lands are hereditary, and descend from Father to Son, subject only to the like Tenures their Ancestors held them by.

Three times a Year the People bring up their Rents to Court ; and every New-Years-Day, all that have any Posts or Offices in the Government make Presents to their Prince, consisting of Gold, precious Stones, Plate, Arms or Calicoe Cloth, and some of them bring Money ; but of this there is very little in the Country. The great Men endeavour to procure some valuable Jewel or other Rarity to present his Majesty, as the surest Way to their Advancement, or at least to secure what they are already possessed of. Besides these annual Rents and Presents, the King sends for whatever he pleases from any of his Subjects ; and if his Officers are pleased to appropriate any Fruit Trees, or other Product of the Ground to the King's Use, the Proprietor dares not touch them ; so that in effect, he commands the Revenues and Produce of all the Lands in his Dominions, whenever the Exigencies of the Government induce him to call for them.

Forces.

As to his Forces, he has no standing Troops besides his Cossee Guards, and some few *Europeans*. The common Soldiers who hold their Lands by a Military Tenure, mount the Guard by Turns, and are as numerous, in Proportion to the Bigness of the Island, as our Militia ; and the Dissauvas and Generals are always upon Duty, either in the Field, or about his Palace. This Militia is divided into Regiments or Bodies of about 1000 Men each, under the Command of a Moteral or Colonel, and are all Foot, there being no Horse in the Island but what are imported hither. The King seldom trusts any one General with the Command of the whole Army, but they act in separate Bodies, which has sometimes proved of great Disadvantage to his Affairs,

Affairs in his Wars against the *Dutch*; but he chooses this as the lesser Evil, apprehending, that if any one Man should be entrusted with the Command, he might set up for himself.

The Arms of the Soldiers are Broad-Swords, Pikes, Muskets, or Bows and Arrows; and they have some Artillery, little Field-Pieces, so light, that three or four Men will carry them on their Shoulders. They have no Fortifications but such as are natural, unless we may esteem their thorny Gates such, which they place upon all the Roads and Avenues to their Country. Those Gates are made of a Tree, whose Branches are set with Thorns as long and as thick as a Tenpenny-Nail, and almost as hard; they are not made to shut as ours do, but to lift up, and are suddenly let fall, when they are close pursued, being of the same Use as a Portcullis; for here they will make a Stand, and fire through them, as well as from the Thickets on the Right and Left; so that the Shot and Arrows sometimes fly as thick as Hail, when there is not an Enemy to be seen: And such Fights as these the *Europeans* are frequently engaged in with the *Indians* on the Continent.

As to the Laws of the Country, it has been already observed, they have no other than the Prince's arbitrary Will; but he never suffers his Governors to inflict Capital Punishments on Offenders: This he reserves always to himself, and tries Offenders in a summary Way, without any tedious Forms. His Elephants are frequently his Executioners, breaking the Bones of the Offender, or crushing him to pieces, as they are directed.

The *Cinglases*, or Natives, worship one supreme God, *Religion*. the Creator of Heaven and Earth; they fall down also before the Images of their Saints or Heroes, whom they suppose so have lived upon Earth, and are now become Angels or ministering Spirits to the great Creator: But the principal of these inferior Deities is their God *Buddon*, whom they believe came from Heaven, to procure the eternal Happiness of Mankind, and ascended to Heaven from the Top of that Mountain, which the *Portuguese* call *Pico de Adam*, leaving the Print of his Foot there in the Rock, which is now become the Object of their Worship. They pay Divine Honours also to the Sun, Moon, and other Planets, believing they have a mighty Influence on their Fortunes. And every Town or Place it seems has its Tutelary Demon, whose Power is supposed to be exercised only over the People of the Place: Besides these, every particular Person almost has his Household Gods, for whom they erect little Chapels in

in their Yards, placing Lamps, and strewing Flowers before them, and offering Rice and other Food to these little Mediators, whom they address every Morning at least, believing that the Person whom this Image represents, has a powerful Interest in the Court of Heaven, and every one makes Choice of those they most affect; or, as some say, of such as they most dread; for they believe there are wicked Spirits, whom God permits to afflict Mankind with Sicknes and other Misfortunes, whose Anger therefore they endeavour to avert, by Prayers and Sacrifices.

From what I can learn, there are neither Priests or Temples dedicated to the supreme God, but to the inferior Deities only, of which there are three Classes, and several Orders of Priests to officiate at their respective Altars. Whatever they sacrifice they never eat of themselves, but it is usually distributed among the Servants of the Temple, the Music, and singing Girls, and the Poor; and it is a common Thing, it is said, to dedicate their Fruit Trees to some Demon, to prevent their Fruit being stolen; for then their Neighbours will not touch them, imagining they shall be severely punished by the Demon to whom they are dedicated; nor must this devoted Fruit be given away to any that ask it; and before they eat of it themselves, some of the Fruit must be carried to the Temple.

They do not assemble together for divine Worship, except at solemn Festivals; but every one goes to the Temple as his own Occasions or Necessities prompt him. *Wednesdays* and *Saturdays* indeed are the Days they choose to apply themselves to their Deities, expecting then they will be most propitious to their Prayers.

At the New Moon, either in *June* or *July*, annually, a solemn Festival is performed, called *Perakar*, which lasts till the Full Moon. At this Time, in their principal Cities there are no less than forty or fifty Elephants magnificently accoutred, and hung with Brass Bells, which march round the City, and through the principal Streets. After these follow People dressed up like Giants, in Memory of a Race of Men of this Kind, who formerly, they tell us, inhabited the Earth. Then come the Drums, Trumpets, and other Wind Music, dancing Men and Women, who serve in their Temples, in several Companies; and after these two Priests mounted on a stately Elephant, covered with white Cloth, and rich Trappings: One of these Priests carries on his Shoulders a painted Staff, beautified with silk Streamers, and Strings of Flowers and represents the *Allout new Dio*, The God of Heaven and Earth; and the other Priest sits behind

behind him, holding an Umbrella over his Head. On the right and left, a little behind come two other Elephants, on each of which are mounted two Priests of the inferior Deities ; and after these follow the Servants of the Priests dressed in all their Finery : Then come some hundreds of Women of the best Quality, marching three a-breast, the Streets all the Way adorned with Flags and Pennons, the Branches of Coco-Nut Trees, and lighted Lamps, whether it be Day or Night ; and the Generals with their Troops, and the great Officers of State, close the Procession, making the whole Tour of the City twice, once in the Day Time, and again in the Night : This they repeat every Day, from the New to the Full Moon : In the Intervals there is nothing but singing, dancing, and such Sports as are suitable to great Festivals, none of the People exercising their Trades or Employments during this Solemnity.

As to the Christian Religion there are many *Portuguese* dispersed through the King's Dominions who profess it, being invited thither on the Breach between the King and the *Dutch*, upon their refusing to deliver up *Columbo* to his Majesty. Other *European* Nations are also allowed the free Exercise of their Religion ; but there are no Christian Churches in the Kingdom of *Conde Uda*, or the Mountains. The *Portuguese* had built several in the great Towns, and the flat Country near the Coast, especially in *Jassnapatan*, some few of which the *Dutch* make use of, and the *Portuguese*, who remain in their Territories, of others ; but there are not so many, probably, as when the *Portuguese* were Masters of the Country.

Marriages here are always made by the Parents ; but if *Marria-* either Party is not pleased with the Match, they are at Li-^{ges.} berty to part, and match elsewhere ; but as they give with their Daughters Portions of Cattle, Slaves, Money, &c. these, or an Equivalent, must be returned with the Woman, and the Male Children are allotted to the Man, and the Girls to the Woman ; and although no Man is allowed but one Wife, it is a common thing, it is said, for a Woman to have two Husbands ; and those Brothers who keep House together, and the Children acknowledge both for their Father. Where their Daughters are grown up, and unmarried, they make no scruple of letting young Fellows lye with them, in hopes they will take them off their Hands, and make them their Wives.

And so complaisant are the Men after Marriage, that if a Friend comes to their House, besides the rest of his Entertainment, they will offer him their Wife and Daughter to
sleep

sleep with him, especially if he be of better Quality, or a superior Cast, though at the same time it would be an unpardonable Crime to prostitute either to a Man of lower Rank; and the lying with a Man's Wife without his Leave, is deemed so heinous an Offence even here, where they allow so great Liberties, that the Husband is indemnified, if he kill both the Adulterer and the Adulteress, if he takes them together.

Funerals.

When a Person of Condition dies, his Corpse is laid out and washed; and being covered with a Linen Cloth, is carried out upon a Bier to some high Place, and burnt; but if he was an Officer who belonged to the Court, the Corpse is not burnt till the King gives Orders for it, which is sometimes a great while after: In this Case his Friends hollow the Body of a Tree; and having bowelled and embalmed the Corpse, they put it in, filling the Hollow up with Pepper; and having made it as close as possible, they bury the Corpse in some Room of the House, till the King orders it to be burnt. The Corpse is laid upon the Wood, about three Feet high, and more Wood heaped upon it; and if it be a Person of Distinction, there is an Arch built over it, adorned with Colours, Streamers, and Penons, and the whole consumed together in the Flames.

Some Days after they send for a Priest to the House of the Deceased, who sings several Anthems, and prays for the Repose of his Soul. The Women that are present let loose their Hair, wring their Hands, use all the most passionate Exclamations they can think of for the Loss of their Relation, enumerating all his good Deeds, and bewailing their own unhappy Condition, that they must be forced to live without him; and this they repeat Morning and Evening for several Days, the Men standing by, sighing and groaning all the while, like so many Quakers at a silent Meeting: But however sorrowful they may seem, we are told it is all Grimace; and the Wife's first Care is to provide herself another Husband, not being under those severe Laws the *Indians* on the Continent are, of being condemned to a perpetual Widowhood, or burning themselves with their Husbands; on the contrary, the Government of *Ceylon* is so indulgent to Widows, it is said, that it requires no Taxes of them.

Borneo. *Borneo*, the largest Island in the known World, is situated under the Equator, in the *Indian Ocean*, between 107 and 117 Degrees of East Longitude, and between seven
De-

Degrees thirty Minutes of North Latitude and four Degrees of South Latitude, North of the Island of *Java*.

The Air of this Country is not excessive hot, considering it is situated under the Equinoctial, being refreshed almost every Day with Showers and cool Breezes, as all other Countries are under the Line; but as those Parts of the Island which border on the Sea Coast lye upon a Flat for several hundred Miles, and are annually flooded, upon the retiring of the Waters the whole Surface of the Ground is covered with Mud, or soft Ouze, which the Sun darting his Rays perpendicularly upon, raises thick noisome Fogs, which are not dispersed till nine or ten in the Morning, and render those Parts of the Island very unwholsome. The Multitude of Frogs and Insects that the Waters leave behind, and are soon killed by the Heat of the Sun, cause an intolerable Stench also at that Time of the Year, and corrupt the Air. Add to this the cold chilling Winds and Damps, which succeed the hottest Days, and it would incline us to conclude, it must be very unhealthful, at least to *European* Constitutions, if the Loss of our Countrymen, who yearly travel thither, did not sufficiently convince us of this Truth.

Their Monsons, or periodical Winds, are westerly from *Winds*. *September* to *April*, or thereabouts; during which Time is their wet Season, when heavy Rains continually pour down, intermixed with violent Storms of Thunder and Lightning; and at this Time it is very rare to have two Hours fair Weather together on the South Coast of the Island, whither the *Europeans* principally resort.

The dry Season begins usually in *April*, and continues till *September*; and in this Part of the Year too they seldom fail of a Shower every Day, when the Sea Breeze comes in.

The Harbours of greatest Note, and to which the *Euro-Principal* *peans* usually resort, are *Banjar-Masseen*, *Succadana*, and *Harbours*. *Borneo*; but much more to *Banjar-Masseen*, than either of the other, the greatest Quantities of Pepper growing towards the Source of that River, which falls into the Sea in three Degrees eighteen Minutes South Latitude.

The Town of *Banjar* formerly stood about twelve Miles *Banjar*. up the River, and was built partly on Wooden Pillars; and partly on Floats of Timber on the River; but there is now no Sign of a Town there, the Inhabitants being removed to *Tatas*, about six Miles higher.

The City of *Borneo*, formerly the Residence of the principal Sultan or King of the Island, lies on the North-West *City*. Part of the Island, in the Latitude of four Degrees thirty Minutes

nutes North Latitude, and is a very commodious Harbour.

Succadana.

The Port of *Succadana* lies on the West Side of the Island in fifteen Minutes South Latitude, and was heretofore more resorted to by the *Europeans* than any other. Over against this, on the East Side of the Island, stands another Sea-port Town called *Passeir*, in fifteen Minutes South Latitude, but is not a Place of any great Trade.

Cayton-gee City.

One of the most considerable Inland Towns is *Caytongee*, the Sultan whereof is now the most potent Prince in the Island. This City lies about one hundred Miles up the River *Banjar*; and about two hundred Miles higher stands the Town of *Negaree*, the Residence of another Sultan.

The River *Banjar*, towards the Mouth, is as broad again as the *Thames* at *Gravesend*; and the Banks being planted with thick Groves of Ever-greens, renders the Passage up it exceeding pleasant. A little within the Entrance of this River are three Islands, the first of which is covered with prodigious tall Trees, which may be seen off at Sea, and serve for a Land-mark to sail over the Bar. There are large Spits of Sand about it, which shoot out furthest at the North and South Ends, and are very dangerous; for if a Vessel be on ground, the Ebb is so very strong, occasioned by the Land Floods, that she will be in Danger of being torn to Pieces: and the vast Floats of Trees that are perpetually driving down the Stream, render it still more hazardous.

The Tides here rise about twelve Feet, and never flow more than once in twenty four Hours, and that in the Day-Time. In the Night the Water never rises above half a Foot, unless in a mighty dry Season, which proceeds from the Strength of the Torrents, and the Land Winds blowing much stronger in the Night than in the Day.

The *China* River, as it is called from the *China* *Junks* constantly sailing up it, is navigable to *Tatas*, and much higher for Ships of the greatest Burden; but the *European* Ships usually lie a little higher up the River, over against the Place where the *English* Factory stood, which was at the Mouth of another lesser River on the Starboard Side going up, and is called *Tatas little River*; and is much the shortest Way to the Town for Boats and small Vessels.

Towns
built on
Floats.

The Towns whither the *Europeans* trade are built for the most part upon Floats of Timber on their Rivers, and form one long Street. They live all upon a Floor, but the House is divided into Rooms suitable to the Largeness of the Family, their Partitions being made with splintered Cane, or Bambou, and their Roofs covered with *Palmeto* Leaves,

direct

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

416

Succada
na.

Cayton
gee City



Town
built
float

Leaves, after the Manner of the *Malays* : The Houses are indifferently high, but the Eaves reach down within four or five Feet of the Bottom, to shelter them from the scorching Sun. Some of their Houses are built on the Ouze, and stand on Piles of Bambou ; and at low Water they go from one House to another by Pieces of Timber ; but in Time of Flood they use their Boats. The Tide of Ebb runs so strong sometimes at *Tatas*, that the Houses on the Floats break loose from their Moorings in the Night, and drive to Sea.

The Natives are either *Mahometans* or *Pagans*. The *Ma-Natives* inhabit the Sea Coasts, and all the chief Towns of Trade ; and the *Pagans*, who are called *Byayo's*, possess the inland Country. These last are represented to us by the *Mahometans* as a barbarous People : On the other hand, the Popish Missionaries who have been amongst them, and made some Progress in their Conversion, assure us, that the *Byayo's* are much more tractable and ready to embrace Christianity than the *Moors*. And it is very natural to believe, that two Nations inhabiting one Island, and differing so widely in their Manners, as well as their Religion, will of Course represent one another as barbarous, how peaceable or polite soever they may appear to Foreigners, who have not these Prejudices.

The *Byayo's* inhabiting the Woods and Mountains, and the Inland Part of the Country, do not apply themselves much to Trade or Merchandise, or to promote Arts and Sciences : They are a robust, warlike People, we are told, who spend their Time chiefly in Hunting, and looking after their Cattle, and have very little Commerce with Foreigners, which makes it difficult to give a particular Account of them.

The Natives of *Borneo* are extremely swarthy, as the People of other Countries are under the Equinoctial, which has given Occasion to some Travellers to call all those who inhabit near the Line Black ; but there is a considerable Difference between these and the Negroes, as has been observed already ; it is not the Heat of the Climate alone that gives a black Complexion, though it makes Men tawny.

The *Banjareens* have long, shining black Hair, and are well proportioned, but of low Stature ; and their Features are not very engaging, though not so shocking to an *European* as the Negroes. The Women are little and well-shaped, and their Features and Complexion much better than the Mens ; their Mien also is very engaging, few People move with a better Grace.

The *Bayayo's*, who live in the Mountains, are of a much taller Stature, and stronger bodied People than the *Banjareens*, which may be ascribed as well to their Situation as their Way of Life, being inured to Hardship and Fatigues, and constantly following the Chace; whereas the People of the flat Country use hardly any other Exercise than Rowing, and this is done sitting: They are so little used to ride or walk, that, it is said, they do both very awkwardly; and even Fishing they take very little Pains in, for by casting a Net once before their own Doors, they take as many Fish as they know what to do with a whole Day: And so little Difficulty they find in getting Food to subsist their Families, that they are most of them exceeding lazy.

Habits.

As to the Habits of the *Byayo's*, I do not find they have any Cloathing, but go naked, except a Cloth about their Loins: They paint their Bodies indeed of a bluish Colour, which looks something like Cloathing; and the Natives in general besmear themselves with a stinking Oil, which added to the unfavoury Steams their Bodies naturally send out, is enough to stifle an *European*, when he happens amongst a Croud of them. So strong is the Force of Custom, and so prevailing the Fashion of the Place, that there is hardly a considerable Man among the *Byayo's*, who does not pull out his fore Teeth, to put others, made of Gold, in their Room; and their greatest Ornament is a String of Tygers Teeth hung about their Necks, like an Alderman's Gold Chain. The common People among the *Banjareens* are not much better cloathed than the *Byayo's*; but their Princes and great Men are usually cloathed in a Kind of Waistcoat, or close Vest of blue or red Silk, and sometimes *European* Cloth, over which they throw a loose Piece of Silk, or Betele, which wraps once or twice about them, and reaches down to their Knees: They wear also a Pair of Drawers, but no Shirt; and their Legs and Feet are always bare: Their Hair is tied up in a Roll, in the hinder Part of their Heads, about which they tye a Piece of Muslin or Callico, but it is not near so large as a Turbant. The Crice, or Dagger, is also always Part of their Dress, which they wear in a Belt or Sash on their left Side.

The *Banjareens* travel chiefly in covered Boats, and in the Night-time, for the Benefit of the cool Air; and these Vessels being made very sharp and narrow, sail with an incredible Swiftnes. The great Men on Shore ride on Elephants, and some on Horses; but the common People travel for the most part on Foot.

The late *English* Factory, which was settled at *Bornee*, having

having behaved themselves with some Insolence towards the Sultan of *Caytongee*, the *Banjareens* for some Time looked upon our *East India* Company with an evil Eye, and would not have any Commerce with their Factors, if they knew it, though they did not deny the Liberty of their Ports to separate Traders; and therefore the Company's Ships, after the Destruction of that Factory, were forced to deny all Relation to the Company's Service. It was not with the *English* Nation in general, that this People had a Quarrel, but only with the Company; the *English*, say they, we acknowledge to be a brave generous People, and fair Dealers. But these Companies are seldom burdened with with too much Honour or Conscience; many of their Members separately would be ashamed probably to do an unhand-some Thing, but yet will frequently suffer themselves to be over-ruled, and carried away with the Stream, imagining they shall be concealed in the Crowd, or the Odium of the Action will be thrown on the principal Managers; or if at any time they depute their Authority to a Committee of Sharpers, who will stick at nothing, they look upon themselves not answerable for the Resolutions taken in their Absence, or at least, that they shall not share the Infamy with them. And it is thought by some, if the Trade was open for all the King's Subjects, our Reputation, as well as Commerce, would be considerably advanced by it.

The Goods our Merchants import from *Borneo* are chiefly *Traffic*: Pepper, Camphire, Gum dragant, Gold, and precious Stones, though it affords several other valuable Commodities.

Goods proper for Exportation thither (besides Dollars) are Guns from one to two hundred Weight, Sheet-lead, Showy Callimanco's, Knives, and other Cutlers Wares, but not Forks, being perfectly useless here; Iron Bars, small Steel Bars, Hangers, the smallest Sort of Spike Nails, twenty-penny Nails, Grapplings of about forty Pound Weight, red Leather Boots, Spectacles, Clock-work, small Arms, with Brass Mounting, Blunderbusses, ordinary Horse Pistols, Gunpowder, and Looking-glasses.

Next to Pepper, the purchasing Gold turns to the best Account here. Diamonds also may be bought to Advantage, but we seldom meet with any at the Port of *Banjar*, above three Carrats. The Manner of purchasing Gold is to give a certain Number of silver Dollars for the Weight of one Dollar in Gold.

The Trade to *Borneo* might become as advantageous to the *English* as any Trade whatever, with a little good Management; for here we meet the *China* Fleet, and may be

supplied with the Goods of that Country upon as easy Terms, very near, as in *China*. And considering how much more Time the Voyage to *China* requires, the Customs, Port Charges, and other extraordinary Sums extorted by the Hoppo's, or Custom-house Officers there, perhaps *China* Goods might be had at a better Hand here than in the Country itself. Besides, about the latter End of *September*, every Year, we find the *Macassar Praws* here, which, in spite of the *Dutch*, still bring over Cloves, Nutmegs, Mace, Gumboage, Lignum-Aloes, Cassia, and a great deal of other rich Merchandise.

The *Chinese* are expert Merchants, and understand the true Value of every Commodity, but the *Banjarcens* are ignorant of the Price of *European* Goods, and you must ask at least twice as much as you design to take; for though you assure them you ask but a small Profit, yet having made you a Compliment, and begged you would not be angry with them, they will bid a fourth Part, perhaps, and never above half what is asked: On the other hand, they will be sure to ask enough for what they sell, and frequently ten Times more than they take. If they barter Goods with you, there is no relying on their Samples, or their Weights, but they must be examined, for the *Chinese* have taught them to sharp, and they are grown almost as expert as their Masters; nor do they reckon it any Disgrace, if they are detected in attempting to over-reach you.

The Dragon's Blood, which this Country produces, is the finest in the World: This is a Gum which issues from a Tree, that bears a Fruit as red as a Cherry, and that which appears of the brightest Colour, after it is rubbed on Paper, is the best. The Country People expose it to Sale in small Drops, about an Inch long, every Piece being wrapped up in Leaves; but you must insist on having it without Leaves, or you will be imposed upon. The best is sold at about forty Dollars the Pecull. *Jambce* Canes are sold here for four Dollars a hundred; and though they look very fair to the Eye, they will often shrivel up in two or three Days, and prove good for little. This happens when they are not cut in the right Season, or before their full Growth, or when they are not rightly cured by the Fire and Bees Wax, whereby they harden the outward Rind, that it will not shrivel up.

If the Natives offer you Gold in Bars, they ought to be cut half through, and then broke and touched; for they sometimes so artificially cover a base Metal with Gold, that
if

if it be cut quite through with a Chissel, it will draw the Gold over with it, and the Fraud remain undiscovered.

There is no artificial Alloy in their Head Gold, but it comes up in Fineness to twenty-two Carrats *English*; but the Belly and Foot Gold are frequently found mixed with Iron Dust, or something like it, and is so taken up out of the Sand in their Rivers; and they clear it out of the Iron by rubbing a Loadstone among the Gold Dust, in a Dish, or large Shell, the Iron Particles adhering to the Loadstone; But they are very deficient in the Art of separating Metals, and therefore seldom or never clear it as it should be, and it requires a great deal of Care in the Buyer, when he purchases any of this Kind.

The highest coloured Gold is esteemed the best while it is without Alloy. Their fine Monkey Bezoar is sold for about five Times the Weight in Silver, and the best is of a greenish Colour; and these Stones are from a Pennyweight to an Ounce, and sometimes more; but the largest are thought to be Goat Bezoar. The Natives make a Compound, which so nearly resembles the right Bezoar Stone, that it is difficult to distinguish them: The Way to detect them is by rubbing White Lead, Lime or Chalk on a white Paper, and afterwards rub the Bezoar upon it, and if it be right it will change the White Lead Chalk, &c. to a greenish Colour. Here is also found a Kind of Bezoar, which being infused, gives a pleasant Bitter to Wine, and after the Infusion does not seem to be at all diminished in Substance. The best unrefined Camphire is also said to be produced in this Country.

Their Birds Nests are also esteemed excellent, and are sold for ninety or an hundred Dollars the Pecull; and those that are white and clear are the best. The Votaries of *Venus* are very fond of them, imagining this Food inspires them with new Vigour. Their Pepper is usually at the Rate of four or five Dollars the Pecull (one hundred and thirty-two Pound Weight.)

The *Chinese* are the only People who keep Shops, and retail Goods amongst them; and their Shops are furnished chiefly with Silks, Chints, Callico's, Beteles, Drugs, Tea, China, and *Japan* Wares.

The inland Part of the Country is dry and mountainous; but upon the South Coast for 100 Miles one Way, and 200 another, the Country is all a stinking Morass, or soft Ouze, and yet covered with Woods of prodigious tall Trees: And this vast Space is all overflowed in the rainy Season. The other Coasts are much like this; so that

however unhealthful such a Country must of Necessity be, they do not seem to be much in Danger of an Invasion.

About fifty or sixty Miles up the Country, in the fair Season, the Grounds grow dry, and there may be seen Herds of Cattle grazing upon the Banks of the Rivers, the Grass growing to a great Height at those Times among the Trees; but when the Rains return, the Cattle are all forced up to the Hills, and the flat Country becomes one great watery Grove again.

Produce.

Rice is the only Grain they eat, and this is cultivated in the same Manner as in other Countries. What induces Foreigners principally to resort to this Island is their Pepper, of which there are three Sorts; the first is called *Molucca*, or Lout Pepper, which is the best, the second *Caytongee* Pepper, which is a middling Sort; and the third and worst Sort *Negaree* Pepper, of which they have much the greatest Quantity: This is a small hollow light Pepper, and usually very full of Dust, and therefore it must be bought by Weight, and not by Measure, or the Buyer will certainly be imposed upon; and they will reserve their *Molucca*, or heavy Pepper, for those who take it by Weight, Care must also be taken, that they do not mix little black Stones with the Pepper, which are not easily discerned; neither will the Garbling-mill throw them out.

The white Pepper, which is brought from this Country is double the Price of the black; but I do not find any Traveller that pretends to have seen it growing. Our Merchants tell us, the poor People bring it them in small Quantities, having picked it off the Ground; and they apprehend that a certain Bird called Ballaree, feeding on black Pepper, digests nothing but the outward Husk, and the rest having passed whole through the Body of the Bird, acquires a Whiteness: But if I may be allowed to give my Thoughts of the Matter, where the Facts are uncertainly transmitted to us, I believe it may be true, that this Pepper is picked up by the poor People, under the black Pepper Trees; but as to the Birds swallowing and voiding it whole, I must desire to be excused, if I do not assent to it; for it seems much more probable, that this is the best of the Fruit which drops of itself, and by lying in the Weather becomes of a whitish Colour; and the Reason why this is so much dearer than the other, is because it is really the best Fruit, and has the Fire taken out of it by lying on the Ground, but chiefly because there is so very little of it to be had.

Here are Mines of Iron and Tin, and very good Loadstone; and their Mountains would afford great Plenty of Gold, if they were well wrought. The Gold we meet with

with here is of three Sorts, *viz.* Head, Belly, and Foot Gold. The Head, or *Molucca* Gold, is in Grains of the Bigness of Bay Salt, and of a very irregular Figure; it is purchased for eleven Times the Weight in Silver, and frequently for less. The Belly Gold is a smaller Sort, like Sand or Filings, and sold for ten times the Weight of Silver. The Foot Gold is much like this in Appearance, but worse, and sold for nine times the Weight in Silver; but the Belly Gold at these Prices is most profitable.

The Animals of most Use in this Country are Elephants, *Animals.* small sized Horses, Oxen, Buffaloes, Deer and Goats. Sheep I do not find they have any; but there are several Kinds of wild Beasts, such as Bears, Tygers and Monkeys, of which last there are vast Numbers, and a very great Variety; but the *Oran Ootan*, or *Man of the Woods*, as he is called, is much the most remarkable: He is not it seems much less than six Foot high at his full Growth, and walks upright like a Man; his Arms are something longer than a Man's; but his Features are said not to be so shocking as the *Hotentots*, and some others of Human Race. He has no Tail, or any Hair on his Body, but where it is found on a Man's; he is very strong and nimble, and will encounter those that provoke him with Stones, or any other missive Weapons which come in his Way; but whether he will engage in a close Fight with any of our Species, Travellers do not inform us.

Captain *Beckman* says, he bought one of these Animals, and that he was such a Lover of strong Liqueur, that he would drink heartily of the Punch-Bowl, if they left him in the Cabin with it; that he would also open his Case of Brandy, and drink a considerable Quantity, and then return the Bottle to its Place again: That if the Captain was angry with him, he would sigh and whine till he was reconciled: He would lay himself down to sleep as a Man does, with one Arm under his Head; and though he was not twelve Months old when he died, he was stronger than any Man in the Ship.

Another Animal they have, which our Travellers call a *Bat*, and sometimes a *Flying Cat*, the Body whereof in Colour, Shape and Smell, resembles that of a Fox; but is not so large. The Wings of this Creature are of a prodigious Bigness, for when they are extended, it is no less than five or six Foot from the Tip of one to the other. These Bats, during the western Monsoon, fly from West to East for two or three Hours every Evening in such Multitudes, that they darken the Sky.

They have no Mechanic or Handicraft Trades amongst them, except Gold-smiths and Carpenters, but every Man has the Art of Carving, and will carve the Head of a Cane or Crice very nicely, without any other Tool than an ordinary Knife.

Paylic they have very little Skill in; and they are perfectly amazed, that any one should suffer himself to be let Blood, and willingly part with his Life, as they call it.

This Island, as well as the rest that lie in the *Indian Seas*, was probably first peopled by the *Chinese*, whose Customs and Superstition the Inhabitants of the Inland Country still retain. Those who inhabit the Coasts planted themselves here about three or four hundred Years since, and came no Doubt from *Arabia* and *Persia*, and other Countries bordering upon the *Red-Sea*, being the Disciples of *Mahomet*; but I do not find there are any Records or Histories amongst them, from whence we might deduce their Original.

The Emperor's Court.

Captain *Beckman* tells us, when he had Audience of the Sultan of *Caytongee*, he was introduced into the Council-Chamber by the Prince of *Negaree*; and being directed to sit down cross-legged on a Carpet, about ten or twelve Foot before the Throne that was erected in the Middle of the Room; after a little Time, the Sultan came in, dressed in a kind of Waistcoat or Vest, with Breeches something like our Rope-Dancers, and scarlet Stockings and Slippers; and that he had over all a loose Atlice Gown on, wrought with Gold and Silver, and a rich Crice or Dagger set with Diamonds in his Girdle. Before him were carried in Arms two beautiful Children cloathed, the one in Scarlet, and the other in a rich yellow Silk, with Turbants on their Heads, guarded by twelve Men armed with Muskets and Blunderbusses, and twelve more with Sampits or Trunks, through which they shoot their poisoned Darts, with Bayonets fixed at the End of their Sampits, and Crices in their Girdles. Upon the King's coming into the Hall of Audience: Our *Englishmen* immediately rose up, which it seems was the greatest Affront they could have put upon his Majesty; but their Ignorance was their Excuse; his Subjects on the contrary lifting their Hands to their Heads, fell down upon their Faces, as they sat cross-legged; and whenever they approach their Prince, it is upon their Knees, with their Bodies bowed to the Earth; and in the same Posture they creep back again when they are dismissed.

The Sultan sat silent a few Minutes, as is customary, viewing our *English* Gentlemen very steadily; after which, he thanked them for their Present, and bid them welcome, telling

telling them, he hoped they met with good Usage from his Subjects: He enquired also, whether they were Company's Ships, which they stiffly denied, apprehending they should have been but ill treated, if that had been discovered: He proceeded to make heavy Complaints against the Company's Factors, and said they came at first, as he did now, pretending only to traffic with his Subjects; but, that under Pretence of building a Warehouse, they afterwards erected a Fort, mounted Guns on it, and insulted his Subjects, which he bore for some time with Patience; but proceeding to greater Insolences, he had demolished their Fort, and expelled them his Country.

This was such a Charge, as I do not observe was ever brought against our Nation before in the *Indies*; and therefore I shall make some further Enquiries into it. Indeed I will not be answerable for all the false Steps some *English* Companies have made of late, but I hope they will never come to imitate the *Dutch* in their Usurpations; and the Attempt must be exceeding weak, as well as villainous, if it was true; for they would never have been supported in it by the Court of *England*; and I hope it will be found, that they only endeavoured to secure themselves against the Incursions of the Mountaineers, which might be misconstrued by the *Banjareens*, for a Design to encroach upon their Territories. However, if it should appear, that some rash Men did commit such Actions as are not to be justified, they can never reflect on the *English* Nation in general, because they were never encouraged in it by the Government, as the Outrages committed by the *Dutch East-India* Company have been. It were to be wished, that such Agents only were to be sent abroad by our great trading Companies, as had a due Regard to the Honour and Interest of the Nation, lest, instead of the fair Character we have hitherto maintained, we should be looked upon as a Nation of Pirates and Robbers, as another *European* Nation have long been, in that Part of the World.

To return from this Digression, the Captain tells us, he was afterwards entertained in the Sultan's Palace, and the Dishes were of Gold, Silver and Brass, set upon a Carpet without any Linen; that they had above fifty several Dishes of boiled or broiled Fowls, Curree or strong Broth made of Fish and Flesh, Rice coloured with Turmeric, hard Eggs, Buffaloes Flesh and Venison, which last was excellent and well dressed; but the Prince being a religious Observer of the Law of *Mahomet*, treated them with no other Liquor than Water. That during Dinner-time,
the

the King's Music played, and sometimes the *English* Trumpets, with which he was highly pleased; and after Dinner, the little Tables of *Betel* and *Arek* were brought in, with which they amuse themselves almost continually. They were afterwards entertained with a Dance by some of the King's Women, in the following Manner:

The Sultan having ordered the Music to play, made a Sign to an old Woman, who sat behind a kind of Scene, with a white Wand in her Hand, who thereupon struck the Floor, and immediately there appeared four beautiful Girls about seventeen Years of Age, cloathed in Silk, with Golden Coronets on their Heads, and their Hair falling gracefully, with a seeming Carelessness on their Shoulders, their Arms, Legs and Feet bare, but painted with a light Yellow; and they wore Bracelets of Gold upon their Wrists and Ancles; one of them was taller and more richly dressed than the rest, and seemed to represent some Queen. At their first coming into the Room, they prostrated themselves on their Faces before the Throne three several Times; after which they rose up, and fell into a Dance, which consisted chiefly in screwing their Bodies into antic or lascivious Postures, but hardly ever moved their Feet from the Ground. This Diversion having lasted about half an Hour, they again prostrated themselves three times before the Sultan, and withdrew.

This People frequently marry their Daughters at eight or nine Years of Age, and they have Children soon after, but are usually past the Peril by that time they are five-and-twenty. Simple Fornication is not accounted any great Crime here; nor is it any Objection to a Woman, that she had a Gallant beforehand; and they are said to be very faithful to their Husbands after Marriage, how light soever they may have been before.

Sumatra *Situation.* *Sumatra* is situate between 93 and 104 Degrees of East Longitude, and between 5 Degrees 30 Minutes North Latitude, and 5 Degrees 30 Minutes of South Latitude, being 900 Miles long, and 150 broad.

Air. The Air of this Island is generally very unwholsome, it lying under the Equinoctial, and from the hottest sultry Weather changing often suddenly to chilling Cold. The low Grounds also near the Coast, where the Natives as well as Foreigners principally inhabit, being one continued Morass, the same kind of stinking Fogs arise here as in *Borneo*, and render this Country no less unhealthful, especially to Foreigners.

The

The Monsoons and Seasons are much the same, at in other Countries near the Equinoctial. The Rains begin sooner here than they do further North or South: It pours down sometimes for three or four Days together, without Intermission, inſomuch, that the Streets of *Achen*, the capital City, are on a sudden laid under Water, though the Town be at ſome Diſtance from the River, and ſtands upon a riſing Ground; but the Heat is not ſo intolerable here, and at other Places near the Line, as at *Tenquin*, and in ſome other Countries near the Tropics.

The principal Rivers are thoſe of *Achen*, *Jamby*, *Palimban*, *Manacabo*, *Sillebar*, *Indapoora* and *Priaman*, which take their Names from the reſpective Towns which ſtand upon them. The Water of the River *Indapoora*, in the Time of the Rains, is of a reddiſh Colour two Leagues beyond the Mouth of it at Sea, which is occaſioned by the great Number of Oaks that grow in the Marſhes, which are annually overflowed by this River; but from whatever Cauſe this red Caſt of its Water proceeds, they are obſerved to be very unwholſome, as well as the Waters of the other Rivers which overflow the Low-Lands, and are not to be drunk, till they have ſtood a conſiderable Time to ſettle, or indeed till they have been boiled and corrected by the Infuſion of Tea, or other wholſome Herbs, or mixed with Arrack, and other ſtrong Liquors.

Achen, the Capital of *Sumatra*, was the firſt Town the *English* traded to in *India*. Captain *Lancaſter*, who commanded the *English* Fleet, arrived in *Achen* Road the fifth of June 1602, he found here Shipping of ſeveral Nations; and the Fame of the Queen of *England*'s Victories over the *Spaniards* having reached this Part of the World before him, made Way for his favourable Reception among the *Indian* Princes.

Soon after the Arrival of the Fleet, Captain *Lancaſter* ſent Captain *Middleton* (Commander of the Vice Admiral) aſhore, with four or five *English* Gentlemen more, to attend the King of *Achen*, and deſire he might be admitted to an Audience, and have the Honour of delivering the Queen of *England*'s Letter into his Maſteſty's Hands.

The King received Captain *Middleton* very kindly; and having made him a handſome Entertainment, and preſented him with the Habit of the Country, ordered him to aſſure the General he might come aſhore, with the ſame Freedom and Security as if he was in her Maſteſty's Dominions; and that if he entertained any Doubt of his Safety, ſuch Hoſtages ſhould be ſent on board as he deſired. Two Days after,

after, the General (as he was stiled) went ashore; and there being at that Time some *Dutch* Factors at *Achen*, they invited his Excellency to their House. Here a Nobleman from the King of *Achen* came to attend the General, and to desire her Majesty's Letter; but being acquainted, that it was not the Custom in *Europe*, to deliver Letters of this kind to any but the King in Person, six Elephants, with Drums, Trumpets and Streamers, and a vast Retinue, were immediately sent, to bring the General to Court.

The largest of these Elephants was about fourteen Foot high, and carried a Machine upon his Back, not much unlike the Body of a Coach, covered with crimson Velvet; in the Middle of this Machine stood a Gold Basin, in which the Queen's Letter was put, and covered with a Piece of rich Silk. The General was mounted on another Elephant, and some of his Retinue on the rest, and others walked on Foot.

When they came to the Gate of the Palace, the Nobleman who acted the Part of the Master of the Ceremonies, desired they would remain there, till the King was acquainted with their Approach: Soon after they were dismounted, and admitted to his Majesty's Presence, whom the General saluted, after the Manner of the Country, and declared, that he was sent from the most mighty Queen of *England*, to propose the entering into a strict Friendship and Alliance with his Majesty; and was going on with a long Harangue suitable to the Occasion, not being apprised of the Aversion the *Indian* Princes entertain to long Speeches. The King hereupon interrupted him, and desired he would sit down and repose himself, after his tedious Voyage; then he told him, he was welcome to his Country, and that he might depend upon all the Favours he could reasonably demand, in the Behalf of that noble Princess from whence he came, of whom Fame had spoken many great Things.

Then the General delivered the Queen's Letter to his Majesty, which he gave to one of his Officers who stood by. The Queen's Present was set before the King, consisting of a large Silver Basin, with a Fountain in the Middle of it, weighing upwards of two hundred Ounces, a great standing silver Cup, a fine Looking-Glass, a Head-piece with a Plume of Feathers, an embroidered Sword-Belt, a Fan made of Feathers, and a fine Pair of Pistols: He seemed most pleased with the Fan, and immediately made one of his Women fan him with it. The Company were soon after desired to sit down cross-legged, after the Manner of the East; and an Entertainment was served up in

in Dishes of pure Gold or Tamback, which is a Mixture of Gold and Brass.

The King was seated in a Gallery raised six Foot above the Hall of Audience; he drank frequently to the General, in a Glass of Arrack, who having pledged him once in that Liquor, had his Liberty afterwards of drinking what Liquor he saw fit. After Dinner, the King's Women were called in, and a Dance was begun with Music, after the Manner of the Country. Then the King ordered the General to be presented with the Country Habit, after which, the General and his Retinue withdrew. Soon after, Articles of *First Traff-* Commerce were settled between the two Nations, the *sick* principal whereof were, That the *English* should have a free Trade to *Achen*, and pay no Duties of Importation or Exportation.

Sumatra was anciently divided into a multitude of little Kingdoms and Principalities, which about the Time the *Europeans* first visited those Shores, were most of them united under the King of *Achen*; but the King of *Bantam*, in the Island of *Java*, claimed the Sovereignty over some Districts on the South of *Sumatra*, and particularly of *Jamby* and *Palamban*, whose Governors, nevertheless, retained the Titles of Pangarans, or sovereign Princes; and continued in the Administration of the Government in that Part of the Island, subject only to the Controul of the King of *Bantam*.

Achen, the Metropolis of the Kingdom of the same Name, *Achen* is situated at the North-West End of *Sumatra*, in 5 Degrees 30 Minutes North Latitude, and is much the most considerable Port in the Island. *described.*

The City stands in a Plain, surrounded with Woods and Marshes, about half a League distant from the Sea, near a pleasant Rivulet: It is an open Town, without Wall or Moat; and the King's Palace stands in the Middle of it, being of an oval Figure, about half a League in Circumference. The Avenues to the City are naturally well defended, for the Country round about *Achen* is full of Rivulets, Marshes and thick Woods of Cane or Bamboe, which are almost impenetrable, and very hard to cut. There are several little Forts erected also at proper Distances in the Marshes, where Guards are planted. The City contains seven or eight thousand Houses, most of them built upon Pillars ten or twelve Foot high, to secure them from the annual Inundations: And besides the Natives, there are several foreign Nations which inhabit this City, as *English*, *Dutch*, *Danck,*

Danes, Portuguese, Guzarates and Chinese, of whom the *Chinese* are most numerous, and drive the greatest Trade.

Podir, Pacim, Delly, &c. About ten Leagues to the Eastward of *Achen* stands the City of *Podir*; and further to the South-East *Pacim* and *Delly*, formerly Capitals of so many Kingdoms; but now they make no great Figure. Upon the same Coast lies *Bancalis*, one Degree thirty Minutes to the Northward of the Line; and *Camper* lies almost under it, or rather some few Minutes to the Northward. *Jamby*, once the Capital of a Kingdom, now subject to the *Dutch*, and the most considerable Settlement they have on the East Side of *Sumatra*, stands about fifty Miles up a considerable River of the same Name, in two Degrees of South Latitude. *Palambam*, upon the same Coast, was once also the Metropolis of a flourishing Kingdom, and lies in four Degrees South Latitude. It was destroyed by the *Dutch*, in the Year 1659, about which Time they reduced most of the Kingdoms in the South Part of *Sumatra*, under their Obedience; but several of them are since revolted, as the *Dutch* term it, having thrown off the Yoke, and recovered their ancient Liberties.

Bencoolen, an English Settlement. The principal Settlements the *English* have in this Island are upon the West Coast, one of which is *Bencoolen*, situate in 101 Degrees of East Longitude, and 4 Degrees of South Latitude. The Town is almost two Miles in Compass, and was inhabited chiefly by the Natives, who built their Houses upon Bambow Pillars, as in other Parts of the Island. The *Portuguese*, *Chinese* and *English* had each a separate Quarter. The *Chinese* built all upon a Floor, after the Custom of their Country. The *English* Houses were after their own Model; but they found themselves under a Necessity of building with Timber (though there was no Want of Brick or Stone) upon Account of the frequent Earthquakes.

As *Bencoolen* stands upon a stinking Morass, it was not at all agreeable to *European* Constitutions, but Sholes of *English* died there every Year; whereupon the Company began to think of erecting a Fort in a more wholesome Part of the Country, and actually gave Orders for it. Nor was the Health of their People possibly the only Inducement, for the Natives had for several Years appeared very uneasy, and seemed to threaten the Destruction of the *English* Settlement. This made it high Time to pitch upon a Situation which would admit of a more regular Fortification than the Place where the old Fort stood: Accordingly a Fort was marked out upon a rising Ground, about two or three Miles to the South-

Southward of *Bencoolen*; the Foundations were laid, and the Walls began to rise, when the Country being ripe for an Insurrection, on a sudden assembled in Arms against the *English*, and drove them out of the Country, but soon after invited them to return again, and suffered them to finish the Fortifications of Fort *Marlbro'*. The principal Induce-ment to which was the Dread they had of the *Dutch*, who were making Preparations to settle here; and *Marlbro'* Fort is found to be a much more healthful Situation than that of *Bencoolen*, and much easier defended.

The Inhabitants of this Country consist of two different People, whose Ancestors came from very distant Nations. Those of the inland mountainous Part of the Country are *Pagans*, descended, in all Probability, from the *Chinese*, and those of the Sea Coasts from *Arabia* and *Persia*; or rather they are a Mixture of *Moors*, and other Nations, now professing the *Mahometan* Religion, and agreeing in the same Manners and Customs. The Mountaineers we have a very slender Account of, and those happening to disagree both with *Mahometans* and *Christians* in point of Religion, are, according to Custom, represented to us as Cannibals.

The Natives are of a swarthy Complexion, a middle Stature, strait, and well-limb'd, but their Features not very engaging, having flattish Faces, little Noses, and their Cheek-Bones something of the highest. They have strait black Hair, and black Eyes, as most other *Indians* have, and they black their Teeth in Conformity to Custom; they also besmear themselves with a stinking Oil, like the People of *Borneo*, and other *Indian* Nations. Some of them wear Caps of red, or other Woollen Cloth just fitted to their Heads like the Crown of a Hat without Brims; but they generally tie a Piece of blue or white Linen round their Heads, letting the Ends hang down, leaving no other Covering for the Top of their Heads but their Hair, Part whereof hangs down upon their Shoulders. The poorer Sort wear only a narrow Cloth, about their Loins; but People of Condition have a Kind of Drawers, or Breeches, and a Piece of Silk, or Callico, thrown loose about their Bodies. They also wear a Kind of wooden Clog, or Sandal, in Towns; but when they travel, every Body goes bare-footed.

The ordinary Food here, as in other Parts of *India*, is Rice and Fish; but those who can afford it eat Fowls, Mutton, Goats-Flesh, Buffaloe, Beef and Venison.

They

They season their Meat very high with Pepper, Onions and Garlic, and usually colour the Rice yellow with Turmeric. The Buffaloe Beef is mighty coarse Food, and the little Fat which is upon it as yellow as Saffron; when their Meat has hung a few Hours in the Market, it changes perfectly black, and is little better than Carrion. Their Fowls and their Mutton also are very dry and insipid; and Pork, which is the best Meat that is killed in hot Countries, they have but little of. Their Venison is pretty good, but especially their Hog-deer, an Animal something bigger than a Rabbet, and his Flesh as white as a Chicken; and out of this Animal is taken the Bezoar Stone; Sauces they do not want; and particularly they have very good Pickles, or Achars, made of Mango's, and other Fruits, which are pickled green.

Their usual Liquors are fair Water, or Tea; they have also Palm Wine, and Toddy, (a Liquor which is drawn from the cut Branches of the Coco-tree) they drink also that soft Liquor which is found in a young Coco-nut, being more than half a Pint, very cooling and pleasant; Arrack, or Spirits drawn from Rice and Sugar Canes are very common here.

The Natives are ever chewing Betel and Arek, or taking Opium, Bang, or Tobacco, between Meals. What they call Bang raises their Spirits almost as soon as Opium, and is either Hemp, or something very like it; this they infuse in their Liquors.

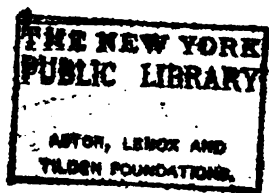
Gaming.

Gaming they love immoderately, both Cards and Dice, which were probably introduced here by the *Chinese*; and few Days pass without a Cock-match. They do not trim their Cocks for the Engagement, as in *Europe*, but produce them with all their gay Plumage, and fasten such murdering Instruments to their Heels, of the Shape and Length of a Penknife-Blade, that the Battle is over in an Instant; one Stroke often brings down the stoutest Cock.

Produce.

The principal Merchandise of *Sumatra* is Pepper and Gold Dust, but no Pepper grows near *Achen*, or in the North Part of the Island; and the Mountains from whence they fetch their Gold, lye near or under the Equator; and notwithstanding there are found greater Quantities of Gold in this Island than in any other Country in *India*, the great Demand for it keeps it at a very high Rate.

This Country also affords good Camphire, which is found among the *Sunda Islands*; the best Sort is in small Bits, or Scales white and transparent, and may be worth four Shillings and Sixpence an Ounce: The common Sort is





L'homme n'a de poil que sous le menton, et en arrache le reste, les coutures de leurs habits sont garnies de
 fourures. Leurs bonnets sont de peaux de renard. Les jupes de coton bleu, plissées au milieu. Leurs
 bottes de peaux, dont la fourrure est en dedans. La femme a des bagues de fer et des pinceaux d'osier.
 (MONTAGNE DES ANDES, 1811)

is like the large Sea-sand in Form and Colour, and worth about Half a Crown an Ounce.

There are scarce any Pepper Plantations within twenty *Pepper-Plant.* Miles of the *English* Settlements; it is brought down the River in Boats to their Factories; and for the Convenience of Water-Carriage these Plantations are usually made upon a level Ground, near the Banks of some River, and must be in a very rich Soil.

The Pepper-plant requiring something to support it, the Natives of *Sumatra* plant a thorny Tree by it; and the Vine having run up a considerable Height, the Twigs bend down again, on which the Berries hang in Clusters, near as large as a Bunch of Grapes, and of much the same Figure, but distinct as our Currants or Elder Berries are. This Vine produces no Fruit the first three Years; the fourth it bears, and yields an Increase of Fruit every Year till the eighth; the three following Years it declines, seldom continuing to bear more than ten. From *Sumatra* also are imported walking Canes; the best grow near the Town of *Jamby.* *Canes.*

The Flux is much the most common of any Distemper in these Countries, and most fatal to Foreigners; though there are many Kinds of Fruit and Herbs, which, if our *Europeans* were acquainted with when they are first seized with this Distemper, might go a great Way towards curing them, and particularly the Guava's and Pomgranates: They should be instructed also not to be too free with some other Fruits, or with their Waters unboiled; and Sherbet is still more unwholesome. A moderate Use of Wine and strong Liquors, as well as moderate eating; and the abstaining from full Meals of Flesh, is certainly the best Regimen that can be prescribed to *European* Constitutions here; and a Situation as far from the Salt Marches as possible ought to be obtained. Bathing in cold Water, which is generally practised by the Natives, is reckoned a great Preservative against the Flux; and excessive Drinking should be avoided, for though most People die of Fluxes, there are many taken off by Fevers; and the Small Pox is often as fatal there as here. There is a Distemper also called the Morduchin, or a perpetual Vomiting and Looseness, which often proceeds from too plentiful Meals, and carries off the Patient very suddenly; but Dropsies, Gout, and Stone are seldom heard of in this Part of the World.

They have no written Laws, unless those which relate to Religion, and are recorded in their Alcoran. Im-

memorial Custom is their Law, and the most ancient People are consulted in doubtful Cases: If a Precedent be remembered, it is thought sufficient to found the Judgment upon, as well there as in *Europe*. Murder and Adultery are punished with Death; and they have not one, but a Crowd of Executioners, who all stab the Criminals with their Crises or Daggers; but Female Offenders they usually strangle; for Theft they cut off one or more Joints of the Criminal's Fingers or Toes, and sometimes an Arm or Leg, according to the Nature of the Crime, and the third Offence is capital. They have also used Beheading, Impaling; and some of the Kings of *Achen* are charged with inflicting the cruellest Tortures on their greatest Subjects for trivial Offences.

Coin.

Pieces of Gold are oftener used in Merchandise at *Achen* than their Coin, especially in considerable Bargains; therefore it is necessary to express at what Rate you intend to receive and pay Gold, as well as what Catty you buy and sell by. The receiving 1000 Pounds in their Gold Mass would be an inconceivable Trouble, Brass and mixed Metals, and Silver gilt being frequently found amongst them; and even the Money-changers who are employed to examine them are often deceived: However, if they receive any bad, they are bound to make them good to the Person who employs them.

A Merchant may be very much imposed on also by receiving their Gold Dust; for they will mix small Bits of other Metal with it, which is not easy to distinguish, and makes it necessary to employ these Money-changers upon such Kind of Receipts: There are great Numbers of them who take up their Standings in the Streets of *Achen*, and are usually *Guzurats*, or Natives of the *Hither India*.

Java Situation.

The Island of *Java* is situate in the *Indian Ocean* between 102 and 113 Degrees of East Longitude, and between five and eight Degrees of South Latitude, having the Island of *Borneo* on the North, and *Sumatra* on the North West, and is 700 Miles long, and upwards of 100 broad: The Air of the Coasts is not very healthful, being surrounded with Salt Marshes.

Air and Seasons.

Their worst Weather is during the Westerly Winds, which usually begin the first Week in *November*. In *December* it blows fresh, and the wet Weather increases; and in *January* the Weather is at the worst, both as to Wind and Rain, and continues much the same till the Middle of *February*; after which the Wind and Rain abate till the latter

latter End of *March*. In *April* the Weather grows fair, and the Winds are variable with Calms ; but at the Full and Change of the Moon there generally happens sudden Gusts of Wind from the Westward. About the first of *May* the Eastern Monsoon may be said to be settled, and in *June* and *July* often brings Rain with it ; but the Easterly Wind blows hardest when there is no Rain : and this Monsoon, for the most part, affords clear, wholesome Weather, which continues till the latter End of *September*. In *October* the Wind shifts frequently, and the easterly Winds blow faintly, and in the Beginning of *November* the westerly Monsoon sets in again : But it is observed, that some Years the Monsoons happen fifteen Days sooner or later than in others.

The Currents constantly follow the Winds here, and sit East-North-East, or West-South-West, as the Monsoon or Trade-Wind does out at Sea.

When the Westerly Winds and Currents are strongest in those Seas, which is usually in *December* and *January*, and Part of *February*, it is in vain to endeavour to sail against them, or indeed to coast along the Shore, though there is good Anchorage all along the Coast of *Java*. The Easterly Winds, as well as the Currents, are much more moderate ; and Ships frequently sail against this Monsoon from *Batavia* to the Island of *Tymore*, keeping in Anchorage, and going between the Island of *Madura* and *Java* ; and a Ship may at any Time come from the Westward through the Straits of *Sunda* to *Batavia*. On the *Sumatra* Side these Straits are very deep, and in many Places no Anchorage ; for which Reason Ships keep up on the *Java* Side, where they may anchor in twenty or thirty Fathom Water, till they come near *Batavia*, and then they need not be concerned at its being a Lee-shore, or dread the coming under twenty Fathom.

Notwithstanding the easterly Monsoon blows out at Sea, between *Java* and *Borneo*, as also along the Coast of *Sumatra*, from *April* to *November*, yet near the Shores they have Land and Sea-Breezes from different Points of the Compass. The Land-Breezes come off between one and four o'Clock in the Morning, generally with a small Shower, and a Gust of Wind, and sometimes Thunder. About one or two in the Afternoon a fresh Gale blows directly from the Sea, for five or six Hours, and then dies away ; when the Ships upon the Coast, which are bound to the Eastward, are forced to come to Anchor till the next Morning, and expect the Land Breeze again : And as these Winds are con-

stant, the Weather clear, and the Shores always green, this Way of turning along the Shore, as the Sailors call it, is extremely pleasant ; and wherever the Mariners discover a Grove of Coco-Nut Trees, which stand very thick along the North Coast of *Java*, they are sure to find a Village of *Javans*, who are very obliging, and will supply *English* Shipping with all Manner of Necessaries at a much easier Rate than the *Dutch* ; of whose unchristian Usage towards the *English*, Captain *Beckman*, with a great deal of Reason, complains even so lately as the Year 1714 : He says the *Dutch* General at *Batavia* refused to let him have either Wood, Water, Rice, or any Necessaries whatever ; nor would so much as suffer an *Englishman* to lye ashore, though they did not refuse these Privileges to the *Portuguese*, or any other *European* Nation. There are Instances indeed of their suffering some of our Ships to take in Water, and other Necessaries ; but they are forced to wait so long, and pay so extravagantly for what they have, that it almost amounts to a Refusal.

The first
Voyages of
the Eng-
lish and
Dutch
to Java.

When Sir *Francis Drake* touched here in the Year 1579, he tells us he found five Kings upon the Island ; and had he remained in this Country any considerable Time, he might have discovered many more ; for almost every great Town had a Prince of its own, who commanded the adjacent Country, and neighbouring Villages, till either by Intermarriages and Compacts, or the Encroachments of the most powerful, they were reduced to a smaller Number, of whom the Kings of *Mataran* and *Bantam* were the most potent. The King of *Mataran* possessed much the greatest Part of the Country, his Territories consisting of all the inland Provinces, as well as the South-East Part of the Island : But the King of *Bantam* was not inferior to him in Wealth and Power, being possessed of the North West Coast, and most of the Ports and Towns of Trade. To *Bantam*, therefore, most *European* Nations resorted at their first Arrival in the *East Indies*. Here the *English* established their principal Factory ; and the *Dutch* had another in the Town, till this Prince, being no longer able to bear their Insolence, forced them to remove to *Jacatra*, now *Batavia*, about forty Miles to the Eastward : Nor was the King of *Jacatra* much sonder of the *Dutch* than the King of *Bantam* ; but upon his discovering an Intention to remove them from thence, they immediately fell to fortifying the Place he had assigned them for a Factory, and bid Defiance to all his Forces ; nor have the *Javan* Princes been able to dislodge them

them to this Day, though they have sometimes drawn down their united Forces against the Place, and maintained long Wars with the *Dutch*.

The chief Towns on this Island are most of them upon the North Coast, of which *Bantam* lies the most Westerly: *Batavia* stands to the Eastward of *Bantam*, and further East *Charabon*, *Samarang*, *Japara*, *Roombong*, *Tuban*, *Sidaya*, *Jortan*, and *Surabaya*; and at the East End of the Island are the Cities of *Passaruan*, *Panarucan*, and *Palamboan*: About the Middle of the South Coast stands the City of *Martaran*, where the King, who bears that Title, still has his Residence; but there are not any other Cities of Note on this Side of the Island, it lying open to the Southern Ocean, and not affording that Security to Shipping as is to be found on the Northern Coast.

Bantam, once the Capital of the most considerable Kingdom in the Island, is situate in 105 Degrees of East Longitude, and six Degrees thirty Minutes South Latitude, near the North West Part of the Island, and was a Port of great Trade, to which the Merchants of every Country almost resorted. *Batavia*, by the *Indians* called *Jacatra*, now the chief Town in the Island, is situate in 106 Degrees of East Longitude, and six Degrees of South Latitude, inhabited by many Nations, whom the *Dutch* have removed hither, and by the *Chinese*, who fled thither when the *Tartars* conquered their Country.

By transplanting such Numbers from the neighbouring Islands, which they had subdued, the *Dutch* have made *Batavia* one of the most populous Cities in the *Indies*, and secured themselves against all Conspiracies and Insurrections that might be formed against them in those Islands; for having the most considerable Families in their Power, with the Women and Children of those they had destroyed in the general Massacre, it was not to be supposed that the rest should either have Spirit or Power to attempt any thing against their Settlements; and it must be admitted, they have done all that Men could do by Force or Policy, to establish their Empire in the *Indies*, had Justice and Clemency but presided in their Councils; but the Want of these will ever render their Dominion precarious.

The *Dutch* finding the Island of *Java* divided among several petty Princes, perpetually fomented and encouraged their Quarrels, assisting sometimes one Prince, and then another, till they met with an Opportunity of subduing most of them; and if the Subjects of any *European* Prince

had a considerable Factory in the Dominions of an *India* King, they never failed to pick a Quarrel with him, and make the Expulsion of those *Europeans*, the Terms on which alone they would consent to Peace. The *English* were never more sensible of those Practices, than in the Reduction of *Bantam*; and it appears, that the flourishing Trade the *English* and other *Europeans* carried on there, was the principal Inducement to the Invasion of that Kingdom by the *Dutch*.

The Dutch Trade at Batavia.

Batavia is the great Magazine or Store-House of the *Dutch East India Company*; hither they import the Merchandize of *Japan*, the *Spice Islands*, *Persia*, *Surat*, *Bengal*, and of the Coasts of *Malabar* and *Ghermandel*, as well as every thing that *Europe* affords. One Sort of Goods they barter for another all over the *Indies*; and having furnished themselves with what is most valuable in the East, transport it into *Europe*, where all is converted into ready Money: So far is their *India* Trade from diminishing their Treasure, that it furnishes them with more than all the Trade of the World besides. They have not only Spice sufficient of their own Growth to purchase every thing they stand in need of in *India*, and to supply all *Europe*, but burn and destroy vast Plantations of it every Year, to enhance the Price; and we are not to imagine there are no other Islands but those which the *Dutch* are possessed of which will bear Spices; several other Islands would produce them, if the Natives durst cultivate the Plants; but they are neglected, lest the *Dutch* should be incited to enslave them, as they have their Neighbours: For however we laugh at the *Hollanders* Claim of the Sovereignty of all Seas from the *Cape of Good Hope* Eastward, to the *Straits of Magellan*, which is three Parts of the Circumference of the Globe, there is not any thing they could grasp within those Limits which is valuable, that they have not made themselves Masters of, and exercise as arbitrary a Dominion over every Prince's Subjects on the *Indian* Shores, as if they were their Slaves; and should the *Dutch* hereafter find any *European* Nation in Possession of a *Spice Island*, or any Plantation of equal Value in those Seas, they would certainly take the same Measures to extirpate them, as they formerly practised upon their dear Allies the *English* at *Banda* and *Amboyna*.

Manufactures.

All Sorts of Mechanic Arts almost flourish in *Batavia*. There is no Manufacture proper for that Country which the *Dutch* do not promote: They have their Printing-Houses, their Paper-Mills, Gun-Powder Mills, Sugar Bakers, Spinners, Cotton Weavers, Rope makers, &c.

The

The *Dutch* have founded Schools in *Batavia*, where the *Liberal* learned Languages are taught, and some Advances made in the *Liberal Arts*; and the Inhabitants of this City being composed of almost every *Indian* Nation, all the *Indian* Languages are spoken here; but those of the most general Use are the *Malayan*, and the *Bastard Portuguese*, with which a Man might travel over this Part of the World, if he understood no other.

The only Corn that grows in this Country is Rice. *Produce of the Soil.* They have good Wheat imported from *Bengal*, at a very reasonable Rate; but the *Europeans*, as well as the other Inhabitants, after a little Time, make Choice of boiled Rice, rather than Bread.

There are no Vines in this Island, but about *Batavia*, where they have been introduced by the *Dutch*, and will bear seven times within the Space of two Years. So soon as the Grapes are gathered, the Vine is cut, and fifteen or sixteen Weeks afterwards, there is a new Vintage; but notwithstanding this vast Increase, they can make no Wine, and have none but what comes from the *Cape*, or from *Europe* or *Persia*, which is valued at four or five Shillings a Bottle. It is observable, that these Vines will bear the next Year they are planted; and, as well as other Trees, shoot more in one Year, than they do in three or four in *Europe*.

The *Dutch* have lately planted the Coffee Shrub at *Batavia*, and it yields a tolerable Increase, but the Fruit is not equal to that of *Arabia*.

The Government of the *Dutch* in *Java*, in regard to *Government* the *European* Inhabitants, is formed on the Model of that in *Holland*; but in respect to the Natives, is as arbitrary and tyrannical as any Government in the known World: As they possessed the Country by Force, so they still maintain their Empire, and do not only exercise their Dominion over the *Javans*, but over every other People who inhabit the Shores of the *Indian* Seas. It is true, the *Dutch* are too inconsiderable a People to be able to reduce entirely any one Country of a large Extent, such as *Java*, *Sumatra* or *Borneo*, but having a Fleet of Men of War always in those Seas, and a disciplined Army, composed of *Europeans* as well as *Indians*, they make their Settlements wherever they think fit; and though they never saw a tenth Part of the Country with their Eyes where they fix, yet from the Moment they have planted a Colony, or taken any one Town from the Natives, they look upon themselves to be Sovereigns of the whole Country; and if the Natives refuse to

submit to such Laws as they are pleased to impose, they immediately denominate them Rebels and Traitors, and proceed to torture, and put them to the cruellest Deaths, if ever they fall into their Hands. In this Manner also they treated all *Europeans* who presumed to deal with the Natives, till they had possessed themselves of all the valuable Branches of the *Indian Trade*. How they used the Inhabitants of the *Moluccas, Banda, Amboyna* and *Macassar*, has been taken notice of already, with the Expulsion of the *Portuguese* and *English* from these Countries; but the Multitudes the *Dutch* massacred, after the taking of *Bantam*, and the Tortures and Cruelties they afterwards exercised, to render themselves dreadful to the Natives, under Pretence of Conspiracies and Rebellions against that *High and Mighty East India Company*, exceeded any thing that has hitherto been related, even the Bigottry of false Religion never inspired its Votaries with that Rage against the rest of Mankind, as a *Dutchman* manifests, whenever he has an Interest in View; Covetousness could never more properly be stiled Idolatry than on this Occasion, where Christians make no Scruple of breaking both Tables of the Decalogue, deny their God, and fall down before a *Pagan Idol*, to promote their Trade, as these Saints have done, both at *Japan* and *Pegu*. And however impious such Practices may be, yet what must make the World still more abhor that Company is, their sacrificing whole Nations to their darling Mammon.

It is true, the *Javanese* exercised the *Dutch* with continual Plots and Conspiracies, soon after the taking of *Bantam*; and once they set fire to the Magazine of Powder in that City, and blew up some hundreds of *Hollanders* into the Air: The *Dutch* having apprehended four of the Conspirators, carried them to *Batavia*; and to deter the Natives from the like Practices for the future, they took one of these unhappy Wretches, and placing him on a Scaffold, in the View of all the People, they tore off his Flesh by little Pieces with red hot Pincers, which they continued to do from Morning till Evening, before they put him to Death; and the next Day they broke the other three alive upon the Wheel.

Upon another Insurrection at *Japarra*, the *Dutch* took a great Number of Prisoners, some of them they broke alive upon the Wheel, others they cut off their Ears and Noses, and some were chained together, and sent to certain Islands, there to make Brick and Lime for the Company, and remain in a State of Slavery for the remainder of their Lives.

And

And thus they do not only serve the *Javans*, but all other Nations in that Part of the World, who refuse to submit to their Tyranny: But notwithstanding the *Dutch* are pleased to look upon the Inhabitants of the *Indian* Islands as their Subjects, and call every Attempt that is made for the Recovery of their Liberties Treason and Rebellion, and punish it as such; the Natives of those Islands probably esteem their Countrymen Heroes, who engage in such Enterprises; and look upon these Actions, as the Subjects of *Britain* would, to be noble Struggles for their Liberties.

There are some Kingdoms indeed the *Dutch* have absolutely subdued, and reduced to a State of Vassalage, whose Princes however are still permitted to enjoy their Titles, and the State of Sovereigns; and the *Hollanders* also execute all their Orders in the Name of these deposed Princes, as expecting to find a more ready Obedience from their Subjects by this Means; and while they keep these Kings with their Families in their Power, and suffer them to enjoy the Appearance of Sovereignty, they find themselves secured against the Pretensions of all others: One who has been at *Java* relates, that he was surprised at the Pomp he saw the King of *Bantam* appear in, when he knew he was no better than a Prisoner of State at the same Time.

The *Dutch* being sensible how much the World is struck with a splendid Appearance, order their Governor General at *Batavia* to take upon him the State of a great King; and accordingly when he appears abroad, his Coach is preceded by a Troop of Horse-Guards, a Company of Halberdiers surround it, and a Company of Foot bring up the Rear. His Guards are clothed in yellow Sattin trimmed with Silver Lace and Fringe, and make a more glittering Show than the Guards of any Prince in *Europe*. The Governor's Lady also has her Guards and her Equipage, not inferior to that of a Queen.

The disciplined Troops the *Dutch* maintain in and about *Forces*. *Batavia* and *Bantam* are computed to be about 20,000 Men, of which one Half may be *Europeans*; but they keep the Soldiery in great Subjection to the Civil Power; and except the Governor's Guards, they make but a very mean Appearance, their Cloathing being very indifferent, and of several Colours; and though a Shoemaker, or the meanest Tradesman in the Place is suffered to have his Slave to carry an Umbrella over his Head; this Honour is not vouchsafed to an Ensign, who is a Commission Officer.

The

Revenues. The Revenues of the Government of *Batavia* are just what the *Dutch* please to make them : As the Inhabitants are rich, and every thing has a Duty laid upon it, they must be very considerable : It is said, that the *Chinese*, who are not less than 80,000 Men under the *Dutch* Government, pay a Crown a Head for a Permission to wear their Hair, and a Crown more for every Silver or Gold Bodkin they wear in it, of which the better Sort use several. This may serve as an Instance how arbitrary the *Dutch* are, and how very easy it is for them to raise what Sums they please.

Women. The *Javanese* Women are said to be exceeding amorous, and constant to their Lovers, but expect they should be no less faithful in return ; if the Lady has any Suspicion of her Gallant's entertaining a new Amour, a Draught is usually prepared, which soon puts an End to the Intrigue ; old *Leguat* speaks very lusciously and feelingly of the *Javan* Women, though he takes a great deal of pains, in the first Part of his Narrative, to induce us to believe him extremely mortified, and perfectly indifferent to the Sex.

He says, the Women not being so much exposed to the Air as the Men, are not near so brown, and might pass even in *Europe* for genteel ; that they have good Features, even according to the Notions we entertain of Beauty ; that they have little swelling Breasts, a soft Air, sprightly Eyes, and a most agreeable Laugh ; and take them all together, are perfectly handsome ; that he saw some of them dance most charmingly ; that they have a kind of a Drum, instead of a Fiddle, to the Sound of which they conform their Motions. Another thing which adds to their Charms, he observes, is their extraordinary Neatness, being obliged by their Law to wash themselves from Head to Foot several times a Day ; and they rub and clear their Skins of all Scurf and Roughness ; so that they are perfectly soft and smooth.

They are not shut up like the *Chinese* Women, but walk about the Streets, and enjoy as full a Liberty as the *Europeans* : However, they express a most profound Regard for their Husbands, prostrating themselves with their Faces to the Ground, whenever their Lord appears. They go in their Hair, and have a kind of Waistcoat with close Sleeves laced before, which being cut sloping at the Bosom, discovers great part of their Breasts. This Waistcoat not reaching so low as their Hips, they wrap round the lower part of their Bodies, two or three times, a piece of Silk or Linen of several Colours, which looks like a Petticoat ; but between the Waistcoat and the Wrapper, there is always
a little

a little Space, which discovers a Lift of tawny Flesh all round, the Women wearing no Shift; however, Mr. *Leguat* assures us, that as their Waistcoat fits close to the Body, it usually discovers a most bewitching Shape.

There is no Place where the Women are more indulged in the Matter of Divorce than here, if the Husband goes astray; which, considering the Heat of the Country, and the Opportunities they have of being familiar with their Slave-Slaves, pretty frequently happens. Captain *Rogers* says, he was assured, by an Advocate at *Batavia*, that of fifty-eight Causes which were depending before the Council when he was there, two and fifty of them were Divorces.

The Women here, as in most other Countries of *India*, are extremely lazy, not applying themselves to any Work whatever: They sit cross-legged most of them upon Carpets all Day long, chewing of Betel and Arek, while the Business of the House is managed by their Slaves. The small Number of *European* Women that were here, at the first Settlement of the *Dutch*, made them so much valued, that the Men thought they could not shew them too much Respect; and this swelled them to an intolerable Degree of Pride, which they retain to this Day, though their Numbers are much encreased; and they are not only proud, but so implacably revengeful, that none care to provoke them.

As to the *Chinese* Inhabitants, they no more suffer their Wives and Daughters to be seen here, than they do in *China*; and though every Man takes as many Wives as he pleases, he has his Female Slaves besides, which serve him for Concubines.

To the Eastward of *Java* lies the Island of *Bally*, or *Lesser Java*; and further Eastward, *Lomboy*, *Cambaya*, *Flores*, *Solor*, *Timor*, and several others, in most of which, the *Dutch* have Forts and Settlements, and take the Liberty of governing, and even transplanting the Natives, whenever they please; and these Islanders make no inconsiderable Part of the Inhabitants of *Batavia* at present: From hence also the *Dutch* frequently recruit their Troops; and thus they make one Nation of *Indians* contribute to keep another in Subjection.

The *Dutch* apprehending, or at least pretending, that the *Chinese* Inhabitants of *Batavia* were engaged in a Conspiracy against their Government, and that nothing could preserve their Dominion in that Island, but a general Massacre of the *Chinese* in *Batavia*, they demanded all their Arms, which the *Chinese* readily delivered up; whereupon the next

next Day the *Dutch* sent a Detachment of their Forces into the *Chinese* Quarter, and put them all to the Sword, there being between twenty and thirty Thousand of the *Chinese* murdered at this Time (1740) not one Man escaping their Fury.

The *Dutch* in *Europe* observing how much this cruel Fact was censured, endeavoured to throw the Odium of it on the Governor, (though he had the Hands of all the Council but one to the barbarous Order) The States therefore sent an Order to the Governor of the *Cape of Good Hope*, to seize the *Batavian* Governor, if he came that Way home, and send him back to *Batavia* to be tried for this Massacre; and he was apprehended accordingly at the *Cape*, and put on board of a Ship bound for *Batavia*, but never heard of since; whether he was thrown overboard, that no further Enquiry might be made into the Matter, or what became of him, is uncertain; but it is observable, that this merciless Tool having sent all his ill-gotten Wealth to *Europe*, the Ships he sent it in were cast away upon the Coast of *Holland*.

Ando-
man and
Nicobar
Islands.

The *Andaman* and *Nicobar* Islands are situate in the Bay of *Bengal*, Part of the *Indian* Ocean, between 92 and 94 Degrees of East Longitude, and between 7 and 15 Degrees of North Latitude. They furnish the Shipping that touches here with Rice, Poultry, Coco's, Plantains, and other tropical Fruits; but have no Merchandise to invite the *Europeans* to send Colonies thither. In the first Voyages the *Europeans* made to *India*, they were represented to be *Canibals*; but, upon our better Acquaintance with them, they appear to be a harmless inoffensive People, and so far from devouring their own Species, that they eat scarce any Flesh at all.

Maldiva
Islands.

The *Maldiva's* are a great Number of small Islands, situate under or near the Equinoctial, in the *Indian* Ocean, between 2 Degrees South, and 7 Degrees North Latitude, 500 Miles South-West of the Continent of the *Hither India*; flat, low Lands, surrounded by Rocks, which make it dangerous sailing near them. The People resemble the *Arabs* in their Complexion and Features, and are of the same Religion, which makes it probable that they were planted by the *Arabs*. These Islands produce little Rice, or Corn; the Natives live chiefly upon Fish, Coco-nuts, and other Fruits and Roots. Here it is we meet with those pretty little Shells, called Cowries, or Blackamores-teeth, which serve in *India*, instead of small Coin, to purchase Herbs and Fruit.

The

The HISTORY of JUDEA, and the rest of PALESTINE.

PALESTINE and *Judea* are frequently taken for the *Situation*. same Country; but in reality *Judea* is only a Part of *Palestine*, which taken in its utmost Extent is situate between 36 and 38 Degrees of Eastern Longitude, and between 30 and 33 Degrees, 30 Minutes, North Latitude, bounded by Mount *Libanus*, which divides it from *Cæle Syria*, on the North; by Mount *Hermon*, which separates it from *Arabia Deserta*, on the East; by the Mountains of *Seir* and *Gilead*, and Part of *Arabia Petraea*, on the South; and by the *Mediterranean Sea* on the West; being about 200 Miles long, and 100 broad. It was first called *Canaan*, *Name*. from *Canaan*, the Son of *Cam*, in which *Phœnicia* must be included; and indeed I take the Eastern Coast of the *Levant Sea*, from *Gaza* in the South, to *Antioch* in the North, to be at one Time denominated *Phœnicia*, which succeeded to the Name of *Canaan*. This Country was also called *Philistia*, from the *Philistines* who inhabited it, possibly before the *Phœnicians*, or perhaps the *Philistines* and *Phœnicians* may be the same People, under different Denominations.

The Mountains and Hills of *Palestine*, besides *Libanus Mount* and *Hermon* already mentioned, are, 1. Mount *Sion*, on *tains*. which the Tower or Citadel built by *David* stood. 2. Mount *Moriah*, to which *Isaac* was led by his Father *Abraham* to be sacrificed, and on which the Temple of *Solomon* was afterwards built. 3. Mount *Calvary*, on which *Christ* suffered, supposed to be the Place where *Adam* was buried. 4. Mount *Tabor*, on which *Christ* was transfigured. 5. Mount *Olivet*, from whence he ascended. 6. Mount *Gerizim* on which the Temple of *Samaria* stood. 7. The Mountains of *Sharon*, extending from the Sea of *Galilee* to Cape *Blanco*, near *Tyre*, on the *Mediterranean*. 8. The Mountains of *Gilboa*, the highest on the West of *Jordan*. 9. The Hill of *Basan*. 10. *Abarim*, on the East Side of *Jordan*, on the highest Summit whereof, called *Nebo* and *Pisgab*, *Moses* had a Sight of the promised Land. 11. Mount *Carmel*, on the Borders of *Phœnicia*, and Mount *Seir* in *Idumæa*.

The chief Rivers and Streams in this Country are, *Rivers*.
1. *Chisou*, the *Chorfaus* of *Ptolemy*, which riseth out of
Mount

Mount *Tabor* in *Galilee*, and falleth into the *Mediterranean* Sea, not far from Mount *Carmel*, in *Phœnicia*. 2. *Cedron*, a Torrent rather than a River, passing between *Jerusalem* and the Mount of *Olives*. 3. *Zared*. 4. *Naphtha*, which arising out of the Hills of the Tribe of *Judah*, fall into the *Mediterranean*. 5. *Arnon*, which hath his Springs in the Hills so called, and endeth his Course in the *Dead-Sea*. 6. *Jaboc*, often mentioned in Scripture, which issuing out of the Mountains of *Galaad*; and, 7. *Herman*, which springing from the Hill so named, lose themselves in *Jordan*. 8. *Jordan*, called so from *Jar* and *Dan*, two neighbouring Fountains, out of which it seems to flow, running from North to South, almost in a strait Line, to the *Dead-Sea*, into which it dischargeth its Waters; not navigably deep, nor above 100 Yards in Breadth, except when the Snows are melted. This River forms two Lakes; the one in Upper *Galilee*, dry for the most Part in Summer, and then covered with Shrubs and Sedge; the other in Lower *Galilee*, about 100 Furlongs in Length, and about 40 in Breadth, called the *Sea of Galilee*, from the Country; and the Lake of *Tyberias*, from a City of that Name on the Banks thereof; and for the like Cause called also the *Lake of Genezareth*. Having run through the Plains of *Jerico*, it finisheth its Course, at last in the *Dead-Sea*; honoured with the Name of a Sea, because salt and large, being seventy Miles long, and sixteen broad. It furnisheth with Salt the whole Land of *Judea*. It is called the *Dead-Sea*, because no Creature will live in it, its Waters being so impregnated with Sulphur. It is also called *Lacus Asphaltites*; and near it stood the once famous Cities of *Sodom* and *Gomorrab*, with three others, whence the Valley had the Name of *Pentapolis*.

*Soil and
Produce.*

It is an exceeding plentiful Country where it is cultivated, abounding in Corn, Wine, and Oil; Figs, Pomgranates, Palm-trees, and Fruit proper to a temperate Climate; and their Hills are well clothed with Timber and Herbage to the Top.

*Divisions
of Palest-
ine.*

This Country of *Palestine* has undergone several Divisions. It was divided first between the *Philistines*, *Perezites*, *Hittites*, *Jebusites*, and others of the Sons of *Canaan*, on this Side *Jordan*; the *Moabites*, *Ammonites*, *Midianites*, and *Amorites*, dwelling on the other. When conquered by the Sons of *Jacob*, it was divided into twelve Tribes. When that great Breach was made by *Jeroboam* in the Kingdom of *David*, it was broken into two Kingdoms, viz. those of *Judah* and *Israel*;

Israel; the first containing only the two Tribes of *Judah* and *Benjamin*, the latter comprehending the other ten, or rather nine, the *Levites* being dispersed among the Tribes. When the *Israelites* were led Captive into *Assyria*, and a new Set of People planted in their rooms, these New-comers, from *Samaria*, their capital City, had the Name of *Samaritans*; and when the Men of *Judah* were released from their long Captivity, and came back from *Babylon*, they took to themselves the Name of *Jews*, from *Judah*. After which Time, the whole Country of *Palestine*, anciently possessed or subdued by the Seed of *Abraham*, was divided into, 1. *Peræa*, 2. *Ituræa*, 3. *Galilee*, 4. *Samaria*, 5. *Judea*, and, 6. *Idumæa*. When conquered by the *Romans*, all these were joined into one Province, which, for a Time, was reckoned a Subdivision of *Syria*, or at least subordinate to *Syria*: But *Constantine* divided it into three Provinces, viz. 1. *Palestina Prima*, 2. *Palestina Secunda*, and, 3. *Palestina Sabutaris*; the Metropolis of the first being *Cæsarea Palestina*, of the second *Samaria*, of the third *Jerusalem*. But this Division of *Constantine's* growing out of use, Geographers generally adhere to the former; beginning first with those Parts which lie on the other Side of *Jordan*, because first conquered and possessed by the House of *Israel*, who from thence found Entrance into all the rest; and come round to *Idumæa*, which last Province was added to the State of *Jury*.

1. *Peræa* is that Part of *Palestine* which lies between the River *Jordan* on the West, and the Mountains of *Arnon* on the East; which Mountains divide *Palestine* from *Syria* and *Arabia*, and extend from *Pella* in the North to *Petræa*, the chief Town of *Arabia-Petræa*, on the South; and was anciently the Habitation of the *Midianites*, *Moabites*, and *Ammonites*, and afterwards of the Tribes of *Gad* and *Reuben*.

2. *Ituræa*, bounded by *Cælo-Syria* on the North and East, by *Peræa* on the South, and by the River *Jordan* on the West. It was anciently possessed by the Kings of *Basan*; and *Og*, the last King, being defeated, and killed in Battle by the *Israelites*, the best Part of this Country was by *Moses* conferred on the half Tribe of *Manasseth*.

3. *Galilee* is bounded on the North by *Antelihanus*, on the East by the Tribe of *Manasseth*, on the South by *Samaria*, and on the West by *Phœnicia*; and was divided into the Upper *Galilee*, which was situate on the North, and called *Galilee of the Gentiles*; and Lower *Galilee* on the South,

South, where many of our Saviour's Miracles were wrought. The Tribes of *Asher*, *Naphthali*, and Part of the Tribe of *Dan* possessed the Upper *Galilee*, and *Zebulun* and *Issachar* the Lower *Galilee*.

4. *Samaria*, bounded on the North by *Galilee*, on the East by the River *Jordan*, on the South by *Judea Proper*, and on the West by the *Mediterranean Sea*. This Country was possessed by the other half Tribe of *Manasseh*, and the Tribe of *Ephraim*.

5. *Judea*, bounded on the North by *Samaria*, on the East by the *Dead-Sea*, on the South by *Idumæa*, and on the West by the *Mediterranean Sea*. They had but one Port upon that Sea for a great while, namely *Joppa*, the *Philistines* possessing the rest, from *Phœnicia* to *Idumæa*. This Tribe, or Province, communicated its Name to the greatest Part of *Palestine*, on their Return from the *Babylonish* Captivity. The Tribe of *Dan* possessed that Part of *Palestine* which was bounded by the Lands of *Ephraim* on the North, by those of *Benjamin* on the East, *Simeon* on the South, and the *Mediterranean* on the West. The Country allotted to the Tribe of *Simeon* was bounded by the Lands of the Tribe of *Dan* on the North, those of the Tribe of *Judah* on the East, by *Idumæa* on the South, and the *Philistines* on the West. The Territories of the Tribe of *Benjamin* were bounded by the Lands of *Ephraim* on the North, by the *Dead-Sea* on the East, by *Judea* on the South, and by the Country of *Dan* on the West; in which Country stood *Jerusalem*, the Capital of *Palestine*.

6. *Idumæa*, or the Land of *Edom*, is bounded by *Judea* on the North, by *Arabia Petræa* on the East and South, and by the *Mediterranean-Sea* on the West; so called from *Esau*, or *Edom*, the Father of the *Edomites*, by whom it was planted.

Original
of the
Jews.
Shem.
Heber.
Abraham.

The *Jews* are the Posterity of *Heber*, who descended from *Shem*, the eldest Son of *Noah*, from whom they obtained the Name of *Hebrews*. *Abraham*, one of the Descendants of *Heber*, was a Native of *Chaldea*, now called *Eyraca Arabic*, a District of *Arabia Deserta*, situate near the Mouth of the *Euphrates*, which discharges itself into the *Persian Gulph*. From hence he removed into *Mesopotamia*, called also *Padan-Aram* in Scripture, and at this Day *Diarbec*, situate in the Plains between the Rivers *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, of which the City of *Babylon* was the Capital. From *Mesopotamia* he removed, by the Direction of Heaven, into the Land of *Canaan*, or *Palestine*, which lies upon the *Levant-Sea*, frequently taken to be a Subdivision of *Syria*.

Syria. Here he lived in Tents, after the Manner of his Ancestors the *Arabs*, and became a powerful Prince, as may be inferred from his engaging and defeating three Kings at once. Here he had a Son, named *Ishmael*, by *Hagar* his *Ishmael*. Concubine, who was the Father of one of the most considerable Tribes of the *Arabs*, denominated *Ishmaelites* and *Hagarens*, who afterwards inhabited that Part of *Arabia* where *Abraham* their Ancestor was born.

Abraham had, some Years after, a Son, named *Isaac*, by *Isaac*. his Wife *Sarah*, to whose Posterity God was pleased to promise the Inheritance of the Land of *Canaan*, and to whom *Abraham*, at his Death, bequeathed all his Substance, except some small Portions he gave to his Children by his Concubines; but neither *Abraham*, nor his Son *Isaac*, had a House or Foot of Land in the Country promised to their Posterity.

Isaac marrying *Rebecca*, a near Relation; by her had Issue, *Esau*. *Esau* and *Jacob* at one Birth. *Esau* was the Father of the *Jacob*. *Edomites*, who inhabited the Country about Mount *Seir*, which lies between *Egypt* and *Palestine*, and is sometimes deemed a Part of *Palestine*; but *Jacob*, the younger Son, appears to have been the Favourite of Heaven, and the Promise of the Inheritance of the Land of *Canaan* was confirmed to him and his Posterity, and his Name changed to that of *Israel*, from whence his Descendants obtained the *Israel*. Name of *Israelites*. *Jacob*, during his Residence in *Canaan*, had twelve Sons, by his two Wives and his two Concubines, who are called the twelve Patriarchs, being the Fathers of the twelve Tribes. There does not seem to have been any Difference made between the Sons he had by his Wives and those he had by his Concubines; but all were esteemed Heirs to their Father, and to the Promises made of the Inheritance of *Canaan*.

The Patriarchs observing that their Brother *Joseph* was Joseph the favourite Son, and he having related a Dream, which intimated that he should one Day become their Sovereign, they sold him to some *Ishmaelites*, who were carrying Spices and other Merchandize of the East cross *Arabia* to *Egypt*, which is the first Account we have of the fine Spices being the Product of *India*.

The *Ishmaelites* sold *Joseph* to *Potiphar* the Captain of the King of *Egypt*'s Guard, who used him extreme kindly, and made him his Steward; and *Potiphar*'s Wife discovered still a greater Affection for the young *Hebrew*; who slighting her upon a Principle of Honour, or rather Religion, the Lady's Love was immediately converted into Rage and Hatred: She accused him to his Master of a Design upon her Chastity,

*Imprison-
ed.*

*Joseph
made
Vice-Roy
of Egypt.*

*Jacob and
his Sons
come into
Egypt.
A. M.
2298.*

*2513.
Their Pos-
terity de-
part from
Egypt.
Moses
their De-
liverer
dies.
Joshua
subdues Ca-
naan.*

Judges.

and caused him to be laid in Irons in a Dungeon ; where interpreting the Dreams of some of his Fellow-prisoners, and foretelling their Fate, he was recommended to the King to interpret a Dream of his Majesty's : Which gave such Satisfaction, and discovered such superior Talents, that he was advanced to the Post of Prime-Minister, or rather Vice-Roy of the Kingdom. The Famine he had foretold affecting not only *Egypt*, but the neighbouring Countries, and particularly the Land of *Canaan*, and *Joseph* having laid up Magazines of Corn in *Egypt* in the seven plentiful Years before the Famine, sufficient to supply that Kingdom and their Neighbours, *Jacob* sent his Sons down to *Egypt* to buy Corn ; where *Joseph* using them roughly at first, put them in mind of the Barbarity they had been guilty of towards him ; but at length he discovered himself, was reconciled to his Brothers, and sent for his Father and the rest of his Family into *Egypt* ; where *Jacob* died, and his Posterity were extremely well used by the *Egyptians*, so long as *Joseph*, their great Benefactor, was remembered ; but the Kings of *Egypt* observing afterwards that the *Hebrews* were increased to a very great Multitude, that they intermarried only with their own People, and were in every Respect a distinct Nation, whose Laws and Customs were very different from those of the *Egyptians*, and consequently were hated by them, they reduced the *Hebrews* to a State of Slavery, and ordered all the Male Children to be destroyed as soon as they were born ; and, among those, *Moses* was exposed on the Banks of the *Nile*, where an *Egyptian* Princess, one of *Pharaoh's* Daughters, finding him, had Compassion on the Infant, bred him up as her own Son, till he became qualified for the great Enterprize he afterwards engaged in, and became the Instrument in the Hand of Providence to deliver the *Israelites* from their Bondage, after several hundred Years Slavery, and conducted them through the *Red-Sea*, and the Desarts of *Arabia* (stiled the Wilderness in Scripture) to the Frontiers of *Canaan*, where *Moses* dying, was succeeded by *Joshua*, who made a Conquest of great Part of *Palestine*, and divided it among eleven of the Tribes, that of *Levi*, being appointed to serve in holy things, was dispersed through all the Tribes, and had an Inheritance set apart for their Maintenance in the Lands of every Tribe, besides the Perquisites that arose by the Sacrifices, and other sacred Rites.

After *Joshua's* Decease, they were governed by Judges, and Prophets appointed by Heaven ; but frequently relapsing into Idolatry, they became tributary to some of the neighbouring

bouring Nations, whose Yoke they at length threw off, and *Kings* proceeded to elect them Kings, of whom *Saul*, of the Tribe *elested*.
of *Benjamin*, was the first; and he being killed in a Battle *Saul*,
by the *Philistines*, *David*, of the Tribe of *Judab*, succeed- A. M.
ed to the Throne, having been anointed long before by the 2878.
Prophet *Samuel*. *David* was a victorious Prince, subdued *David*,
Edom, and very much enlarged his Dominions on every 2890.
Side; but still the *Phœnicians*, or *Philistines*, remained Ma-
sters of the Coast of the *Levant* Sea, and possessed those
important Cities of *Tyre* and *Sidon*, with whom *David* and
his Son *Solomon* lived in very good Terms, as appears by the *Solomon*,
King of *Tyre's* sending his Fleets with *Solomon's* through 2930.
the *Red-Sea* (on which the *Phœnicians* had several Ports, *First Voy-*
as well as on the *Levant*) to fetch Gold, Spices, and other *ages to In-*
Merchandize from *India*. *Solomon* having enjoyed a long and *dia*.
peaceful Reign, in which he built that celebrated Temple of
Jerusalem, was succeeded, on his Death, by his Son *Rebo-* *Rehobo-*
boam; from whom nine, or, as is usually said, ten, of the *am*, 2971.
twelve Tribes revolted; though part, if not all, of the Priests *Division of*
and *Levites*, it is evident, adhered to *Rehoboam*; for *Jero-* *the King-*
boam, who commanded the revolting Tribes, became an *dom*.
Idolater, and introduced the Superstition of the Heathen *Jeroboam*
Nations, though he still continued to worship the true *King of Is-*
God. *rael*.

Thus the Posterity of *Abraham* were divided into two distinct States, and had each their King, and were almost continually in a State of War with each other; and as this Country lies between *Syria* and *Egypt*, whose Kings were perpetually contending for the Dominion of it, it was sometimes subject to the one, and sometimes to the other. The Country inhabited by the ten Tribes was called the Kingdom of *Israel* and *Samaria*, and that inhabited by the two Tribes the Kingdom of *Judab*, of which Tribe their Kings usually were. The Genealogies of both their Kings will be added hereafter. I proceed now therefore to the History of these States, from the Time of their Captivity.

Sabacus King of *Ethiopia*, having made a Conquest of *Egypt*, advanced with his Army towards *Palestine*, with whom *Hosea* King of *Israel*, who was at this time a Vassal to *Salmanasser* King of *Affyria*, entered into a Confederacy against his Sovereign, in hopes of rendering his Kingdom independent of *Affyria*. Whereupon *Salmanasser* invaded *The Isra-*
and plundered *Hosea's* Kingdom, and laying Siege to *Sama-* *elites car-*
ria, its Capital, took it by Storm, after a Siege of three *ried into*
Years Duration, carrying away great Numbers of the Peo- *Captivity*.
ple, with their King *Hosea*, into Captivity; and *Hosea* dy-

ing in Prison, a final End was put to that Kingdom, *A. M.* 3287, and before Christ 717 Years, after it had continued 150 Years, computing from its being separated from that of *Judah*. *Ezarahaddon*, a future King of *Affyria*, carried away many more of the *Israelites* from *Samaria*, placing them in the Cities of *Media*, and bringing Colonies from thence, and other Parts of his Dominions, to supply the room of the ten Tribes which had been carried away from *Samaria*; but being informed that the Land was miserably afflicted by the Depredations of wild Beasts, and other Calamities, which were supposed to proceed from the idolatrous Worship lately introduced by the new Colonies he had sent thither, he ordered the Worship of the true God to be revived, which was still however blended and intermixed with Pagan Rites.

Senacherib Some Writers have spent a great deal of time in their Enquiries to discover what became of the ten Tribes after they were removed into *Media*; which Labour might have been spared upon a little Reflection: For as Colonies of the *Medes* were sent to supply the Places of the Captives of *Samaria*, so no doubt the *Samaritan* Captives supplied the Places of them that were brought from *Media* to *Samaria*, most of whom having been compelled to change their Religion, in the Course of a few Years could not be distinguished from the original Inhabitants. Some of the *Samaritans* also were left behind in their Country, to cultivate the Soil; and others, who escaped into *Judea*, became blended with the other two Tribes.

In the mean time, *Senacherib* King of *Affyria* invaded and plundered *Judea*, and then laid Siege to *Jerusalem*, which would infallibly have fallen into his Hands, if an Angel had not destroyed 150,000 of his Army in one Night; whereupon *Senacherib* returned to *Nineveh*, where he revenged himself upon the *Jews* and *Israelites* residing in and about that City; great Numbers of them were massacred every Day, their Bodies left exposed in the Fields, and no Man suffered to bury them. And the Cruelty of this Prince became so odious, even to his nearest Relations, that two of his Sons conspired against him, and killed him in the Temple, as he lay prostrate before the Image of his God *Nisroch*.

Holifer- *Nebuchadnezzar* also sent an Army to invade *Judea*; but
nes. his General *Holifernes* being killed by the celebrated *Judith*, his Army returned without effecting any thing considerable.
Jerusalem But *Nebuchadnezzar* the Second took *Jerusalem* in the Life-
taken. time of his Father, during the Reign of *Jeboiakim* King of *Judah*,

Judah, carrying great Numbers of the People Captive to *Babylon*. He thought fit, however, to continue *Jehoiakim* upon the Throne, in Consideration of his paying an annual Tribute; but he took from him his Treasure, and part of the sacred Vessels of the Temple, which he sent to *Babylon*. And from this Year, being the fourth of *Jehoiakim*, is dated the Captivity of the *Jews* at *Babylon*. The Prophet *Daniel* was carried away among the Captives, and *Ezekiel* some time afterwards.

Nebuchadnezzar succeeding to the *Assyrian* Throne, on *Nebuchadnezzar's* the Death of his Father, in his fourth Year dreamed that *Daniel* interpreted; whereupon that Prince preferred him to the chief Post in the Government, and advanced his three Friends also to very considerable Posts. *Jehoiakim*, in the mean time, revolting, the *Assyrian* Generals marched against him, and it is probable he was killed in an Engagement with them; for we hear no more of him, than that he was succeeded by his Son *Jechonias*, who being besieged in *Jerusalem*, *Nebuchadnezzar* came into the Camp in Person, and took that City a second time, plundering the King's Palace and Temple of all the Remainder of its Treasure and Utensils, which he sent away to *Babylon*. He took also King *Jechonias*, his Mother, Wives, and Family, with all the chief Officers of the Kingdom, and sent them to *Babylon*, and set *Zedekiah* upon the Throne, the Uncle of the late King; who entering into Alliance with *Pharaoh* King of *Egypt*, and renouncing his Allegiance to the King of *Babylon*, *Nebuchadnezzar*, having defeated *Pharaoh*, took *Jerusalem* by Storm, caused *Zedekiah's* two Sons to be killed before his Face, and then put out their Father's Eyes, and carried him to *Babylon* in Chains. He also burnt and plundered the Temple, and demolished the Fortifications. It was after this successful Expedition that he caused the golden Image to be set up in the Plains of *Babylon*, and commanded all Nations to fall down and worship it, for the refusing which, the three young *Jews* mentioned in the Bible were commanded to be burnt, and were miraculously preserved; which gave this Prince a very high Opinion of the *Jews*, whom he admitted to his Councils, and to the best Places in the Government. They were at this time very numerous in *Babylon*, and seemed to have lost little by their Captivity; they lived in as much Splendour here as they did in their own Country.

In the first Year of the Reign of *Cyrus*, who laid the Foundation of the *Persian* Empire, the seventy Years of

*The Jews
return
from their
Captivity.*

the Jewish Captivity expired, when *Cyrus* published an Edict, permitting them to return to *Jerusalem*. He restored at the same time to the *Jews* all the rich Vessels of the Temple, which *Nebuchadnezzar* had brought from *Jerusalem*, and placed in the Temple of *Baal*; and soon after, some thousands of the *Babylonish Jews*, with *Zerobabel* at their Head, marched to take Possession of their Country. The *Samaritans*, jealous of their Glory, would have had a Share in this great Work; and, upon Pretence that they worshipped the God of *Israel* (though they blended his Worship with that of their false Gods) they besought *Zerobabel* to permit them to rebuild the Temple of God with him. But the Children of *Judah*, who abhorred their mixed Worship, rejected the Proposal. The *Samaritans*, provoked by this Repulse, thwarted their Design by all manner of Artifices and Outrages: However, the Temple was finished in the Reign of *Darius Hystaspes* (supposed to be the *Ahasuerus* of *Esther*) after many Interruptions caused by the *Samaritans*. An irreconcilable Hatred hereupon commenced between the two Nations; nothing could be more opposite than *Jerusalem* and *Samaria*.

*The Temple
rebuilt.*

*Walls of
Jerusalem
rebuilt.*

Artaxerxes Longimanus protected the *Jews*, and permitted *Nehemiah* to rebuild *Jerusalem*, with its Walls. This Decree differs from the Decree of *Cyrus*; for that of *Cyrus* related only to the Temple, whereas this extended to the City and its Fortifications. *Nehemiah* conducted the Work with great Prudence and Resolution, notwithstanding the Opposition made by the *Samaritans*, *Arabs*, and *Ammonites*; the People exerted themselves, and *Eliahib* the High-Priest animated them by his Example.

*The Scrip-
tures cor-
rected and
enlarged
by Ezra.
The He-
brew Lan-
guage al-
tered.*

It was about the time of the Rebuilding of *Jerusalem* that *Ezra* put the sacred Books of Scripture in order, and composed the two Books of Chronicles; to which he added the History of his own Time, which was finished by *Nehemiah*. And now the *Hebrew* Tongue ceased to be common; for during the Captivity, and afterwards, by the Commerce the *Jews* had with the *Chaldeans*, they learnt the *Chaldaic* Language, which very much resembled their own, and had almost the same Idiom; for this Reason they changed the ancient Figure, and wrote the *Hebrew* with *Chaldaic* Characters. From this time we find the Holy Scripture among the *Jews* only in *Chaldaic* Characters; but the *Samaritans* ever retained the ancient way of writing it, and their Posterity have persevered in that Practice to this Day, and by that means preserved to us the Pentateuch, which is called

called *Samaritan*, in ancient *Hebrew* Characters, such as are found on Medals, and on ancient Monuments.

When the *Seleucidae* had obtained the Dominion of *Syria*, they suffered the *Jews* to live peaceably under their Government for some time; and, besides those who inhabited *Judea*, there were Multitudes of *Jews* dispersed all over the *Syrian* Dominions in *Asia*, who every where enjoyed the same Liberties and Privileges as the other Subjects of that Crown; and *Ptolemy*, the Son of *Lagus*, had already settled them in *Egypt*. Under his Son *Ptolemy Philadelphus* their Scriptures were turned into *Greek*, and then appeared that celebrated Version called the *Septuagint*. It was performed by seventy old Men, whom *Eleazar* the High-Priest had sent to the King, at his Desire. Some are of opinion that they translated no more than the *Pentateuch*, and that the rest of the sacred Books were afterwards put into *Greek* for the Use of the *Jews* that were dispersed over *Egypt* and *Greece*, where they forgot not only their own ancient Language, which was the *Hebrew*, but also the *Chaldaic*, which they had learned in their Captivity. They formed to themselves a *Greek*, mixed with *Hebraisms*, which is called the *Hellenistic* Language; and in this both the *Septuagint* and the whole *New Testament* are written. During this Dispersion of the *Jews*, their Temple was celebrated over the whole Earth, and all the Eastern Kings presented their Offerings at their Altar.

It is not to be conceived how vastly the *Jews* increased, as well during the Captivity as after it; great Part of the Inhabitants of those celebrated Capitals of *Babylon*, *Antioch*, and *Alexandria* were *Jews*, and many of them very wealthy Citizens. Those who inhabited *Jerusalem*, and the rest of *Judea* were governed by a Sanhedrim, or national Council, consisting of a hundred Members of the principal Families, of which the High-Priest was President only at first; but at length possessed the supreme Authority. This Office too was hereditary for some time after their Return from Captivity; but was afterwards elective, and very unworthy Men frequently obtained the Office by Bribery; the most deserving were often turned out, to make room for the worst of Men. As there were frequent Wars between the Kings of *Syria* and *Egypt* for the Possession of this Country, the *Jews* could scarce avoid being involved in them; and if they happened to adhere to the unfortunate Side, became very great Sufferers; but many of their Misfortunes arose from the Ambition or Covetousness of their own Magistrates and Priests. *Simon*, a *Jew*, who was Governor of the

The Jews very numerous in Syria, and in Egypt. Scriptures translated into Greek.

The Jews multiply amazingly. Governed by the High-Priest, and the Sanhedrim. The Priesthood hereditary. Obtained by Bribery afterwards. Treacherous to their own Nation.

Temple, to revenge himself upon *Onias* the High-Priest, who had opposed his Encroachments, informed *Seleucus* King of *Syria*, under whose Protection the *Jews* then lived, that there were vast Treasures repositied in the Temple, which were not designed for the providing Sacrifices, and that he might seize on them all, without Prejudice to any one. The King thereupon sent *Heliodorus* his Prime-Minister to *Jerusalem*, to demand those Treasures, and bring them to *Antioch*.

The King of Syria demands the sacred Treasure in the Temple.

Disappointed by a Miracle.

Heliodorus arriving at *Jerusalem*, in order to execute his Commission, the High-Priest *Onias* represented, that those Treasures were deposited there as a Trust, and were appropriated to the Maintenance of Widows and Orphans, and could not be applied to other Uses; that they were deposited in that sacred Place, the Holiness whereof it was presumed would secure them from being violated. This Treasure consisted of four hundred Talents of Silver, amounting to fifty thousand Pounds Sterling, and two hundred Talents of Gold, being about three hundred thousand Pounds Sterling, which *Heliodorus* insisted on being delivered to him; and on the High-Priest's Refusal, *Heliodorus* came to the Temple with his Guards to take it away by Force; at which the Citizens were in the greatest Consternation, and assembling before the Temple, with Priests at their Head, prostrated themselves before the Altar, beseeching God to preserve the sacred Deposit, and not suffer that holy Place to be prophaned; and when *Heliodorus* with his Soldiers were about to break open the Treasury, an Apparition, in the Form of a Man on Horseback, opposed them, and drove them out of the Temple, at which they were so terrified, that they lost their Senses; and *Heliodorus* himself was so beaten, that he was in a manner left for dead, till *Onias* the High-Priest recovered him by his Prayers; and *Heliodorus* thereupon sacrificed, and gave Thanks for his Recovery.

In the Reign of *Antiochus Epiphanes*, who succeeded *Seleucus*, *Jason*, the Brother of *Onias* the High-Priest, treacherously supplanted him, by giving *Antiochus* upwards of four hundred Talents for that high Office, which, while he possessed, he subverted the Religion of his Ancestors, and brought innumerable Calamities on the *Jewish* Nation.

Jason was served in much the same manner he had served *Onias*; for sending his Brother *Menelaus* to *Antioch* to pay the usual Tribute, *Menelaus* purchased the High-Priesthood, by advancing three hundred Talents more than his Brother *Jason* had given for it; which occasioned great Riots and Disorders

Disorders at *Jerusalem*, some of the People siding with *Jason*, and others with *Menelaus*; but most of them adhered to the Interest of old *Onias*, who was a Man of unblemished Character; whereupon his Enemies caused him to be murdered.

Antiochus invaded *Egypt* soon after, and there being a Rumour that he was killed in that War, *Jason* looked upon it as a proper time to recover the High-Priesthood again; and assembling a Body of Soldiers, marched to *Jerusalem*, and, by the Assistance of his Friends within, made himself Master of the City, drove out *Menelaus*, and massacred all that opposed him. *Antiochus* apprehending the Insurrection *Antiochus* in *Judea* to be general, returned with his Army from *Egypt*, *chus takes* laid Siege to *Jerusalem*, took it by Storm, and abandoning *Jerusalem* by it to the Fury of the Soldiers for three Days, there were *Storm.* eighty thousand of the *Jews* murdered, and as many thousand of them made Slaves, forty thousand of whom were sold to Foreigners. *Antiochus* proceeded to plunder and pollute *Plunders* the Temple, entering that sacred Place called the Holy of *the Temple,* Holies, whither the treacherous *Menelaus* led him. He carried away not only the Treasure, but the Altar of Incense, the Table for the Shew-Bread, the seven Branches of the Sanctuary, and all the other Vases and Utenfils of Gold, with the rich Gifts and Presents that had been made to the Temple by foreign Princes: After which, he appointed *Philip* Governor of *Judea*, a most infamous cruel Officer; *Andronicus*, who was such another, was constituted Governor of *Samaria*; and *Menelaus*, the wickedest of the three, he restored the High-Priesthood, with the Civil Authority at this Time annexed to that Office, and loaded with the Plunder of *Egypt* and *Jerusalem*, returned to *Antioch*.

Antiochus invading *Egypt* a third time, had made himself Master of the whole Kingdom almost, when the *Romans* compelled him to abandon it again, and restore the Kingdom to *Ptolemy*: Whereupon he returned through *Antiochus* *Judea* again, determining to wreak his Vengeance on the *massacres* *Jews*. He sent *Apollonius* with twenty thousand Men to de- *the Jews* *at* *Jerusalem,* who pretending to come as a Friend, was *and* admitted into the City; but on the following Sabbath, when he knew the *Jews* would scruple making a Defence, he did, according to his Orders, massacre every Man in the City, and took the Women and Children Prisoners, in order to sell them for Slaves; and having plundered the City, set it on fire, and burnt it to the Ground; the Temple was polluted by the Murder of those who resorted to it to worship *God,*

God, and an entire Stop was put to the Morning and Evening Sacrifices.

*Commands
all People
to renounce
their Re-
ligion.*

When *Antiochus* arrived at *Antioch*, he published a Decree, commanding all the Nations in his Dominions to renounce their respective Religions, and to worship no other Gods but those he himself worshipped, and dispatched Messengers into every Province to see his Commands executed. The *Pagans* made no Resistance to these Innovations; and the *Samaritans*, it is said, were so far from disobeying the King's Orders, that they petitioned the King, that their Temple built on *Mount Gerizim* might be consecrated to the *Grecian Jupiter*, and be called by his Name; and it was accordingly dedicated to *Jupiter*: The *Jews* also, many of them, complied with the King's Edict; Temples were every where erected, and Idols placed in them, and the People commanded to sacrifice to those Idols; but *Mattathias* of the *Sacerdotal Race*, a venerable old Man, and descended from *Asmoneus*, declared against this Idol Worship, with his five Sons, viz. *Joannan*, surnamed *Gaddis*, *Simon*, surnamed *Thasi*, *Judas*, surnamed *Maccabeus*, *Eleazar*, surnamed *Abaron*, and *Jonathan*, called *Apphan*.

*The Mac-
cabees re-
fuse to
change
their Reli-
gion, and
fight in
Arms.*

Mattathias being required by *Apelles* the King's Commissary, to worship the Idols that were erected, and promised great Preferment, if he obeyed the King's Orders, openly declared, that he and his Sons, and their Relations, would adhere to the Worship of the true God, though all the rest of the Inhabitants of the Earth should obey the King's Decree; and seeing a *Jew* going up to sacrifice to an Idol, he fell upon him, and killed him; and having assembled a great Number of his Friends, killed the King's Commissary, inviting all that were zealous for their Law to follow him to the Mountains, whither he retired; and Multitudes of the faithful *Jews* resorted to him, who agreed to defend themselves to the last, though they should be attacked on the Sabbath Day, having divested themselves of that Piece of Superstition which prompted them to offer their Throats to an Enemy, which should fall upon them on the Sabbath. *Antiochus* receiving Advice, that a greater Opposition was made to his Decree in *Judea* than in any other Province, went thither in Person, where he began a most terrible Persecution against those who refused to renounce their Religion, and sacrifice to his Idols. Among the Objects of his Fury was *Eleazar*, a Doctor of the Law, of ninety Years of Age, who was tortured in the most cruel Manner, till he expired: Seven Brothers, one after another, also en-
dured

dured the Torture, in the Presence of their Mother, who *Many* encouraged them bravely to persevere in the Worship of the *Jews tortured, to* true God, and not become Idolaters, notwithstanding the *make them* Variety of Tortures that were inflicted on them; and endured the same afterwards herself, glorying that she was *change their Religion.* thought worthy, with her Children, to die a Martyr to her Religion.

One kind of Torture which they were exercised with, was the frying their Bodies in brazen Pans, after their Limbs had been cut off: And these inhuman Butcheries *Antiochus* chose to be a Spectator of, which little suited with the Title he had taken of *Epiphanes*, or *The Most Illustrious*. Old *Mattathias* in the mean time finding his Life was drawing near a Period, called his five Sons to him, and exhorted them to fight valiantly for their Religion against their Persecutors, appointing *Judas Maccabeus* their Captain, and then expired: Whereupon *Judas*, after the Solemnization of his Father's Funeral was over, levied an Army out of the faithful *Jews*; and having fortified and garisoned the neighbouring Towns, attacked *Apollonius*, Governor of *Samarina*, defeated and killed him in the Field of Battle; and *Seron*, another of *Antiochus's* Generals, met with the same Fate; which provoked the Tyrant to that Degree, that he immediately assembled a numerous Army, declaring he would entirely extirpate the *Jewish* Nation; but Insurrections happening at the same time in *Armenia* and *Persia*, which threatened the Loss of those great Provinces, he divided his Army into two Parts, marching in Person at the Head of that designed for the East, and detaching *Lyfias* his General with the other, which consisted of near fifty thousand Men, into *Judea*, against *Judas Maccabeus*, whose Army, if we may credit the Writer of the *Maccabean* History, did not amount to six thousand Men; however, *Judas* defeated *Lyfias*, and the Generals who acted under him, in *Macca-* three several Battles; and after the last Victory, made him- *beus*, self Master of *Jerusalem*, purified the Sanctuary, and restor- *takes Je-* ed the Worship of God in the Temple. *rusalem.*

Antiochus was in *Persia* when he received Advice of the Defeats of his Generals in *Judea*, and the Loss of *Jerusalem*, and immediately ordered his Army to march with all Expedition thither; but was struck with a loathsome Disease, and almost eaten up with Worms in his Return. He was so sensible that he suffered this by the Judgment of God for his Tyranny and Cruelty to the *Jewish* Nation, that he made Vows, it is said, to become a Worshipper of the true God, if he would spare his Life; but he died before

before it could be known whether his Repentance was sincere.

Antiochus Eupater succeeding his Father in the Kingdom of *Syria*, raised an Army of 80,000 Men, of which the Command was given to *Lysias*, who invading *Judea* again, was defeated again by *Judas Maccabeus*, and lost great Part of his Army; whereupon a Treaty was set on Foot, and a Peace concluded between the *Syrians* and *Jews*, the *Syrians* granting the *Jews* a Toleration in all their Dominions, and agreeing, that *Judea* should be governed by its own Laws and Magistrates; but this Peace did not continue long.

Timotheus, one of the Generals of *Antiochus*, invaded *Judea* again, with an Army of 140,000 Men, and was defeated by *Judas*, losing thirty thousand of his Men; whereupon the King himself advanced at the Head of another numerous Army against the *Jews*, and was defeated; however the King recruiting his Army a third Time, gained a Victory over *Judas Maccabeus*, who was compelled by numbers to quit the Field; *Antiochus* then laid Siege to *Jerusalem*, but receiving Advice of an Insurrection in *Persia*, thought fit to come to Terms with the *Jews*, which having sworn, and thereupon being admitted into the City, he demolished their Fortifications before he retired: The *Jews* lived at Peace however, until King *Demetrius* ascended the *Syrian* Throne. *Alcinus*, whom *Antiochus Eupater* had made High Priest of the *Jews*, and had been deposed by them as an unqualified Person for profaning the Priesthood, by admitting the *Pagan* Rites to be intermixed with the *Jewish* Worship, applied himself to *Demetrius*, to be restored, and prevailed on him to send an Army to compel the *Jews* to receive him for their High Priest. The first Army commanded by *Alcinus* and *Bachis* was defeated by *Judas Maccabeus*, and a second Army, consisting of 35,000 Men, were all cut to pieces by him.

Judas applies to the Romans for Protection against the Syrians.

Judas however, finding his Country perpetually exposed to the Invasions of the *Syrians*, sent Ambassadors to *Rome*, to desire the Protection of the Senate; who passed a Decree, declaring the *Jews* Friends of *Rome*, and sent a Letter to *Demetrius*, requiring him not to molest the *Jews*: But before the Ambassadors returned, *Judas* was dead; for *Demetrius* receiving Advice of the Defeat of *Nicanor*, had raised an Army, and surprised *Judas*, when he had not more than three thousand Men with him; and though *Judas* defended himself very bravely, against a Force infinitely superior to him,

him, he was defeated, and killed in the Engagement, and *He is killed* was succeeded in the Government by *Jonathan* his Brother. and *succeeded by* *Demetrius* receiving the Letter in Favour of the *Jews* from the Roman Senate soon after the last Battle, let that Nation remain at quiet for some little Time.

Onias, the Son of *Onias* III. being disappointed of the High Priesthood, after the Death of his Uncle *Menelaus*, retired into *Egypt*, where he became a great Favourite of *Ptolemy Philometor*, and of his Queen *Cleopatra*, and obtained Permission of them to build a Temple for the *Jews* *builds a* in *Egypt* like that of *Jerusalem*, representing, that it would *a Temple* bring over the whole Nation of the *Jews* to the *Egyptian* Interest against *Antiochus* the Syrian King; which he effected by the Bounty of *Ptolemy*, and obtained also a Grant of the High-Priesthood in that Temple to him and his Heirs for ever; and the *Jews* making some Difficulty to sacrifice in this Temple, it being prohibited by the Law of *Moses*, to offer Sacrifices in any other Place, but at the Temple in *Jerusalem*; he produced a Passage in the Prophet *Isaiah*, *That there should be an Altar erected to the Lord in the midst of the Land of Egypt; and that there they should offer their Sacrifices and Oblations*; *Isaiah* xix. 18. which, it is said, induced the *Jews* to bring their Offerings thither. *where Sacrifices are offered, as at Jerusalem.*

In the mean time, *Tryphon*, who usurped the Throne of *Syria*, expressing a great Friendship to *Jonathan*, General of the *Maccabees*, who had done him considerable Service in his Wars, finding he would not enter into some wicked Measures he was about to take, surprised *Jonathan*, made him Prisoner, and afterwards put him to Death; whereupon his Brother *Simon* was declared General or Prince of the *Jewish* Nation; and sending Ambassadors to *Rome*, all the Treaties made with his Predecessors by the Senate were renewed and confirmed, and the Senate wrote to *Ptolemy* King of *Egypt*, *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, the King of *Syria*, and all the Princes of *Asia*, on whom they had any Influence, to declare, that the *Jews* were their Friends and Allies, requiring them not to undertake any Enterprize to their Prejudice. *Antiochus*, who was now upon the Throne of *Syria*, however, sent *Cendameus* at the Head of an Army to invade *Judea*, which was defeated by *John* and *Judas* the Sons of *Simon*; but *Simon* being afterwards treacherously killed, *Simon* with two of his Sons, *Hyrchanus* his third Son was proclaimed High-Priest, and Prince of the *Jews*. *Antiochus*, upon the Death of *Simon*, made Preparations for invading *Judea* again, in order to reunite it to *Syria*; and *Hyrchanus* not being in a Condition to make Head against him in the Field, *Jonathan killed and succeeded by Simon.* *killed, and succeeded by Hyrcanus.*

Jerusalem
taken by
Antio-
chus.

Field, was obliged to shut himself up in *Jerusalem*, where he endured a very long Siege, which he sustained with incredible Valour, but found himself at length under a Necessity of capitulating: The Ministers of *Antiochus* advised him to take Advantage of their wretched Situation, and extirpate the *Jewish* Nation, who were Enemies to all Mankind, looking upon all other People as Barbarians, refusing to eat or converse with them, and esteeming themselves defiled even by the Touch of a Foreigner. *Diodorus Siculus* and *Josephus* were of Opinion, that it was purely owing to the Generosity of *Antiochus* that the *Jewish* Nation was not entirely destroyed at this time. He insisted, indeed, that the *Jews* should surrender their Arms, and demolish the Fortifications of *Jerusalem*; but granted that they should still be governed by their own Laws and Magistrates, on paying a moderate Tribute; for the Performance of which Treaty the *Jews* agreed to give Hostages, one of whom was the Brother of *Hyrcanus*. In the War which succeeded between the *Syrians* and the *Parthians*, *Hyrcanus* joined the Forces of *Antiochus* with a good Body of *Jewish* Troops, and had his Share in three Victories, which *Antiochus* obtained in the East, and returned to *Judea* with great Honour at the End of the Year; but the rest of the *Syrian* Army being dispersed in their Quarters on the Frontiers of *Parthia*, were all cut off by the *Parthians*, and the People of the Country, who united against them, and surprised them in their Quarters, King *Antiochus* himself being massacred among the rest. Upon the Death of *Antiochus*, *Hyrcanus* took the Advantage of the Civil Wars which ensued among the Competitors for that Throne, extending his Dominions over Part of *Syria*, *Phœnicia*, and *Arabia*, and rendered himself an independent and absolute Prince, throwing off entirely his Subjection to *Syria*. He proceeded to besiege *Samaria*, and the *Syrians* coming to the Relief of that City, he defeated their Army, and returning to the Siege again, he took *Samaria* by Storm, after it had held out a Year, and demolished the whole City, as well as its Walls; and it lay in Ruins until *Herod* rebuilt it, and gave it the Name of *Sebastos*.

The Jews
an independ-
ent Na-
tion again.

Civil Dis-
sensions
among the
Jews.

Hyrcanus, notwithstanding his Successes in the Field, met with some Disturbance at home from the *Pharisees*, who pretended to greater Purity than other Men, and proposed the deposing *Hyrcanus* from the High Priesthood, on an Insinuation that his Mother was not a *Jewess*, but a Captive, in a State of Servitude; which had it been true, their
Law

Law would have excluded him from the Priesthood ; and though this was a false Suggestion, it gave him a great deal of Trouble to convince the People of the Falsity of it ; and he was so provoked at the Attempt to depose him, that he left the Sect of the *Pharisees*, of which he had been hitherto, and went over to the *Saducees* ; of which Sect were most of the principal Magistrates and Officers of State. Not long after this Dispute *Hyrcanus* died, having been High Priest, and Prince of the *Jews* twenty-nine Years : He left five Sons, viz. 1. *Aristobulus*. 2. *Antigonius*, 3. *Alexander Jannæus*. 4. His Name unknown, and, 5. *Abfolom*.

Aristobulus, the eldest, succeeded him both in the Priest-
hood and the Civil Government, and assumed the Stile as well as the State of a King, being the first of their Princes who had borne the Royal Title since their Captivity : He seems to have been a tyrannical and cruel Prince ; for he imprisoned his Mother for pretending to share with him in the Administration, though she was appointed to be joined with him in the Government by his Father *Hyrcanus* ; and denying her all Manner of Nourishment, she died in Prison : He seemed very fond of his Brother *Antigonius*, and advanced him to the highest Posts, in the Beginning of his Reign ; but he was afterwards unfortunately put to death by a Mistake in the Orders *Aristobulus* had given ; and his other three Brothers were imprisoned by him for Life.

Aristobulus proceeded to extend his Dominions by invading *Ituræa* ; and having subdued the greatest Part of that Country, he compelled the Inhabitants to profess *Judaism*, as his Father had served the *Idumæans* some Time before, banishing all those that refused to comply with him ; and they were from this Time incorporated with the *Jews*, conforming both to their Civil and Ecclesiastical Government. This Country of *Ituræa* was a Part of *Calefryria*, on the North-East of *Judea*, lying between the Tribe of *Manasses*, beyond *Jordan*, and the Territory of *Damascus*. On the Return of *Aristobulus* from *Ituræa*, he left his Brother *Antigonius* to finish the War, who being high in the People's Esteem, the Queen and her Creatures envying his Popularity, were perpetually accusing him of Disaffection, and endeavouring to alienate the King's Affection from him ; and when he returned victorious from the War in a Kind of Triumph, as the People were celebrating the Feast of Tabernacles, he went directly to the Temple, attended by his Guards completely armed, which was represented to the King, already prejudiced against him, as an undeniable Proof

Proof of his Ambition ; whereupon the King sent him Orders to disarm himself, and attend him immediately ; and if he refused, the King's Guards were ordered to fall upon him, and kill him. The Person sent with these Orders being a Creature of the Queen's, altered the Message, and told *Antigonus* the King desired to see him completely armed ; whereupon *Antigonus* appearing before him in his Armour, the King's Guards fell upon him, and deprived him of his Life. *Aristobulus* no sooner discovered the Artifices that had been used to prejudice him against his Brother ; but he became inconsolable for his Death ; and tormented with Remorse for this Murder, and that of his Mother, he condemned himself to so severe a Penance, that it put an End to his Life : Whereupon *Salome*, the Widow of the late King, released his three Brothers ; and *Alexander Jannæus*, the eldest of them, was proclaimed King ; but his next Brother aspiring to the Crown, he put him to death.

Alexander
his Accession.

Alexander began his Reign with the Invasion of some of his Neighbours Territories on the North-East of *Jordan*, and was at first very successful ; but on his Return towards *Jerusalem*, he was surpris'd by the Enemy, who being joined by the People of *Gaza*, gave him a signal Defeat, which obliged him to remain quiet for some Time ; but having recruited his Forces, in order to revenge the Affront he had received from the Citizens of *Gaza*, he laid Siege to their City, which lies upon the Coast of the *Levant* ; and after a Siege of twelve Months, took the City, or rather it was betrayed to him by *Lyfimachus*, the Governor's Brother ; and it was at first conjectured, that *Alexander* would have used the Citizens with Humanity ; but he no sooner had possessed all the Posts, and introduced great Part of his Army, than he fell upon the *Gazites*, determined to put them all to the Sword ; whereupon the People of *Gaza* became desperate, and killed almost as many of the *Jews* as *Alexander* did of the Citizens : However, his Numbers prevailing, scarce a Man in *Gaza* escaped his Fury ; and after that terrible Slaughter, he set fire to the City, demolished the Works, and leaving it a Heap of Ruins, returned to *Jerusalem*, where the *Pharisees*, the most inveterate Enemies to his House, insulted him to a very great Degree : Whereupon, being highly provoked, he fell upon them with his Guards, and killed 6000 of them ; and apprehending the Disaffection of the People to be general, he introduced foreign Forces, being continually surrounded by them ; and thinking himself much safer in his Army than in the Walls of *Jerusalem*, he was continually engaged in Wars

Wars with his Neighbours, against whom he exercised no less Cruelties than he did on his own Subjects. Having taken a City which made a brave Defence, he brought 800 of the Citizens Prisoners to *Jerusalem*, whom he caused to be crucified in one Day; and the Throats of their Wives and Children to be cut before their Faces: And to shew that he was destitute of all Compassion and Humanity, he ordered this Execution to be done in his Sight, while he was revelling and feasting with his Favourites and Concubines. It is computed he did not destroy less than 50,000 of his own Subjects, whom he apprehended to be disaffected to his Government; and after a Reign of twenty-seven Years, died in his Bed, leaving two Sons, viz. *Hyrcanus* and *Aristobulus*, but appointed his Wife *Alexandra* to succeed him, empowering her to dispose of the Crown at her Death to which of her Sons she saw fit; and advised her, at the same time, to declare herself of the Sect of the *Pharisees*, and be governed by them as the only Means to establish herself on the Throne: For though he had been able to keep them under during his Reign, he foresaw they were too considerable a Faction to be kept in Subjection in a Female Reign. *Alexandra* therefore pretended great Friendship for the *Pharisees*, and was intirely governed by their Councils; whereupon they seemed to have forgot that Enmity they had so long professed against the late King and his House. They also consented to his Son *Hyrcanus* enjoying the Office of High Priest, but persecuted with great Violence all that had appeared in the Interest of the Court in the late Reign; which the Queen durst not oppose for fear of hazarding the Loss of her Crown: Whereupon the Friends of the late King, with her second Son at their Head, addressed the Queen to put an End to these Persecutions, which they suffered for no other Cause than their Attachment to the last King, or else permit them to leave the Country; but the Queen hit upon a middle Way: She removed them from *Jerusalem* into Garrison Towns, where they might defend themselves, and be protected by her Troops; by which she gained two Points; 1. their Enemies durst not attack them in those Fortresses. 2. They would always be a Body of Men on which she could rely, in case a Rupture should happen between her and the *Pharisees*. *Alexandra* dying not long after, her two Sons *Aristobulus* and *Hyrcanus* contended for the Crown; but the Army and People being weary of the tyrannical Government of the *Pharisees*, adhered to *Aristobulus*, who was invested with the Office of High Priest, as well as King; and *Hyrcanus* was contented

Hyrcanus to lead a private Life for some Time, till *Pompey* set him up-
advanced on the Throne, having been let into the City of *Jerusalem*
by Pom- by the Faction of *Hyrcanus* : Whereupon the Party of *Aristo-*
pey. *bulus* possessed themselves of the Temple, and fortified it ;
 but it was taken by Storm, and the Blood of many of the Defen-
 dants mingled with the Sacrifices the Priests were then offering.
Pompey, with several of his general Officers, afterwards en-
 tered the Temple, and even the *Sanctum Sanctorum* ; after
 which they observe he never prospered ; but he never touched
 the Treasures, or rich Vessels in the Temple, which were
 dedicated to the Service of God ; but *Craffus* was not so
 scrupulous ; for taking *Jerusalem* in his Way, on his March
 against the *Parthians*, he seized all that was valuable in the
 Temple to his own Use.

Hyrcanus was placed on the Throne by *Pompey*, on Con-
 dition of his paying an annual Tribute to *Rome* ; but Part of
 his Dominions were taken from him, and annexed to *Syria*.
Julius Caesar afterwards confirmed *Hyrcanus* on the Throne,
 and constituted *Antipater* (his Prime Minister) Procurator
 of *Judea* ; and *Antipater* thereupon gave the Government of
Jerusalem to *Phasaël*, his eldest Son, and the Government
 of *Galilee* to *Herod* his second Son. *Caesar* also permitted *Hyr-*
canus and *Antipater* to build the Walls of *Jerusalem*, which
Pompey had demolished ; but *Pacorus*, Son of *Orodes*, So-
 vereign of *Parthia*, invading *Syria*, soon after made him-
 self Master of *Jerusalem* ; and having taken *Hyrcanus*
 Prisoner, together with *Phasaël* and *Herod*, *Antipater's*
 Sons, he advanced *Antigonus*, the Son of *Aristobulus*, to the
 Throne of *Judea* ; and delivering *Hyrcanus* and *Phasaël* in-
 to the Hands of *Antiochus*, he cut off the Ears of *Hyrcanus*,
 to disqualify him for the Priesthood. *Phasaël* killed himself
 in Prison, but *Herod* was so fortunate as to make his Escape
 out of *Jerusalem* before the *Parthians* possessed themselves
 of it, and retired into *Egypt* ; from whence he went to
Rome, where his Patron *Marc Anthony*, being in great
 Power, advanced him to the Throne of *Judea* ; which
 Kingdom was confirmed to him by the Senate : Whereupon
 he returned to *Judea* ; and though the *Parthians* were re-
 tired from thence, the *Jews* adhered so firmly to King *Arif-*
tobulus, on account of his being of the *Asmonean* Race,
 that they refused to acknowledge *Herod* their King : Where-
 upon he assembled an Army, which being joined by the
Romans, amounted to 60,000 Men, a Force much superior
 to that of *Antigonus*, who was compelled to quit the Field,
 and shut himself up in *Jerusalem* ; where being besieged by
Herod

Herod
made King
by the
Romans.

Herod and the *Romans* six Months, the City was taken by Storm, and King *Antigonus* made Prisoner; he was afterwards tied to a Stake, whipped and executed like a common Malefactor by the *Romans*: An Indignity they had never offered to a crowned Head before.

This was the last Prince of the *Asmonæan* Family, which had governed *Judea* 120 Years, computing from the Reign of *Judas Maccabeus*. The Asmonæan Race extinguished.

Herod, who succeeded him, being an *Idumæan*, advanced to that Throne by the Favour of the *Romans*, was by no Means acceptable to the *Jews*, though he had married the beautiful *Mariamne*, Grand-daughter of *Hyrchanus* the High Priest, in hopes of removing their Prejudices. *Herod* had adhered to *Brutus* and *Cassius* in their Wars with *Marc Anthony*; and on their being defeated seemed to dread that General's Resentment, especially when he was summoned to appear before him on his Arrival in *Asia*; but he so softened *Anthony* by the Presents he made him, that he was not only confirmed in his Kingdom, but had it much enlarged by the Addition of several Provinces, which lay contiguous to *Palestine*; however, as *Herod* was in suspense for some Time, how that great *Roman* might deal with him, he committed the beautiful *Mariamne* to the Care of his Uncle *Joseph* till he returned, with Orders, 'if he miscarried, to put *Mariamne* to death, not for any Misconduct, but because he could not bear to think another Man should enjoy her. And this Secret the Prince's drew out of her Keeper *Joseph* before *Herod* returned: Nor did she fail to reproach the King for the cruel Orders he had given; whereupon *Herod* concluded there must have been some extraordinary Familiarity between his Queen and his Uncle *Joseph*, or he would never have communicated his Orders to her, and thereupon ordered *Joseph* to be put to death. *Herod* having been very serviceable to *Anthony* in his Wars with *Augustus* afterwards; was summoned by that Prince also, to give an Account of his Conduct; and being obliged to leave *Palestine* a second Time to attend *Augustus*, he repeated the like Orders concerning *Mariamne* he had given before to the two Officers, in whose Custody he left her, namely to put her to death, if he should be condemned; and out of these Gentlemen also she got the fatal Secret, while *Herod* was absent: And he returning mightily elated with the Success he found in the Court of *Augustus*, and coming with Abundance of Joy to communicate his Success to *Mariamne*, was sufficiently mortified to find his Careless answered with Sighs and Tears, and all the Disdain

imaginable: At which he was so provoked, that he threatened her with immediate Death; which she seemed so little afraid of, that she proceeded to upbraid him with his brutish Orders. However, his Love-fit returning, he would have been reconciled to her; but she still continuing to shew her Resentment, and his Mother and his Sister *Salome* blowing the Coals, who dreaded the Consequence of a thorough Reconciliation, he ordered her to be tried before a Tribunal of his own Creatures; who having passed Sentence on her, she was executed soon after. He also murdered *Hyrchanus* the High-Priest, his great Benefactor, and all the Princes of the *Asmonæan* Race he could get into his Power.

These and other Barbarities so exasperated the *Jews* against him, that he was apprehensive of a general Revolt; which made him alter his Conduct, and endeavour to reconcile himself to that People, by remitting Part of their Taxes, and many other Instances of his Bounty; but nothing established him more in their Favour than his rebuilding their Temple in a much more magnificent manner than the second Temple was built. Still *Herod* appears not to have divested himself of his cruel Disposition, even towards his own Family, as well as to the *Asmonæan* Race; for having sent for his two Sons, *Alexander* and *Aristobulus*, whom he had by *Mariamne*, from *Rome*, of whose Education the Emperor *Augustus* had taken particular Care, and these young Princes, at their Return, becoming exceeding popular, and beloved by the *Jews*, he put them to death, under Pretence they were engaged in a Conspiracy against him; his Sister *Salome*, who had some selfish Views in their Destruction, being the chief Promoter of this bloody Scene; and apprehending their Resentment for the Share she had in their Mother *Mariamne's* Murder, if they should succeed to the Crown. But *Herod* soon becoming sensible he had been too hasty in condemning his Sons as well as their Mother, behaved like a Madman afterwards. It was in the Reign of this *Herod the Great*, as he is called, about the Year of the World 4000, that *Christ* was born; though as to the exact Year, Chronologers are not agreed. It was by the Command of this *Herod* that all the Children in *Bethlehem*, under two Years old, were murdered, on the Declaration of the wise Men, that a great King was born there, whom they came from the East to worship, being guided thither by a Star. Among the Children that were murdered at *Bethlehem*, 'tis said was one of *Herod's* own Children; but, however that was, it is certain he caused *Antipater*, his eldest Son, to be put to death, for a Conspiracy against him, though he had been so partial

Herod the
Great re-
builds the
Temple.

He puts his
Sons to
death.

Christ
born,
A. M.
4000.
The Chil-
dren mas-
sacred by
Herod at
Bethle-
hem,
and his
Son Anti-
pater.

partial to him during the Prosecution of his two Sons by *Mariamne*, that he had appointed *Antipater* his Successor.

Herod did not survive his Son *Antipater* more than five Succeeded Days, dying in the seventieth Year of his Age, and twenty- by Archi- seventh of his Reign. He left his Kingdom to his Son *Ar- laus*. *Archilaus*, made *Antepas*, usually called *Herod*, Tetrarch of *Galilee*; and to *Philip* he left the Regions of *Trachonitis*, *Gaulon*, *Botanea*, and *Pamias*, which he likewise erected into a Tetrarchy.

Archilaus proving a cruel Tyrant, the *Jews* addressed *Au- Judea*, *gustus* to depose him. Which he complied with, and banished made a *Archilaus* to the City of *Vienne* in *France*, and his Domi- Roman nions were converted to a *Roman Province*, and taxed very high; which occasioned an Insurrection, under one *Judas*; *The Jews* who insisted that these Impositions by a foreign Power were contrary to the Law of God: But this Insurrection was sup- *refuse to* pressed by the *Romans*, and *Pilate* made Governor of *Judea*; *pay Taxes* to the Ro- who was the Occasion of another Insurrection, by command- *mans*. ing the *Roman* Colours and Standards to be displayed in the City of *Jerusalem*, there being the Figures of Men and Ani- *Pilate* *made Go-* mals in those Colours, which the *Jews* abhorred: But the *Jews* petitioning to have these Figures removed, *Pilate* *governor of* *Judea*. commanded them at length to be sent out of the City.

Pilate afterwards attempted to seize the sacred Treasures in the Temple, and, when the *Jews* opposed it, he caused his Guards to fall upon them, and many of them were killed and wounded by his Soldiers. It was about this time that *Herod Antepas*, Governor of *Galilee*, caused *John the-Bap- Christ cru-* *tist* to be beheaded; and it was in the Reign of this *Herod*, *cified*, and during the Government of *Pontius Pilate* in *Judea*, that *Christ* was crucified, in the thirty-third Year of his Age, *A. D. 33*. having continued to preach and work Miracles in *Judea* upwards of two Years and a half, in which time he foretold the Destruction of *Jerusalem*, and the Dispersion of the *Jews* in that very Age.

It was but a few Years after the Crucifixion of *Christ* that the Miseries of the *Jews*, foretold by him, came to be put in Execution. They were grievously oppressed by the *Roman* Governors, and engaged in Civil Wars among them- *The mis-* selves. The High-Priests bribed the *Roman* Governors to be advanced to that high Office; there were frequent Re- *movable State* *of the* *Jews soon* *after*. moves, and every one looked upon himself to be entitled to the Tythes and Perquisites of that Office that had ever possessed the Chair, and hired Gladiators and Assassins to attack their Rivals. *Festus*, who succeeded *Pilate* in the Government of *Judea*, found it very difficult to preserve Peace amongst them,

*A general
Revolt.*

*Vespasian
invades
Judea.*

*Titus be-
sieves Je-
rusalem.*

*A Civil
War in
the City.*

*Jerusalem
taken and
demolished.
1100,000
perished in
the Siege.*

them, though well supported by *Roman Forces*. *Florus* being afterwards constituted Governor of *Judea*, rather promoted than discouraged these Divisions among the *Jews*, oppressed and massacred many of them on frivolous Pretences, in order to drive that Nation into a Rebellion, and enrich himself by the Confiscations and Plunder of that People; and in the Year of *Christ* 67, in the second Year of the Government of *Florus*, the twelfth of *Nero's* Reign, and the seventeenth of *Agrippa*, the Revolt became general; the *Jews* defeated the *Roman* Garrison at *Jerusalem*, and drove them out of the City; whereupon *Vespasian* and his Son *Titus* were sent into *Judea*, at the Head of a numerous *Roman* Army, and having subdued *Samaria*, and most of the Cities, which were generally taken by Storm, the miserable Inhabitants being put to the Sword, *Titus* proceeded, in the Reign of his Father *Vespasian*, *A. D.* 73, to invest the capital City of *Jerusalem*, in which it is computed there were not less than two Millions of Souls, most of the *Jews* being assembled there to keep the Passover. They made a most obstinate Defence, notwithstanding they were perpetually engaged in a Civil War among themselves in the City, and terribly afflicted both with Plague and Famine. *Titus* several times made them Offers of Peace, if they would surrender; but they persisted to defend themselves till both City and Temple were burnt and reduced to a Heap of Rubbish, and on the 8th of *September* the *Romans* were entirely Masters of the Place. It is computed that there perished in the Siege of *Jerusalem*, by the Sword, Famine, or Pestilence, near eleven hundred thousand People, and in the rest of *Judea* upwards of three hundred thousand more, besides great Numbers made Slaves of, and dispersed among all Nations. But, notwithstanding there is not a single Country they can call their own at this Day, they are still vastly numerous, and immensely rich. If great Armies are to be subsisted, these are the People all the Powers in *Europe* apply to for Provisions. However they may formerly have been persecuted and expelled most *Christian* Countries, they are now invited to settle in almost every Country in *Christianity* and *Turky*, and enjoy as great Privileges as the native Subjects.

KINGS of the HEBREWS.

A. M.

1. **SAUL**, of the Tribe of *Benjamin*, the first King of 2878.
the *Hebrews*.
 2. *David*, the Son of *Jesse*, of the Tribe of *Judah*. 2890.
 3. *Solomon*, the Son of *David*, who built the Temple. 2930.
- The Kingdom afterwards divided.

KINGS of JUDAH.

1. **REHOBAM**, the Son of *Solomon*, the first King 2971.
of *Judah*.
2. *Abijah*, the Son of *Rehoboam*. 2988.
3. *Asa*, the Son of *Abijah*, subdued the numerous Army 2991.
of *Zera*, the *Ethiopian* of *Arabian* King.
4. *Jehosaphat*, the Son of *Asa*, a great Reformer of the 3031.
State, both Ecclesiastical and Civil.
5. *Jehoram*, the Son of *Jehosaphat*. 3056.
6. *Abaziah*, the Son of *Jehoram*, by *Athalia* his Wife, 3064.
Sister of *Ahab* King of *Israel*.
7. *Athaliah*, the Daughter of *Omri*, and Sister of *Ahab*, 3065.
having destroyed most of the regal Race of the House of *David*, usurped the Kingdom for seven Years.
8. *Joash*, the only surviving Heir of the House of *David*, 3072.
restored, by *Jehoiadab* the Priest, to the Throne of his Ancestors.
9. *Amaziah*, the Son of *Joash*, vanquished by *Joash* King 311
of *Israel*, and a Breach forced through the Walls of *Jerusalem*.
10. *Azariah*, the Son of *Amaziah*, called also *Uzziah*, 3141.
smote with a Leprosy.
11. *Jothan*, the Son of *Uzziah*, or *Azariah*. 3192.
12. *Abaz*, the Son of *Jothan*, in whose Time, and by 3208.
whose Procurement, the Kingdom of *Damascus* was ruined by *Tiglath Pileser* King of *Assyria*, and the Tribes on the farther Side of *Jordan* led into Captivity.
13. *Hezekiah*, the Son of *Abaz*, a religious Prince, in 3224.
whose Time the Kingdom of *Israel* was destroyed by the *Assyrians*, and that of *Assyria* by the *Babylonians*.
14. *Manasses*, the wicked Son of the good King *Heze-* 3253.
kiah, restored *Idolatry*, and put to death the Prophet *Isaiah*, for opposing his irreligious Courses.
15. *Amon*, the Son of *Manasses*, another wicked Prince, 3308.
was slain by a Conspiracy of his Servants, when he had reigned but two Years.

- A. M. 3310. 16. *Jesiah*, the Son of *Ammon*, esteemed a good King, unfortunately slain by *Pharaoh-necho* King of *Egypt*, at the Battle of *Megiddo*.
3341. 17. *Jeboahas*, the Son of *Jesiah*, a King of three Months only; deposed, and sent a Prisoner, by *Pharaoh-necho*, to *Riblah*, in the Land of *Hamath*, since called *Antiochia*.
18. *Jehoiakim*, the Son of *Jesiah*, and half Brother of *Jeboahas*, advanced to the Throne by *Necho*, who changed his Name from *Eliakim*, by which he was formerly called, into that of *Jehoiakim*.
3351. 19. *Jehoiakim*, or *Jechoniah*, the Son of *Jehoiakim*, at the End of three Months, was led Captive unto *Babylon*, with his Wives and Mother, and the great Officers of his Realm, by *Nebuchadnezzar*.
20. *Zedekiah*, another of the Sons of *Jesiah*, and Brother of *Jeboahas*, made King by *Nebuchadnezzar*, in the Place of *Jehoiakim*, or *Jechoniah*; his Name being changed from *Mattaniah*, by which he was called before: But rebelling against his Benefactor, contrary to the Counsel of the Prophet *Jeremiah*, he was taken Prisoner, in the eleventh Year of his Reign, *Jerusalem* destroyed, the Temple ruined, and the People carried Captive to *Babylon*, A. M. 3362, where they lived in Exile seventy Years; which Time being expired, *Cyrus*, the King of the *Persians*, gave them leave to return to their Country, and to re-edify their City and Temple; which Work being finished, by the Encouragement of *Ezra*, *Nehemiah*, and *Zorobabel*, and the Nation again settled in some Part of their old Possessions, they were afterwards governed by their High-Priests, and the Council of their Elders which they called the Sanhedrim, whereof the High-Priest was President, and vested with a great Share of Power.

KINGS of ISRAEL.

2971. 1. *FEROBOAM*, the Son of *Nebat*, of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, the first King of *Israel*.
2993. 2. *Nadab*, the Son of *Feroboam*.
2995. 3. *Baasha*, of the Tribe of *Issachar*, having slain *Nadab*, reigned in his stead.
3019. 4. *Ela*, the Son of *Baasha*.
3021. 5. *Zimri*, a King of seven Days only, the Murderer of *Ela*, and his own Executioner.
6. *Omri*, General of the Army, who removed the regal Seat from *Tirza* to *Samaria*.
3029. 7. *Ahab*, the Son of *Omri*, and Husband of *Jezebel*, a *Phœnician* Princess,
8. *Ahaziah*,

HIGH-PRIESTS of the JEWS after the Captivity. 473

8. *Abaziah*, the Son of *Abab*. 3051.
9. *Jehoram*, the Brother of *Abaziah*. 3053.
10. *Jehu*, General of the Army, deposed and murdered *Jehoram*, reigning in his Stead. 3065.
11. *Jehoahaz*, the Son of *Jehu*. 3093.
12. *Joash*, the Son of *Jehoahaz*. 3110.
13. *Jeroboam II.* the Son of *Joash*. 3126.
14. *Zachariah*, the Son of *Jeroboam II.* after an Inter-regnum of eleven Years, succeeded in the Throne of his Father; slain at the End of six Months by
15. *Shallum*, who, at the End of one Month, was slain by
16. *Menahem*, the Son of *Gadi*. 3178.
17. *Pekahiah*, the Son of *Menahem*, slain by 3188.
18. *Pekah*, the Son of *Remaliah*; served in the same kind, after a Reign of twenty Years, by 3190.
19. *Hoseah*, the Son of *Ela*; in the 5th Year of whose Reign, and the 18th Year from the Death of *Pekah*, *Salmanasser* King of *Affyria* having, by a Siege of three Years, carried the City of *Samaria*, destroyed the Kingdom of *Israel*, and led the greatest Part of the People into Captivity. 3200.

HIGH-PRIESTS of the JEWS after the Captivity.

1. *JOSHUA*, the High-Priest at the Time of the Return, Assistant to *Zorobabel* in rebuilding the Temple, which he lived not to finish; though continuing (as some say) in the Government one hundred Years; but it is presumed, that the Names of his Successors being lost, the whole Time is ascribed to him. 3427.
2. *Jehoiakim*, said to be the Son of *Joshua*, in whose Time, by the Diligence of *Ezra* and *Nehemiah*, the Temple was finished, and the Worship of God restored. 3530.
3. *Jonathan*, or *Johanan*. 3580.
4. *Jaddus*, who entertained *Alexander the Great* coming to *Jerusalem*. The Brother of that *Manasses*, for whose Sake, and at whose Instance, the Temple at Mount *Gerizim* was built by *Sanballat*, with the Leave of *Alexander*. 3610.
5. *Onias* succeeded *Jaddus*, as *Jaddus* had done *Jonathan*; not by Birth (as formerly) but by the Election of the People. 3630.
6. *Simon*, surnamed *Justus*. 3651.
7. *Eleazer*, the Brother of *Simon*. 3660.
8. *Menelaus*, the Brother of *Eleazer* and *Simon*. 3692.
9. *Onias II.* 3718.
10. *Simon II.* 3732.

II, *Onias*,

ASMONÆAN PRINCES of JUDEA.

3742. 11. *Onias* III. the Son of *Simon* II.
 3787. 12. *Jafon*, the Brother of *Onias* III.
 3789. 13. *Menelaus* II. the Brother of *Jafon*, in whose Time the Temple was profaned by the *Syrians*, at the Command of *Antiochus Epiphanes*.
 3794. 14. *Alcimus*, under whose Government the *Maccabees* began to appear in Defence of their Country and Religion. *Mattathias*, descended from *Asmonæus*, a Priest of the Rank of *Joarib*, and his five Sons, defended their Country against the Persecution and Tyranny of *Antiochus Epiphanes*, King of *Syria*, and gave the *Syrians* many notable Defeats. On the Death of *Mattathias*, the *Jews* made choice of his Son *Judas*, surnamed, *Maccabeus*, for their Prince, or Governor.

ASMONÆAN PRINCES of JUDEA.

3799. 1. *JUDAS* *Maccabeus*, the third Son of *Mattathias* above-mentioned, one of the nine Worthies, defeated three great and puissant Armies of the *Syrians*, conducted by *Apollonius*, *Gorgias*, and *Lysias*, Men of great Fame, and Commanders of the Forces of *Antiochus Epiphanes*.
 3805. 2. *Jonathan*, the Brother of *Judas*, defeated the Forces of *Bacchides* and *Alcimus*, Generals of *Demetrius*, King of *Syria*; and, after many notable Exploits, was treacherously murdered by *Tryphon*, aspiring at that Time to the *Syrian* Crown.
 3823. 3. *Simon*, the elder Brother of *Judas* and *Jonathan*, subdued the Cities of *Gaza*, *Joppa*, and *Jamnia*, and cleared *Judea* of the *Syrians*; perfidiously slain, in the Course of his Victories, by his Son-in-law *Ptolemy*.
 3831. 4. *Johannes Hyrcanus*, the third Son of *Simon*, his two other Brothers being in the Power of *Ptolemy*, succeeded in the Government. He destroyed the Temple on Mount *Gerizzim*, conquered all *Samaria*, and subdued the *Idumæans*, compelled them to be circumcised; transferred the War into *Syria*; and dying, left the Sovereignty to his eldest Son *Aristobulus*.

ASMONÆAN KINGS of JUDEA.

3862. 1. *ARISTOBULUS* caused himself to be crowned, and was the first King of *Judea* after the *Babylonian* Captivity; he starved his Mother, and murdered *Antigonus* his Brother.

2. *Alexander*, the Brother of *Aristobulus*, exceedingly enlarged the Kingdom of *Judea* by the Conquest of *Ituræa*, and some Parts of *Syria*; but massacred fifty thousand of his rebellious Subjects, and commanded eight hundred of the chief to be hanged before his Face. He left two Sons, *Hyrcanus*, who was slain by *Herod*, and *Aristobulus*, the Father of *Alexander* and *Antigonus*. *Alexander* was the Father of another *Aristobulus*, and of *Mariamne* the Wife of *Herod*, by whose Command they were both murdered.

3. *Alexandra*, by some called *Salome*, the Wife of *Alexander*, pursuing the Counsel of her late Husband, committed herself and her Children into the Hands of the *Pharisees*, then in great Power and Credit among the People, by whose Influence she was confirmed in the Kingdom; and left it to her Children, whose Dissensions caused the Ruin of her Family.

4. *Aristobulus II.* the youngest Son of *Alexander*, an active Prince, and beloved of the military Men, having, soon after the Death of his Mother, possessed himself of the greatest Part of the Forts and Castles, by the forced Consent of *Hyrcanus*, his elder Brother, succeeded in the Kingdom and High-Priesthood also; both which he held with great Trouble and Opposition, both from his Brother and the *Romans*, whom they most imprudently called in to decide the Controversies between them, *Aristobulus* was, by *Pompey*, sent Prisoner to *Rome*, with *Alexander* and *Antigonus*, his two Sons. He escaped from *Rome*, and raised a new Army for the Recovery of his Kingdom; but being forced to yield himself to *Gabinus*, one of *Pompey's* Lieutenants, he was sent back again to *Rome*, where he died in Prison, having reigned three Years and six Months.

5. *Hyrcanus II.* a Prince of weak Parts, and not fit for Government, was made High-Priest in the first Year of his Mother's Reign; but dispossessed of that Dignity by *Aristobulus*, his younger Brother. Restored again by the Favour of *Pompey*, he was again disturbed in his Possession by *Alexander*, the eldest Son of *Aristobulus*, who escaping out of *Rome*, raised Forces, and began to dispute the Sovereignty with him; but was soon after defeated by *Gabinus*, and slain by *Scipio*, another of *Pompey's* Captains. After the Death of *Aristobulus*, which happened in the Year 3903, *Hyrcanus* was looked on by the People not only as their High-Priest, but as their Prince and King. His Affairs managed for the most Part by *Antipater* (an *Idumæan* born, and the Father of *Herod*) his constant and most faithful Friend in all his Troubles, who governed the State with great

great Care and Prudence; but *Antipater* being poisoned, *Antigenus*, the younger Son of *Aristobulus*, set on foot his Title to the Kingdom, and introduced an Army of the *Parthians* to make it good; by whose Aid, having treacherously surpris'd *Hyrchanus*, he cut off his Ears, to make him incapable of the Priesthood, and sent him Prisoner to *Babylon*, taking upon himself the Title of King, though never acknowledged as such by the *Jewish* Nation. But long he did not please himself with that Title; for being besieged in *Jerusalem* by *Herod* then newly created King of the *Jews* by the *Roman* Senate, and by him taken Prisoner in the storming of that City, he was sent in Chains to *Mark Anthony*, and by him put to death. As for *Hyrchanus*, the right Heir to the Crown, he remained Prisoner for a Time amongst the *Parthians*, till hearing of the Death of *Antigenus*, he returned into *Judea*, and lived contentedly under the Government of *Herod*, of whose Greatness he had laid the Foundation; but was at last murdered by *Herod*.

IDUMÆAN KINGS and PRINCES of JEWRY.

A. M.
3940.

1. **HEROD**, the *Ascalonite*, surnamed *The Great*, Son to *Antipater*, the *Idumæan*, was by the Power of *Mark Anthony* created, and by *Augustus* confirmed, King of *Judea*, under whom that Kingdom was more enlarged, and in greater Splendor than ever it had been in since the Time of *David*. A Prince of great Magnificence; but of greater Vices. During his Reign, the Scepter being now departed from *Judah*, the Lord *Christ* was born, *A. D.* 4000.

A. D.

6. 2. *Archilaus*, eldest Son of *Herod*, at the Time of his Death, succeeded to the Title of King; but in truth possessed only a Tetrarchy, or fourth Part of the Kingdom, though the best and largest of the four, containing *Judea*, *Samaria*, and *Idumæa*. The rest of *Herod's* Kingdom was divided into three other Tetrarchies, viz. 1. The Tetrarchy of *Galilee* and *Peræa*, given to *Herod Antepas*. 2. That of *Ituræa*, given to *Pbilip*, another of the Sons of *Herod*. And, 3. That of *Abilene*, conferred on *Lyfanius*, banished into *France*, his Tetrarchy being made a Province of the *Roman* Empire.

16.

3. *Herod II.* surnamed *Antepas*, Tetrarch of *Galilee* and *Peræa*, on the Banishment of *Archilaus*, succeeded him, as Chief of the *Herodian* Family, but not in his Tetrarchy, and at last followed him in his Banishment also. This is he who murdered *Jahn Baptist*, and in whose Time *Christ* suffered.

4. He-

4. *Herod III.* surnamed *Agrippa*, in honour of *Agrippa*, 40. the Son-in-law and Favourite of *Augustus Cæsar*, Grandson to *Herod the Great*, by his Son *Aristobulus*, begotten on *Mariamne*, of the Race of the *Asmonæans*, was by *Caligula* first invested in the Tetrarchy of his Uncle *Philip* with the Title of King, and next in that of *Antipas* also, and finally, by *Claudius*, in that also of *Lysanias*, some Part of the Tetrarchy of *Archilaus* being added unto his Dominions. This was the Man that murdered *James*, and imprisoned *Peter*; and in the End was devoured by Worms.

5. *Agrippa Minor*, Son of *Herod Agrippa*, was he before whom *St. Paul* pleaded in Defence of the Gospel, and 47. the last which had the Title of King of the *Jews*; for in his Time the City of *Jerusalem* was destroyed by *Titus*, and the whole Kingdom made a Province of the *Roman Empire*, *A. D.* 69.

The HISTORY of EGYPT.

EGYPT is situate in the North-East of *Africa*, between *Situation* 30 and 36 Degrees of East Longitude, and between 21 and 31 Degrees of North Latitude, bounded on the East by the *Red-Sea* and the *Isthmus of Suez*, on the South by *Ethiopia*, on the West by *Libya*, and on the North by the *Mediterranean* or *Levant Sea*. Ancient *Egypt* is divided by *Mr. Rollin* into three principal Parts; 1. *Upper Egypt*, *Divisions* otherwise called *Thebais*, which was the most Southern Part. of ancient 2. *Middle Egypt*, or *Heptonomis*, so called from the Seven Egypt. *Nomi*, or Districts it contained. 3. *Lower Egypt*, which included what the *Greeks* called *Delta*, and all the Country, as far as the *Red-Sea*, and along the *Mediterranean* to *Rhinocoura*, or *Mount Casius*. Under *Sesostris* all *Egypt* became one Kingdom, and was divided into thirty-six Governments or *Nomi*'s; ten in *Thebais*, ten in *Delta*, and sixteen in the Country between both.

The Cities of *Syene* and *Elephantina* divided *Egypt* from *Ethiopia*; and in the Days of *Augustus* were the Boundaries of the *Roman Empire*. *Thebes*, from whence *Thebais* had *Thebes*. its Name, might vye with the noblest City in the World. Its hundred Gates, celebrated by *Homer*, are universally known, and acquired it the Surname of *Hecatompyles*; and History informs us, that it could send out at once 200 Chariots, and 10,000 fighting Men at each of its Gates.

In

*The grand
Remains.*

In *Thebes* are seen the Ruins of Temples and Palaces, which are still almost entire, and adorned with innumerable Columns and Statues; one Palace especially, the Remains whereof seem to have existed to this Time, purely to eclipse the Glory of the most pompous Edifices. Four Walks extending farther than the Eye can see, and bounded on each Side with Sphinxes, composed of Materials as rare and extraordinary as their Size, serve for Avenues to four Portico's, whose Height is amazing; and there is a Hall, which in all Appearance stood in the Middle of this stately Palace, and was supported by 120 Pillars, six Fathoms round, of a proportionable Height, and intermixed with Obelisks, which so many Ages has not been able to demolish. Painting seems to have displayed all her Art and Magnificence in this Edifice. The Colours themselves, which soonest feel the Injury of Time, still remain amidst the Ruins of this wonderful Structure, and preserve their Beauty and Lustre; so happily could the *Egyptians* imprint a Character of Immortality on all their Works. *Strabo*, who was on the Spot, describes a Temple he saw in *Egypt*, very much resembling this.

Labyrinth.

The celebrated Labyrinth was built on the South Part of the Lake *Meris*, near the Town of *Crocodiles* (the ancient *Arfinoe*). It was not so much one single Palace as a magnificent Pile composed of twelve Palaces regularly disposed, which had a Communication with each other. Fifteen hundred Rooms, interspersed with Terrasses, were ranged round twelve Halls, and discovered no Outlet to such as went to see them. There were the like Number of Buildings under Ground. These subterraneous Structures were designed for the Burying-Places of the Kings.

*Meris
Lake.*

The most wonderful of all the Structures or Works of the Kings of *Egypt*, was the Lake of *Meris*, according to *Herodotus*, who considers it as vastly superior to the Pyramids and Labyrinths. As *Egypt* was more or less fruitful in Proportion to the Inundations of the *Nile*; and as in these Floods the too great Height or Scarcity of the Waters were equally fatal to the Lands, King *Meris*, to prevent these two Inconveniencies, and correct, as far as lay in his Power, the Irregularities of the *Nile*, caused this Lake to be dug, which afterwards went by his Name. It had a Communication with the *Nile*, by a great Canal, four Leagues long, and fifty Feet broad. Great Sluices either opened or shut the Lake, as there was Occasion. The Charge of opening or shutting them amounted to fifty Talents, that is, 11250 Pounds *Sterling*. The Fishing of this Lake brought the

Mo-

Monarch immense Sums; but its chief Use related to the overflowing of the *Nile*. When it rose too high, and was like to be attended with fatal Consequences, the Sluices were opened; and the Waters having a free Passage into the Lake, covered the Lands no longer than was necessary to enrich them: On the contrary, when the Inundation was too low, and threatened a Famine, a sufficient Quantity of Water was let out of the Lake to water the Lands. In this Manner the Irregularities of the *Nile* were corrected; and *Strabo* remarks, that in his Time, under *Petronius*, a Governor of *Egypt*, when the Inundation of the *Nile* was twelve Cubits, a very great Plenty ensued; and even when it rose but to eight Cubits, the Dearth was scarce felt in the Country, probably, because the Waters of the Lake supplied what the Inundation wanted.

Historians are generally agreed that *Menes*, or *Misraim*, *Menes the Son of Cham*, was the first King of *Egypt*, who instituted the Worship of the Gods, and the Ceremonies and Sacrifices. *Bufris*, some Ages after, built the City of *Bufris*. *Thebes*, and made it the Seat of his Empire.

Osymonydas raised many magnificent Edifices, one of which was adorned with Sculptures and Paintings of exquisite Beauty, representing his Expedition against the *Bactrians*, a People of *Asia*, whom he had invaded with 400,000 Foot, and 20,000 Horse. In another Part of the Edifice was exhibited an Assembly of the Judges, whose President wore on his Breast a Picture of Truth, with her Eyes shut, and himself surrounded with Books, an emphatic Emblem, signifying that Judges ought to be perfectly versed in the Laws, and impartial in the Administration of them. The King was painted here, offering to the Gods Gold and Silver, which he drew every Year from the Mines of *Egypt*, amounting to the Sum of sixteen Millions. Not far from hence was seen a magnificent Library, the oldest mentioned in History. Its Title or Inscription on the Front was, *The Office or Treasury for the Diseases of the Soul*. *Ornaments of his Palace.*

Near it were Statues representing all the *Egyptian* Gods, to each of whom the King made suitable Offerings; by which he seemed to be desirous of informing Posterity, that his Life and Reign had been spent in adoring the Gods, and doing Justice to Men.

His Mausoleum discovered an uncommon Magnificence; it was encompassed with a Circle of Gold, a Cubit in Breadth, and 365 Cubits in Circumference: Each of which shewed the Rising and Setting of the Sun, Moon, and the rest of the Planets. From the Time of this King's Reign

Reign the *Egyptians* divided the Year into twelve Months, each consisting of thirty Days; to which they added every Year five Days and six Hours. The Spectator did not know which to admire most in this stately Monument, whether the Richness of its Materials, or the Genius and Industry of the Artists and Workmen.

Uchorius
Memphis
described. *Uchorius*, one of the Successors of *Ofsymnydas*, built the City of *Memphis*. This City was 150 Furlongs, or more than seven Leagues in Circumference, and stood at the Point of the *Delta*, where the *Nile* divides into several Channells; he dug very deep Moats to receive the River. These were faced with Stone, and designed to secure the City against the Inundations of the *Nile*, and the Attacks of an Enemy. This was the usual Residence of the ancient *Egyptian* Kings, and continued in Possession of this Honour till *Alexandria* was built. *Egypt* had long been governed by its native Princes when Strangers, called Shepherd-Kings, from *Arabia* or *Phœnicia*, invaded and seized a great Part of *Lower Egypt*, and *Memphis* itself; but *Upper Egypt* remained unconquered, and the Kingdom of *Thebes* existed till the Reign of *Sesostris*. These foreign Princes governed about 260 Years.

Pharaoh. Under one of these Princes called *Pharaoh* in the Scripture (a Name common to all the first Race of Kings) *Abraham* arrived there with his Wife *Sarah*, who was taken from him on account of her Beauty, upon a Supposition that she was not his Wife, but only his Sister.

Amosis. *Thethmosis*, or *Amosis*, having expelled the Shepherd-Kings, reigned in *Lower Egypt*; during whose Reign, or soon after, *Joseph* was brought a Slave into *Egypt* by some *Ismaelitic* Merchants, sold to *Potiphar*, and by a Series of wonderful Event, became Prime Minister, or rather Viceroy, of the Kingdom. It is a Remark of *Justin*, the Epitomizer of *Trogus Pompeius*, an excellent Historian of the *Augustan* Age, viz. that *Joseph*, the youngest of *Jacob's* Children, whom his Brethren had sold to foreign Merchants, being endowed from Heaven with the Interpretation of Dreams, and a Knowledge of Futurity, preserved, by his uncommon Prudence, *Egypt* from the Famine with which it was menaced, and was extremely cared for by the King. *Jacob* also went into *Egypt* with his whole Family, which met with the kindest Treatment from the *Egyptians*, whilst *Joseph's* important Services were fresh in their Memories: But after his Death (say the Scriptures) there arose up a new King, which knew not *Joseph*.

Rameses. *Rameses-miamum*, according to Archbishop *Usher*, was the Name of the King, who oppressed the *Israelites*; and leaving

leaving two Sons, *Amenophis* and *Busiris*: *Amenophis*, the Amenoldest, succeeded him, who was the *Pharaoh*, under whose phis. Reign the *Israelites* departed out of *Egypt*, and who was drowned in his Passage through the *Red-Sea*.

Diodorus, speaking of the *Red-Sea*, has made one Remark very worthy our Observation. A Tradition (says that Historian) has been transmitted through the whole Nation, from Father to Son, for many Ages, that once an extraordinary Ebb dried up the Sea, so that its Bottom was seen, and that a violent Flow immediately after brought back the Waters to their former Chanel.

Sesostris was not only one of the most powerful Kings of *Egypt*, but one of the greatest Conquerors. His Father, whether by Inspiration, Caprice, or, as the *Egyptians* say, by the Authority of an Oracle, formed a Design of making his Son a Conqueror. This he set about after the *Egyptian* Manner; that is, in a great and noble Way; all the Male Children born the same Day with *Sesostris*, were by the King's Order brought to Court. Here they were educated as if they had been his own Children, with the same Care bestowed on *Sesostris*, with whom they were lodged: The chief Part of their Education was the inuring them to a hard and laborious Life, in order that they might one Day be capable of sustaining the Toils of War. They were never suffered to eat till they had run on Foot or Horseback a considerable Race. Hunting was their most common Exercise.

Sesostris:

His Education:

Eliau remarks, that *Sesostris* was taught by *Mercury*, who instructed him in Politics, and the Art of Government. This *Mercury* is he whom the *Greeks* call *Trismegistus*, i. e. Thrice Great. *Egypt*, his native Country, owes to him the Invention of almost every Art. The two Books which go under his Name bear such evident Characters of Novelty, that the Forgery is no longer doubted. There was another *Mercury*, who also was very famous amongst the *Egyptians* for his rare Knowledge, and of much greater Antiquity than him in question. *Jamblicus*, a Priest of *Egypt*, affirms, that it was customary with the *Egyptians* to publish all new Books or Inventions under the Name of *Hermes* or *Mercury*.

When *Sesostris* was more advanced in Years, his Father sent him against the *Arabians*, that by fighting against them he might acquire military Knowledge. Here the young Prince learned to bear Hunger and Thrift, and subdued a Nation, which till then had never been conquered. The Youth educated with him attended him in all his Campaigns.

The HISTORY of

Accustomed by this Conquest to martial Toils, he was next sent by his Father, to try his Fortune Westward. He invaded *Lybia*, and subdued great Part of that vast Continent, as far as *Hercules's Pillars*, and is in reality the *Egyptian Hercules*. In the Time of this Expedition his Father died; soon after which *Sesostris* formed the Design of conquering the Eastern World. But before he left his Kingdom, he had provided for his domestic Security, having engaged the Hearts of his Subjects by his Generosity, Justice, and a popular and obliging Behaviour. He was no less studious to gain the Affection of his Officers and Soldiers, who were ever ready to shed their Blood in his Service; at that Time also he divided the Country into thirty-six Governments (called *Nomi*) and bestowed them on Persons of Merit, and the most approved Fidelity.

Subdues
Ethiopia,

Persia and
Judea,

and Scy-
thia.

His Officers were taken chiefly from among the Youth who had been educated with him. His Army consisted of six hundred thousand Foot, and twenty-four thousand Horse, besides twenty-seven thousand armed Chariots; but before he entered on his Eastern Expedition, he invaded *Ethiopia*, situate South of *Egypt*, and made it tributary to him. In the mean time he fitted out a Fleet of four hundred Sail, and ordering it to sail through the *Red-Sea*, made himself Master of the *Arabian Coast*. He commanded his Land-Army in Person, over-ran and subdued *Asia* with surprising Rapidity, advancing farther into *India* than *Hercules*, *Bacchus* (and in After-times *Alexander*) ever did. The *Scythians*, as far as the River *Tanais*, *Armenia*, and *Cappadocia*, submitted to him; and he left a Colony in the ancient Kingdom of *Colchis*, situate East of the *Black-Sea*, where the *Egyptian* Customs and Manners, it is said, have been ever since retained. *Herodotus* saw in *Asia Minor* from one Sea to the other Monuments of his Victories. In several Countries was read the following Inscription engraven on Pillars. *Sesostris, King of Kings, and Lord of Lords, subdued this Country by the Power of his Arms.* Such Pillars were found even in *Thrace*: His Empire extended from the *Ganges* to the *Danube*. In these Expeditions some Nations bravely defended their Liberties, and others yielded them up without making the least Resistance. This Disparity was expressed by him in hieroglyphical Figures, on the Monuments erected to perpetuate the Remembrance of his Victories, agreeable to the *Egyptian Practice*. The Scarcity of Provisions in *Thrace* stopped the Progress of his Conquests on that Side, and prevented his advancing farther into *Europe*. One remarkable Circumstance is observed

served in this Conqueror, that he never once thought of preserving his Acquisitions; but contented himself with the Glory of having subdued and plundered so many Nations; for after having made wild Havock up and down the World for nine Years, he confined himself almost within the ancient Limits of *Egypt*, a few neighbouring Provinces excepted.

He returned indeed loaden with the Spoils of the vanquished Nations, dragging after him a numberless Multitude of Captives; and to perpetuate his Fame, built 100 famous Temples, as the most illustrious Testimonies of his Victories. But he was especially studious of adorning and enriching the Temple of *Vulcan* at *Pelusium*, in Acknowledgment of that God's imaginary Protection of him, when on his Return from his Expeditions, his Brother had a Design of destroying him in that City, with his Wife and Children, by setting fire to the Apartment where he then lay. The most useful of his Works was the raising, in every Part of *Egypt*, artificial Hills, on which new Cities were built, in order to secure Men and Beasts from the Inundations of the Nile; and from *Memphis*, as far as the Sea, he cut on both Sides the River a great Number of Canals, for the Convenience of Trade, the conveying of Provisions, and for the settling an easy Correspondence between such Cities as were distant from one another. Besides the Advantages of Traffic, *Egypt* was, by these Canals, made inaccessible to the Cavalry of its Enemies, which before had so often harrassed it, by repeated Incurfions; particularly he fortified his Frontiers against the *Syrians* and *Arabians*, from *Pelusium* to *Heliopolis*.

Sesostris might have been considered as one of the most illustrious Heroes of Antiquity, had not the Lustre of his warlike Actions, as well as his pacific Virtues been tarnished by a Thirst after false Glory, and a blind Fondness for his own Grandeur, which made him forget that he was a Man. The Kings and Chiefs of the conquered Nations came, at stated Times, to do Homage to their Victor, and pay him the appointed Tribute: On every other Occasion he treated them with Humanity and Generosity; but when he went to the Temple, or entered his Capital, he caused these Princes, four a-breast, to be harnessed to his Car, instead of Horses; and valued himself upon his being thus drawn by the Lords and Sovereigns of other Nations. Being grown blind in his old Age, he dispatched himself, after having reigned thirty-three Years, and left his Kingdom infinitely rich. His Empire, nevertheless, did not reach be-

yond the fourth Generation. But there still remained so low as the Reign of *Tiberius*, magnificent Monuments which shewed the Extent of *Egypt* under *Sesostris*, and the immense Tributes which were paid to it.

Colonies sent into Greece by the Egyptians. About the Year 2448 the *Egyptians* planted several foreign Countries. The Colony which *Cecrops* led out of *Egypt*, built twelve Cities; or rather so many Towns, of which he composed the City of *Athens*.

Danaus strikes Argos. The Brother of *Sesostris*, called by the *Greeks* *Danaus*, having formed a Design to murder him, was compelled to abandon the Country, and thereupon retired to *Peloponnesus*, where he seized upon the Kingdom of *Argos*, which had been founded about 400 Years before by *Inachus*. *Es-firis*, Brother of *Amenophis*, so infamous among the Ancients for his Cruelties, exercised his Tyranny at that Time on the Banks of the *Nile*, and barbarously cut the Throats of all Foreigners who landed in his Country: This was probably during the Absence of *Sesostris*.

Cadmus. About the same Time *Cadmus* brought from *Syria* into *Greece* the Invention of Letters. Some pretend that these Characters or Letters were *Egyptian*, and that *Cadmus* himself was a Native of *Egypt*, and not of *Phœnicia*; and the *Egyptians*, who ascribe to themselves the Invention of every Art, and boast a greater Antiquity than any other Nation, give to their *Mercury* the Honour of inventing Letters. Most of the Learned agree, that *Cadmus* carried the *Phœnician* or *Syrian* Letters into *Greece*, and that those Letters were *Hebraic*, the *Hebrews*, as a small Nation, being comprehended under the general Name of *Syrians*. *Joseph Scaliger*, in his Notes on the *Chronicon* of *Eusebius*, proves, that the *Greek* Letters, and those of the *Latin* Alphabet formed from them, derive their Original from the ancient *Phœnician* Letters, which are the same with the *Samaritan*, and were used by the *Jews* before the *Babylonish* Captivity. *Cadmus* carried only sixteen Letters into *Greece*, eight others being added afterwards.

Proteus. King *Proteus* resided at *Memphis*, where, in *Herodotus's* Time, his Temple was still standing, in which was a Chapel dedicated to *Venus* the Stranger. It is conjectured that this *Venus* was *Helen*; for in the Reign of this Monarch *Paris* the *Trojan* returning home with *Helen*, whom he had stolen, was driven by a Storm into one of the Mouths of the *Nile*, called the Canopy; and from thence was conducted to *Proteus* at *Memphis*, who reproached him in the strongest Terms for his base Perfidy and Guilt, in stealing the Wife of his Host, and with her all the Effects in his

Venus and Helen the same Person.

his House. He added, that the only Reason he did not punish him with Death (as his Crime deserved) was, because the *Egyptians* did not care to embrue their Hands in the Blood of Strangers; that he would keep *Helen* with all the Riches that he brought with her, in order to restore them to their Owner; that as for himself (*Paris*) he must either quit his Dominions in three Days, or expect to be treated as an Enemy. The King's Order was obeyed: *Paris* continued his Voyage, and arrived at *Troy*, whither he was closely pursued by the *Grecian* Army. The *Greeks* summoned the *Trojans* to surrender *Helen*, and with her all the Treasures of which her Husband had been plundered. The *Trojans* answered, that neither *Helen*, nor her Treasure, were in their City; nor indeed was it at all likely, says *Herodotus*, that *Priam*, who was so wise an old Prince, should chuse to see his Children and Country destroyed before his Eyes, rather than give the *Greeks* the just and reasonable Satisfaction they desired. But it was to no Purpose for them to affirm with an Oath, that *Helen* was not in their City; the *Greeks* being firmly persuaded that they were trified with, persisted obstinately in their Unbelief. The Deity, continues the same Historian, being resolved that the *Trojans*, by the total Destruction of their City, should teach the affrighted World this Lesson: That great Crimes are attended with as great and signal Punishments from the offended Gods. *Menelaus*, in his Return from *Troy*, called at the Court of King *Proteus*, who restored him *Helen* with all her Treasure. *Herodotus* proves, from some Passages in *Homer*, that the Voyage of *Paris* to *Egypt* was not unknown to this Poet.

Rhampsinitus. The Treasury built by this King, who *Rhampsinitus* was the richest of all his Predecessors, and his Descent into Hell, as they are related by *Herodotus*, have so much the Air of Romance and Fiction, that they deserve no Mention here.

Till the Reign of this King there had been some Shadow, at least, of Justice and Moderation, in *Egypt*; but in the two following Reigns Violence and Cruelty usurped their Place.

Cheops and *Cephrenus*. These two Princes, who were truly Brothers, by the Similitude of their Manners, seem to have strove which of them should distinguish himself most by a bare-faced Impiety towards the Gods, and a barbarous Inhumanity to Men. *Cheops* reigned fifty Years, and his Brother *Cephrenus* fifty-six Years after him. They kept the Temples shut during the whole Time of their long Reigns;

and forbid the offering of Sacrifices, under the severest Penalties : On the other Hand, they oppressed their Subjects, by employing them in the most grievous and useless Works ; and sacrificed the Lives of numberless Multitudes of Men, merely to gratify a senseless Ambition of immortalizing their Names, by Edifices of an enormous Magnitude, and a boundless Expence.

Mycerinus.

Mycerinus was the Son of *Cheops*, but of a Character opposite to that of his Father ; so far from walking in his Steps, he detested his Conduct, and pursued quite different Measures. He again opened the Temples of the Gods, restored the Sacrifices, did all that lay in his Power to comfort his Subjects, and make them forget their past Miseries, and believed himself set over them for no other Purpose, but to exercise Justice, and to make them taste all the Blessings of an equitable and peaceful Administration ; he heard their Complaints, eased their Grievs, and thought himself not so much the Master as the Father of his People. This procured him the Love of them all ; *Egypt* resounded with his Praises, and his Name commanded Veneration in all Places.

He was told by an Oracle, that his Reign would continue but seven Years ; and as he complained of this to the Gods, in enquiring the Reason, why so long and prosperous a Reign had been indulged his Father and Uncle, who were equally cruel and impious, whilst his own, which he had endeavoured so carefully to render as equitable and mild as it was possible for him to do, should be so short and unhappy ; he was answered, that these were the very Causes of it, it being the Will of the Gods, to oppress and afflict *Egypt*, during the Space of 150 Years, as a Punishment for its Crimes ; and that his Reign, which was appointed like those of the preceding Monarchs to be of fifty Years Continuance, was shortened on account of his too great Lenity.

Afychis.

Afychis. He enacted the Law relating to Loans, which forbid a Son to borrow Money, without giving the dead Body of his Father by way of Security for it. The Law added, that in Case the Son took no Care to redeem his Father's Body, by restoring the Loan, both himself and his Children should be deprived for ever of the Rights of Sepulture. He valued himself for having surpassed all his Predecessors, by the building a Pyramid of Brick more magnificent, if this King was to be credited, than any hitherto seen. The following Inscription, by its Founder's Order, was engraved upon it : *Compare me not with Pyramids built of Stone, which I as much excel, as Jupiter does all the other Gods.* If we suppose

pose the six preceding Reigns (the exact Duration of some of which is not fixed by *Herodotus*) to have continued 170 Years, there will remain an Interval of near 300 Years, to the Reign of *Sabachus* the *Ethiopian*.

Anyfis was blind, in whose Reign *Sabachus* King of *Ethiopia*, being encouraged by an Oracle, entered *Egypt* with a numerous Army, and possessed himself of it: He reigned with great Clemency and Justice; instead of putting to Death such Criminals, as had been sentenced to die by the Judges, he made them repair the artificial Hills and Causeways, on which the respective Cities to which they belonged were situated. He built several magnificent Temples, and among the rest, one in the City of *Bubaste*, of which *Herodotus* gives a long and elegant Description. After a Reign of fifty Years, which was the Time appointed by the Oracle, he retired voluntarily to his old Kingdom of *Ethiopia*, and left the Throne of *Egypt* to *Anyfis*, who during this Time had concealed himself in the Fens. It is believed, that this *Sabachus* was the same with *So*, whose Aid was implored by *Hoshea* King of *Israel*, against *Salmanasser* King of *Affyria*.

Sethon reigned fourteen Years; he is the same with *Sethon*. *wechus* the Son of *Sabacon*, or *Sual* the *Ethiopian*, who reigned so long over *Egypt*. This Prince, so far from discharging the Functions of a King, was ambitious of those of a Priest, causing himself to be consecrated High-Priest of *Vulcan*, abandoning himself entirely to Superstition; he neglected to defend his Kingdom by Force of Arms, paying no Regard to Military Men, from a firm Persuasion that he should never have Occasion for their Assistance; he therefore was so far from endeavouring to gain their Affections, that he deprived them of their Privileges, and even dispossessed them of such Lands as his Predecessors had given them. He was soon made sensible of their Resentment in a War that broke out suddenly, and from which he delivered himself solely by a miraculous Protection, if *Herodotus* may be credited.

Tharaca joined *Sethon* with an *Ethiopian* Army to relieve *Tharaca*, *Jerusalem*; after the Death of *Sethon*, who had sat fourteen Years on the Throne, *Tharaca* ascended it, and reigned eighteen Years. He was the last *Ethiopian* King who reigned in *Egypt*. After his Death, the *Egyptians* not being able to agree about the Succession, were two Years in a State of Anarchy, during which there were great Disorders and Confusions among them.

At last twelve of the principal Noblemen conspiring together, seized upon the Kingdom, and divided it into 10 many Parts.

*An Oligarchy;
twelve
Sovereigns.*

It was agreed by them, that each should govern his own District with equal Power and Authority; and that no one should attempt to invade or seize the Dominions of another. They thought it necessary to make this Agreement, and to bind it with the most dreadful Oaths, to elude the Prediction of an Oracle, which had foretold, that he among them who should offer his Libation to *Vulcan* out of a brazen Bowl, should gain the Sovereignty of *Egypt*. They reigned together fifteen Years in the utmost Harmony; and to leave a famous Monument of their Concord to Posterity, they jointly, and at a common Expence, built the famous Labyrinth. As the twelve Kings were assisting at a solemn and periodical Sacrifice offered in the Temple of *Vulcan*, the Priests having presented each of them a Golden Bowl for a Libation, one was wanting; when *Psammetichus*, one of the twelve, without any Design, supplied the Want of this Bowl with his Brazen Helmet (for each wore one) and with it performed the Ceremony of the Libation. This Accident struck the rest of the Kings, and recalled to their Memory the Prediction of the Oracle above-mentioned. They thought it therefore necessary to secure themselves from his Attempts; and therefore, with one Consent, banished him into the fenny Parts of *Egypt*.

Psammetichus.

After *Psammetichus* had passed some Years there, waiting a favourable Opportunity to revenge himself for the Affront which had been put upon him, a Courier brought him Advice, that Brazen Men were landed in *Egypt*. These were Grecian Soldiers, *Carians* and *Jonians*, who had been cast upon *Egypt* by a Storm; and were completely covered with Helmets, Cuirasses, and other Arms of Brass. *Psammetichus* immediately called to Mind the Oracle, which had assured him, that he should be succoured by brazen Men from the Sea Coast. He did not doubt but the Prediction was now fulfilled. He therefore made a League with these Strangers, engaged them with great Promises to stay with him, privately levied other Forces, put these *Greeks* at their Head; when giving Battle to the eleven Kings, he defeated them, and remained sole Possessor of *Egypt*.

The Grecians send Carians and Jonians a Colony to Egypt. As this Prince owed his Preservation to the *Jonians* and *Carians*, he settled them in *Egypt* (from which all Foreigners hitherto had been excluded) and by assigning them sufficient Lands and fixed Revenues, he made them forget their native Country. By his Order, *Egyptian* Children were put under their Care, to learn the *Greek* Tongue; and on this Occasion, and by this Means, the *Egyptians* began

to have a Correspondence with the *Greeks*; and from that *Æra*, the *Egyptian* History, which till then had been intermixed with pompous Fables, by the Artifice of the Priests, begins, according to *Herodotus*, to speak with greater Truth and Certainty.

As soon as *Psammetichus* was settled on the Throne, he War be- engaged in War against the King of *Assyria*, on account of *tween the* the Limits of the two Empires. This War was of long-*Egyptians* Continuance. Ever since *Syria* had been conquered by the *Assyrians*, *Palestine*, being the only Country that separated *and Assyrians*. the two Kingdoms, was the Subject of continual Discord, as afterwards between the *Ptolemies* and the *Seleucidæ*. They were eternally contending for it, and it was alternately won by the stronger. *Psammetichus* seeing himself in the peaceable Possession of all *Egypt*, and having restored the ancient Form of Government, thought it high Time for him to look to his Frontiers, and to secure them against the *Assyrians* his Neighbours, whose Power encreased daily. For this Purpose, he entered *Palestine* at the Head of an Army, but met with a Repulse at *Azotas*, one of the principal Cities of the Country; which gave him so much Trouble, that he was forced to besiege it twenty-nine Years before he could take it. This is the longest Siege mentioned in ancient History.

This was anciently one of the five capital Cities of the *Philistines*. The *Egyptians* having seized it some time before, had fortified it with such Care, that it was their strongest Barrier on that Side; nor could *Sennacherib* enter *Egypt*, till he had first made himself Master of this City, which was taken by *Tartan*, one of his Generals. The *Assyrians* had possessed it hitherto; and it was not till after the long Siege just mentioned that *Egypt* recovered it. In this Period, the *Scythians* leaving the Banks of the *Palus Mæotis*, invaded *Media*, defeated *Cyaxares* the King of that Country, and laid waste all *Upper Asia*, of which they kept Possession during twenty-eight Years. They pushed their Conquests in *Syria* as far as to the Frontiers of *Egypt*; but *Psammetichus* marching out to meet them, prevailed so far by his Presents, that they advanced no further; and by that Means delivered his Kingdom from these dangerous Enemies.

Psammetichus was succeeded by his Son *Necho*, called in *Necho* the Scripture *Pharaoh-Necho*, who attempted to join the *designs a* Nile to the Red-Sea, by cutting a Canal from one to the *Canal* other. They are separated at the Distance of at least a *from the* 1000 *Stadia*. After 120,000 Workmen had lost their *Nile to* Lives in the Attempt, *Necho* was obliged to desist. The *the Red-* Sea. Oracle

Oracle which had been consulted by him having answered, that this new Canal would open a Passage to the *Barbarians* (for so the *Egyptians* called all other Nations) to invade *Egypt*.

The *Babylonians* and *Medes* having destroyed *Nimrod*, and with it the Empire of the *Assyrians*, were thereby become so formidable, that they drew upon themselves the Jealousy of all their Neighbours. *Necho* alarmed at the Danger, advanced to the *Euphrates*, at the Head of a powerful Army, in order to check their Progress. *Josiah* King of *Judah*, so famous for his uncommon Piety, observing that he took his Rout through *Judea*, resolved to oppose his Passage: With this View he raised all the Forces of his Kingdom, and posted himself in the Valley of *Megiddo* (a City on this Side *Jordan*, belonging to the Tribe of *Manassah*, and called *Magdolos* by *Herodotus*) *Necho* informed him by a Herald, that his Enterprize was not designed against him; that he had other Enemies in view, and that he had undertook this War in the Name of God, who was with him; that for this Reason he advised *Josiah* not to concern himself with this War, for fear left otherwise it should turn to his Disadvantage. However, *Josiah* was not moved by these Reasons: He was sensible, that the bare March of so powerful an Army through *Judea* would entirely ruin it: And besides, he feared that the Victor, after the Defeat of the *Babylonians*, would fall upon him, and dispossess him of part of his Dominions: He therefore marched to engage *Necho*, and was not only overthrown by him, but unfortunately received a Wound, of which he died at *Jerusalem*, whither he had ordered himself to be carried.

Necho animated by this Victory, continued his March, and advanced towards the *Euphrates*. He defeated the *Babylonians*, took *Carchemish*, a large City in that Country, and securing to himself the Possession of it by a strong Garrison, returned to his own Kingdom, after having been absent three Months from it. Being informed in his March homewards that *Jeboax* had caused himself to be proclaimed King at *Jerusalem*, without first asking his Consent, he commanded him to meet him at *Riblah* in *Syria*. The unhappy Prince was no sooner arrived there, but he was put in Chains by *Necho's* Order, and sent Prisoner to *Egypt*, where he died. From thence pursuing his March, he came to *Jerusalem*; here he gave the Scepter to *Eliakim*, (called by him *Jeboiakim*) another of *Josiah's* Sons, in the room of his Brother, and imposed an annual Tribute on the

Judea tributary to Necho.

the Land of a hundred Talents of Silver, and one Talent of Gold. This being done, he returned in Triumph to *Egypt*.

Necho dying, after he had reigned sixteen Years, left the *Psammitic* Kingdom to his Son *Psammitis*, whose Reign was but of six Years; and History has left us nothing memorable concerning him, except that he invaded *Ethiopia*.

Apries, in Scripture called *Pharaoh Hophra*, succeeding his Father *Psammitis*, reigned twenty-five Years. During the first Years of his Reign, he was as happy as any of his Predecessors: He carried his Arms into *Cyprus*, besieged the City of *Sidon* by Sea and Land, took it, and made himself Master of all *Phœnicia* and *Palestine*; so rapid a Success elated his Heart to a prodigious Degree, and, as *Herodotus* informs us, swelled him with so much Pride and Infatuation, that he boasted it was not in the Power of the Gods themselves to dethrone him; But the *Cyrenians*, a *Greek* Colony, which had settled in *Africa*, between *Libya* and *Egypt*, having seized upon and divided among themselves a great part of the Country belonging to the *Lybians*, forced these Nations, who were thus dispossessed by Violence, to throw themselves into the Arms of this Prince, and implore his Protection; immediately *Apries* sent an Army into *Lybia*, to oppose the *Cyrenian Greeks*; but this Army being entirely defeated, and almost cut to Pieces, the *Egyptians* imagined that *Apries* had sent it into *Lybia* only to be destroyed; and by that means to attain the Power of governing his Subjects without Check or Controul. This Reflection prompted the *Egyptians* to shake off the Yoke which had been laid on them by their Prince, whom they now considered as their Enemy. *Apries* hearing of the Rebellion, dispatched *Amasis*, one of his Officers, to suppress it, and force the Rebels to return to their Allegiance; but the Moment *Amasis* began to make his Speech, they fixed a Helmet upon his Head, in token of the exalted Dignity to which they intended to raise him, and proclaimed him King; *Amasis* having accepted the Crown, staid with the Mutineers, and confirmed them in their Rebellion.

Apries, more exasperated than ever at this News, sent *His Cruelty occasions* *Paterbemis*, one of the principal Lords of his Court, to put *Amasis* under an Arrest; but *Paterbemis* not being able to execute his Commands, and bring away the Rebel, as he was surrounded with the Instruments of his Treachery, was treated by *Apries*, at his Return, in the most ignominious and inhuman Manner: For his Nose and Ears were cut off by the Command of that Prince, who never considered that
Amasis subdues Lower-Egypt.
 only

only his want of Power had prevented his executing a Commission. So bloody an Outrage, done to a Person of such high Distinction, exasperated the *Egyptians* so much that the greatest Part of them joined the Rebels, and the Insurrection became general. *Apries* was now forced to retire into *Upper Egypt*, where he supported himself some Years, during which *Amasis* enjoyed the rest of his Dominions.

Egypt invaded by Nebuchodonosor. The Troubles which thus distracted *Egypt*, afforded *Nebuchodonosor* a favourable Opportunity to invade that Kingdom; and taking Advantage thereof, he subdued *Egypt*, from *Migdol*, or *Magdol*, a Town on the Frontiers of it, as far as *Syene*, in the opposite Extremity, where it borders on *Ethiopia*. He made a horrible Devastation wherever he came; killed a great Number of the Inhabitants, and made such dreadful Havock in the Country, that the Damage could not be repaired in forty Years. *Nebuchodonosor*, having loaded his Army with Spoils, and conquered the whole Kingdom, came to an Accommodation with *Amasis*; and leaving him as his Vice-Roy there, returned to *Babylon*.

Apries put to death. *Apries* now leaving the Place where he had concealed himself, advanced towards the Sea-Coast (probably towards *Libya*) and hiring an Army of *Carians*, *Ionians*, and other Foreigners, he marched against *Amasis*, whom he fought near *Memphis*; but being overcome, *Apries* was taken Prisoner, carried to the City of *Sais*, and there strangled in his own Palace.

Amasis reigns over the whole Kingdom. *Amasis*, after the Death of *Apries*, became peaceable Possessor of *Egypt*, and reigned forty Years over it. He was, according to *Plato*, a Native of the City of *Sais*; but, being of mean Extraction, he met with no Respect, but was contemned by his Subjects in the Beginning of his Reign. He was not insensible of this; but nevertheless thought it his Interest to subdue their Aversion by the Mildness of his Government. Historians relate, that he always devoted the whole Morning to public Affairs, received Petitions, gave Audience, and held his Councils: The rest of the Day was given to Pleasure; and as *Amasis*, in Hours of Diversion, was extremely gay, and seemed to carry his Mirth beyond due Bounds, his Courtiers took the Liberty to represent to him the Unsuitableness of such a Behaviour in a Prince: He answered, *That it was as impossible for the Mind to be always serious and intent upon Business, as for a Bow to continue always bent.*

It was this King who obliged the Inhabitants of every Town to enter their Names in a Book kept by the Magistrate for that Purpose, with their Profession, and manner of Living. He built many magnificent Temples, especially at

at *Sais*, the Place of his Birth. *Herodotus* admired a Chapel there, formed of one single Stone, and which was twenty-one Cubits in Front, fourteen in Depth, and eight in Height: It had been brought from *Elephantina*, and two thousand Men had been employed three Years in conveying it along the *Nile*.

Amasis had a great Esteem for the *Greeks*; he granted them large Privileges; and permitted such of them as were desirous of settling in *Egypt*, to live in the City of *Naucratis*, so famous for its Harbour. When the rebuilding of the Temple of *Delphos*, which had been burnt, was debated on, and the Expence was computed at 300 Talents, or 58125 *l.* Sterling, *Amasis* furnished the *Delphians* with a very considerable Sum towards discharging their Quota, which was the fourth Part of the whole Charge.

He made an Alliance with the *Cyrenians*, and married a Wife from among them.

He conquered the Island of *Cyprus*, and made it tributary to *Egypt*.

Under his Reign *Pythagoras* came into *Egypt*, being recommended to that Monarch by the famous *Polycrates*, Tyrant of *Samos*, who had contracted a Friendship with *Amasis*. *Pythagoras*, during his Stay in *Egypt*, was initiated into all the Mysteries of the Country, and instructed by the Priests in whatever was most abstruse and important in their Religion. It was here he imbibed the Doctrine of the Metempsychosis, or Transmigration of Souls.

In the Expedition in which *Cyrus* conquered so great a Part of the World, *Egypt* was subdued like the rest of the Provinces, as *Xenophon* relates, in the Beginning of his *Cyropædia*. *Egypt* beginning gradually to recover itself, *Amasis* shook off the Yoke, and recovered his Liberty. Accordingly we find, that one of the first Cares of *Cambyfes*, the Son of *Cyrus*, after he had ascended the Throne, was to carry his Arms into *Egypt*. On his Arrival there, *Amasis* was just dead, and succeeded by his Son *Psammenitus*.

Cambyfes, after having gained a Battle, pursued the *Ene-Psamme-*my to *Memphis*, besieged the City, and took it: However, *nitus*. he treated the King with Clemency, granted him his Life, and assigned him an honourable Pension; but being informed that he was secretly concerting Measures to reascend his Throne, he put him to death. *Psammenitus* reigned but six Months; all *Egypt* submitted immediately to the Victor.

Egypt remained under the Dominion of the *Persians* (with some short Intervals, wherein that People endeavoured to render themselves independent again) until it was subdued

subdued by *Alexander the Great*, who remained Sovereign of this Kingdom, and the rest of the *Persian Empire*, till he died.

Ptolemy The Conquests of *Alexander* being divided amongst his
Son of La- General Officers soon after his Death, *Ptolemy*, the Son of
gus, *Lagus*, possessed himself of *Egypt*, and the Provinces dependant on it, viz. *Phœnicia*, *Cælo-Syria*, *Arabia-Petræa*, *Lybia*, *Ethiopia*, *Pamphylia*, *Celicia*, *Lycia*, *Caria*, the Islands of *Cyprus*, and the *Cyclades*; and the *Jews* having made the greatest Resistance in the Reduction of *Cælo-Syria*, which *Judea* was then deemed a Part, he carried away an hundred thousand *Jewish* Captives into *Egypt*, most of whom he placed in the City of *Alexandria*.

carries
 100,000
Jews cap-
tives into
Egypt.

Ptolemy had married *Euridice*, the Daughter of *Antipater*; but afterwards married *Berenice*, a young Lady who attended *Euridice* into *Egypt*: And though he had several Children by *Euridice*, he preferred the Children he had by *Berenice* to them, and associated her Son *Philadelphus* with him in the Government; who succeeded to the whole Monarchy on his Father's Death: And, soon after his Accession, caused two of his Brothers to be murdered; but *Ceraunus*, the eldest Son of *Euridice*, fled to *Seleucus* for Protection.

Ptolemy *Philadelphus* was esteemed the most learned Prince of his
ereAs a Time; at least he was the greatest Encourager of learned
Library at Men, and founded a Library at *Alexandria*, consisting of
Alexan- two hundred thousand Volumes, in which he employed *Demetrius Phalerius*, a celebrated Philosopher, and some time Prince of *Athens*. He applied also to *Eleazar*, the High-Priest of the *Jews*, for a Copy of the Books of *Moses*; and, in order to induce him to consent to it, he purchased the Liberty of the *Jews* who resided in *Egypt*, to the Number of one hundred thousand, and sent a great many rich Presents to the Temple of *Jerusalem* and the Priests, and procured

Translates
the Books
of Moses.

Seventy- seventy-two of the most learned *Jews* to come into *Egypt*,
two Inter- and translate the Books of *Moses* into *Greek*; which they
preters. did ('tis said) in the little Island of *Pharos*, opposite to *Alexandria*, in the Space of seventy-two Days: After which he dismissed them with great Rewards. Future Kings, of the Race of the *Ptolemies*, increased the *Alexandrian* Libraries to seven hundred thousand Volumes, which were most of them burnt in the *Alexandrian* War, to the irreparable Loss of the learned World. *Livy* and *Orosius* relate, that four hundred thousand Volumes were consumed in the Flames; they were not all burnt probably.

Ptolemy *Ptolemy Evergetes*, the Son of *Philadelphus*, succeeded him,
Evergetes, and made a Conquest of most of the *Asian* Provinces under
 the

the Dominion of *Antiochus* and *Seleucus*; but was obliged *his War* to abandon them again by some domestic Insurrections. *with Syria*. While he was engaged in these *Asian Wars*, his Wife *Berenice* made a Vow, and consecrated her Hair to the Gods for *Berenice's Hair* his safe Return, which she afterwards cut off, and laid up in a Temple; whereupon *Conon* the Mathematician feigned, that her Hair was taken up to Heaven, and formed that Constellation known by the Name of *Berenice's Hair*. *Evergetes* dying, after he had reigned four Years, was succeeded by his Son

Ptolemy Philopater, so called, according to some, *ironically*, *Ptolemy* being suspected of taking off both his Father and Mother, *Philopater*, who was an effeminate, luxurious Prince; and leaving the Administration of the Government to others, obtained the Name of *Tryphon*. He was successful, however, in his Wars with *Antiochus*, from whom he recovered *Cælo-Syria*, which had revolted. In his Return from whence, he visited the Temple of *Jerusalem*, and insisted on entering the holy Place; whereupon he was struck blind, according to the *Jews*; for which he revenged himself on the *Jews of Alexandria*. At his Return to *Egypt*, he led the same riotous *his Cruelty* Life he had done before the War; and, to oblige *Agathoclea*, and *Lewdn* his Concubine, he killed his Wife, and Sister *Euridice*, *nesi*. transferred the Administration to his Concubine, and her Brother *Agathocles*, spending the Day in Festivals and Revels, and the Nights in Lewdness; and was so exasperated *Persecution of the* against the *Jews* that refused to renounce their Religion, that he ordered all the *Jews* in *Egypt* to be assembled, and destroyed by five hundred Elephants, whom he caused to be brought together for that Purpose; and this cruel Decree had been executed, if it had not been prevented by a Vision of Angels that appeared in their Defence, as Historians relate. This Prince died in the 28th Year of his Age, and was succeeded by his Son *Ptolemy Epiphanes*, an Infant of *Ptolemy* five Years of Age. *Agathocles*, who then administered the Epiphanes Government, concealed the Death of the late King, until he and his Sister and Mother had rifled the Court of most of the Treasure, and prepared their Creatures to confirm him in the Administration during the Minority of the young King; but when this was proposed in an Assembly of the States, there was not one, except the Creatures of *Agathocles*, that would consent to the continuing him in the Administration; which the People being acquainted with, broke *Agathocles torn* into his Apartment, dragged him out, with his Mother and Sister, and tore them in Pieces; and those who assisted in the Murder of the late Queen *Euridice* underwent the same Fate.

The Ro-
mans pro-
tect Egypt.

Fate. *Aristomenes* the *Acarnanian* was afterwards constituted Protector of the Kingdom; who was allowed in all respects to be equal to that great Trust. However, the neighbouring Princes, *Antiochus* King of *Syria*, and *Philip* the King of *Macedon*, confederating together, invaded the Dominions of the young Prince, having agreed to divide them; and would in all likelihood have succeeded, if the Protector had not applied to the *Romans* for their Assistance: who commanded *Antiochus* to withdraw his Troops from *Egypt*, and commit no more Hostilities in the Territories of the Infant King. *Antiochus*, finding he should not be able to reduce *Egypt* by hostile Means, pretended to be reconciled to *Ptolemy*, gave him his Daughter *Cleopatra* in Marriage, and with her all the Places he had taken in *Syria* which belonged to *Egypt*, imagining he should thereby gain such an Interest in the *Egyptian* Court, that he might hereafter find an Opportunity of reducing that Country without Bloodshed; but in this it seems he was deceived, his Daughter refusing to enter into his Measures.

Ptolemy taking the Reins of the Government into his Hands, reigned with great Applause for some Time, followed the Advice of *Aristomenes*, and revered him as his Father; but at length, growing weary of all Restraint, and listening too much to Flatterers, and the Advice of young Debauchees of his own Age, he caused *Aristomenes* to be poisoned, and proceeded to such Excesses as rendered him contemptible in the Eyes of his Subjects; who, in the End, weary of his tyrannical Administration, took him off by Poison, in the 25th Year of his Reign, and the 28th of his Age, *A. M.* 3825. He left two Sons, and a Daughter named *Cleopatra*, and was succeeded by his eldest Son

Ptolemy
Philometor.

Ptolemy Philometor; who preparing to recover the Provinces in *Syria*, which he was intitled to in right of his Mother *Cleopatra*, and which his Uncle *Antiochus Epiphanes* withheld from him, *Antiochus* was beforehand with him, and invading *Egypt*, reduced the whole Kingdom, except *Alexandria*, and placed *Evergetes*, the younger Brother of *Philometor*, upon the Throne of *Egypt*; to which the *Alexandrians* consenting, *Philometor* was expelled: However, the Kingdom was afterwards, by Agreement, divided between the two Brothers; who reigned jointly for six Years; when *Antiochus*, upon some Pretence, prepared to invade *Egypt* a second Time, and lay Siege to *Alexandria*, but was obliged by the *Romans* to abandon both *Egypt* and *Cyprus*. The two Brothers differing again, *Evergetes* the younger Brother expelled *Philometor* the elder; who thereupon went to *Rome*;

Egypt di-
vided be-
tween him
and his
Brother
Everge-
tes.

Rome; and having obtained Audience of the Senate, and set forth the Injustice that had been done him, it was decreed that the Kingdom should be divided between the two Brothers; that *Philometor* should possess *Egypt* and *Cyprus*, and *Evergetes* *Cyrene*; but *Evergetes* being discontented with this Division, hastened to *Rome*, and petitioned the Senate, that *Cyprus* might be allotted him, and prevailed so far, that *Cyprus* was decreed him; but endeavouring to possess himself of it by Force, he was defeated by his Brother, and it does not appear he ever obtained the Possession of it.

It was in the Reign of *Philometor*, that the Jews obtained The Jews Leave to build a Temple in the Province of *Heliopolis*, in build a Egypt, like that of *Jerusalem*, to which the Egyptian Jews Temple in resorted. Great Disputes arose at this Time between the Jews of *Judea* and those of *Samaria*, concerning which of their Temples ought to be resorted to, that on *Mount Sion*, or that of *Mount Gerizim*, in *Samaria*; which Contests were referred to the Decision of *Ptolemy*, who decided in favour of the Temple of *Jerusalem*. *Philometor* being afterwards engaged in a War with the King of *Syria*, reduced all that Country as far as the River *Orontes*, but died of a Wound he received in the last Battle, in the thirty-fifth Year of his Reign, *A. M.* 3859. He left an Infant-Son by his Wife *Everge-* *Cleopatra*; but *Evergetes* II. called *Physcon*, his Brother, tes, or then King of *Cyrene*, threatening to invade *Egypt*, if the *Physcon*, did not marry him, and consent to reign jointly with him kills his over both Kingdoms, she very unwillingly submitted to it; Brother's but *Physcon* coming to *Alexandria* to solemnize the Mar- Son, and riage with *Cleopatra*, killed her Son in his Mother's Arms on usurps the the Wedding-day, and afterwards caused all those he apprehended faithful to the Queen to be massacred. He had after- His Lust wards a Son by his Wife and Sister, *Cleopatra*, whom he and Cru- named *Memphitis*; notwithstanding which he divorced him- elty. self from her, ravished her Neice, and married his Concubine *Irene*; for which being detested both by the *Egyptians* and *Cyrenians*; and apprehending a general Conspiracy to be forming against him, he caused most of the Inhabitants of *Alexandria* to be massacred, and invited Foreigners to inhabit the City in their stead; but to these he appearing equally cruel and tyrannical, they set fire to his Palace; but having escaped the Flames, he fled to *Cyprus*: Whereupon His Queen they placed his Wife, Queen *Cleopatra*, on the Throne of made Re- *Egypt*: In revenge of which he murdered his Son *Memphitis*, gent. which he had by her; and cutting off his Head, Hands and Feet, sent them to Queen *Cleopatra*, at *Alexandria*, when she was celebrating her Birth-day in that City. He then

*Phyſcon
dies.*

*Cleopatra
Queen Re-
gent.*

*Lathurus
associated
with her.*

*Cleopatra
murdered
by her Son
Alexander.*

*Alexan-
der's Ac-
ceſſion.*

made War upon her with various Succeſs; and having ſhewn himſelf one of the greateſt Monſters of Cruelty that ever ſat upon a Throne, died in the thirtieth Year of his Reign, *A. M.* 3888, leaving behind him three Sons, and many Daughters, either by his Wives or Concubines. His eldeſt Son was named *Lathurus*, his ſecond *Apion*, and his third *Alexander*; and having been reconciled to Queen *Cleopatra*, a little before his Death, he left the Kingdom of *Egypt* to her, and ſuch of her Sons as ſhe choſe to aſſociate with her. She would have taken *Alexander* into the Adminiſtration, as moſt likely to be managed by her; but the People in a Manner compelled her to make *Lathurus*, the eldeſt, her Partner in the Kingdom: Still ſhe found Means to direct all Affairs in *Cyprus* as well as *Egypt* and *Cyrene*, though *Phyſcon* had left *Cyprus* to his Son *Apion*, whom he had by a Concubine: And ſhe reigned as tyrannically as *Phyſcon*. She took away from *Lathurus* his beloved Wife *Cleopatra*, and married him to his younger Siſter *Silene*, and afterwards cauſed him to put her away, after he had two Children by her: She depoſed and reſtored the Kings of *Cyprus* as ſhe ſaw fit: She afterwards expelled *Lathurus*, and aſſociated *Alexander* with her in the Government; who ſuſpecting that ſhe had a Deſign upon his Life, determined to be before-hand with her, and cauſed her to be aſſaſinated: Which made him ſo abhorred by the *Egyptians*, that they expelled him, and reſtored his Brother *Lathurus* to the Throne. *Apion*, who was now King of *Cyrene*, dying about this Time, left the Republic of *Rome* his Heir; and *Lucullus*, and other great *Romans*, viſiting *Egypt* in this Reign, are ſaid to have firſt formed the Deſign of making *Egypt* a *Roman* Province, though they did not put it in Execution till ſome Years after. Little more happened of any Moment in the Reign of *Lathurus*, except it was the Revolt of the City of *Thebes*, after a War of three Years Continuance. *Lathurus* died in the thirty-eighth Year of his Reign, *A. M.* 3925, if we compute from the Death of his Father *Phyſcon*; but then we muſt include the Time when he was aſſociated with *Cleopatra*, and the Years he was excluded from the Adminiſtration.

Lathurus leaving no legitimate Male Iſſue, the State was in great Confuſion. It is not certain who ſucceeded to his Dominions; ſome are of Opinion it was his Daughter *Cleopatra*, who married his Brother *Alexander*: Others think *Alexander* ſucceeded in his own Right; but all agree he was a tyrannical Prince, and ſoon expelled from the Adminiſtration;

tion; to whom succeeded *Dionysius Auletis*, the natural Son of *Lathurus*, who was also deposed, and his Brother, the King of *Cyprus*, advanced to the Throne. These Competitors frequently appealed to the *Romans*, and distributed vast Sums among the Senators, in order to obtain Decrees in their Favour; whereby they miserably impoverished the Country; but *Ptolemy Auletes* being at length established in the Kingdom by the *Romans*, and his Brother being dead without Issue, he reigned four Years in Peace without a Rival, and at his Death leaving two Sons and two Daughters, he appointed his eldest Son and eldest Daughter to succeed him, directing, that they should marry together, according to the Custom of that Family, and reign jointly; the Daughter (the celebrated *Cleopatra*) being then about seventeen Years of Age, and her Brother younger: He also recommended the Guardianship of them to the *Roman Senate*, who appointed *Pompey the Great* to take them under his Protection; and he committed them to the Tuition of *Pothinus* the Eunuch, and *Achillas*, the General of the *Egyptian Army*; who deprived *Cleopatra* of her Share in the Government, that they might engross the whole Administration during the Minority of her Brother, who was much younger than the Queen. *Cleopatra* being thus expelled, raised Troops in *Syria* and *Palestine* to assert her Right. About which Time it was, that *Pompey*, being defeated at *Pharsalia*, fled towards *Egypt*, expecting to have been protected there by a Court he had infinitely obliged; for he it was that had restored *Auletes*, the King's Father, to the Throne of *Egypt*, and introduced *Pothinus* and *Achillas* into the Administration. *Pompey* sending to *Ptolemy* to acquaint him with his Design of landing on that Coast, the King, by the Advice of his two Ministers, sent him a civil Invitation to come on shore; but the Messengers were ordered to put him to death as soon as he came into the Boat that was appointed to receive him; which they punctually obeyed, by stabbing him in Sight of *Ptolemy*, who was then at the Head of his Army on the Shore, which was drawn up there, on Pretence of doing Honour to *Pompey*, and what added to the Barbarity of the Action was the killing this great Man in Presence of his Wife *Cornelia*, who remained on board the Ship which brought him, and with Difficulty escaped the Ships that were sent after her.

Cæsar following *Pompey* into *Egypt*, was presented with *Pompey's* Head on his Arrival, by the ungrateful *Achillas*; who wept at the Sight of it, it is said, and as Dictator took upon him to restore the beautiful *Cleopatra* to her Share in

Cleopatra restored by Cæsar. the Government: He also levied the Money on the People which the late King *Auletes* had engaged to pay him in espousing his Cause in the Senate.

An Insurrection against Cæsar, at Alexandria.

This created him a great many Enemies, the *Egyptians* imagining they should for the future be treated as a conquered Province; and observing that *Cæsar* had but a small Force with him, had recourse to Arms: Whereupon *Cæsar* shut himself up in the Castle of *Alexandria*, and fortified himself against their Attacks; which they carried on with great Vigour by Sea and Land. In one of these naval Engagements *Cæsar* was in great Distress obliged to leap into the Sea, and swim a Quarter of a Mile to save his Life, diving under Water several Times to avoid the Darts and Arrows which were shot at him: During this War, the Part of the Town being set on fire, where the famous Library was repositied, was burnt down to the Ground; but King *Ptolemy* being drowned in one of the Sea-fights, and Forces arriving soon after from *Syria* to the Assistance of

He is in great Danger.

Cæsar, the *Egyptians* submitted; who thereupon pardoned them, but confirmed *Cleopatra* their Queen, and suffered them to be governed by their own Laws; which Indulgence is ascribed chiefly to the Influence the Queen had over him, otherwise it is probable he had made *Egypt* a Roman Province at this Time. *Cæsar* was so enamoured with this Princess, that he remained with her six Months at *Alexandria*, after the War was ended; in which Time she brought him a Son, whom she called *Cæsario*; and being called away by the Wars of *Syria*, he left three Legions at *Alexandria* for her Security; and though *Cæsar* married *Cleopatra* to her younger Brother, and honoured him with the Title of King, the regal Power was vested solely in her.

The Library of Alexandria burnt.

Cæsar, the *Egyptians* submitted; who thereupon pardoned them, but confirmed *Cleopatra* their Queen, and suffered them to be governed by their own Laws; which Indulgence is ascribed chiefly to the Influence the Queen had over him, otherwise it is probable he had made *Egypt* a Roman Province at this Time. *Cæsar* was so enamoured with this Princess, that he remained with her six Months at *Alexandria*, after the War was ended; in which Time she brought him a Son, whom she called *Cæsario*; and being called away by the Wars of *Syria*, he left three Legions at *Alexandria* for her Security; and though *Cæsar* married *Cleopatra* to her younger Brother, and honoured him with the Title of King, the regal Power was vested solely in her.

Cleopatra sole Queen on her Brother's Death.

Cleopatra afterwards, upon *Cæsar's* Invitation, followed him to *Rome*, taking her Brother with her, and resided in *Cæsar's* Palace during her Stay there: And *Cæsar* caused her Statue to be placed in the Temple of *Venus Genetrix*, near the Effigies of that Goddess.

Follows Cæsar to Rome.

Cleopatra afterwards, upon *Cæsar's* Invitation, followed him to *Rome*, taking her Brother with her, and resided in *Cæsar's* Palace during her Stay there: And *Cæsar* caused her Statue to be placed in the Temple of *Venus Genetrix*, near the Effigies of that Goddess.

Cleopatra poisoned her younger Brother, whom she had married.

Cleopatra returning to *Egypt*, and finding her Brother almost of Age, and perhaps assuming the Power, as well as the State of a King, she caused him to be poisoned; and receiving Intelligence soon after, that *Cæsar* was stabbed in the Senate, she equipped a Fleet, and assembled four Legions, with a Design to send them to the Assistance of *Anthony*, *Octavius*, and *Dolabella*, who had declared War against *Brutus* and *Cassius*, and the rest of *Cæsar's* Murderers: And after the Death of *Brutus* and *Cassius*, *Anthony* coming into *Asia*, she attended him in *Syria*, and gained such an

Cæsar being murdered,

And after the Death of *Brutus* and *Cassius*, *Anthony* coming into *Asia*, she attended him in *Syria*, and gained such an

As

Ascendant over him, that he followed her into *Egypt* when she returned, and was ever after entirely governed by her. He gave her Part of *Judea* and *Arabia* to add to her Dominions; and that he might enjoy her Conversation, neglected the *Parthian War* which he had engaged in; and having two Children by her at a Birth, gave them the Names of the *Sun* and *Moon*, while she assumed the Name of *Isis*, and he of *Osiris* and *Bacchus*; and personating those Gods, were crowned with Ivy, and drawn in a triumphant Chariot through the Streets of *Alexandria*. He proceeded to divide the Share he had in the Empire between *Cleopatra* and her Children, and sent to the Senate of *Rome* to confirm the Donative; which lost him the Hearts of the *Roman People*, to which his Abuse of his Wife *Octavia*, *Cæsar's* Sister, did not a little contribute: And when he found that the People of *Rome* detested his Conduct, he made War upon them, declaring he would transfer *Rome* itself to his Mistress *Cleopatra*, if he succeeded, and make *Alexandria* the Seat of her Empire: He also gave her a *Roman Guard*, with her Name engraved on their Shields: He suffered her to sit in Judgment with him, and condescended to run by the Side of her Chariot through the City like a Footman; but still he had some Suspicion of her, and caused his Meat sometimes to be tasted before he would eat; which she perceiving, caused a Glass of Poison to be brought in, which he was going to drink off, but she prevented it, and observed how easy it would have been to have done what he suspected, if she intended it: He afterwards put a more entire Confidence in her; and when he was making Preparation to engage *Octavius* by Land, she persuaded him to try his Fortune at Sea, and attended him to *Actium* with her Fleet, where, while the Victory was doubtful, she fled, and retired to her own Coasts, and *Anthony* followed her, leaving the Victory to *Octavius*, and thereby lost the Empire of the World.

Upon the Return of *Anthony* and *Cleopatra* to *Egypt*, they spent their Time in feasting and revelling, as formerly; but *Cleopatra*, it is said, in the mean time, betrayed *Anthony's* Measures to *Cæsar*, in order to make a Friend of the Conqueror, and get herself established on the Throne of *Egypt*: And *Cæsar* thereupon promised her his Friendship, it is said, if she would destroy *Anthony*: He even professed he was in love with her, but with no other Design than to amuse her, till he could get her into his Power, she having threatened to consume all her Treasure in the Flames, and to perish with it.

Anthony discovering her Treachery, she dreaded his Resentment, and shut her self up in a magnificent Monument she had erected for her Tomb, from whence she directed one of her Attendants to inform *Anthony* she was dead; whereupon he gave himself a mortal Wound in his Breast with his own Sword; which she being informed of, caused him to be brought to the Walls of her Monument, and drawn up to her; for she durst not let the Door be opened, for fear of being surpris'd by some of *Cæsar's* Friends, and carried Captive to *Rome*, to adorn his Triumph, which she dreaded more than Death.

Is reconcil- ed to her, and dies. *Anthony* being drawn up by her and her Women, before he expired, she threw herself on his bleeding Body, calling him her Prince, her Lord and Husband, till she found there was no more Life left in him, and then prepared to dispatch herself; but was prevented by some of *Cæsar's* Officers, who broke in upon her before she was aware; *Cæsar* following soon after, address'd her with great Civility, and suffered her still to play the Queen some Time, thinking thereby, to divert her from her Purpose of destroying her-

Cleopatra kills her- self. self; but she apprehending he had still an Intention of leading her in Triumph at *Rome*, from the Indifference he shewed at the first Interview, took the first Opportunity she had of preventing it, chusing to die by the Bite of a little Viper she kept in a Basket for that Purpose; but she had first buried her Hero *Marc Anthony*, with all the Splendor and Magnificence due to the Remains of a great Emperor; which *Cæsar* had indulg'd her in, that she might imagine herself in his Favour. This Princess died in the fortieth Year of her Age, having reigned twenty-two Years, if we compute from the Death of her Father; and the last fourteen Years had been caressed, and even adored by *Anthony*. She is allowed to have given great Encouragement to Learning and learned Men; of which she gave a signal Instance, by erecting another Library in the stead of that which was burnt in the *Alexandrian* War, being supplied with Books from *Pergamus* and other Cities in the *Lesser Asia*, by the Procurement of *Anthony*; and now *Egypt* was reduced to a *Roman* Province, and a final Period put to the Government of *Alexander's* Successors, being about 300 Years after the Death of *Darius*, who was conquered by *Alexander*.

Conquered by the Sa- racens. *Egypt* remained under the Dominion of the *Roman*, and afterwards of the *Constantinopolitan* Emperors, till the seventh Century, when the *Saracen* Caliphs, the Successors of *Mahomet*, made a Conquest of it; and it remained subject to them until

until their Viceroy assumed an Independency, and took upon him the Title of *Sultan of Cairo*, anno 870.

The Dominions of these *Egyptian* Sultans extended all along the Coast of *Barbary*, as far as the *Straits of Gibraltar*; and at length they made a Conquest of *Spain*, the South of *France*, *Italy*, *Sicily*, and the rest of the *Spanish* and *Italian* Islands in the *Mediterranean*.

Saracen, a *Turkish* General, made a Conquest of *Egypt*, By the anno 1163, whose Successors continued Sovereigns of this Kingdom; until the Year 1255, when the *Mamelukes*, 1163. the Sultan's Guards, deposed their Sovereign, and placed one of their own Officers upon the Throne; and this Kingdom remained under the Dominion of the *Mamelukes*, until *Selimus*, Emperor of the *Turks*, made a Conquest of it, anno 1517; ever since which it has been a Province of the *Turkish* Empire; which several Revolutions having been treated of already, in the Histories of the *Saracens*, *Turks*, &c. are omitted here.

Mamelukes
usurp the
Dominion
of Egypt,
1255.
Selimus
Emperor of
the *Turks*,
conquers
Egypt,
1517.

Laws and Customs of the ancient Egyptians.

MURDER was punished with Death here, whether the Person killed was a Slave or a Freeman: Perjury was also punished with Death, and a false Accuser was condemned to undergo the same Punishment as the Person accused was to have suffered, if the Fact had been proved.

Laws and
Customs.
Punish-
ments.

He who neglected to save a Man's Life, whom he saw injuriously attacked, when it was in his Power, was punished as well as the Assassin.

No Man was allowed to be a useless Member of the State, but was obliged to give an Account of his Possessions, and how he lived, and to enter the Place of his Abode with the public Register; and if he gave a false Account of himself, he was put to Death.

No idle
Person
suffered,

If any one borrowed Money, he was obliged to pawn the Body of his Father to the Creditor, which every *Egyptian* used to embalm and keep in his House, and it was deemed impious and infamous, not to redeem it in a short Time; and if the Debtor died, without discharging the Debt, he was deprived of the Honours usually paid to the Dead.

Polygamy was allowed to all but the Priests, who were permitted to have but one Wife; and whether a Man married a Slave, or a free Woman, the Children were legitimate.

Women
and Mar-
riages.

It was not only lawful for Brothers and Sisters to marry, but their Laws and Religion countenanced such Matches, especially in the Royal Family.

Their **Laws** required they should reverence old Age. The young Men were obliged to rise up to the old, and give them the most honourable Seats.

*Gratitude
in highest
Esteem.*

The Virtue in the highest Esteem among the *Egyptians* was Gratitude, especially to such Kings and great Men as were Benefactors to their Country. These were revered as so many Deities, even in their Life-time,

Clergy.

Next to Kings, their Priests were most honoured; they possessed great Estates in Land, which were exempted from Taxes; and that which contributed most to the Respect that was paid them, was their Skill in the Sciences.

Religion.

By them it is said Festivals were first instituted: When Sacrifices were made, the Sacrificers laid their Hands upon the Head of the Victim, loading it with Curses, and praying the Gods to send down upon it all the Calamities that *Egypt* might be threatened with. Transmigration was one of their Doctrines; they believed, that at Death the Soul entered some other Animal; and after a Revolution of many Years was united to a human Body again.

*Supersti-
tion.*

The *Egyptians* were very superstitious; they worshiped almost every Thing; but *Osiris* and *Isis*, supposed to be the Sun and Moon, were most adored. The Ox, the Dog, the Cat, the Wolf, the Hawk, the Crocodile and *Ibis*, also were the Objects of their Worship; and it was Death to kill any of these Animals; but the Bull *Apis* was the Animal most honoured; Temples were erected to him, and at his Death, the whole Nation went into Mourning, and his Funeral was celebrated with the utmost Magnificence; after which, the People were all employed in finding out his Successor, who was known by certain Marks; he was to have a white Spot upon his Forehead, in Form of a Crescent, and on his Back the Figure of an Eagle; and as soon as he was found, Raptures of Joy and Festivals succeeded; the new God was brought to *Memphis*, and recognized and adored with great Ceremony. The *Egyptians* also worshipped Roots and Onions, and other Produce of their Gardens; but it is said these divine Honours were not paid to these Objects, but to the Gods of which they were Symbols; *Plutarch* speaking of *Osiris* and *Isis*, says, Philosophers honour the Image of God, wherever they find it, even in inanimate Beings, and consequently more in those that have Life. We are therefore to approve not the Worshipers of these Animals, but those, who by their Means ascend to the Deity; they are to be considered as so many Mirrors which Nature holds forth, and in which the Supreme Being displays himself in a wonderful Manner; or, as so many Instruments which

which he makes use of, to manifest outwardly his incomprehensible Wisdom. Should Men therefore, for the embellishing of Statues, amass together all the Gold and precious Stones in the World; the Worship must not be referred to the Statues, for the Deity does not exist in Colours artfully disposed, nor in frail Matter destitute of Sense and Motion. *Plutarch* says in the same Treatise, that as the Sun and Moon, Heaven and Earth, and the Sea, are common to all Men, but have different Names, according to the Difference of Nations and Languages; in like Manner, though there is but one Deity, and one Providence, which governs the Universe, and which have several subaltern Ministers under it; Men give to this Deity (which is the same) different Names; and pay it different Honours, according to the Laws and Customs of every Country.

When any Person died, his Family went into Mourning *Funerals*, for forty or seventy Days, according to his Quality; and during that Time, abstained from Wine and delicious Food: the Body in the mean time was embalmed; the Brain and Bowels being taken out, the Cavities were filled with Spices and odoriferous Drugs, and then swathed with Fillets, as the Mummies appear to be at this Day: The Body was then put into a Coffin, and placed upright in a Nich of the burying Place; but before the Corpse was permitted to enter the Tombs, it underwent a solemn Trial. The Judges *Trials of* met on the Side of a Lake, which they crossed in a Boat; *the Dead*, and he who managed the Helm, had the Title of *Charon*. *Charon*. The Accuser, who was supposed to be acquainted with the Conduct of the Deceased, made a strict Scrutiny into his Actions; and if it appeared, that he had led a profligate Life, the Judges refused to waft him over to the Tomb, he was condemned to be deprived of Burial: On the other Hand, if it appeared that his good Deeds overbalanced the bad, he was interred with Honour; and their Kings themselves, it seems, were obliged to undergo the like Examination, before their Funeral Obsequies were suffered to be solemnized.

The military Men, next to the Priests, were esteemed the *Forces*, most honourable. Every Soldier had a Piece of Land assigned him, free from Taxes; besides which, he had an Allowance daily of five Pounds of Bread, two Pounds of Flesh, and a Pint of Wine, deemed sufficient to support a small Family, it being inconsistent with good Policy, as *Diodorus* observes, to commit the Defence of a Country to Men who had no Interest in its Preservation.

Four hundred thousand of these Soldiers, all Natives of *Egypt*, were constantly disciplined and instructed in the Art
of

of War, no Country could shew a better Body of Horse than the *Egyptian* Cavalry; Sons succeeded their Fathers, and were educated in the Art of War from their Infancy; but these Forces were kept up, more for the Defence of the Country, than for making foreign Conquests.

Arts and Sciences.

Egypt was anciently looked upon as the School of Arts and Sciences. The most learned Men of *Greece*, such as *Homer*, *Pythagoras* and *Plato*, as well as those celebrated Legislators, *Solon* and *Lycurgus*, travelled thither for their Improvement, for no People encouraged Arts and Sciences more than the *Egyptians*; their Books stiled *Mercuries* were replenished with useful Learning, and contained every Thing that could accomplish the Mind, or procure Ease and Happiness; the first Libraries are said to have been erected in *Egypt*; and the Place where their Books were repositied, was stiled *The Office for the Diseases of the Soul*. None of the Ancients made greater Advances in Astronomy. By their Observations of the Planets they regulated the Course of the Year, which consisted of 365 Days and six Hours. They are said to have invented or improved the Science of Physic; but it seems the Physician was obliged to follow certain Rules prescribed; and while these were observed, he was not answerable for the Success; but if he deviated from them, and did not succeed, his Offence was capital: Every Physician, according to *Herodotus*, confined his Practice to the Cure of one Disease, and did not pretend to prescribe for any other Disorder.

Architecture, Painting and Sculpture were brought to great Perfection here; their Pyramids, Labyrinths, Obelisks, Temples and Palaces demonstrate this; the Riches of the Ornaments, the just Proportion, and Symmetry of the Parts are still admired; in many of their Works, the Liveliness of the Colours remain to this Day; but as to the Science of Music, it appears, that the *Egyptians* had but a mean Opinion of it, as it contributed, they apprehended, to enervate the Mind.

Government.

Notwithstanding, the Kingdom of *Egypt* is said to have been an absolute Monarchy, and the Crown hereditary; surely no Prince was ever so limited and restrained by the Laws: His very Food, the Quantity and Quality of it, were prescribed, which he could not alter or exceed. His Hours for transacting all Affairs, and the Judgment he was to pass on every Crime was determined. It was the Law therefore, and not the King, that was the supreme Authority, however his Subjects might flatter him, that he was not to be controlled, as they have done other limited Monarchs.

For

For History informs us, that the King was obliged, early in the Morning, to peruse the Petitions and Letters that had been addressed to him; that then he was to resort to the Temple, and after Prayers and Sacrifices to hear the Duties of a good Prince repeated by a Priest, which was looked upon as an Admonition for him to imitate, though in Compliance to his Majesty, the Priest was to suppose him to be possessed of all the Virtues and good Qualities he enumerated.

Their Husbandmen and Artificers were in great Esteem, though the Liberal Arts possessed the highest Degree of Honour: Every Profession confined themselves to such Arts as their Fathers had exercised, which they were obliged to by their Laws: And this is held to be one Reason of their arriving at such Perfection in every Mechanic Art. I am inclined to believe also, that they never married with the People of any other Trade or Profession, any more than the *Indians* or other Eastern Nations do at this Day: These will not even eat with a Man of a different Profession; and it is said in Scripture, that the Shepherds were an Abomination, to these *Egyptians* that followed other Occupations, inasmuch, that different Tables were provided for them.

The chief Towns of *Lower Egypt* are, first *Alexandria*, the only tolerable Harbour belonging to *Egypt*; it is situate in the Latitude of 30 Degrees odd Minutes, above an hundred Miles to the Northward of *Cairo*, and forty Miles to the Westward of the most Westerly Branch of the River *Nile*, upon a Promontory which runs out into the *Mediterranean Sea*, and forms two Harbours. The Country about *Alexandria* is a barren sandy Desert, affording very little Provision or Fruits; and their Water is brought them from the *Nile*, near forty Miles, by a noble Aqueduct, now in a great Measure ruined, so that part of the Year it is carried thither on the Backs of Camels. Among the Ruins of the old City are found several fine Pillars of Porphyry and Granite, with Hieroglyphics upon them. The Gates of the Town are still composed of Pieces of *Thebaic* Stone, and Granite; and they find such Plenty of Marble and Porphyry among the Ruins, that it lies neglected: But the finest Piece of Antiquity, which is left standing, is *Pompey's Pillar*, about 200 Paces from the Town. The Body of the Pillar is one entire Piece of Granite Marble, or some Composition as durable and beautiful as Marble. The Height of it seventy Feet, and the Circumference twenty-five, with a noble Capital and Base, on which are several Hieroglyphics.

The

The Pharos.

The Island of *Pharos*, on which the famous Watch-Tower, or Light-House, stood, esteemed one of the Wonders of the World, was formerly separated from *Alexandria*, by a Channel a Mile broad, but is now joined to the Continent; and in the Room of the *Pharos* is built a Castle called the *Pharillon*, which serves as a Sea-Mark to Mariners at this Day.

Rosetto.

The City of *Rosetto* is situate fifty Miles to the Eastward of *Alexandria*, upon the best Branch of the River *Nile*, which falls into the Sea five Miles below the Town. There is a Bar which prevents large Vessels entering the River, and is not a little hazardous for lesser Barques in stormy Weather. The Form of the City is almost round, being about six Miles in Circumference, and containing near eighty thousand Inhabitants. It is encompassed with pleasant Gardens, which makes it look more like a Village than a City, especially since it is without Walls. There is a tolerable brisk Trade, and Plenty of all things, but they are put to very great Inconveniencies, for want of fresh Water some Months in the Year, when the Water of the River is brackish, being mixed with that of the Sea.

Damietta.

Damietta, or *Pelufium*, is situate on the most easterly Branch of the River *Nile*, four Miles distant from the Sea: It was anciently a considerable Port, and the Country around it affords plenty of Fruits and Provisions, but the other Branch of the *Nile* on which *Rosetto* is situated, is more frequented on both Branches of the *Nile*: The Villages and Towns stand exceeding thick; some pretend to have counted no less than three hundred between *Rosetto* and *Grand Cairo*, and assure us, that there are not much fewer on the *Damietta* Branch. This Part of *Egypt*, which is enclosed by the two Branches of the *Nile* and the Sea, and anciently called *Delta*, from its triangular Figure, is much the most fruitful Part of *Egypt*, and the most conveniently situated for a foreign Trade; and *Alexandria*, which lies not far from the western Mouth of the River, being the only Harbour upon the Coast, had the greatest Trade of any Town in the World, when the rich Merchandise of the East was brought hither by the *Red Sea*, and from hence dispersed to all the Kingdoms of *Europe*; but upon the finding out the Passage to *India* by the *Cape of good Hope*, this and all the Towns in *Lower Egypt* found a very sensible Decay in their Trade.

Grand Cairo.

Grand Cairo, the Capital of *Egypt*, is the Seat of the Beglerbeg, or Viceroy: It is situate in twenty-nine Degrees odd Minutes North Latitude, about a Mile and a half Distance from the Eastern Branch of the River *Nile*, being built upon

a Plain at the Foot of a Mountain. It is of a triangular Form, and about ten Miles in Compass. The private Houses are built of ill-burnt Bricks or Clay, and the Streets narrow; it is very populous, there being thirty or forty People in a very little House; but those Travellers who talk of its containing five Millions of Inhabitants, are certainly very much mistaken in their Calculation; and should they include *Old Cairo*, *Bulack*, and other Towns which are at a Distance from the City, as some of them do, the Inhabitants must nevertheless fall very short of five Millions, especially if we consider the Unhealthfulness of the Place, and the Numbers the Plague sweeps away once in seven Years. The Houses have flat terrassed Roofs; and though they have no very grand Appearance on the out-side, they are many of them beautiful enough within. Those of the Quality are built about large Courts or Squares, their Halls paved with Marble, and covered with handsome Domes, sometimes open at the Top, to let the Air in; the Walls and Roofs of the principal Apartments shine with Gold and Azure, and the Floors are laid with rich Carpets.

In the Castle they shew the Ruins of a noble Building, which they pretend was *Joseph's* Hall, where he sat in Judgment; and here are still remaining thirty fine Pillars of *Theban* Marble, with part of the Roof overlaid with Gold and Azure. The Castle is the Residence of the Viceroy.

There are scarce any wide Streets in *Cairo*, except those of the great Bazar, or Market-place, and the *Khalis* or Canal, a low Street, which runs through the Middle of the City, from one End of it to the other, in which the Water stands one half of the Year, and it is dry the other: Into this Canal or Street they turn the River *Nile*, when it is at the height, and from thence distribute the Waters to their Gardens, and the adjacent Fields.

The River *Nile* or *Abanchi*, which in the *Abyssine* Language signifies *the Father of Rivers*, hath its Sources in *ver.* eleven or twelve Degrees of Northern Latitude in the Empire of *Abyssinia*, or *Ethiopia*.

There are great Rejoicings annually in *Egypt*, when the River rises to a certain Height; for upon this depends the Fruitfulness of the Country; and at the cutting of the Banks, to let it into their Canals, is solemnized one of their greatest Festivals. The River begins to swell usually in the Month of *May*; and on the twenty-eighth of *June* they publish it in *Cairo* and other Towns by a Crier, how much the Water is encreased. The Viceroy has a Palace upon an Island opposite to *Old Cairo*, in which there stands
a Pillar

a Pillar divided into Picks, a Measure about the Length of two Feet; every Day there are Officers appointed to view this Pillar, and observe how much the River is risen, who gives Notice to the several Criers to publish it in their respective Quarters; and when the River is high enough, the Banks are cut, to let it into the Khalis, or Canal, which runs through *Grand Cairo*.

In *October*, the *Nile* ceasing to rise, the Water stagnates in the Khalis, and has a very noisome Smell, occasioned by the Filth which is thrown into it, as well as by the Stagnation, inasmuch, that the very Money and Plate is tarnished with the Vapour.

The letting the Water of the *Nile* into the Canals was anciently attended with great Rejoicings, when they used also to sacrifice a Boy and a Girl; which gave Occasion to the present Generation to represent human Figures in their Fireworks at this Solemnity. The Fertility of *Egypt*, as has been observed, is to be ascribed chiefly to the overflowing of this River, which leaves a fattening Slime behind it; for the Soil is naturally a barren Sand; but the Fields the Waters cover are some of them so very rich, that the Husbandman is forced to mix Sand with the Earth, or his Grain would be too rank.

Coptus.

Coptus, once a great City, and the Capital of *Egypt*, from whence the Natives obtained the Name of *Cophti*, lies upon the *Nile*, in the Latitude of twenty-six Degrees, odd Minutes: But most of the Towns of *Upper Egypt* are now in Ruins, or reduced to inconsiderable Villages, and possessed by *Arabs*, or *Cophti* Christians, the Trade being diverted another Way. The *Latin* Fathers at *Cairo*, who have some of them gone up the *Nile* into *Upper Egypt*, entertain us with an Account of the noble Ruins they met with there. Vast Columns of Marble and Porphyry, which lie half buried in the Ground, and Statues and Obelisks of a prodigious Size, with Hieroglyphics upon them.

Present Government.

Since the *Ottoman* Emperors have had the Dominion of this Kingdom, they have always governed it by a Viceroy, stiled the *Bashaw* of *Grand Cairo*: But as *Egypt* is subdivided into several Governments, the respective Governors are not sent from *Constantinople*, or appointed by the Viceroy, but are appointed or elected out of the Slaves of each deceased Prince; and these are vested with sovereign Power in their respective Districts, and have the Command of the Militia of the several Provinces: Many of them are of the Race of the *Mamelukes*. The *Bashaw*, or Viceroy, has a
con-

considerable Body of Spahi's, and Janizaries about *Cairo*, to keep these Princes in Awe ; and every one of these petty Princes, it is said, is obliged to mount the Viceroy's Guard in his Turn, with a Body of the national Troops : But there is a perpetual Jealousy between the *Turkish* Bashaw and these *Egyptian* Royalets ; sometimes the Bashaw will take upon him to depose one of them, and perhaps take his Head ; and there are Instances on the other Hand, where they have deposed the Bashaw, and compelled the *Porte* to send them another more acceptable to them : And the Grand Signior has thought fit to humour them in it, rather than hazard the Revolt of so rich a Province, which is now esteemed the Granary of *Constantinople*, as it was anciently of *Rome* ; for this Soil is so fertilized by the *Nile*, that it is not in the Power of the *Turks*, it seems, to render it barren.

Westward of *Grand Cairo*, on the other Side of the *Pyramids*. *Nile*, stand those three vast Pyramids, so justly the Admiration of all that view them. That which has suffered least by Time and Weather, and is the fairest of the three, is situate on the Top of a Rock in the sandy Defart of *Lybia*, about a Quarter of a Mile to the Westward of the Plains of *Egypt*, above which the Rock riseth 100 Feet or more, with an easy Ascent ; upon so advantageous a Rise, and so solid a Foundation is this Pyramid erected : Each Side of it at the Basis is 693 Feet, according to the *English* Standard ; its perpendicular Height is 499 Feet ; but if we take it as the Pyramid ascends inclining, then the Height is equal to the Breadth of the Basis, namely, 693 Feet. The whole Area of the Basis of this Pyramid contains 480,249 square Feet, or eleven Acres of Ground, and something more.

This Pyramid is ascended on the Outside by Steps, the lowest Step being four Feet in Height, and three in Breadth, running about the Pyramid in a Level : The second Step or Degree is like the first, each Stone being almost four Feet in Height, and three in Breadth, but retires inwards from the first near three Feet ; in the same Manner is the third Row of Stones placed upon the second, and so in Order the rest, like so many Stairs rising one above another to the Top, which does not end in a Point as mathematical Pyramids do, but in a little Flat or Square, consisting of nine Stones, besides two that are wanting at the Angles. The Steps or Degrees by which we ascend are not, as has been intimated, all of an equal Depth, but the higher we ascend, so much the more they diminish ; and therefore a right Line extended from any Part
of

of the Basis on the Outside to the Top, would equally have touched the outward Angle of every Degree or Step, before the Stones were washed and impaired by the Air and Rains; But they are so worn and mouldered away at present, that they cannot conveniently be ascended, except on the South-Side, or at the East Angle. The Breadth and Depth of every Step is one entire Stone, many of these thirty Feet in Length, and the Number of Steps from the Bottom to the Top is 207.

It has been said by some, that the Pyramids cast no Shadow at Noon-day: To which Mr. *Greaves* answers, That if he had not seen them cast a Shadow at Noon-day, yet Reason and the Art of measuring Altitudes by Shadows does necessarily infer as much. In Summer-time indeed, for almost three Quarters of the Year, at Noon-day the Pyramids cast no Shadow; but in the Winter-time at Noon-day, and every Morning and Evening in the Year, they certainly cast a Shadow proportionable to their Bulk: And it is observable, that *Thales Milesius*, above 2000 Years ago, took the Height of these Pyramids by their Shadows, according to *Pliny* and *Lucretius*.

On the North-side of this Pyramid, ascending up an artificial Bank of Earth, there is a narrow square Passage leading into the Pyramid, about three Feet and an half high, and three Feet and a Quarter broad, being a very steep Passage, and running downwards ninety-two Feet and a half. Passing from the second Gallery through a little square Hole into some Closets, or little Chambers lined with *Thebaic* Marble, they enter a very noble Hall, or Chamber, which stands on the Centre of the Pyramid, equidistant from all the Sides, and almost in the Midst between the Basis and the Top. The Floor, Sides and Roof of this Room are all made of vast and exquisite Tables of *Thebaic* Marble. From the Top to the Bottom of it there are but six Ranges of Stone; and the Stones that cover it are of a stupendous Length, like so many huge Beams lying flat, and traversing the Room; and nine of these cover the Roof. The Length of this Hall is something more than thirty-four *English* Feet, the Breadth seventeen Feet, and the Height nineteen Feet and a half. Here stands a Marble Chest, supposed to be the Tomb of *Cheops*, or *Chemmis*, King of *Egypt*, the Founder of the Pyramid, being one entire Piece of Marble hollowed, and uncovered at the Top, and sounds like a Bell on being struck. There are no Signs of any Corpses having been laid in it.

The

The Figure of this Tomb is like an Altar hollowed within, the Stone smooth and plain, without any Relief, or embossed Work on it. The exterior Superficies contains seven Feet three Inches, and is three Quarters deep, and as much in Breadth. The hollow Part within is little more than six Feet in Length, and two Feet in Depth and Breadth. From which Dimensions Mr. *Greaves* observes, as well as from the embalmed Bodies he saw in *Egypt*, that there is no Decay in Nature, but that the Men of this Age are of the same Stature they were 3000 Years ago. It is not easy to conceive how this Tomb was brought into the Room where it now stands, it being impossible it should enter by the narrow Passages above described; which makes some conclude it was raised up hither from without, before the Room was finished, and the Roof closed up.

As we pass from the first Pyramid to the second, we see the Ruins of a Pile of Building all of square polished Stone, supposed to be the Habitation of the Priests. The second Pyramid is supposed to be built by *Cephren*, the Brother of *Cheops*. The Stones thereof are white, and not near so large as those of the former; nor do the Sides rise by Degrees or Steps, like the other, but are all plain and smooth, the whole Fabric, except on the South, being very entire and free from any deformed Ruptures, or Breaches; and the Dimensions, both as to the Height and Breadth, are almost equal to the first; but there has been no Entrance yet discovered into it, nor is it known whether there be any Rooms or Apartments within.

The third Pyramid stands a Furlong distant from the second, upon an advantageous Rising of the Rock, which makes it seem equal to the former at a distance: But Mr. *Greaves* observes, that notwithstanding *Diodorus Siculus*, *Strabo*, and *Pliny*, and some modern Writers affirm, it is built great Part of it with black or *Ethiopic* Marble, the whole Pyramid seems to be of a clear white Slate, something better and brighter than that of either of the former Pyramids. Each Side of the Basis is 300 Feet, and something more, and the Height the same.

There are several other Pyramids dispersed about the *Lybian* Desert. Mr. *Greaves* reckons up 20, most of them much inferior in Bulk to any of the former; but there is one which stands twenty Miles South and by West of those above described, of the same Dimensions with the first, with Steps or Degrees on the Outside, but more decayed than the former: It has also an Entrance on the North-side, but blocked up, so that there is no getting in to see the Apartments.

The HISTORY of

The Time when these Pyramids were built is not less uncertain than the Founder's Names; for nothing can be more precarious than the *Egyptian* Chronology, where we find a Succession of Kings for 50,000 Years; and they pretend to enumerate no less than 330 Kings, who reigned before King *Mæris*. Mr. *Greaves* has taken an infinite deal of Pains to ascertain the Time of their Erection, and concludes at length, that they were built between the Time of the *Israelites* going out of *Egypt* and the Building of *Salomon's* Temple, being a Space of 480 Years: But for my Part I cannot help inclining still to believe, that they were built by the *Israelites*, whom the Kings of *Egypt* employed in these stupendous Works on a politic Account, rather than for any Ostentation of their Power and Grandeur, as some Writers imagine; not but that there might be some other Inducements to the erecting them, besides the keeping a mutinous People in Action, who upon the least Respite from their Labours, seemed ready to break out into Rebellion: That they were actually employed in laborious Works we have the best Authority we can have, both from sacred and prophane Writers. And as there were no less than 600,000 of these Labourers, besides Women and Children, as it appears there were at their leaving *Egypt*, what can we assign a more proper Time for erecting these vast Structures, than when they dwelt in this Kingdom? Their being employed in general in preparing Materials for building, by the Kings of *Egypt*, of which we have such undoubted Testimonies, carries a much stronger Presumption, that they were employed in erecting these Fabrics, than the Account of their making Bricks does, that they were never concerned in any other Work but Brick-making: Besides, a less Body of Men than the *Israelites* were would have made but a slow Progress in such mighty Buildings: And the Reason the Dimensions of the *Egyptian* Pyramids exceed any other Structures that ever were in the World is, because never any other Prince employed so prodigious a Number of Labourers, or had equal Reason for doing it. Another Reason why I am inclined to believe they are as ancient as the Time of the *Israelites* being in *Egypt* is, that no Author is able to assign the Time of their Erection.

Sphinx.

The Head of a *Colossus* stands near the largest Pyramid, usually called a *Sphinx*, the upper Part whereof should resemble a Woman, and the lower Part a Lion; by which the *Egyptians* in their Hieroglyphics represented a Harlot, intimating the Danger of being smitten with a beautiful, faithless Woman, whom the fond Lover would probably in
the

the End find as cruel and rapacious as a Lion. This Figure, at least what appears of it now, has nothing more of it discernible than from the Shoulders upwards, and yet is near thirty Feet in Height, and seems to be hewn out of the solid Rock. It is a Question whether there ever was any more of the Figure than is to be seen at present, though *Pliny*, and some of the Ancients, give it a Belly, and much larger Dimensions, making it to be 102 Feet in Compass; and some of our modern Writers pretend, that there is a subterranean Passage from the first Pyramid to the Head, which is hollow, suggesting, that the Heathen Priests used to deliver their Oracles from thence; but it does not seem well proved to me, that there is any such Passage under Ground from the Pyramid to the Sphinx; or that any Oracles were ever delivered from thence.

The Mummy-Pits, as they are called by our modern *Mummies* Travellers, are in the *Lybian* Deserts, three or four Leagues *Pits.* distant from the three great Pyramids, and a little to the Westward of the Place, where the City of *Memphis* once stood. These Pits are square, and of good Stone, according to some Travellers; but others say they are hewn out of the solid Rock. When the People who have the Care of the Mummies have removed the Sand from the Surface, they take up a great Stone, which covers the Mouth of the Pit, and let down those who would view them by Ropes, or a Man may go down by putting his Feet into the Holes on the Sides; but the shallowest of them are thirty-two Feet deep. At the Bottom of the Pit are square Openings and Passages, ten or fifteen Feet long, which lead into square arched Rooms, in which the embalmed Bodies are set; some of them in Chests or Coffins of Wood, others in Stone Coffins, shaped like a Man, with his Arms stretched out by his Sides. *Thevenot* relates, that he saw a very large Body in a very thick Coffin of Wood, which was not at all rotten; they observed it to be Sycamore, which in *Egypt* is called *Pharaoh's Fig Tree*, and not so subject to rot as other Wood; and the Shape of the Face of the Person within was cut in embossed Work, as those of the Stone-Coffins are. With these Mummies are usually found little Images of several Sorts; some made of Copper, others of Stone, and others of several Sorts of Earth, the Figures of Birds and Beasts, which the Natives sell to the *Franks* at very easy Rates; for the *Turks* have so little Curiosity, that they will not give more than the Value of the Materials for any thing of this kind. The Danger of entering the Pyramids and Mummy-Pits is intimated by several Travellers, on ac-

count of the thievish *Arabs*, who watch all Opportunities of plundering those who come to view them: But no Gentleman has given us so lively a Description of the *Hazzar* People run, whose Curiosity leads them to visit these Places, as Mr. *Hill*.

Papyrus. The Rush or Weed, which grows by the Banks of the River *Nile*, called *Papyrus*, deserves also to be remembered here. This being divided into thin Flakes, and moistened with the glutinous Water of the River, they pressed or beat in much the same Manner we do our Rag, till they made it fit to write on; and of this Kind of Paper, that vast Library of Books were chiefly composed, which *Ptolemy Philadelphus* collected and placed in *Alexandria*.

Animals. As to the Animals peculiar to *Egypt*, Doctor *Shaw* observes, that the *Hippopotamus*, or *River Horse*, is what the present Race of *Egyptians* are not at all acquainted with; nay, the very Crocodile so rarely appears below the Cataracts, that the Sight of it is as great a Curiosity to them as to the *Europeans*. In like manner, the *Ibis*, that was once known to every Family, is now become exceeding rare,

Hippopotamus. though the Want of it is sufficiently supplied by the Stork; for besides a great Number of these Birds that might undoubtedly escape my Notice, I saw in the Middle of *April*, 1722, three Flights of them, each of which took up more than three Hours in passing by us, extending, at the same time, more than half a Mile in Breadth. They were then leaving *Egypt* (where the Canals and the Ponds that are annually filled by the *Nile* were become dry,) and directed themselves towards the North-East.

Stork. It is observed of the Storks, that for about the Space of a Fortnight before they pass from one Country to another, they constantly resort together, from all the circumjacent Parts, in a certain Plain; and there forming themselves once every Day into a *Dou-wanne* (according to the Phrase of these People) are said to determine the exact Time of their Departure, and the Places of their future Abodes. Those that frequent the Marshes of *Barbary* appear about three Weeks sooner than the Flights above-mentioned were observed to do, though they likewise are supposed to come from *Egypt*, whither also they return a little after the autumnal Equinox, the *Nile* being then retired within its Banks, and the Country in a proper Disposition to supply them with Nourishment.

The *Mahometans* have the *Bel-arje* (for so they commonly call the Stork) in the highest Esteem and Veneration.

It is as sacred among them as the *Ibis* was amongst the *Egyptians*; and no less profane would that Person be accounted, who should attempt to kill, nay, even hurt or molest it.

The Sands and mountainous Districts, on both Sides of *Serpents*, the *Nile*, afford as great Plenty, both of the Lizard and Serpentine Kinds, as the *Desart of Sin*. The *Cerastes*, is the most common Species of the latter. Signior *Gabriel* (a *Venetian* Apothecary, who had lived a long Time at *Cairo*) shewed me, says Dr. *Shaw*, a couple of these Vipers, which he had kept five Years in a Bottle well corked, without any Sort of Food, unless a small Quantity of fine Sand, wherein they coiled themselves up in the Bottom of the Vessel, may be reckoned as such. When I saw them, they had just cast their Skins, and were as brisk and lively as if newly taken.

As it seldom rains in the inland Part of this Country, *Vegetable* Productions, are all of them entirely indebted to the River, for their Growth and Increase: However, these several Kinds of Plants are not all raised and nourished the same Way; for Barley and Wheat (which are usually ripe, the one about the Beginning, and the other at the latter End of *April*) require no further Culture and Refreshment than in some Part or other of *October* (the Inundation being then over) to be either thrown upon the Mud, or else to be beat or plowed gently into it. At this Time they also sow Flax, and plant Rice. Now Wheat and Rice being of a slower Growth than Flax and Barley, it usually falls out in the Beginning of *March*, that when the former Kinds are not as yet grown up, or begin only to spindle, the Barley is in the Ear, and the Flax is boiled. The Plantations of Rice are kept almost constantly under Water; and therefore the larger Crops of it are produced near *Damietta* and *Rozetto*, where the Plains are low, and consequently more easily overflowed than those that lie higher up the River. Such vegetable Productions as require more Moisture than what is occasioned by the Inundation, are refreshed by Water that is drawn at certain Times out of the River, and lodged in large Cisterns for that Purpose. *Archimedes's* Skrew seems to have been the Instrument that was anciently made Use of upon these Occasions, though at present it is not known, the Inhabitants serving themselves either with various Kinds of Leather Buckets, or else with a Sakiah, as they call the *Persian* Wheel, which is the most general and

useful Machine. Engines and Contrivances of both these Kinds are placed all along the Banks of the Nile, from the Sea to the Cataracts, their respective Situations being higher, and consequently the Difficulty of raising Water the greater, in Proportion as we advance up the River.

When therefore their Pulse Safranon (or Carthamus). Melons, Sugar-Canes, &c. (all which are commonly planted in Rills) require to be refreshed, they strike out a Plug that is fixed in the Bottom of one of these Cisterns, and then the Water gushing out, is conducted from one Rill to another by the Gardiner, who is always ready, as Occasion requires, to stop and divert the Torrent, by turning the Earth against it with his Feet, and opening at the same Time with his Mattock a new Trench to receive it.

Pharaohs, or Kings of Egypt, of the Egyptian Race.

- Mizraim. 1. **MIZRAIM**, the Son of *Cham*, by the Grecians called *Osiris*, supposed to be *Sesostris* by some, in whose Time *Abraham* went into Egypt.
2. *Typhon*, an Usurper.
3. *Orus*, the Son of *Osiris*, restored unto the Kingdom by his Uncle *Lehabin*, the Advancer of *Joseph*.
- A. M. 2207. 4. *Amasis Themosis*, or *Amos*, in whose Time *Jacob* went down into Egypt, 25.
2233. 5. *Cheborn*, 12.
2245. 6. *Amenophis*, or *Amenophthis*, 21.
2266. 7. *Amærsis*, the Sister of *Amenophthis*, 22.
2288. 8. *Mephres*, 12.
2300. 9. *Mesphermuthesis*, 25.
2325. 10. *Thamosis*, or *Tbuthmosis*, 10.
2335. 11. *Amenophthis*, 34.
2366. 12. *Orus II.* the *Busiris* of the Grecians, a bloody Tyrant, who commanded the Male Children of *Israel* to be slain, 37.
2403. 13. *Acencheres*, by some called *Thermutis*, the Daughter of *Amenophthis II.* and afterwards the Wife of *Orus*, who preserved *Moses*, and survived her Husband, 13.
2416. 14. *Rathosis*, the Son of *Orus*, 6.
2422. 15. *Aceneheres II.* 12.
2449. 16. *Cencheres*, by some called *Arenasis*, *Boccheris* by others, drowned in the Red Sea, with his Horses and Chariots, 16.
2453. 17. *Acherres*, 8.
2462. 18. *Cherres*, 10.

19. *Armais*, by the *Grecians* called *Danaus*, whose fifty Daughters being married to the fifty Sons of his Brother, *Egyptus*, murdered their Husbands; for which Cause *Danaus* being forced out of *Egypt*, passed into *Greece*, where attaining to the Kingdom of *Argos*, he gave unto the *Grecians* the Name of *Danai*, supposed to be *Sesoftris* by some. *Sesoftris*, 2472.
20. *Rameses*, surnamed *Egyptus*, the Brother of *Danaus*. 2575.
21. *Amenophthis* III. 10. 2580.
22. *Sethos*, or *Sesothis*, 55. 2590.
23. *Rapsaces*, or *Ranfes*, 66. 2645.
24. *Amenophthis* IV. 40. 2711.
25. *Rameses* II. 26. 2751.
26. *Tbuoris* VII. after whose Death succeeded a Race of twelve Kings, called the *Diospolitani*, who held the Kingdom for the Space of 177 Years. Their Names we find not, but that one of the latest of them, whose Daughter *Solomon* married, was called *Vaphra*; and perhaps *Ogdoos*, who removed the Royal Seat from *Thebes* to *Memphis*, might be another; and the eighth as his Name importeth. 2777.
39. *Smendes*, the *Sisac* of the Scriptures, who made War upon *Rehoboam* the Son of *Solomon*, conceived to be the *Sesoftris* of *Herodotus*, and other ancient Writers. *Smendes*, 2961.
40. *Pseucenes*, conceived to be the *Cheops* of *Herodotus*, Founder of the vast Pyramid. 2987.
41. *Nepher Cheres*. 4. 3028.
42. *Amenophthis* V. 9. 3032.
43. *Opsechon*, the *Apychis* of *Herodotus*. 3041.
44. *Plamuchos*, 9. 3047.
45. *Pseucenes* II. 14. 3056.
46. *Sesenchis*, 21. 3070.
47. *Uforthon*, 15. 3091.
48. *Takellotis*, 13. 3106.
49. *Patubastis*, 40. 3119.
50. *Oserchon*, the second *Hercules Egyptius*. 3159.
51. *Psamnis*, 15. 3167.
52. *Bachoris*, called by the Name of *So*, 2 Kings xvii. 4. taken and burnt by *Sabacou*, the King of *Ethiopia*, 44. 3185.
53. *Sabacou*, King of *Ethiopia*, 8. 3229.
54. *Sevacus*, Son of *Sabacou*, 14. 3238.
55. *Taracou*, falsely supposed to be the *Zerah* of the Scriptures, 10. 3252.
6. *Stephinales*, 7. 3270.
57. *Niuphes*, after whose Death followed an Aristocracy of twelve Princes, who having governed fifteen Years, were divested of the Authority, by one of their own Number called 3277.

3281. 58. *Psammiticus*, who first made the *Grecians* acquainted with *Egypt*, whom he invited to his Aid against the *Syrians*, the Founder of the famous Labyrinth before mentioned, and no less memorable for his prudent preventing of the *Scythians* from breaking into his Country.
3335. 59. *Necho*, who slew *Jeshab* at the Battle of *Megiddo*, 25.
3360. 60. *Psamis* II. 44.
3366. 61. *Apries*, called *Heplra*, Jer. xliv. subdued by *Nechadnezzar*, and deposed by *Amasis*, 25.
3391. 62. *Amasis* II. 44.
3435. - 63. *Psammitas* or *Psammiticus* II. a King of Six Months only, vanquished by *Cambyfes* the second Monarch of *Persia*, who united *Egypt* to that Empire, under which it continued till the Time of *Darius* the sixth King of the *Medes* and *Persians*; in the second Year of whose Reign it revolted from him, and became a Kingdom of itself, as in former Times.
3555. 64. *Amyrteus* the first King after the Revolt, 6.
3561. 65. *Nepherites*, 6.
3567. 66. *Achoris*, 12.
3579. 67. *Psammites* III. 1.
3580. 68. *Nepherites* II. a King of two Months only.
3598. 69. *Nectanebus*, 18.
3600. 70. *Teos* or *Tachos*, deposed by
71. *Nectanebus* II. the last King of the natural *Egyptian* Race that ever governed *Egypt* by the Name of a King, for in the 18th of the Reign of this King, *Egypt* was again recovered by the Valour of *Ochus*, the eighth Emperor of *Persia*; and when *Alexander* had overthrown *Darius*, he came, and without Blows, won this fertile Kingdom, which yielded him, during his Life, the yearly Value of 6000 Talents. After his Death, this Kingdom fell to the Share of *Ptolemy* the Son of *Lagus*, from whom all the subsequent Kings of *Egypt* were called *Ptolemies*.

The second Dynasty, or the Ptolemean Kings of Egypt.

- [A. M. 3661. 1. **P**TOLEMY, one of *Alexander's* Captains, reputed the Son of *Lagus*, but supposed to be the Son of *Philip* of *Macedon*, Half-Brother to *Alexander*, 40.
3681. 2. *Ptol. Philadelphus*, who filled the Library of *Alexandria* with 700,000 Volumes, and caused the 72 Interpreters to translate the Books of *Moses*.
3717. 3. *Ptol. Evergetes*, the Son of *Philadelphus*, vanquished *Seleucus Callinicus* King of *Syria*,

4. *Ptol. Philopater*, a cruel voluptuous Prince, killed *Cleomenes* the last King of *Sparta*, who had fled to his Father for Relief, in the Time of his Exile, 17. 3743.

5. *Ptol. Epiphanes*, at the Age of five Years, succeeded his Father, protected by the *Romans* against *Antiochus the Great* of *Syria*, who invaded his Kingdom, 28. 3760.

6. *Ptol. Philometor*, the Son of *Epiphanes*, by *Cleopatra* the Daughter of *Antiochus*, protected in his Nonage by the *Romans* also, caused himself to be crowned King of *Syria*, but again relinquished it, 35. 3784.

7. *Ptol. Evergetes* II. for his Deformity called *Physcon*, the Brother of *Ptol. Philometor*, a wicked Prince, and one that spent the greatest Part of his Reign in a causeless War, against *Cleopatra* his Wife and Sister, 2. 3829.

8. *Ptol. Lathurus* reigned sixteen Years with *Cleopatra* his Mother, by whom dispossessed of his Estate, for the Space of ten Years, after her Death was sole Lord of *Egypt*: His Brother *Alexander* being taken by the Queen-Mother as Associate, in the Time of his Deprivation, and passing in the Account of the Kings of *Egypt*. 3858.

9. *Ptol. Auletes*, the Son of *Lathurus*, surnamed also *Dionysius*, whose Brother being settled by him in the Isle of *Cyprus*, was most unjustly stripped of it by the Power of the *Romans*, and he himself expelled *Egypt* by his own Subjects, but restored by *Pompey*. 3892.

10. *Ptol. Dionysius*, called also *Junior*, or, *the Younger*, together with *Cleopatra* his Wife and Sister, succeeded *Auletes* in the Throne, which they held together by the Space of three Years; in the last of which, *Pompey* was barbarously slain on the Shores of *Egypt*, by the Command of *Achillas* the young King's Governor, and the young King himself unfortunately slain in the *Alexandrian* Tumult against *Julius Caesar*. 3922.

11. *Cleopatra*, the Wife and Sister of *Dionysius*, restored to the Crown of *Egypt* by the Bounty of *Caesar*, of whom exceedingly beloved for her Wit and Beauty; after which she governed *Egypt* nineteen Years in her own sole Right, with great Pomp and Splendour, when being embarked in the Bed and Fortunes of *Marc Anthony*, she killed herself not long after his fatal Overthrow at the Battle of *Actium*, that she might not be led in Triumph through *Rome*. 3925.

The third Dynasty, or the Saracen Caliphs of Egypt

A. D. A. H.

870. 247. 1. *Achmades*, or
Achmet, 10.880. 257. 2. *Tol'en*, 3.883. 260. 3. *Hamaria*, 29903. 280. 4. *Abarun*, slain
by *Mustapha* the
Caliph of *Baby-*
lon, 37.940. 317. 5. *Achid Maba-*
mid, the Son of
Tangi, 3.943. 320. 6. *Abiquid*, the
Son of *Achid*, 27.270. 347. 7. *Meaz*, *Ledin*
Illachi, of the Race

A. D. A. H.

of *Phatime* and
Hali, 5.975. 352. 8. *Azziz* the Son
of *Meaz*.996. 373. 9. *Elbaehain*, 25.1019. 396. 10. *Etaber Lazz-*
izdin Illahi.1035. 412. 11. *Muskeratan*
Billahi, 60.1096. 472. 12. *Musfealt*, 5.1100. 477. 13. *Elamir Bab-*
can Illahi.1135. 512. 14. *Elphait Lazz-*
Illahi.15. *Etzahar*.16. *Elphaiz*.

17. *Etzar Ledin Illahi*, the Son of *Elphaiz*, the last Caliph, or King of *Egypt*, of the Race of *Phatime*; the *Turks* succeeding after his Death in this Kingdom. *Elphaiz* the Father of *Etzar* being overpowered by *Almericus* King of *Jerusalem*, craved Aid of *Norradine* the *Turkish* Sultan of *Damascus*; which he received under the Conduct of *Saracen*, or *Shirachoch*, a valiant Commander; who taking his Advantages, not only cleared the Country of *Almericus*, but got the whole Kingdom to himself, dashing out the Brains of *Elphaiz*, with his Horseman's Mace: And though *Etzar* his Son assumed for a while the Title of *Caliph*, yet the Destruction of himself, and the whole *Phatimean* Family rooted out by *Saracen*, soon put an End to that Claim, and left the Kingdom in the peaceable Possession of the *Turkish* Sultans.

The fourth Dynasty, or the Race of the Turkish Kings.

A. D.

1163.

1. *Ascredin*, surnamed *Shirachoch*, called *Saracen*, by the Christian Writers, the first of the *Turks* that reigned in *Egypt* of the noble Family of *Aiub*.

1186.

2. *Zeli-beddin*, called *Saladine* by the Christian Writers, the Son, or as some say, the Nephew of *Saracen*, or *Shirachoch*, confirmed in his Estate by the Caliph of *Bagdat*, under whose Jurisdiction he reduced the *Egyptian* Schismatics. He obtained also the Kingdom of *Damascus*, conquered

ed

ed *Mesopotamia* and *Palestine*; and in the Year 1190 regained the City of *Jerusalem*.

A. D.

3. *Elazir*, the second Son of *Saladine*, succeeded in the Realm of *Egypt*; which he exchanged afterwards with his Brother *Eladel* for the Kingdom of *Damascus*. 1199.

4. *Eladel*, or *El Aphtzel*, by the Christian Writers called *Meledine*, succeeded upon this Exchange in the Kingdom of *Egypt*; and overcame the Christians without the Loss of a Man, at the Siege of *Cairo*, by letting loose the Sluices of *Nilus*, which drowned great Part of the Army.

5. *Elchamul*.

1210.

6. *Melech Affalach*, by the Christian Writers called *Melechfala*, the Son of *Elchamul*, who overcame *Lewis* the IXth of *France*; and going with that King towards *Damietta*, was slain by his Guards, called *Mamalukes*. 1237.

7. *Elmutan*, the Son of *Melech Affalach*, succeeded for a Time in his Father's Throne. But the *Mamalukes* being resolved to obtain the Kingdom for themselves, forced him to fly to a Tower of Wood, which they set on fire; the poor Prince half burned, leaping into a River (which ran close by it) was there drowned, and the *Mamalukes* settled in the Kingdom, Anno 1245. 1242.

The fifth Dynasty of the Egyptian Kings, or the Race of the Mamalukes.

1. *Turquimenius* being promoted to the Kingdom, released King *Lewis* whom *Melechfala*, his Predecessor, had taken Prisoner, but performed not half the Conditions agreed upon. 1255.

2. *Clothes* (by some called *Elmutahaz*) taking Advantage of the Miseries of the *Turks*, then distressed by the *Tartars*, seized on the greatest Part of *Syria* and *Palestine*.

3. *Bandocader* perfected the begun Conquests of *Clothes*, and took from the Christians the strong City of *Antioch*, carrying his Arms as far as *Armenia*, almost ruined those Countries. 1260.

4. *Melechsait*, or *Melechsares*, restored the Power of the *Mamalukes* in *Syria* and *Palestine*; where it had been much impaired by *Edward*, the Son of *Henry* the Third of *England*, and *Henry* Duke of *Mecklenburgh*, &c.

5. *Elpis*, or *Alpbix*, recovered from the Christians the strong Cities of *Tripolis*, *Berytus*, *Tyre* and *Sidon*; all which he razed to the Ground, that they might not be any more serviceable to the Affairs of the Christians. 1286.

6. *Ara-*

1291.

6. *Arappus*, or *Eustrephus*, by Birth a *German*, released *Henry Duke of Mecklenburgh*, after he had been Prisoner twenty-six Years. He rooted the Christians out of *Syria*, took *Ptolemais* the last Town they there held; and so razed it, that he made it fit to be ploughed.

7. *Melechnesfar*, when he was Lieutenant to *Arappus*, was defeated by *Cassanes*, a great Prince of the *Tartars*, with the Loss of 40,000 *Egyptians*; but *Cassanes* being departed, he recovered again all *Syria*, and destroyed *Jerusalem*; for which Service he was afterwards made Sultan of *Egypt*.

8. *Melecbadel*, the Sultan that governed *Egypt* when *Tamerlane*, with irresistible Violence, conquered it; from this Time there is continued Series of his Successors till we come to

9. *Melechaella*, or *Melechnasar*, who in the Year 1423 subdued the Isle of *Cyprus*, and made the Kings thereof to be from thenceforth Tributaries to the *Mamaluke* Sultan.

1465.

10. *Cathbeyus*, who much reformed the State of *Egypt*, and was a professed Enemy of *Bajazet II.* the eighth King of the *Ottomans*.

1498.

11. *Mahomet*, the Son of *Cathbeyus*, deposed by the *Mamalukes*, for fear the Kingdom might by him be made hereditary; it being against their usual Custom, that the Son should succeed his Father in the Name and Privileges of a *Mamaluke*.

1499.

12. *Campson Chiarsefius* succeeded on the deposing of *Mahomet*.

13. *Zanballat*, who dethroned *Campson*, and not long after was deposed by

1500.

14. *Tonombeius*, who was expelled by the joint Consent of the *Mamalukes*, to make way for *Campson Gaurus*.

1501.

15. *Campson II.* surnamed *Gaurus*, reformed the disordered and factious State both of Court and Country; for the Space of sixteen Years governed very prosperously: But siding at the last with *Hysmael*, the *Persian* Sophy, against *Selimus*, the first of that Name, the third Emperor, and tenth King of the *Ottoman* Family; he drew his Kingdom into a War, in which his Armies were overthrown, and himself slain in battle.

1517.

16. *Tonombeius II.* succeeded *Campson Gaurus*, both in his Kingdom and Misfortunes, vanquished in his first Year by the said *Selimus* the First, Anno 1517; who having conquered this rich Kingdom, *Egypt* became a Province of the *Turkish* Empire, as it still continueth, and its future History is blended with that of *Turky*.

The CONTINUATION of the HISTORY of JUDEA.

THE Romans, in the second Year of the Reign of the Emperor *Vespasian*, A. D. 73, having destroyed *Jerusalem*, and expelled the *Jews* from *Palestine*, it remained a Province of the *Roman* and *Grecian* Empires, until it was subdued by the *Saracens*, A. D. 636.

The *Saracens* remained in Possession of *Palestine* until the Year 1099, when the Christians of the West having entered into a Confederacy, or Crusado, for the Recovery of *Judea*, or the *Holy Land*, out of the Hands of the Infidels; they were so successful in their Attempts, that they took *Antioch*, *Jerusalem*, and several other strong Towns both in *Syria* and *Palestine*, from the Infidels; in the first Year of the War, *Godfrey of Bouillon*, one of the bravest of the Adventurers, being elected the first King of *Jerusalem*.

These Crusado's, or Holy Wars, between the Christians and Infidels, having continued with various Success for the Space of near 200 Years, the Christians were entirely expelled from *Palestine* about the Year 1300; and the *Turks* having subdued the *Saracens*, possessed themselves of *Palestine*, which remains a Province of *Asiatic Turkey* to this Day, as appears from the preceding Histories of the *Saracen* and *Turkish* Empires, to which the Reader is referred. I shall proceed therefore, in the next Place, to describe the present State of *Judea* and *Palestine*, and more particularly the State of the Christians that now inhabit *Jerusalem*.

Jerusalem is still reckoned the capital City of *Palestine*, *Jerusalem* though much fallen from its ancient Grandeur. It is situate in thirty-two Degrees of North Latitude, about thirty Miles to the Eastward of the *Mediterranean Sea*, upon rocky Mountains, with steep Ascents to it on every Side, except towards the North, and surrounded with a deep Valley, which is again encompassed with Hills. It is at this Day about three Miles in Circumference, and does not stand upon the same Ground the ancient City did; for *Mount Calvary*, which is a small Eminence upon the great Mount of *Moriah*, and formerly appropriated to the Execution of the Malefactors, was shut out of the Walls as a polluted Place; whereas since our Saviour's suffering upon it, this Place is held in such Veneration, by all Christians, that it has drawn the City round about it, and stands now near the Middle of
Jeru-

Jerusalem, and on the contrary a great Part of the Hill of *Sion* is left without the Walls.

The City has six Gates, *viz.* those of *Bethlehem*, *Mount Sion*, *Sterquilina*, or the *Dunghil* Gate, *St. Stephen's*, *Herod's*, and that of *Damascus*, besides the golden Gate, which is shut up. The Walls are not strong, nor have any Bastions, but Towers, after the old Way of Fortification, and an inconsiderable Ditch on one Side only. The private Buildings are very mean, the Streets narrow, and the Place in general but thinly inhabited. The only Thing that renders *Jerusalem* considerable at present is, the Resort of Pilgrims thither; and the accommodating them with Necessaries seems to be the principal Business of the Inhabitants. A *Turkish* Bashaw indeed resides here, on account of seeing good Orders observed, and collecting the Grand Signior's Tribute from the Pilgrims, and the Fathers who reside here, and to protect them from the *Arabs*, when they visit the holy Places in the Country about *Jerusalem*.

The Condition of the Pilgrims.

No *Frank* (*European* Christian) may enter the City till the Governor is acquainted with his Arrival, and he is paid the Caphors, or Duties required; nor must they enter on Horseback, or with Arms, unless they come with some public Minister or Consul. The *Franks*, whether Papists or Protestants, always go to the *Latin* Convent, where the Guardian and Fryars entertain them civilly for their Money, though there is some Distinction made between those who come thither out of Devotion, and those who come only out of Curiosity: But it is not possible, it seems, for an *European* to remain in this Place with any Security, without having a good Correspondence with the Fathers of the *Latin* Convent, there having been Instances of several *Englishmen* who have been traduced and accused for Spies by those holy Men, and met with great Difficulties; and some who have slighted the Assistance of the *Latin* Fathers have never been suffered to return to give an Account of the Usage they met with.

Church of the Sepulchre.

The Church of the *Holy Sepulchre*, which the Pilgrims chiefly visit, stands upon *Mount Calvary*, and is about an hundred Paces long, and sixty wide. In order to the fitting this Hill for the Foundation of the Church, the Founders were obliged to reduce it to a plain Area, which was done by cutting down several Parts of the Rock, and by elevating others: But Care was taken, however, that none of those Parts of the Hill which were more immediately concerned in our Saviour's Passion, should be altered or diminished; and

and therefore that Part of *Calvary* where it is said Christ was fastened to the Cross, and lifted up, is left entire, being about ten or twelve Yards square, and standing at this Day so high above the common Floor of the Church, that there are twenty-one Stairs to go up to the Top: And the holy Sepulchre itself, which was first a Cave hewed in the Rock under Ground, having had the Rock cut away from it all round, is now a Grotto above Ground: But before I give an Account of the sacred Places in the Church of the holy Sepulchre, and the Ceremonies performed at them, I shall observe from Mr. *Thevenot*, what Reception the Pilgrims meet with from the Fathers of the *Latin* Convent on their Arrival at *Jerusalem*.

The Druggerman (or Interpreter) and some others deputed by the Convent, usually meet the Pilgrims without the Gate of the Town, where they pay their Duties; after which they are brought to the Cloyster, and handsomely entertained, and an Apartment is assigned them, where their Feet are washed. Some time after they are conducted to the Chapel, whither the Father-Guardian comes with all his Monks; and having made the Pilgrims sit down on a Crimson Velvet Couch, washes their Feet in Vessels of Water full of Roses, and kisses them; and after the Guardian all the Monks perform the like Ceremony, singing Hymns and Anthems all the while. When this Ceremony is over they give each of the Pilgrims a white Wax Taper, and then make a Procession about the Cloyster, singing *Te Deum*, for bringing the Pilgrims in Safety to the holy City; and this they perform at three several Altars, *viz.* at the high Altar dedicated to the Holy Ghost; at the Altar of our Lord's Supper; and at the Altar of our Lord's appearing after his Resurrection to *St. Thomas*. Upon the *Saturday* before *Palm Sunday*, Mr. *Thevenot* relates, That he and the rest of the Pilgrims went out in the Morning with the Father, to whose Care they were committed, to visit the *dolorous Way*, and other holy Places; and first they passed near the Judgment Gate, through which our Saviour went bearing his Cross to *Mount Calvary*, so called, because Malefactors went out of it to the Place of Execution: On the right Hand of it they were shewn the House of *Veronica*, who seeing our Saviour loaded with his Cross, and his Face smeared with Sweat and Blood, made Way through the Croud, and with her white Veil wiped our Lord's Face, who in Testimony of his Thankfulness for that charitable Office, left the Picture of his Face stamped on the Veil, which is shewn at *St. Peter's* in *Rome*, four Times a Year,

it is said. A little farther, on the same Side, is shewn the House of the rich Glutton, and over against it the Place where our Saviour said to the Women, *Weep not for me, but for yourselves, and for your Children.* A little farther is the Place where *Simon the Cyrenian* helped our Saviour to carry his Cross, when he fell down under his heavy Burthen : And on the right Hand, the Place where the blessed Virgin fell into a Swoon, on seeing her Son so cruelly and despihtfully used. About 100 Paces beyond they pass under an Arch, upon which, it is said, *Pilate* stood when he said, *Behold the Man.* It is a large Arch, reaching from one Side of the Street to the other, and has two Windows which look into the Street, separated only by a little Marble Pillar, and under these Windows is this Inscription, *Tolle, tolle, crucifige eum* ; at the End of the Street, on the left Hand, they shew the Palace of *Herod*, where our Saviour was clothed with a Purple Robe in Derision, and sent back to *Pilate*, to whom he was this Day reconciled ; leaving this Street on the left Hand, they were shewn *Pilate's* Palace, an ordinary Fabric at present. They afterwards proceeded to a Chapel, called the Place of Flagellation, where our Saviour was scourged ; and at this Place ends, or rather begins, the *dolorous Way*, which reaches from *Pilate's* House to *Mount Calvary*, being about a Mile in Length ; and here the Temple of the Sepulchre is built, of which Mr. *Sandys* gives the following Account : The Temple is lofty, curiously arched, and supported by great Marble Pillars : The outward Isles have Galleries, and the whole Fabric is magnificent : That the Monk who offered to shew them the most remarkable Things in the Temple demanded first, if Devotion or Curiosity led them thither ; and being informed the latter, the usual *Pater Nosters*, *Ave Maria's*, &c. were omitted : He says that right against the Door, in the Midst of the South Isle, and level with the Pavement, there lies a white Marble Grave-stone, encompassed with a Brass Rail, about a Foot high, being the Place where *Joseph of Arimathea*, and *Nicodemus*, it is said, anointed the Body of our Saviour with sweet Ointments. This the Pilgrims kiss, and kneel to, rubbing their Crucifixes, Beads, Handkerchiefs, and even whole Pieces of Linen upon it, which they carry home to make Winding-Sheets of : And over this Stone hang seven Lamps, which burn continually : Against the East End of the Stone there is a little Chapel ; and near the Entrance, on the right Hand, stands the Sepulchre of *Godfrey of Bouillon*, with this *Latin* Epitaph.

Hic

Hic jacet inclitus Godefridus de Buglion, qui totam islam terram acquisivit cultui Christiano, cujus anima requiescat in pace. Amen.

And on the left Hand that of his Brother *Baldwin*, with this Inscription, *Rex Baldwinus, Judas alter Macchabeus, spes patriæ, vigor ecclesiæ, virtus utriusque, quem formidabant cui dona tributa ferebant cedar Egypti Dan ac Homicide Damascus prob dolor in modico clauditur hoc tumulo.*

These were the two first Christian Kings of *Jerusalem*. At the farther End of this Chapel, which joins to the Foot of *Calvary*, there is on the left Side of the Altar a Cleft in the Rock, in which, according to Tradition, the Head of *Adam* was found, that it might be sprinkled with the precious Blood of our Saviour, which he knew would be shed in that holy Place. Over this are the Chapels of *Mount Calvary*, ascended on the North Side by twenty Steps, the highest hewn out of the Rock, as is Part of the Passage to it. The Floor of the first Chapel is laid with Marble of several Colours, on which the Pilgrims never tread, but creep upon their Knees. At the East End of it, under a large arched Concave of the Wall, is the Place where our Saviour suffered, and may assuredly be thought the same, says Mr. *Sandys*. In the Midst is the Place where the Cross did stand, plated with Silver, gilt and embossed; and here the Rock rises half a Yard higher than the Pavement, in Form of an Altar, ten Feet long, and six broad, and is covered with white Marble, to which the Pilgrims creep, kiss, and prostrate themselves thereon, and touch their Beads and Crucifixes, which gives them, as is apprehended, an uncommon Sanctity: On the right Side of the Place where our Saviour's Cross stood, stands that of the good Thief, which was crucified with him; and on the left Hand the Cross of the other Thief, which is divided from our Saviour's, by the Rent in the Rock, which cleft in sunder, at the Time of his Passion; and the Inside thereof testifies (says Mr. *Sandys*) that it was not the Work of Art, the Ruggedness of one Side answering to the other, where they are inaccessible to the Workmen, and the Aperture may go to the Centre, for aught can be discovered. This Chapel belongs to the *Georgians*, and no other Nation says Mass at that Altar, over which there hang forty-six Lamps, which burn continually.

On the same Floor is another Chapel, exactly of the same Form, and divided only by a Curtain, which belongs to the *Latins*. In the Middle of it is a square Place enshaded with Stones of different Colours, where Christ, it is said, was nailed to the Cross. This Place is never trod upon,

but worn in several Places with the Knees of the Pilgrims, who kiss and prostrate themselves upon it. Over the Altar of this Chapel, which is richly adorned, are thirty-three Lamps burning. Those two Chapels are all that are on the Top of the Rock, except that where *Abraham* would have sacrificed *Isaac*, wherein is the Altar of *Melchisedech*.

In other Parts of the Temple are Chapels belonging to several other Nations and Sects; as the *Abyssines*, *Jacobites*, *Coptes*, *Greeks*, *Armenians*, and *Maronites*. In the Middle of the South-side of the Temple is the Emperor *Constantine's* Effigies, and opposite to it that of his Mother *Helena*, the Foundress. This Part of the Temple is covered with a Cupola sustained with Rafter of Cedar, open in the Middle, like the Pantheon at *Rome*, at which it receives all the Light it hath, which is sufficient. Just in the Middle, and in the View of Heaven, stands the glorified Sepulchre, 180 Feet distant from *Mount Calvary*. This Church contains under its Roof (as is supposed) twelve or thirteen Places consecrated to a more than ordinary Veneration, by being reputed to have some particular Actions done in them, relating to the Death and Resurrection of Christ; as, 1st. The Place where he was derided by the Soldiers. 2. The Place where the Soldiers divided his Garments. 3. The Place where he was shut up, whilst they digged the Hole to set the Foot of the Cross in, and prepared every Thing for his Crucifixion. 4. Where he was nailed to the Cross. 5. Where the Cross was erected. 6. Where the Soldier stood who pierced his Side. 7. Where his Body was anointed in order to his Burial. 8. Where his Body was deposited in the Sepulchre. 9. Where the Angels appeared to the Women after his Resurrection. 10. The Place where Christ appeared to *Mary Magdalen*, &c. All which Places are adorned with so many several Altars erected in little Chapels about this Church.

In the Galleries round the Church, and in some little Buildings on the Outside adjoining to it, are Apartments for the Reception of the Monks and Pilgrims; and in some of these almost every Christian Nation formerly maintained a small Society of Monks: As the *Latins*, *Greeks*, *Syrians*, *Armenians*, *Georgians*, *Nestorians*, *Coptes*, &c. but these have all, except four, forsaken their Apartments, not being able to bear the excessive Rents and Extortions the *Turks* were pleased to impose upon them; and of those that remain, viz. the *Latins*, *Greeks*, *Armenians*, and *Coptes*; the *Coptes* lately had but one poor Representative of their Na-

Nation left; and the *Armenians* were so much in Debt, that it was expected they must soon follow the rest.

Besides these distinct Apartments every Fraternity had their Altars and Sanctuary for their separate Use, from whence other Nations were excluded. But what has ever been most contended for by the several Sects, is the Command and Appropriation of the holy Sepulchre. The *Greeks* and *Latins*, particularly, have disputed the Privilege of saying Mass here, so warmly, that they have sometimes come to Blows, and wounded each other at the very Door of the Sepulchre, mingling their own Blood, says *Maunderel*, with their Sacrifices; and the Father Guardian shewed him a Scar which he had received in his Arm from a *Greek* Priest, in one of these Contests. In order to put an End to these infamous Quarrels, the *French* King, it seems, interposed by a Letter to the Grand Vizier, desiring that the holy Sepulchre might be put into the Hands of the *Latins*; and in the Year 1690 an Order was obtained for putting it into their Hands; and they had lately the sole Privilege of saying Mass in it; but it is permitted to the Christians of all Nations to go into this Chapel, and perform their private Devotion, though none may solemnize any public Office of Religion there but the *Latins*.

The Business of the Monks belonging to the Church is to trim the Lamps, and to make devotional Visits and Processions to the several Altars and sacred Places there. In this Employment many of them spend several Years, and some out of their abundant Zeal their whole Lives, burying themselves, as it were, alive, in our Lord's Sepulchre. The *Latins* particularly, who are about ten or twelve, residing here with their President, make every Day a solemn Procession with Tapers and Crucifixes, and other processional Solemnities, to the several Sanctuaries, singing at every one of them a *Latin* Hymn relating to the Subject of the Place; but in the holy Week before *Easter*, when the Pilgrims usually come to *Jerusalem*, the Duty is greater than at any other Time.

This Reverend Writer proceeds to inform us, that on *Good-Friday*, 1697, he attended the *French* Consul to the Church of the Holy Sepulchre, and found the Church Doors guarded by several Janizaries, and other *Turkish* Officers; who were placed there to watch that no Person entered who had not first paid their Caphor (Tribute to the Government); this is different according to the Character of the Person, or the Country he comes from. *Franks* usually

pay fourteen. Dollars *per* Head, except Ecclesiastics, and they pay half as much. Whoever has paid this Caphor may afterwards go in and out *gratis*, during the whole Feast, at public Times, when the Doors are open; but if they would have them opened at any Time on purpose, the same Expences must be repeated.

The Pilgrims being entered, the Church-Doors were shut, and opened no more till *Easter-Day*, the whole Company being confined there the greatest Part of three Days. As soon as it grew duskish on *Good-Friday*, in the Evening, all the Monks and Pilgrims assembled in the Chapel of the Apparition, which is a small Oratory on the North-side of the holy Grave, in order to go in Procession round the Church; but a Sermon was preached first by one of the *Latin* Fathers, who began his Discourse in this Manner: *In questa Notte tenebrosa*; at which Words all the Candles were immediately put out, to yield the livelier Representation of what they were commemorating. The Preacher having continued his Sermon about half an Hour in the Dark, every one had a large lighted Taper put into his Hand, and the Crucifixes and other Utensils were disposed, in order to begin the Procession; and amongst others there was a Crucifix, which bore the Image of our Lord, as big as the Life. This Image was fastned to the Cross with great Nails, crowned with Thorns, and smeared with Blood, and so exquisitely formed, that it represented in a very lively Manner the tragical Spectacle of our Saviour's Body hanging upon the Cross. This was carried at the Head of the Procession, first to the Pillar of Flagellation, a large Piece of which is kept in a little Cell at the Door of the Chapel of the Apparition, and a Hymn was sung proper to the Occasion; and here another Monk preached a Sermon in *Spanish* concerning the Scourging of our Lord. From hence they proceeded to the Place, where, it is said, our Saviour was imprisoned whilst the Soldiers prepared every thing for the Crucifixion; and here another Hymn was sung, and a third Father preached in *French*. They went next to the Altar of the Division of Christ's Garments, where only a Hymn was sung. Then they advanced to the Chapel of the Derision, where they had a Hymn and a Sermon. The next Place they visited was *Calvary*; and coming to the Altar where our Lord is supposed to have been nailed to the Cross, they laid down the great Crucifix on the Floor, and seemed busied in nailing the Body to the Cross; and after a Hymn one of the Fathers preached a Sermon

Sermon in *Spanish* on the Crucifixion. From hence they removed to the adjoining Altar on the Top of the same Mount, where the Cross is supposed to have been erected; and here is a Hole in the Rock, where, it is said, the Foot of the Cross really stood: Here, therefore, they set up the Cross with the bloody crucified Image upon it; and leaving it in that Posture, sung an Hymn; after which the Father Guardian, sitting in a Chair before it, preached a Passion Sermon in *Italian*.

About a Yard and a half Distance from the Hole where the Foot of the Cross is fixed, is that memorable Cleft in the Rock, said to have been made by the Earthquake when the Son of God suffered. *The Rocks rent, &c. Matt. xxvii.* (I mention the Thing again, to shew what Opinion this learned Traveller had of it.) The Cleft, he says, is about a Span wide, in the upper Part of the Rock, and two deep, after which it closes, but opens again below, in another Chapel contiguous to *Calvary*, and from thence runs down to an unknown Depth in the Earth. As to its being a natural genuine Breach, and not counterfeited by Art, this Writer assures us, that the Sense and Reason of every one that sees it may convince him; for the Sides of it fit like two Tallies to each other, and yet it runs in such intricate Windings as could not well be counterfeited by Art, or come at by Instruments.

But to return from this Digression. Sermon being ended, two Fathers personating *Joseph of Arimathea*, and *Nicodemus*, approached the Cross with great Solemnity, and all imaginable Concern in their Looks; and drawing the Nails, took down the feigned Body from the Cross, which was so contrived, that the Limbs were soft and flexible, as if they had been real Flesh. Nothing, says our Author, could be more surprizing than to see these two pretended Mourners bend down the Arms which were before extended, and dispose them in such a Manner as is usual in laying out a Corpse.

The Body was afterwards received in a large Winding-sheet, and brought down from *Calvary*, the whole Company attending it, to the Stone of Unction, which is taken to be the very Place where our Lord's Body was anointed and prepared for Burial. Here it was laid down again, and having thrown sweet Powder and Spices upon it, they wrapt it in the Winding-sheet, singing a Hymn suitable to the Occasion; after which one of the Fathers preached a Funeral Sermon in *Arabic*. And thus the Obsequies being finished, the supposed Corpse was repositied in the Sepulchre;

and the Door shut; and the whole Company being pretty well wearied, retired to their respective Apartments.

The next Morning several Pilgrims had their Arms marked with the usual Ensigns of *Jerusalem*; in the Afternoon the Congregation assembled in the Area before the holy Grave, where the Fathers spent some Hours in singing over the *Lamentations* of *Jeremiah*, which, with the usual Procession to the sacred Places, was all the Business of that Day.

The Sepulchre was set open very early on *Easter-Sunday*, and the Fathers put on a Face of Joy, as if it had been the very Time of our Lord's Resurrection; and Mass was celebrated this Morning, just before the holy Sepulchre, where the Father-Guardian had a Throne erected; and being clothed in Episcopal Robes, with a Mitre on his Head, he gave the Host in the View of the *Turks*, to all such Christians as were disposed to receive it, even to Children of seven or eight Years old; after which the Company went out of Church, and returned to the *Latin* Convent, where they dined.

Upon *Easter-Monday* the Governor of the City, with a strong Detachment of the Garrison, convoyed the Pilgrims, amounting to 2000 of every Nation and Sect, towards the River *Jordan*, according to Custom; and for his Protection every *Frank* Pilgrim paid twelve Dollars, except the Ecclesiastics, who paid but six; and whether they take the Journey, or remain in the City, it seems they pay the same Sum. But the *Arabs* are so very powerful in this Part of *Palestine*, that there is no travelling without such a Guard. Having crossed the Valley of *Jehosaphat*, and Part of *Mount Olivet*, they came in half an Hour to *Bethany*, which is at present but a small Village. Here they shew the Tomb where *Lazarus* was laid when he was raised from the Dead; and about a Bow-shot further, they were shewn the Habitation of *Mary Magdalen*; and then descending a steep Hill, they came to a Well called *The Fountain of the Apostles*, because here, according to Tradition, they used to drink and refresh themselves in their Passage between *Jerusalem* and *Jericho*.

From hence they travelled through an intricate Way among Hills and Valleys of a very barren Aspect, but discovered, however, evident Signs of the Industry of the Husbandman in former Times. After some Hours travelling in this Sort of Road, they came to a mountainous Desert, in which, it is said, our Saviour was tempted by the Devil;

Devil; and looking down into a deep Valley, they discovered the Ruins of some small Cells, where formerly Hermits retired, as it is said, to perform their Penances; nor could there be, he observes, a more comfortable and abandoned Place for that Purpose.

From the Tops of these desolate Hills they had a delightful Prospect of the Mountains of *Arabia*, the *Dead Sea*, and the *Plain of Jericho*; into which last they descended after five Hours March from *Jerusalem*. They were here shewn the Mountain, which is indeed an exceeding high one, whither, it is said, the Devil took our Saviour, when he shewed him the Kingdoms of the World, which has a Chapel half Way up, and another at the Top, besides several Caves and Holes in the Sides of the Mountain, to some of which Hermits resort at this Day to keep their Lent, in Imitation of our Saviour. But here were also quartered Abundance of *Arabs* with Fire-Arms, who opposed the Passage of the Pilgrims up the Mountain, demanding 200 Dollars for Permission to go up: Whereupon they turned down into the Plain, and came to the *Fountain of Elisha*, so called, upon its being miraculously purged of its brackish Taste by the Prophet. These Waters are received into a large Basin here, from whence they issue, and dividing themselves into several Streams disperse themselves through the Fields, between this Place and *Jericho*, and render them extremely fruitful. About a Mile distant from hence stands *Jericho*, at present a poor dirty Village, inhabited by *Arabs*. About two Furlongs from hence, the Governor and his Troops encamped, and the Pilgrims pitched their Tents not far from them; near this Village, they were shewn the Place where *Zachens* is said to have stood, which is an old square Stone Building to the Southward of it.

The next Morning our Pilgrims set out very early towards *Jordan*, where they arrived within two Hours. The Plain through which they passed was barren, producing nothing but a Kind of Samphire, and such other marine Plants: And in many Places of the Road where Water had stood, they observed a Whiteness on the Surface of the Ground, which they found to be a Crust of Salt, which rises every Year, as it does in the Valley of *Aleppo*, after the Winter's Inundation. These saline Effluences were at some Leagues Distance from the *Dead Sea*, which makes it appear, that the whole Valley is plentifully impregnated with Salt. When they arrived within a Furlong of *Jordan*, they found an old, ruined Church and Convent, dedicated

to *St. John*, in Memory of his baptizing our Saviour, and is founded, as near as can be conjectured to the Place where the *Baptist* had the Honour of performing that Office. On the further Side of the Convent runs a small Descent, which they imagined to be the first and outwardmost Bank of *Jordan*, or at least, that it anciently overflowed thus far at some Seasons of the Year, as is mentioned in *Josbua* and *Chron.* xii. But at present, our Countryman observes, it seems to have forgot its ancient Greatness, there being no Signs of its overflowing when he was there, though it was on the 30th of *March*, being the proper Time for such Inundations; nay, it was so far from overflowing, that it run two Yards below the Brink of its Channel. Having descended the outermost Bank, they went about a Furlong upon a level Strand, before they came to the immediate Bank of the River, which was so covered with Bushes and Trees, such as Tamerisk, Willows, &c. that they could see no Water, till they had made their Way through them. When they arrived at the River, they were alarmed by some Parties of *Arabs* appearing on the other Side, and firing at them; and though it was at too great a Distance to do any Mischief, it so terrified the poor Monks, that it hindered them for some Time performing the Devotions prescribed them, and seemed to put them in a greater Fright than any of the Pilgrims in the Company. The Alarm being over, every one resumed his former Purpose; some bathed themselves in the River, others cut down the Boughs from the Trees; every one did something to preserve the Memory of his having been at this famous Stream. The Water it seems was so turbid, and so rapid, that there was no swimming against it. The River was in this Place above twenty Yards over, and in Depth above the Height of a Man; and on the opposite Bank, there was a much larger Thicket of Bushes and Shrubs than on this, but their Apprehensions of the *Arabs* prevented their visiting the other Side. The Pilgrims having performed what they intended here, were summoned by the Governor to attend him in the Middle of the Plain, where he made them pass before him Man by Man, as he sat in his Tent, that he might take an exact Account of them, and be sure he lost none of the Caphor or Dury which was to be paid him; after which, our Countryman and some other of the Pilgrims desired a Guard of him to visit the *Dead Sea*; to which he consented.

This Sea is enclosed on the East and West by vast high Mountains. The Plain of *Jericho* lies on the North of it, on which Side also, it receives the Waters of *Jordan*, and to the South it extends beyond the Reach of the Eye, being
four

four and twenty Leagues long, and six or seven broad. The Hills about the Lake abound with sulphurous Stones, which being held in the Flame of a Candle burn, yielding a Smoak of an intolerable Stench. According to Tradition, Birds attempting to fly over this Sea, dropt down dead; and no Fish or other Animal, it is said, can subsist in these deadly Waters; but our Countryman assures us, he saw several Birds flying over it, without receiving any Hurt; and he questions whether there be not Fish in the Lake, having seen the Shells of some upon the Shore. The Water of the Lake indeed is not only salt, but extreme bitter and nauseous: And our Author desiring to make an Experiment of its Qualities, went into it, he says, and it bore up his Body in swimming with an uncommon Force; but as to the Report, that a Man wading into it as high as his Navel, will be buoyed up by it; this he found not to be true. The Bitumen which this Lake is so famous for, is gathered near the Mountains on both Sides in great Plenty, and so exactly resembles Pitch, that it cannot easily be distinguished from it, but by the Sulphurousness of its Smell and Taste.

Our Countryman being desirous to see the Remains of those Cities, if there were any in this Lake, which were anciently made so dreadful an Example of the Divine Vengeance; diligently surveyed the Waters, but could discern no Heaps of Ruins, or any Smoak ascending above the Surface of the Water, as is described in the Writings or Maps of Geographers; but the Father Guardian, and Procurator of *Jerusalem*, both Men of Sense and Probity in Appearance, assured him, that they had actually seen one of these Ruins; and it was so near the Shore, and the Waters so shallow, that they went amongst them with some *Frenchmen*, and found there several Pillars and other Fragments of Buildings; and he supposes, that the Reason of his being deprived of this Sight was the Heighth of the Water when he was there; but the Stories of the Apples of *Sodom* he looks upon to be altogether fabulous; for there was no Tree to be seen near the Lake from which such Fruit might be expected: The Being therefore, as well as Beauty of this Fruit, is a mere Fiction, probably kept up, as, the Lord *Bacon* observes, many other whimsical Notions are, to serve as an Allusion, and help the Poet to an apt Similitude.

The Pilgrims, having made their Observations on this part of the Country, returned to *Jerusalem*; from whence they immediately set out again to visit *Bethlehem*; which is about two Hours distance from that Capital. In this Journey they passed through the Valley *Rephaim*, famous for being the Place

Place of *David's* Victories over the *Philistines*. In the Way they were shewn the House of *Old Simeon*, who sung the *Nunc dimittis* in the Temple, on our Saviour's being brought thither. After this they were led to the famous Turpentine Tree, under the Shade whereof the Blessed Virgin is said to have reposed herself, when she carried our Blessed Lord in her Arms, to present him at the Temple. They came afterwards to a Convent dedicated to *Elias*, the Impression of whose Body the *Greek Monks* pretend to shew in the hard Stone. *Rachel's* Tomb is another Curiosity shewn to Pilgrims; but the present Sepulchral Monument is evidently of modern *Turkish* Structure.

Bethlehem, anciently a fine City, is now a poor Village, only resorted to at this Day, on account of its being the Place of our Lord's Nativity; over which *Helena*, the Mother of *Constantine*, erected a magnificent Temple, the Roof whereof is Cedar, supported by four Rows of white Marble Pillars, ten in each Row; the Walls of the Church also being faced with the same kind of Marble. The Church is built in the form of a Cross, of which the Chancel constitutes the upper Part, and is covered with a noble Cupola. Under the Church, in a Cave hewn out of the Rock, is the Chapel of the Nativity, where they shew the Manger our Saviour was laid in, cut also out of the Rock, and now crusted with Marble. An Altar, with the Representation of the Nativity, is erected here, and Lamps kept burning before it. Here is also the Chapel of *St. Joseph*, the supposed Father of our Lord, and of the holy Innocents; and adjoining to the Church is a Monastery of *Franciscans*: They shew a Valley near this Town, where they say *Jacob* kept his Flocks; being the same, as they relate, where the Angels appeared to the Shepherds, declaring the Birth of Christ. Here the same pious Empress also built a Church, but it is now in Ruins.

In the Neighbourhood of *Bethlehem* are those famous Fountains, Pools and Gardens, said to have been the Contrivance and Delight of *Solomon*; and to these Works this King is supposed to allude, *Eccles. ii. 5. 6.* where amongst other Instances of his Magnificence, he reckons his Gardens, Vineyards and Pools. These Pools are so disposed, that the Waters of the uppermost descend into the second, and those of the second into the third: Their Figure is quadrangular, and their Breadth the same in all, but their Length is different, the first being about 160 Paces long, the second 200, and the third 220. They are all lined with a Wall, and contain a great Depth of Water: And about 120 Paces from them

them is a Fountain, from whence they principally derive their Waters, which are carried thither by a large subterraneous Passage; but there is an Aqueduct laid from it, which receives part of the Stream, which carries it by many Turnings and Windings about the Mountains to *Jerusalem*; and our Author does not think it improbable, that the Pools abovementioned are the same with *Solomon's*, there being not the like Store of excellent Spring-Water in all *Palestine*.

Give me leave here to remember a Fraud of the *Greek* Fathers, who pretend, that upon every Easter-Eve, a miraculous Flame descends into the holy Sepulchre at *Jerusalem*, and kindles all the Lamps and Candles there. Mr. *Mausdrel*, the reverend Writer abovementioned, relates, that the Easter of the *Greeks* happening a Week after that of the *Latins*, when he was at *Jerusalem*, he went on the Evening before their *Easter-Sunday* to the Church of the holy Sepulchre, which he found crowded with a distracted Mob, making a hideous Clamour, very unfit for so sacred a Place, and better becoming *Bacchanals* than *Christians*; he says they began the Disorder by running round the Sepulchre, crying out with all their Might, *Huia, Huia, This is He, This is He*, by which they assert the Verity of the Christian Religion; and after they had, by this running round, and their Vociferation, almost turned their Heads, they acted the most antic Tricks imaginable, dragging some along the Floor, and carrying others upon their Shoulders round the Sepulchre. Sometimes they carried Men with their Heels upwards, exposing their Nudities, and others tumbling as if they had been shewing Tricks on a Mountebank's Stage.

This Tumult continued from twelve till four in the Afternoon, which was longer than usual, on account of a Law-Suit, which was then depending between the *Greeks* and *Armenians* about the holy Fire, the *Greeks* endeavouring to exclude the *Armenians* from any Share in the Miracle; and the Parties having expended about 5000 Dollars before the *Turkish* Tribunal in this Contest, the Cadi, or Judge, at length decreed, that they should enter the holy Sepulchre together, as they had done in former times; and accordingly at four o'Clock, both Sects proceeded in the Ceremony, surrounded the holy Sepulchre with Standards, Streamers, Crucifixes and embroidered Habits, as is usual on this Occasion; and towards the End of the Procession, a Pidgeon came fluttering into the Cupola over the Sepulchre, at which there was a great Shout; and as the *Latins* relate, this Bird was let fly on purpose by the *Greeks*, to make the People believe it was a visible Descent of the Holy Ghost.

After

After the Proceſſion was over, the Suffragan of the *Greek* Patriarch, (who was himſelf at *Conſtantinople*) and the chief *Armenian* Biſhop, entered the Door of the Sepulchre, and ſhut it after them, all the Candles and Lamps having been before extinguished in the Prefence of the *Turks* and other Witneſſes. As the Miracle drew nearer its Accompliſhment, the Shouts of the Mob were redoubled, and the People preſſed with that Vehemence towards the Door of the Sepulchre, that it was not in the Power of Janizaries, who ſtood to guard it, to keep them off, though ſome of them were ſeverely drubbed. The Reaſon of all this crowding, it ſeems, is to light their Candles at the holy Flame as ſoon as it is firſt brought out of the Sepulchre, that being eſteemed the moſt pure, as coming immediately from Heaven. The two holy Men, who were to work this Miracle, had not been a Minute in the Sepulchre, before a glimmering of the holy Fire was ſeen; at which Time, according to our Friend *Maundrel's* Phraſe, Bedlam itſelf never ſaw ſuch an unruly Transport as was produced in the Mob at this Sight; and the two reverend Gentlemen immediately after appeared with two blazing Torches in their Hands, which they held at the Door, while the People thronged about them to light their Tapers at this divine Flame; the *Janizaries*, in the mean time, with their Staves laying on them without Mercy: But the Exceſs of their Transport rendered them inſenſible of the Bruiſes they received. Thoſe who got any Fire, immediately applied it to their Faces and Boſoms, pretending it would not burn like an earthly Flame; though our Author obſerved, none of them could endure the Experiment long enough to make good this Pretenſion. But however that be, there were Tapers innumerable lighted, and the whole Church, Galleries, and every Place ſeemed to be in a Flame in an Inſtant; and this Illumination concluded the Ceremony.

Mr. *Maundrel* ſays, the Fire was kindled in the holy Sepulchre with great Quickneſs and Dexterity; but the *Latins* juſtly expoſe the Practice, as a ſhameful Impoſture, and Scandal to the *Chriſtian* Religion. And, as Mr. *Thevenot* obſerves, a Flint and a Steel would ſoon produce Fire, if there was none in the Sepulchre before; and, according to him, even the *Turks* have diſcovered the Cheat, and would have puniſhed them for it, but that the Patriarch repreſented he could not pay them the Money required of him, if they took from him the Profit of the holy Fire; they are therefore ſuffered to continue the Juggle; and the *Greek* and *Armenian Chriſtians* are ſo perſuaded of the Reality of the Miracle, that

that they make their Pilgrimages chiefly on this Account. Their Priests have acted the Cheat so long, that they are in a manner compelled to stand to it now. These zealous *Christians* smear Pieces of Linnen with the melting Wax which drops from those Tapers, and lay them up for Wind-ing-Sheets for themselves and their Friends, imagining that nothing is a better Security, says *Maundrel*, against the Pains of Hell.

The *Armenians* have a large Convent in *Jerusalem*, situate upon a pleasant Spot of Ground, which, with the Gardens, take up all that Part of Mount *Sion* which is at present within the Walls of the City, their Church being built over the Place where they assure us St. *James*, the Brother of *John*, was beheaded. In this Church are two Altars set out with extraordinary Splendour, being adorned with rich Mitres, embroidered Copes, Gold and Silver Crosses, Crowns, Chalice, and other Church Utensils without Number; and in the Middle of the Church stands a Pulpit, made of Tortoise-shell and Mother-of-pearl, with a beautiful Canopy or Cupola over it of the same Fabric. The Tortoise-shell and Mother-of-pearl are so exquisitely mingled and inlaid, that the Work far exceeds the Materials.

Among other things Pilgrims are led to see in this City, is the Palace of *Pilate*, or rather the Place where it stood; for now a mean *Turkish* House possesses its room: However, from the Terrass of this House there is a fair Prospect of all the Place where the famous Temple once stood, and the only Prospect of it a Christian is allowed; for there is no going within the Bounds of it without forfeiting a Man's Life, or at least his Religion: But a fitter Place for an august Building, Mr. *Maundrel* observes, could not be found in the whole World than this Area. It lies on the Top of Mount *Moriah*, over-against Mount *Olivet*, the Valley of *Jehosaphat* lying between both Mountains. It is about 570 Paces in Length, and 370 in Breadth; and there may still be discerned Marks of the great Labour it cost to cut away the hard Rock and level such a spacious Area upon so strong a Mountain. In the Middle of the Area there stands at present a *Turkish* Mosque, of an octagonal Figure, supposed to be built upon the same Ground where anciently stood the *Sanctum Sanctorum*: It is neither eminent for its Largeness, or Structure, and yet makes a very noble Figure, purely by the Advantage of its Situation.

To this Relation of Mr. *Maundrel* may be added some late Observations of Dr. *Shaw* concerning the Country of *Judea*.

He

He says the Westerly Winds here are attended with Rain, and those from the East are usually dry; but sometimes too hazy and tempestuous. These Easterly Winds are called by the sea-faring Men *Levanders*, being not confined to any one single Point; but blowing in all Directions from the North-East to the South-East.

The *Euroclydon*, which we read of in the History of St. Paul (Acts xxvii. 14.) was nothing more, as I conjecture, than one of these strong *Levanders*.

The Mountains of *Libanus* are covered all the Winter with Snow, which, when the Winds are easterly, affects the whole Country, from *Tripoly* to *Sidon*, with a more subtil and piercing Cold than what is known in our Northern Climates. Whereas the other maritime and inland Places, either to the North or South of these Mountains, enjoy a Temperature of the Atmosphere, which is much milder, and attended with a more regular Change in the Seasons.

The first Rains usually fall about the Beginning of *November*; the latter sometimes in the Middle, sometimes towards the latter End, of *April*. It is an Observation in the Country round about *Jerusalem*, that provided a moderate Quantity of Snow falls in the Beginning of *February*, and the Fountains overflow a little afterwards, there is the Prospect of a fruitful and plentiful Year; the Inhabitants making, upon these Occasions, the like Rejoicings which the *Egyptians* do upon the cutting of the *Nile*. During the Summer Season these Countries are rarely refreshed with Rain; but enjoy the like Serenity of Air the Coast of *Barbary* does.

The Soil both of the maritime and inland Parts of *Syria* and *Phanice* is of a light loamy Nature, rarely requiring more than one Pair of Oxen to plow it; and produces all sorts of excellent Grain, and such vegetable Diet, as the Fruit and Kitchen Gardens of *Barbary* afford, besides Silk and Cotton.

The *Holy-Land*, were it as well peopled and cultivated as in former time, would still be more fruitful than the very best Part of the Coast of *Syria* and *Phanice*: For the Soil itself is generally much richer, and, all things considered, yields a more preferable Crop. Thus the Cotton that is gathered in the Plains of *Ramah*, *Esdraelon*, and *Zabulon*, is in greater Esteem than what is cultivated near *Sidon* and *Tripoly*; neither is it possible for Pulse, Wheat, or any other sort of Grain, to be more excellent than what is commonly sold at *Jerusalem*. The Barrenness, or Scarcity rather, which some Writers may either ignorantly or maliciously complain of, does not proceed from the Incapacity, or natural Unfruitfulness of the Country, but from the Want of Inhabitants;
and

and the great Aversion there is to Labour and Industry in those who possess it. There are besides such perpetual Disorders and Depredations among the petty Princes who share this fine Country, that allowing it was better peopled, yet there would be small Encouragement to sow, when it was uncertain who should gather in the Harvest. Otherwise the Land is a good Land, and still capable of affording its Neighbours the like Supplies of Corn and Oil which it is known to have done in the Time of *Solomon*.

The Parts about *Jerusalem* being rocky and mountainous, are supposed to be most barren and unfruitful; but these feed however great Herds of Cattle, abound in Milk and Honey, and produce excellent Wine and Olive Oil, where they are cultivated; and there are Valléys between the Mountains which produce Plenty of Corn.

I N D E X.

A.

ABBAS, the great Sovereign of *Persia*, Page 156.
Acham, a City and Kingdom of the further *India*,
 325.

Achen, the capital City of *Sumatra*, 429.

Achæus usurps the Dominion of the *Lesser Asia*, 61.

Adrianople besieged and relieved by the *Tartars*, 109. Taken
 by the *Turks*, 126.

Agésilæus, King of *Sparta*, defeats the *Persians* in several
 Battles, 31.

Aladulia, a Province of the *Lesser Asia*, subdued by *Seli-*
mus, Emperor of the *Turks*, 202.

Alcheran, published by *Mahomet*, 88.

Alexander the Great elected Generalissimo against the *Per-*
sians, 35. His Victory at the River *Granicus*, *ib.* His
 Victory at *Iffus*, 37. He takes the City of *Tyre*, 38.
 Subdues *Egypt*, 39. Visits the Temple of *Jupiter Am-*
mon, *ib.* Builds *Alexandria*, 40. His Victory at *Ar-*
bela, *ib.* *Babylon*, &c. surrender to him, *ib.* Succeeds
 to the *Persian Empire* on the Death of *Darius*, 41. His
 Interview with *Thalestris*, the Queen of *Amazons*, 43.
 Marries *Roxana*, 44. Worshipped as a God, 45. His
 Victory over *Porus*, in *India*, 45. He imitates
Bacchus, 47. Marries *Statira*, the Daughter of *Da-*
rius, *ib.* He dies in a drunken Fit, 49. His mag-
 nificent Funeral, 50. Succeeded by his Brother *Arideus*,
 and his two posthumous Sons, who are murdered, 49,
 51, 53. His Empire divided among his Officers, 50
 to 59.

Amboyna, the *English* tortured and massacred there by the
Dutch, 288, 387.

Amurath, Emperor of the *Turks*, invades *Thessaly* and *Ma-*
cedon, 136.

Andoman Islands, 444.

Antigenus, one of *Alexander's* Generals, has great Part of
Asia Minor allotted to him, 50, 52. He is killed, and
 his Territories divided among the Survivors, 55.

Antioch, Capital of the Kingdom of *Syria*, built by *Se-*
leucus,

I N D E X.

- leucus*, the Son of *Antiochus*, one of *Alexander's* Generals, 35.
- Antiochus Soter*, Son of *Seleucus*, marries *Stratonice*, his Father's Wife, while his Father was living, 58. He defeats the *Gauls*, 59.
- Antiochus* and his Army cut in Pieces by the *Parthians*, 68.
- Arabia*, the Name, Situation, Produce, &c. 85, 90. *Mahomet*, the Founder of the *Arabian* or *Saracen* Empire, 87. Publishes his *Alchoran*, 88. Proclaimed King, 89. Demolishes Images, *ib.*
- Arabian* or *Saracen* Caliphs or Emperors, 93.
- Arbaces* the *Mede*, *Ninus* and *Belochus*, bring about a Revolution in the *Assyrian* Empire, 6.
- Arbela* Battle, 40.
- Arideus*, half Brother of *Alexander*, declared King, 49.
- Arracan*, a City and Kingdom of *India* beyond *Ganges*, 325.
- Arfaces*, the first *Parthian* King, 69.
- Artaxerxes* entertains *Themistocles*, 25. Invades *Greece*, but is repulsed, *ib.* Reduces *Egypt* which had revolted, 26. Promotes the Building of *Jerusalem*, *ib.*
- Artaxerxes Mnemon*, his Victory over his Brother *Cyrus*, after which *Xenophon* made his famous Retreat to *Greece*, 28.
- Asia* invaded by the *Romans*, 63.
- Assyrian* Empire, 1. *Babylon* and *Nineveh* alternately the Seat of the Empire, 2, 3. *Egypt* subdued by the *Assyrians*, and the *Jews* carried Captive to *Babylon*, 6, 9.
- Assyrian* Monarchs, 7.
- Astronomers*, the *Babylonians* the first, 84.
- Astyages*, King of *Media*, 9.
- Aurengzebe's* Accession to the Throne of *India*, 313.
- Austria* invaded by the *Turks*, who are defeated by the Emperor *Charles V.* 310.

B.

- Baal*, or *Belus*, 2.
- Babel* Tower, 4.
- Babylon* built, 3. Taken by *Cyrus*, 9. Taken by *Darius*, 17. Taken by *Alexander*, 40.
- Babylonians* the first *Astronomers*, 184.
- Bagdat* taken by the *Turks*, 211, 251.
- Bagoas*, the *Egyptian* Eunuch, his Treachery, 34.
- Bajazet's* Conquests, 127. Taken Prisoner by *Tamerlane*, 131. A Civil War among his Sons, 134. *Mahomet* the Survivor succeeds him, *ib.*
- Banda's*, the Nutmeg Islands, 403.

I N D E X.

Batavia, Capital of the *Dutch Empire* in *India*, 438.
Belgrade taken by the *Turks*, 206.
Belochus, King of *Babylon*, 6.
Borneo Island, Situation, Air, Harbours, &c. 414. Towns built on Floats, Persons and Habits, 416, 417. Produce and Traffic, 419, 432.
Buda taken by the *Turks*, 209. Retaken by the Christians, 266.

C.

Caliphs, or Emperors of the *Saracens*, 93.
Cambyfes, Emperor of *Persia*, 12. Subdues *Egypt*, 13.
Cadmece, taken by the *Turks*, 263.
Candia invaded by the *Turks*, 252. The Island subdued, 261.
Carlowitz's Treaty of Peace, 274.
Cassander governs *Macedonia* after *Alexander's* Death, 63.
Cassanes, the *Tartar* King of *Persia*, assists the Christians in the Holy Land, 116.
Ceylon, Situation, Seasons, &c. 404. Colonies of *Ethiopians*, *Arabs*, &c. when the *Portuguese* arrived here, 405.
China, Name, Situation, and Climate, 326. Rivers and Canals, 327. Provinces, 328. Number of Cities and People, 329. Capital City of *Pekin* described, 330. Government of the City, *ib.* Tower of *Nankin*, 331. Manufactures, 333. Produce and Traffic, 334, 343. Arts and Sciences, 336. Government, 338. Religion and Superstition, 339. *Chinese* Tartary, 344. Original Inhabitants, 346. *Chinese* Sovereigns, 347. Great Wall dividing *China* from *Tartary*, 353. Conquest of the *Farther India*, 354. *Xavier Francis*, a *Papish Missionary*, sent thither, 350. A *Tartar* Prince conquers *China*, 360.
China-Cochin, Situation, Produce, &c. 324.
Chosroes, King of *Persia*, his Wars with the Eastern Emperors, 78. *Cleopatra* compelled by *Demetrius*, King of *Syria*, her Son, to drink the Poison she had prepared for him, 68.
Cimon, his Victories over the *Persians*, 26.
Cinnamon-Tree described, 405.
Confucius, the great *Chinese* Philosopher, 362.
Constantinopolitan, Roman Emperors, 143. The Imperial Seat removed from *Rome* to *Constantinople*, *ib.* Taken by the *Latins*, 108. Recovered by the *Greeks*, 117. Taken by the *Turks*, 141.
Craffus, invading *Parthia*, is defeated by *Orodes*, and killed, and great Part of his Army made Prisoners, 71. 73.
Cresus, King of *Lydia*, his Conquests, 193. His Alliance with

I - N - D - E - X

- with the King of *Babylon*, 194. Defeated by *Cyrus*, and made Prisoner, *ib.*
Crotcha Battle, 282.
Crusads's, or Wars of the Christians in the Holy Land, 97.
 The Christians expelled *Palestine*, 115.
Cyprus Island, subdued by the *Persians*, 32. Conquered by the *Turks*, 225.
Cyrus, Emperor of *Persia*, 8. His Victories over the *Babylonians*, 10. His Victories over *Cræsus*, *ib.* Takes the City of *Babylon*, 11. His Edict for rebuilding the Temple of *Jerusalem*, 12.
Cyrus, the Brother of *Artaxerxes* defeated by him, whereupon *Xenophon* and the *Greeks* make their Retreat, 29.

D.

- Darius* the *Mede*, called *Cyaxares* in profane History, takes *Babylon*, and reigns jointly with *Cyrus*, 2 Years, 11.
Darius Hystaspes elected, 16. Marries *Atossa* and *Ariston*, two of the Daughters of *Cyrus the Great*, *ib.* He divides the *Persian* Empire into twenty Provinces, *ib.* orders the building of the Temple of *Jerusalem* to be continued, *ib.* He besieges and takes *Babylon*, which had revolted, 17. Invades *Scythia* and *India*, *ibid.* He invades *Greece*, 18. Defeated at *Marathon*, 19.
Darius Codomannus, his Accession, 35. Defeated by *Alexander the Great* at *Granicus*, *Issus*, and *Arbela*, 37, 40.
Decan, subdued by the *Mogul*, 294.
Demetrius, Son of *Antigonus*, King of *Athens* and *Macedon*, 54, 56.
Drake's Voyages to the *Spice Islands*, 382.
Dutch Depredations, 288. They usurp the *Portuguese* and *English* Settlements in *India*, 305.

E.

- Egypt*, Situation and ancient Division, 477. *Menes*, or *Misraim*, the first King, 479. Shepherd Kings, 480. The Conquests of *Sesostris*, 482. The *Egyptians* send Colonies into *Greece*, 484. The *Ethiopians* possess themselves of *Egypt*, 487. *Egypt* divided among twelve Princes, 488. A Colony of *Greeks* settle in *Egypt*, *ib.* Wars between the *Egyptians* and *Syrians*, 489. A Canal attempted to be dug from the River *Nile* to the *Red Sea*, by *Necho*, *ib.* *Judea* tributary to *Egypt*, with *Cyprus*, *Syria* and *Phenicia*, 491. *Egypt* conquered by *Nebuchadnezzar*, 492. *Egypt* subdued by *Cyrus* King of *Persia*, 493. Subdued by *Alexander*, 494. *Ptolemy* the Son of
of

I N D E X.

of *Lagus* possesses himself of *Egypt*, *Syria*, *Palestine*, &c. and carries 100,000 *Jews* captive into *Egypt*, *ib.* A grand Library erected at *Alexandria*, and the Septuagint translated, *ib.* The *Romans* protect *Egypt* against *Antiochus* King of *Syria*, 496. *Jews* build a Temple in *Egypt*, 497. An Insurrection against *Cæsar* at *Alexandria*, 500. The Library at *Alexandria* burnt, *ib.* *Cleopatra's* Amours with *Cæsar* and *Marc Anthony*, 501. *Egypt* made a Roman Province, 502. Conquered by the *Saracens* and *Turks*, 503. *Egyptian* Laws and Customs, 504. Arts and Sciences, 506. Government, 510. Pyramids, 512. Kings of *Egypt*, 518. *Epirus* recovered by *Scanderbeg* from the *Turks*, 139, 153. Annexed with *Albania* to the *Turkish* Empire, 154. *Ethiopia* invaded by *Cambyſes*, 13. *Ethiopian* Kings of *Egypt*. *ib.*

F.

Famagusta, Capital of *Cyprus*, taken by the *Turks*, 225.

G.

Gallipoli in *Thrace*, the first City taken by the *Turks* in *Europe*, 125.
Gauls invade *Asia*, 58.
Golconda conquered by *Aurengzebe* the Great *Mogul*, 320.
Granicus River, where *Alexander* obtained his first Victory over the *Persians*, 35.
Grecian Empire, 43.

H.

Heracleidæ, Princes of *Lydia*, 190.
Herod the Great, the first King of the *Jews* of foreign Extraction, 466. He marries *Mariamne*, a *Jewess*, and murders her and her Sons, as also the Children of *Bethlehem*. 467. He rebuilds the Temple, 468.
Herod II. kills *John Baptist*, *Christ* suffered in his Reign, 476.
Herod III. 477.
Hungary becomes the Seat of War between the *Christians* and *Turks*, 209, 233, 257.
Hunniades, his Victories over the *Turks*, 138.
Huns invade *Persia*, 77, 142.

J.

I N D E X.

J.

- Japan* Island, Situation, Produce, Traffic, &c. 388. The *Dutch* only permitted to trade thither, *ib.*
- Java* a large *Indian* Island possessed by the *Dutch*, 434. Produce, Manufactures and Traffic, 438, 439.
- Jerusalem* taken by *Nebuchadnezzar*, and destroyed with the Temple, 7. Rebuilt by *Cyrus*, 12. *Darius*, 16. And *Artaxerxes*, 26. The Temple rebuilt by *Herod the Great*, 468. Destroyed by the *Romans*, 470.
- Jesso*, whether contiguous to *America*, 391.
- Jews* Captivity, 6. Their Expectations of a *Messias*, in 1666, 258.
- Jews*, their Original, 448. Their Residence in *Egypt*, 450. Departure from thence, *ib.* Their Kings, 451, 471. Revolt of the ten Tribes, *ib.* Their Captivity, 452. Captivity of the *Jews*, *ib.* They return from their Captivity, 454. Their Scriptures corrected by *Esdra*s, *ib.* Translated into *Greek*, 455. The *Jews* governed by their High-Priests, *ib.* 455, 473. They are massacred by *Antiochus* King of *Syria*, 257. The *Maccabees* defend the *Jews* against the *Syrians*, 458. They are protected by the *Romans*, 460. Their Kings after the Captivity, 463. *Herod the Idumæan* made King by the *Romans*, 466. He rebuilds the Temple, 468.
- India* within *Ganges*, 284. First Voyages thither, 286. Present Inhabitants, 289. Produce and Traffic, 290. European Settlements, *ib.* Religion, 291. History, 292. Grand Walk, 298. *India* beyond *Ganges*, 323. Its Subdivisions, *ib.* Complexion of the Natives, 325.
- Inoculation* begun in *Circassia*, 375.
- Ionians* subdued by *Darius*, 18.
- Irene*, *Mahomet's* Mistress beheaded by him, 141.
- Ispahan*, Capital of *Persia*, taken by *Mahmood the Usurper*, 163.
- Issus*, where *Alexander* obtained his Second Victory over the *Persians*, 37.
- Italy* invaded and plundered by the *Turks*, 211.
- Julian* the *Roman* Emperor killed in the *Parthian* War, 77.
- Judea*, Name, Situation, Mountains, Rivers, 445. Soil and Product, 446. *Judea* made a *Roman* Province, 469. *Pilate* made Governor of *Judea*, *ib.* Christ crucified, 469. The *Jews* grievously oppressed by their Governors, rebel, 470. A Civil War amongst them, *Jerusalem* taken, wherein eleven hun-

I N D E X.

hundred thousand *Jews* perish, 470. Kings of the *Jews*, 471. Their High-Priests vested with sovereign Power, 473. *Asmonean* Kings and Princes of *Judea*, 475. *Idumean* Kings of *Judea*, 476. Present State of *Judea*, 525.

K.

Kouli Kan usurps the Throne of *Persia*, 165.

L.

Laedrone Islands in the *Pacific Ocean*, 402.
Lepanto Gulph, the Naval Victory obtained there by the *Christians* over the *Turks*, 226.
Lydia Kingdom, 190. *Cræsus* the most powerful of its Kings, 192. His Alliance with the *Babylonians*, *ib.* Defeated and made Prisoner by *Cyrus*, 194.

M.

Maccabees, their History, 377.
Macedonian Monarchs, 42.
Magellan discovers a Way to the *East Indies* by the West, 381.
Mahomet Founder of the *Saracen* Empire, 87.
Mahometan Era commences, 88.
Mahomet the Grand Signior first assumes the Title of Emperor, 141. On his taking *Constantinople*, he devotes himself to *Irene*, and afterwards cuts off her Head, 142. His Conquests in *Europe* and *Asia*, 153.
Mahomet III. Murders his twenty Brothers, 234.
Maldiva Islands, 444.
Malta besieged by the *Turks*, 221.
Mamelukes of *Egypt*, 203.
Mamila, Capital of the *Philippine* Islands described, 396.
Marathon Battle, 19.
Mariamne married and murdered by *Herod*, 466.
Medes conquer *Babylon*, 9.
Mindanao, one of the *Philippine* Islands, 399.
Mohats, a Victory obtained there by the *Turks*, 209.
Moluccas, or *Clove* Islands, 403.
Mongul Tartars, 377.
Morea subdued by the *Turks*, 280.
Moriscoes banished *Spain*, whereupon the *Turks* threaten to revenge their Cause on their *Christian* Subjects, 241.

N.

Nanking Tower, 331.
Naples invaded by the *Turks*; 1556.

Negro-

I N D E X

Negropont taken from the *Venetians* by the *Turks*, *ib.*
Nice in *Bythinia* taken by the *Christians*, in an Expedition
 to the *Holy-Land*, 98. Made the Capital of the *Greeks*
 in *Asia*, 109.
Nimrod the first Monarch, 2.
Nineveh built, *ib.*
Ninus the Founder of the *Affyrian Empire*, *ib.*
Noradin Sultan of *Damascus* obtains a Victory over the *Chri-*
stians in the *Holy-Land*, 102.
Nova Zembla North of *Russia*, 369.

O.

Olach, a Victory obtained over the *Turks* there, 273.
Oriental Islands described, 378.
Ostiacs, of *Russia*, 369.
Otranto in *Italy* taken by the *Turks*, 155.
Ottoman Empire, 118. The Rise of the *Ottoman Family*,
 122, 283. Their History continued, 196.

P.

Palestine. See *Jews* and *Judea*, 445.
Panthea, 194.
Parthian Kingdom, 69. The *Parthians* defeat *Craffus*,
 and kill him, 71. *Paccorus* the *Parthian* subdues the
Lesser Asia and *Syria*, 73. *Parthian Kings*, 81.
Pegu, Situation, Produce and Traffic, &c. 323.
Peking, Capital of *China* described, 330.
Pepper Plant, 433.
Persian Empire, 9. The *Persians* conquer *Egypt*, 12 to
 32. They invade *Greece*, 18. Defeated by the *Greeks*,
 25. *Persian Kings* restored, 75 to 156. The *Usurp-*
ations of *Mercwies* and *Kouli-Kan*, 160 to 165. Pro-
 duce, Manufactures and Traffic, 186. The Ancient
 State of *Persia*, 171.
Phraates King of *Parthia*, submits to *Augustus*, 81.
Pilate made Governor of *Judea*, during whose Govern-
 ment *Christ* is crucified, 469.
Plataea Battle, 24.
Portuguese Voyages to *India*, 378.
Perus conquered by *Alexander*, 45.
Prusa in *Bythinia* taken by the *Turks*, 124.
Pruth Battle between the *Turks* and *Russians*, 279.
Ptolemy King of *Egypt* conquers *Syria* and *Phenicia*, 51.

R.

I N D E X.

R.

- Ragotski* elected Prince of *Transilvania*, 247. He is killed in a Battle with the *Turks*, 256.
Rhodes subdued by the *Turks*, 206.
Richard I. King of *England*, made Prisoner in his Return from the Holy Land, 106.
Romans protect *Egypt* and *Greece* against *Antiochus*, King of *Syria*, 62.
Roxana married to *Alexander*, 44.
Russians invade *Crim Tartary*, 282.

S.

- Saladin*, King of *Egypt*, takes *Jerusalem* from the Christians, 104.
Sapor, King of *Persia*, takes *Valerian* the Emperor Prisoner, 76.
Saracens conquer *Persia*, 79.
Saracen Empire and Emperors, 85, 93.
Saracen, General of the *Turks*, usurps the Throne of *Egypt*, 103.
Sardanapalus, the last King of the *Assyrian* Race, 5.
Sardis surrenders to *Alexander*, 36.
Scanderbeg, Prince of *Epirus*, recovers his Country from the *Turks*, 139.
Scythia, from whence peopled, 363.
Seleucus resigns his Queen to his Son *Antiochus*, 58.
Selimus, the Grand Signior, murders his five Brothers, 200.
Semiramis, Queen of *Assyria*, her great Actions, 3. Rebuilds *Babylon*, 7.
Siam, Situation, Produce, Traffic, &c. 322.
Sidon taken by *Ochus*, King of *Persia*, 33.
Smerdis, the Magian Usurper, assassinated, 15.
Sobieski, King of *Poland*, and the Duke of *Lorrain*, obtain a signal Victory over the *Turks*, and raise the Siege of *Vienna*, 262.
Solyman, the magnificent Emperor of *Turky*, takes *Belgrade*, *Rhodes* and *Buda*, and invests *Vienna*, 206 to 210.
Spice Islands, possessed by the *Portuguese*, 381. The States of the *Spice Islands* make a Cession of their Country to the Kings of *England*, but the *English* are expelled by the *Dutch*, 381 to 384.
Sumatra, Situation, Produce, Traffic, &c. 426, 433.

Surat

I N D E X.

Surat, in *India*, plundered of immense Riches by the Rebel *Sevagi*, 318.

Syria and *Judea* conquered by *Ptolemy*, 51.

T.

Tamerlane invades *Russia*, *China*, and *Turky*, 129, 292.

He takes *Sebastia*, and buries the Garison alive, 130.

He obtains a Victory over the *Turks* at *Mount Stella*, and

takes *Bajazet* Prisoner, 131. He takes *Prusa*, *ib.*

He visits the *Grecian* Emperor at *Constantinople*, *ib.* He

subdues *Syria*, *Egypt*, and Part of *Africa*, 132. He re-

turns to his Capital of *Samercand*, retaining but little of all his Conquests, *ib.*

Tangrolipix, General of the *Turks*, conquers *Persia*, 82, 96.

Tartars conquer *Persia*, and subdue the *Turks*, 107, 115.

Tartarian Deity, 340.

Tartars conquer *China*, 360. Their Treaty with the *Russians* concerning the Limits of their Frontiers, 361.

Tartary Asiatic, its Situation, Divisions, Traffic, &c. 366, 367.

Tartars of *Siberia*, 371. Of *Circassia*, 373. Of *Calmuc*, *ib.*

Of *Mongul*, or *Moguls*, 377. Of *Tibet*, *ib.*

Tauris, in *Persia*, plundered by the *Turks*, 251.

Tea, the Produce of *China*, 335.

Ternate, a Clove Island in the *Indian* Sea, 382.

Thalestris, the *Amazon*, her Conference with *Alexander*, 43.

Thebes, *Egyptian* demolished by *Cambyfes*, 13.

Themistocles's Victories, 22. He is banished, 25.

Thermopoly Battle, 22.

Transilvania subdued by the *Turks*, 213, 234, 236.

Trapezond Emperors, 109.

Trapezond taken by the *Turks*, and that Empire united to *Turky*, 143.

Tryphon usurps the Throne of *Syria*, 67.

Tunis taken by *Barbarussa*, the *Turkish* Admiral, 211.

Tunis, Kingdom of, conquered by the *Spaniards*, commanded by Don *John* of *Austria*, 227. Recovered by the *Turks*, 228.

Turks of *Scythian*, or *Tartarian* Extraction, 95. They invade *Armenia*, 96. They conquer *Persia*, and Part of *Arabia*, *ib.* Situation, Produce, and Manufactures of the *Turkish* Empire, 118.

Turkish Wars with *Persia*, 201, 217, 229, 250, 281.

Their Alliance with *France*, 212. They invade *Italy*, 213, 217. *Sicily*, *Malta*, and *Naples*, 220. They con-

I N D E X.

conquer the Island of *Cyprus*, 224. Their Fleet destroyed at *Lepanto*, 226. They conquer *Tunis*, 228. Their Wars in *Hungary* 236, 245, 257, 262. The *Turks* take *Bagdat*, or new *Babylon*, 251. They subdue the Island of *Candy* or *Crete*, 252, 261. They reduce *Chaldea*, or *Irak Agem*, 259. They besiege *Vienna*, 265, 273. The *Venetians* recover the *Morea* from them, and lose it again, 266, 280. The *Turks* entertain the King of *Sweden*, 279. Their Wars with *Russia*, *ib.* Defeated by the *Germans*, 280. *Turkish* Kings and Emperors, 283.

Turks, their Wars with the *Grecian* Emperors, 97. Subdued by the *Tartars*, 107, 115. Subdued by *Tamerlane*, 131. They take *Constantinople* and *Trapezond*, 143. *Egypt* and *Syria* conquered by the *Turks*, 283.

Tydore, a Clove Island in *India*, 383.

Tyre taken by *Alexander*, 38.

V.

Valerian, the Emperor, made Prisoner, and fled alive by *Sapor*, King of *Persia*, 76.

Venetian Territories invaded by the *Turks*, 213, 215.

Vienna besieged by the *Turks*, 210.

Vishapour conquered by the Great Mogul, 320.

Uzbek, or *Ousbek Tartars*, 376.

Ussan Cassanes, King of *Persia*, his Wars with the *Turks*, 155.

W.

Walachia and *Moldavia* recovered by the *Turks*, 236.

Wall, 1500 Miles long between *China* and *Tartary*, 295.

X.

Xavier, the *Indian* Missionary, 359.

Xenophon's Retreat through *Persia*, 31.

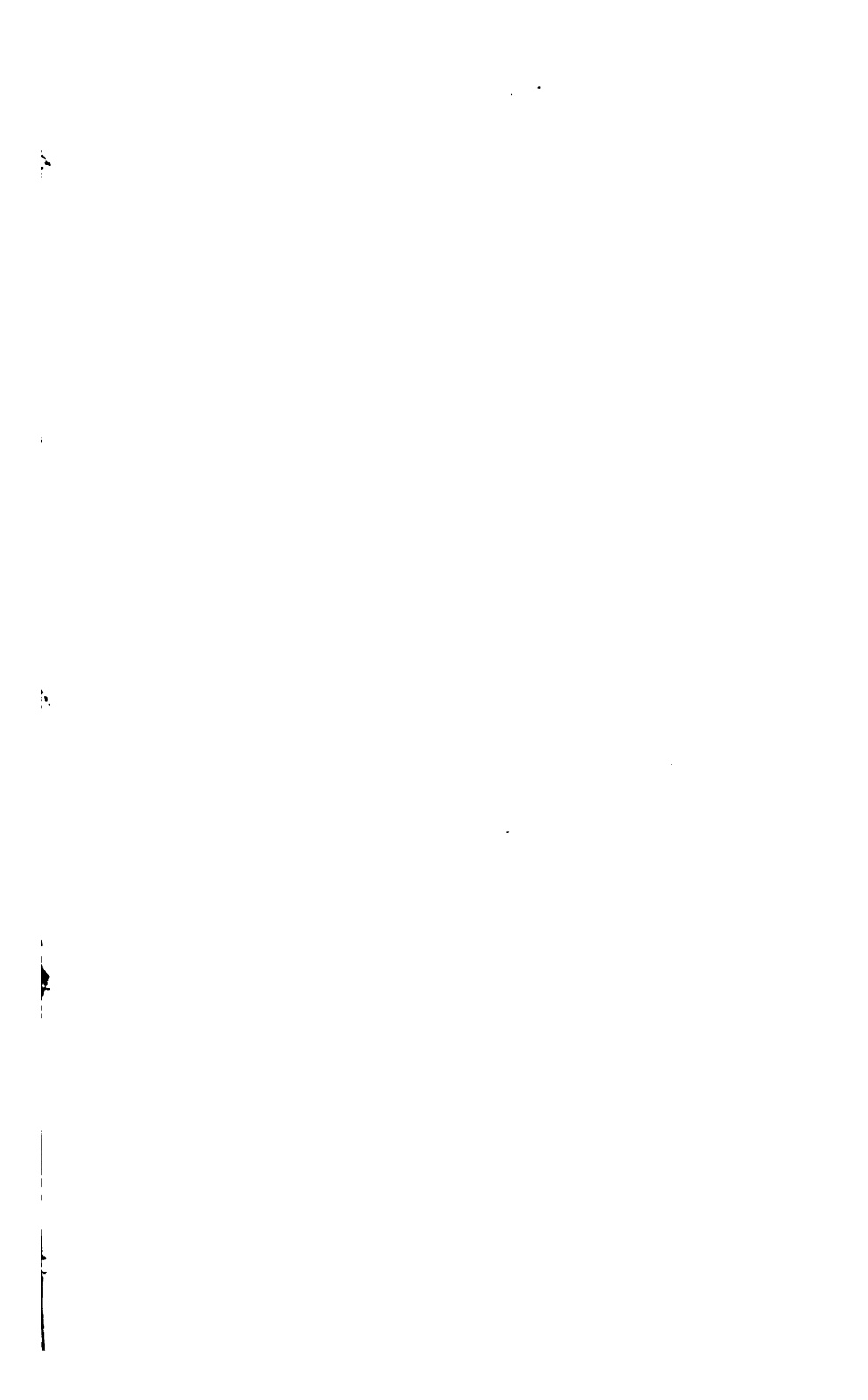
Xerxes invades *Egypt* and *Greece*, 20.

Xunchi, the first Emperor of *China*, of the *Tartarian* Race, 360.

Z.

Zembla Nova, North of *Russia*, 369:

F I N I S.







JUN 7 1963

